Cancer Council Australia

# Clinical practice guidelines for the prevention, early detection and management of colorectal cancer

### Draft content for public consultation

Please note that the draft *Clinical practice guidelines for the prevention, early detection and management of colorectal cancer* were released for public consultation from the period of **10 March 2017 to 8 April 2017**.

The public consultation period has now concluded. All feedback on the draft received during the consultation period is being compiled and considered by the Working Party.

The PDF containing the pre-public consultation content can be made available for reference purposes. If you would like to view a copy, please send your request to guidelines(at)cancer.org.au. You can also request to be notified via email when the final guidelines are launched.

# 1 Introduction

## 1.1 Introduction

Colorectal cancer is a major cause of morbidity and mortality in Australia. It is the second most common cancer diagnosed in both men and women, and is more common in those aged over 50 years. Colorectal cancer is also the second most common cause of cancer death and accounts for 9% of all cancer deaths.[1] This profile of colorectal cancer in Australia highlights the need for guidelines to ensure clinical best practice.

These draft clinical practice guidelines are a revision and update of the 2005 Clinical Practice Guidelines for the Prevention, Early Detection and Management of Colorectal Cancer. They were originally developed in 1999, and since then, have been widely used as a reference and referred to by health practitioners, including general practitioners (GPs) and specialists to guide clinical practice. This current revision and update was commissioned and funded by the Department of Health Commonwealth of Australia.

The guidelines aim to provide information and recommendations to guide practice across the continuum of cancer care including colorectal cancer prevention, screening and diagnosis, clinical aspects of surgery, radiotherapy and chemotherapy, follow-up and psychosocial care. The guidelines also provide an evidence base for the National Bowel Cancer Screening Program.

The update of the guidelines was overseen by a multidisciplinary working party with input by subcommittees. We thank the members of the Working Party, subcommittee, systematic reviewers and all others who contributed to the development of these draft guidelines.

### 1.1.1 Currency of these guidelines

It is inevitable that parts of this guideline will become out of date as further literature is published. Newly published evidence relevant to each systematic review question will be monitored. If strong evidence supporting a change in the guideline is published, the Working Party will consider if an update is required for a specific section.

It is recommended that the guideline as a whole should be reviewed and updated every five years.

## 1.2 References

1. ↑ Australian Institute of Health and Welfare. *Cancer in Australia: an overview 2014. [Version updated 16 April 2015] Cancer series No 90. Cat. no. CAN 88.* Canberra: AIHW;.

Back to top

# 2 Summary of recommendations

This is a summary of the draft recommendations in these guidelines, numbered according to chapter to which they relate. Please note that some chapters do not have associated recommendations.

This guideline includes evidence-based recommendations (EBR), consensus-based recommendations (CBR) and practice points (PP) as defined in the table below. Recommendations and practice points were developed by working party members and sub-committee members.

Each EBR was assigned a grade by the expert working group, taking into account the volume, consistency, generalisability, applicability and clinical impact of the body of evidence according to NHMRC Level and Grades for Recommendations for Guidelines Developers.[1]

### 2.1 NHMRC approved recommendation types and definitions

| Type of recommendation | Definition |
|---|---|
| **Evidence-based recommendation** | A recommendation formulated after a systematic review of the evidence, indicating supporting references |
| **Consensus-based recommendation** | A recommendation formulated in the absence of quality evidence, after a systematic review of the evidence was conducted and failed to identify admissible evidence on the clinical question |
| **Practice point** | A recommendation on a subject that is outside the scope of the search strategy for the systematic review, based on expert opinion and formulated by a consensus process |

*Source: National Health and Medical Research Council. Procedures and requirements for meeting the NHMRC standard for clinical practice guidelines. Melbourne: National Health and Medical Research Council, 2011*

## 2.2 Recommendations

### 2.2.1 Primary prevention: Chemopreventive candidate agents

### 2.2.2 Chemopreventive candidate agents

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| For all people aged 50–70 years who are at average risk of colorectal cancer, aspirin should be actively considered to prevent colorectal cancer. A low dose (100–300 mg per day) is recommended for at least 2.5 years, commencing at age 50 to 70 years. The benefit may extend to older ages with longer duration of use. Benefit for cancer prevention (though shorter for cardiovascular risk) is evident only 10 years after initiation so a life expectancy of at least 10 years should be taken into consideration in the advice to use aspirin. | **B** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| The choice to take aspirin should be personalised based on age, sex and potential reduction in cardiovascular events, cerebrovascular events and thrombotic stroke. The individual should take into account the potential risks of taking aspirin. Aspirin should be avoided in patients with current dyspepsia, any history of peptic ulcer, aspirin allergy, bleeding diathesis, an increased risk of gastrointestinal haemorrhage (such as associated with use of oral anticoagulants or antiplatelet agents), or renal impairment.<br><br>The benefit in colorectal cancer risk reduction in women over 65 is less clear cut. However, based on limited data available, older women with cardiovascular risk factors may derive a greater overall benefit than harm. | |

| Practice point |
|---|
| Aspirin should be avoided in patients with uncontrolled hypertension. |

| Practice point |
|---|
| Breath testing for *Helicobacter pylori* (and treatment for those who test positive) can also be considered, as gastrointestinal toxicity from aspirin is enhanced in the presence of *Helicobacter pylori*. |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| People who are at high risk of colorectal cancer due to Lynch Syndrome carrier status should be advised to begin aspirin from the commencement of their colonoscopy screening (usually at age 25 years). | **A** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| Non-syndromic familial cancer patients should be actively considered for aspirin, bearing in mind the possibility of adverse events.<br><br>600 mg/day has been shown to be effective, but lower dose (100 mg/day) may be as effective and is recommended based on the data available at the time of the systematic review. | **B** |

| Practice point |
| --- |
| Where surgery is inappropriate for people with familial adenomatous polyposis, an NSAID (e.g. sulindac) is recommended. (Kim B et al 2011) |

| Practice point |
| --- |
| Without RCT evidence, statins cannot be recommended for chemoprevention at this time. |

| Practice point |
| --- |
| Without RCT evidence, metformin cannot be recommended for chemoprevention at this time. |

| Practice point |
| --- |
| Bisphosphonates cannot be recommended for chemoprevention. |

Back to top

## 2.2.3 Population screening for colorectal cancer

## 2.2.4 Population screening: Evidence summary and recommendations (PSC1a-d)

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
| --- | --- |
| **Overall population screening strategy**<br><br>The recommended strategy for population screening in Australia, directed at those at average risk of colorectal cancer and without relevant symptoms, is immunochemical faecal occult blood testing every 2 years, starting at age 50 years and continuing to age 74 years. | **C** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| **Primary screening test**<br><br>An immunochemical faecal occult blood test is recommended as the screening modality for the detection of colorectal cancer in the average-risk population. | **C** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| **Primary screening test**<br><br>The emerging faecal, blood or serum tests for cancer-specific biomarkers such as DNA are not recommended as population screening modalities for colorectal cancer. | **C** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| **Primary screening test**<br><br>The use of flexible sigmoidoscopy as a primary screening test is not recommended for population screening in the average-risk population. | **C** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| **Frequency of testing**<br><br>Population screening for colorectal cancer using immunochemical faecal blood testing every 2 years is recommended. It is not recommended that the frequency of screening within the NBCSP be increased to yearly. | **N/A** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| **Target age group**<br><br>It is recommended that the age range for organised population screening continues to be 50–74 years. | **N/A** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| **Target age group**<br><br>Starting at age 40 is not recommended for population screening as it is unlikely to be cost-effective. | **N/A** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| **Target age group**<br><br>Although modelling indicated that it may be cost-effective, starting screening at age 45 is not recommended for population screening because there is a much less favourable ratio of benefits to harms than for 50–74 years. | **N/A** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| **Target age group**<br><br>Extending the age range to 79 or 84 years is not recommended for population screening as it is unlikely to be cost-effective. | **N/A** |

| Consensus-based recommendation |
|---|
| Resources should be invested in increasing participation in the existing NBCSP target age group of 50–74, rather than by lowering the starting age of screening, to optimise the balance of effectiveness, cost-effectiveness and ratio of benefits to harms. |

| Consensus-based recommendation |
|---|
| In people aged 45–49 years who request screening after being fully informed of the benefits and harms of testing, general practitioners (GPs) could offer an immunochemical faecal occult blood test every 2 years during the lead-up to the first routine invitation by the NBCSP at age 50 years. |

**Practice point**

Encouragement by GPs and practice staff substantially boosts participation in colorectal cancer screening. Patient endorsement letters in advance of receiving a test kit, the use of GP reminder systems and practice audit are approaches likely to improve participation rates. Increased participation in the NBCSP will increase the program's effectiveness and cost-effectiveness.

**Practice point**

GPs have a critically important role in managing the interface between population screening and personalised care. This role includes identifying and advising those who should opt off the NBCSP because of the presence of major comorbidities and limited life expectancy and those who should defer participation for several months because of recent surgery or major illness.

**Practice point**

Participation in a population screening program is not recommended for people with symptoms such as rectal bleeding or persistent change in bowel habit or with iron-deficiency anaemia, nor for those who should be having regular surveillance or screening based on colonoscopy, e.g. for past colorectal cancer or adenoma, chronic inflammatory bowel disease, a strong family history of colorectal cancer, or a high-risk genetic cancer syndrome (see Risk and screening based on family history of colorectal cancer).

**Practice point**

Individuals who have had a high-quality colonoscopy performed within the previous two years should allow another two years to elapse (i.e. skip a round) before participating in their next round of iFOBT screening. Colorectal cancer will rarely be present within that interval.

High-quality colonoscopy is defined in the Clinical Practice Guidelines for Surveillance Colonoscopy.

**Practice point**

GPs have a key role in advising patients who are at average or slightly above average risk that iFOBT is the preferred method of screening. They should discuss the relative harms and benefits of colonoscopy and discourage inappropriate use of colonoscopy as a screening method.

**Practice point**

Participants with positive iFOBT results should have follow-up investigation unless there was a clear breach in protocol when samples were collected (e.g. menstrual blood loss close to the time of sample collection). Repeating the iFOBT test after a positive result carries the risk of a falsely negative test result on the second occasion because of low levels of bleeding from a cancer or adenoma, intermittent bleeding, or uneven distribution of blood in the stools.

**Practice point**

Colonoscopy should be performed as promptly as possible after a positive iFOBT to minimise the risk of psychological harm, although there is no evidence that prognosis is worsened within 120 days if cancer is present.

Back to top

### 2.2.5 The symptomatic patient

### 2.2.6 Signs and symptoms predictive of colorectal cancer

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| The urgency of colonoscopy to investigate symptoms suggestive of colorectal cancer should be based on an assessment of patient age, symptom profile and results of simple investigations including full blood count, iron studies and iFOBT (see Table 10.1 for consensus-based colonoscopy triage categories). | **C** |

**Consensus-based recommendation**

In people with symptoms other than overt rectal bleeding, immunochemical faecal occult blood testing (iFOBT) can be used as part of the diagnostic assessment in primary care.

| Practice point |
| --- |
| Immunochemical faecal occult blood testing (iFOBT) is of particular use in the following circumstances to support diagnostic assessment and inform urgency of colonoscopy:<br>+ people over 50 years with either unexplained weight loss or abdominal pain<br>+ people under 60 years with either altered bowel habit or anaemia. |

Back to top

## 2.2.7 Optimal maximum time from referral to diagnosis and treatment

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
| --- | --- |
| For patients with symptoms suggestive of colorectal cancer, the total time from first healthcare presentation† to diagnostic colonoscopy should be no more than 120 days. Diagnostic intervals greater than 120 days are associated with poorer clinical outcomes.<br><br>† First healthcare presentation is defined as the date of presentation in general practice with symptoms suggestive of colorectal cancer or positive iFOBT for screening. | **C** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
| --- | --- |
| A diagnostic interval of 120 days should be the maximum time from first healthcare presentation† to diagnostic colonoscopy for triage Categories 1 and 2, whether it is for a patient with symptoms or after a positive iFOBT used for colorectal cancer screening. Diagnostic intervals greater than 120 days are associated with poorer clinical outcomes.<br><br>† First healthcare presentation is defined as the date of presentation in general practice with symptoms suggestive of colorectal cancer or positive iFOBT for screening. | **D** |

| Consensus-based recommendation |
| --- |
| Triage category 1 patients, whether due to symptoms or positive iFOBT, should continue to be considered most urgent and prioritised for diagnostic colonoscopy, in any model of care at any jurisdictional level. |

| Practice point |
| --- |
| Colonoscopy for symptomatic patients should be performed as promptly as possible after referral from general practice, especially for those meeting triage Category 1 criteria. If cancer is present, there is no evidence that prognosis is worsened within 120 days from first presentation to diagnostic colonoscopy. However, performing colonoscopy as promptly as possible after referral from general practice is to minimise the risk of psychological harm in symptomatic or iFOBT-positive patients who are potentially anxious while awaiting investigation. Prompt scheduling will also help to ensure that any unexpected delays between general practice referral and colonoscopy triaging do not flow on to exceed the 120-day threshold after which prognosis can worsen if cancer is present. |

Back to top

## 2.2.8 Risk and screening based on family history

## 2.2.9 Colorectal cancer risk according to family history

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
| --- | --- |
| **Category 1**<br><br>People who have one relative with colorectal cancer diagnosed at age 55 or older should be advised that their own risk of developing colorectal cancer could be up to twice the average risk, but is still not high enough to justify CRC screening by colonoscopy. | **C** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
| --- | --- |
| **Category 2** | **C** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| People should be advised that their risk of developing colorectal cancer is at least three times higher than average, but could be up to six times higher than average, if they have any of the following:<br>■ one first-degree relative with colorectal cancer diagnosed before age 55 years<br>■ two first-degree relatives with colorectal cancer diagnosed at any age<br>■ one first-degree relative and at least two second-degree relative diagnosed with colorectal cancer at any age. | |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| **Category 3**<br>People should be advised that their risk of colorectal cancer is at least seven times higher than average, but could be up to 10 times higher than average, if they have either of the following:<br>■ at least three first-degree or second-degree relatives with colorectal cancer, with at least one diagnosed before age 55 years<br>■ at least three first-degree relatives with colorectal cancer diagnosed at any age. | **C** |

| Practice point |
|---|
| Approximately 95-98% of the population are in Category 1 (near average risk of developing colorectal cancer). |

| Practice point |
|---|
| Approximately 65% of those with a family history of colorectal cancer only have a weak family history which means they are category 1 risk. |

**Practice point**

Medical information that patients provide about their relatives is often inaccurate. (St John et al 1993, Love et al 1985, Douglas et al 1999, Ruo et al 2001, Mitchell et al 2004) The percentage of colorectal cancer reports that are correct (positive predictive value) is 86% meaning that reports by relatives are usually true. However, a high proportion of people appear to be unaware that their relatives have had colorectal cancer, with the percentage of all colorectal cancers in first-degree relatives that are reported (sensitivity) being 27%. (Mai 2011).

**Practice point**

Given the potential importance of an accurate risk prediction for an individual, every effort should be made to collect reliable information.

**Practice point**

When there is uncertainty on family history, people should be encouraged to seek clarification within their family including details on which relatives have had colorectal cancer and their ages of diagnoses.

**Practice point**

If a family medical history appears to be significant but diagnoses prove difficult to confirm, it may be appropriate to seek expert help from a familial cancer clinic who have resources available to confirm cancer diagnoses.

Back to top

## 2.2.10 Screening strategies for people with a family history of colorectal cancer

**Practice point**

For people with category 1 risk of colorectal cancer with one relative with colorectal cancer, iFOBT should be considered every 2 years from age 45, given the risk of colorectal cancer at this age is approximately equivalent to the population risk at age 50.

**Practice point**

For people with category 2 risk of colorectal cancer:

- iFOBT should be performed every 2 years from age 40 up to age 50, and colonoscopy should be performed every 5 years from age 50 to age 74.
- low-dose (100 mg) aspirin daily should be considered (see Aspirin).

**Practice point**

For people in category 2, CT colonography can be offered if colonoscopy is contraindicated (Dachman 2003).

**Practice point**

Because of the possibility of Lynch syndrome, a complete family history should be taken and updated regularly, and the accuracy of the cancer diagnoses and polyp pathology should be checked carefully.

**Practice point**

Category 2 can now be met by inclusion of relatives from both sides of the family. Genetic testing is not appropriate at present for people with category 2 risk. Tumour testing for Lynch syndrome-related changes, using immunohistochemistry and microsatellite instability, should be considered when any of the revised Bethesda criteria are met (see Lynch syndrome).

**Practice point**

As with all forms of screening, those at risk should be carefully checked for the presence of symptoms that might be due to colorectal neoplasia. Where symptoms are present, appropriate diagnostic steps should be taken before entry into a screening program.

**Practice point**

For people with category 3 risk of colorectal cancer:

- iFOBT should be performed every 2 years from age 35 up to age 45, then 5-yearly colonoscopy from age 45 to age 74.
- Low-dose (100 mg) aspirin daily should be considered (see Aspirin).
- Referral to a genetic centre for hereditary cancer syndromes should be considered. Those carrying their family-specific mutation or having uncertain genetic status require careful cancer screening (see High-risk familial syndromes).

**Practice point**

Category 3 can now be met by inclusion of relatives from both sides of the family. This is expected to increase the numbers in this category by approximately 50%. Referral to a genetic centre for hereditary cancer syndromes should be prioritised to those with family members with colorectal cancer from the same side of the family.

**Practice point**

Screening recommendations no longer specify that screening should begin at 10 years younger than the age of first diagnosis of colorectal cancer in the family, as there is no published evidence to support this strategy.

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| **Category 1**<br><br>For people with a family history of colorectal cancer who are assessed as having category 1 risk, iFOBT should be performed every 2 years from age 50 to age 74. | **C** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| See Population screening for colorectal cancer.<br><br>For those with one first-degree relative with colorectal cancer, iFOBT every two years from age 45 should be considered. | |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| **Category 2**<br><br>For category 2 patients, offer iFOBT every 2 years starting at age 40, then colonoscopy every 5 years starting at age 50. CT colonography may be offered if colonoscopy is contraindicated. | **C** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| **Category 3**<br><br>For category 3 patients, offer iFOBT every two years starting at age 35, then colonoscopy every five years starting at age 45. CT colonography may be offered if colonoscopy is contraindicated. | **C** |

Back to top

## 2.2.11 High-risk familial syndromes

## 2.2.12 Familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP)

| Practice point |
|---|
| + Colonic surveillance should be offered to:<br><br>+ individuals found on genetic testing to carry a pathogenic APC mutation<br>+ first-degree relatives of patients with FAP or AFAP in whom genetic testing has been declined or is not possible because the family mutation has not been identified. |

**Practice point**

Surveillance should commence from age 10 to 15 years or earlier if there are gastrointestinal symptoms (Robays and Poppe, 2014). In families with classical FAP, flexible sigmoidoscopy is adequate since adenomas occur simultaneously throughout the colorectum (Syngal et al., 2015; Stoffel et al., 2015; Robays and Poppe, 2014). Once an adenoma is identified, annual colonoscopy should be performed until colectomy is undertaken. In AFAP, surveillance should be by colonoscopy since the first adenomas may only be present in the proximal colon but surveillance can be delayed until 18 years of age (Syngal et al., 2015; Cancer Institute NSW 2016; Robays and Poppe, 2014).

**Practice point**

- Total colectomy and ileorectal anastomosis should be reserved for patients with rectal adenomas considered easily controllable by endoscopy and < 1000 colonic adenomas. Proctocolectomy with a permanent ileostomy is rarely needed (Syngal et al., 2015). Annual surveillance of the residual rectum or ileal pouch is required following colectomy (Cancer Institute NSW 2016).
- Some patients with AFAP can be managed with colonoscopic polypectomy at one- to two-yearly intervals (Syngal et al., 2015; Balmaña et al., 2013). If surgery is required due to a high number of adenomas, colectomy with ileorectal anastomosis can nearly always be performed, because of the small number of adenomas in the rectum (Syngal et al., 2015; Balmaña et al., 2013)

Back to top

## 2.2.13 MUTYH-associated polyposis

**Practice point**

- Referral to a genetics service for germline genetic testing for mutations in MUTYH is indicated for persons with a cumulative count of ≥ 20 colorectal adenomas at any age (Syngal et al., 2015). It is also indicated for siblings of a MUTYH biallelic mutation carrier (Syngal et al., 2015).

Testing may also be considered in patients with ≥ 10 adenomas and any of the following (Syngal et al., 2015) :

- age under 50
- synchronous colorectal cancer
- both adenomatous and serrated polyps where the adenomatous polyps dominate

**Practice point**

- family history suggestive of recessive inheritance (e.g. consanguinity in parents or siblings with documented adenomatous polyposis or colorectal cancer).

Clinical practice in some familial cancer clinics would accept patients in these categories even if there are no synchronous adenomas in the proband.

**Practice point**

Biallelic mutation carriers should have colonoscopy every 2 years starting at age 18 to 20 years (Cancer Institute NSW, 2016; Robays and Poppe, 2014; Balmaña et al., 2013). If polyps are detected, annual colonoscopy may be required to control the polyp burden (Cancer Institute NSW, 2016). If polyps cannot be easily managed colonoscopically, a colectomy with ileorectal anastomosis should be considered and discussed with the patient (Cancer Institute NSW, 2016; Balmaña et al., 2013) The residual rectum requires annual surveillance.

Back to top

## 2.2.14 Lynch syndrome

**Practice point**

- All colorectal cancers should be tested for mismatch repair deficiency as a means to subsequently identify Lynch syndrome (Robays and Poppe, 2014; Ladabaum et al., 2015; Giardiello et al., 2014; Rubenstein et al., 2015).

Back to top

Back to top

### 2.2.15 Juvenile polyposis syndrome

**Practice point**

In patients with a diagnosis of juvenile polyposis syndrome, colonoscopy should commence at age 12–15 or earlier if symptoms occur (Syngal et al., 2015; Cancer Institute NSW, 2016). It should be repeated every 1 to 3 years depending on polyp burden. Colectomy is indicated if polyps cannot be managed endoscopically (Syngal et al., 2015; Cancer Institute NSW, 2016).

Back to top

### 2.2.16 Serrated polyposis syndrome

**Practice point**

Expert opinion is that colonoscopy should be performed every 1 to 3 years with the aim to remove all polyps ≥ 5mm. If the number and size of polyps make it impossible to achieve this, colectomy and ileorectal anastomosis should be considered.(Syngal S, Brand RE, Church JM, Giardiello FM, Hampel HL, Burt RW, et al 2015)(Cancer Institute NSW 2016)

Back to top

### 2.2.17 Imaging a patient with a diagnosis of colon/rectal adenocarcinoma

### 2.2.18 Imaging for colon cancer

**Practice point**

CT colonoscopy should be considered for a patient with colon cancer if it has not been possible to view the entire colon by colonoscopy due to the risk of synchronous tumours. (New Zealand Guidelines Group 2011.)

**Practice point**

If CT shows metastatic disease confined to the liver, MRI of the liver can be considered to assess for resectability, particularly if the background liver parenchyma is abnormal, the patient has recently received chemotherapy, or when a patient cannot have iodinated contrast.

**Practice point**

For patients with colorectal cancer who have potentially resectable metastatic disease, PET-CT is recommended to detect additional metastases.

**Practice point**

For patients with stage II and III disease who have undergone initial surgery and/or adjuvant treatment, a suitable approach to imaging surveillance may involve 12-monthly CT of chest, abdomen and pelvis.

**Practice point**

For patients with stage IV disease who have undergone a resection procedure with curative intent, a suitable approach to imaging surveillance may involve CT of chest, abdomen and pelvis every 6 months.

Back to top

## 2.2.19 Imaging for rectal cancer

**Practice point**

MRI of the rectum is the recommended staging investigation for rectal cancer.

**Practice point**

High-resolution sequences must be performed and must meet accepted criteria.

**Practice point**

Additional sequences coronal to the anal canal are required for low tumours (Table 7.2).

**Practice point**

Template reports are recommended, which include all of:

- Distance from anal verge (and puborectalis sling for low tumours)
- Relationship to the peritoneal reflection
- T stage including spread in mm beyond muscularis
- N stage and pelvic lymph nodes using morphological criteria
- EMVI status
- CRM status using 1mm as a cut-off distance.

Back to top

## 2.2.20 Pathlogy and staging

Back to top

## 2.2.21 Selection of a clinicopathological staging system

**Practice point**

TNM staging, ACPS/Concord staging and the data required to stage the patient should all be recorded to allow national and international comparisons.

Back to top

### 2.2.22 Additional information on pathology reporting

**Practice point**

DNA mismatch repair status studies should be performed on all cases of colorectal cancer for the detection of Lynch syndrome.

**Practice point**

BRAF mutation studies should be performed in conjunction with DNA mismatch repair status studies to differentiate between sporadic and familial (Lynch syndrome) cases of DNA mismatch repair status-deficient colorectal cancer.

**Practice point**

Extended RAS mutation testing should be carried out on all patients at the time of diagnosis of metastatic colorectal cancer. Note: RAS testing is not currently pathologist-determinable and therefore can only be performed for metastatic colorectal cancer following a request from a specialist (surgeon or oncologist).

**Practice point**

Synoptic reporting is strongly recommended to capture the key variables to enable translation between major internationally recognised staging systems and facilitate multidisciplinary patient management.

Back to top

### 2.2.23 Sampling and specimen handling considerations for molecular markers

**Practice point**

A suitable tissue block with a high proportion of tumour tissue (preferably over 70%) should be designated for the purpose of further molecular testing if required.

Back to top

## 2.2.24 Optimal molecular profiling

| Practice point |
| --- |
| A suitable tissue block with a high proportion of tumour tissue (preferably over 70%) should be designated for the purpose of further molecular testing if required. |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
| --- | --- |
| RAS mutation studies should be performed on patients with advanced (metastatic) colorectal cancer in whom anti-EGFR treatment is being considered. Cetuximab and panitumumab should only be considered for the treatment of patients with RAS wild-type metastatic colorectal cancer. | **D** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
| --- | --- |
| There is emerging evidence suggesting that BRAF mutation may be associated with poor response to anti-EGFR treatment, and that BRAF mutation studies should therefore be performed on patients with advanced (metastatic) colorectal cancer. | **D** |

Back to top

## 2.2.25 Preparation for surgery and peri-operative optimisation

## 2.2.26 Multidisciplinary meetings

| Practice point |
| --- |
| Ideally, all patients with newly diagnosed colorectal cancer should be discussed at a multidisciplinary team meeting. |

| Practice point |
| --- |
| Discussion at a multidisciplinary team meeting is mandatory for high-risk and complex cases such as patients with preoperative rectal cancers, metastatic disease or recurrent disease. |

Back to top

## 2.2.27 Perioperative anaemia management

**Practice point**

Patients undergoing elective surgery for colorectal cancer should be assessed for anaemia and iron deficiency and any deficiencies should be addressed preoperatively.

**Practice point**

Intravenous iron should be considered in preference to oral iron preoperatively given its quicker therapeutic effect.

**Practice point**

Consideration should also be given to treating postoperative functional iron deficiency anaemia with intravenous iron.

Back to top

## 2.2.28 Thromboembolic prophylaxis

**Practice point**

All patients undergoing surgery for colorectal cancer should have standard thromboprophylaxis in hospital with compression stockings, unfractionated or low molecular-weight heparin and sequential compression devices. Extended prophylaxis for 28 days can be considered in high risk patients following colorectal cancer surgery.

Back to top

## 2.2.29 Nutritional interventions

**Practice point**

Patients undergoing elective surgery for colorectal cancer should be screened for malnutrition.

**Practice point**

If patients are found to be malnourished, nutritional interventions should be put in place.

Back to top

## 2.2.30 Stomal therapy

**Practice point**

Patients undergoing colorectal cancer surgery who may, or will, require a stoma should be seen prior to surgery by a stomal therapist.

**Practice point**

Patients with stomas should be given postoperative education.

Back to top

## 2.2.31 Body temperature

**Practice point**

Perioperative normothermia should ideally be maintained at or above 36.0˚C.

| Practice point |
| --- |
| The use of warmed IV fluids and forced-air warming can be used to minimise perioperative hypothermia. |

Back to top

### 2.2.32 Enhanced recovery after surgery

| Practice point |
| --- |
| Patients having elective surgery for colorectal cancer should be managed within an appropriately resourced enhanced recovery after surgery (ERAS) program. |

Back to top

### 2.2.33 Mechanical bowel preparation with or without antibiotic prophylaxis

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
| --- | --- |
| Mechanical bowel preparation should not be used routinely in colonic surgery. It can be used selectively according to individual patient and tumour characteristics, at the surgeon's discretion. | **D** |

Back to top

### 2.2.34 Elective and emergency surgery for colon and rectal cancer

### 2.2.35 Optimal approach to elective resection for colon cancers (COL1-2a)

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
| --- | --- |
| Either an open approach or a laparoscopic approach can be used for the resection of colon cancer. | **D** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| Laparoscopic colectomy has post-operative advantages over open colectomy and should be performed when the surgical expertise and hospital infrastructure are available. | **D** |

| Practice point |
|---|
| Laparoscopic colectomy requires significant additional skills. Surgeons should ensure that they have mastered the necessary techniques before performing laparoscopic colectomy as an independent operator. |

| Practice point |
|---|
| Laparoscopic colorectal surgery is complex minimally invasive surgery that requires high-resolution video imaging and up-to-date equipment, including instrumentation and energy sources. It should only be undertaken in facilities that provide this infrastructure. |

Back to top

## 2.2.36 Optimal approach to elective resection for rectal cancers (COL1-2b)

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| Open surgery is the standard approach for resection of rectal cancer. Laparoscopic resection can be considered in selected cases if the surgical expertise (including advanced laparoscopic skills) and hospital infrastructure are available noting that it is a technique that has yet to be proven safe and efficacious in all patients for rectal cancer. | **C** |

| Practice point |
|---|
| Regardless of the approach utilised, rectal cancer resection must be undertaken by surgeons who have been appropriately trained in surgical resection of rectal cancer, utilising the principles of total mesorectal resection as proposed by Heald. This should include sharp dissection undertaken along the mesorectal plane. Surgical resection undertaken by inadequately trained surgeons is likely to result in inferior oncological outcomes. |

| Practice point |
| --- |
| Case selection is important, as it is suboptimal to generalise the surgical approach for rectal cancer to all patients. Factors such as patient body mass index, tumour stage, and surgeon experience are important considerations when determining whether a laparoscopic or open approach is optimal for the patient. |

| Practice point |
| --- |
| The laparoscopic approach may have a higher potential for an inferior quality TME specimen, as demonstrated by two recent multicentre RCTs, though long-term outcome data are not yet available on these studies (Fleshman et al 2015, Stevenson et al 2015). Two other large multicentre RCTs have reported long-term outcomes with no difference in local recurrence or survival (Jeong et al 2014, Bonjer et al 2015). The surgeon should discuss with the patient the potential impact on oncological outcome of the laparoscopic approach along with the potential improvements on short term recovery. |

Back to top

## 2.2.37 Local versus radical resection for T1-T2 rectal tumours (REC3)

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
| --- | --- |
| For patients with stage 1 rectal cancer (T1/2, N0, M0), cases should be discussed by a multidisciplinary team to determine optimal management with respect to risk of local recurrence, avoidance of a permanent stoma, and fitness for surgery. | **C** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
| --- | --- |
| For patients with T1 tumours local excision can be considered, provided that the tumour can be removed with clear margins and that the treating clinician counsels the patient that:<br>■ the risk of local recurrence increases as the T1 tumour stage progresses (from T1sm1 to T1sm2, or from T1sm2 to T1sm3)<br>■ radical resection may be required after histopathological review of the local excision specimen. | **D** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| For patients with T2 tumours, consider radical resection as the first option if they are fit for surgery. | **C** |

**Practice point**

When determining the optimal management strategy for each patient, the multidisciplinary team, treating clinician and patient should discuss the balance of risks (e.g. local recurrence) and benefits (e.g. avoidance of a permanent stoma), with consideration of the individual's fitness for surgery. The treating clinician should explain to the patient that local excision carries a lower risk of perioperative mortality and a lower permanent stoma rate, but is associated with a higher local recurrence rate, which increases as the depth of tumour invasion increases from T1sm1 to T1sm2 to T1sm3 to T2.

**Practice point**

Radical resection is recommended for patients with T1sm3 tumours, and for those with T2 tumours who are considered fit for radical surgery.

**Practice point**

The use of transanal endoscopic microsurgery or transanal minimally invasive surgery has not shown any significant advantages over transanal local excision, however it is essential to obtain clear resection margins and the choice of approach to local resection should be determined by the individual surgeon with this factor in mind.

**Practice point**

Application of radiotherapy before or after local excision of rectal cancer may reduce the risk of local recurrence. However, it may have an adverse effect on bowel function.

Back to top

## 2.2.38 Emergency management of malignant large bowel obstruction (COLMNG5)

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| In patients with acute obstruction due to left-sided colorectal cancer who are potentially curative, the use of stenting as a bridge to surgery is not recommended as standard treatment, due to the potential risk of tumour perforation and conversion of a curative case to a palliative case. | **D** |

| Consensus-based recommendation |
|---|
| The insertion of an intraluminal colonic stent can be considered in large bowel obstruction secondary to colorectal cancer as palliation to relieve large bowel obstruction in patients with incurable metastatic colorectal cancer. |

| Consensus-based recommendation |
|---|
| For patients with potentially curable left-sided obstructing colonic cancer who are considered to be at increased risk of post-operative mortality, stent placement may be considered as an alternative to emergency surgery. |

| Consensus-based recommendation |
|---|
| If stenting is considered, it should be discussed by the multidisciplinary team and implications for anti-VEGF systemic therapy should be assessed. |

Back to top

## 2.2.39 Peritonectomy with hyperthermic intraperitoneal chemotherapy (COLMNG3)

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| For patients with colorectal peritoneal metastases (either synchronous or metachronous to the primary), consider cytoreduction with perioperative | **D** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| intraperitoneal chemotherapy. Where this procedure is suitable, offer referral to a centre with the necessary expertise and infrastructure to perform this procedure. | |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| Cytoreduction surgery and perioperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy should only be offered after due consideration of, and discussion with the patient about, the potential treatment-related mortality and morbidity. | **D** |

**Practice point**

Patients with peritoneal carcinomatosis should be referred to a centre with expertise in the management of peritoneal surface malignancies and should be offered enrolment in a prospective trial, so as to allow further evaluation of cytoreduction and intraperitoneal chemotherapy.

**Practice point**

Prior to referral, treating clinicians should have an in-depth discussion with every patient about the potential survival advantage and potential treatment-related mortality or morbidity.

**Practice point**

All patients' cases should be discussed at a multidisciplinary team meeting with clinicians who have expertise in the management of peritoneal metastases, to review the relevant clinical information, previous histology (if applicable) and relevant imaging prior to offering patients cytoreductive surgery and intraperitoneal chemotherapy.

**Practice point**

All patients offered this procedure in established cytoreduction centres should be asked to give their consent for their patient records to be available for ongoing auditing of clinical outcomes. Patients should also be invited and encouraged to participate in research to enable collection of prospective longitudinal data for clinical and quality-of-life outcomes.

Back to top

### 2.2.40 Adjuvant therapy for colon cancer

### 2.2.41 Adjuvant therapy for stage III colon cancer

**Practice point**

Oxaliplatin in combination with a fluoropyrimidine is standard therapy for young patients (< 70 years) with stage III colon cancer.

**Practice point**

Capecitabine plus oxaliplatin (XELOX) can be considered as an alternative to FOLFOX for adjuvant treatment for patients with stage III colon cancer.

Back to top

### 2.2.42 Adjuvant therapy for elderly patients with stage III colon cancer

**Consensus-based recommendation**

Elderly patients (≥ 70 years) with stage III colon cancer who are fit for adjuvant chemotherapy should receive 6 months of a single-agent fluoropyrimidine (either 5FU or capecitabine).

**Practice point**

The addition of oxaliplatin to adjuvant fluoropyrimidine-based therapy in elderly patients (≥ 70 years) with stage III colon cancer did not improve survival outcomes.

**Practice point**

The combination of oxaliplatin and fluoropyrimidine-based therapy in the metastatic setting provides a similar benefit in elderly patients and younger patients. The discordance between the adjuvant and metastatic setting remain unexplained.

Back to top

### 2.2.43 Adjuvant therapy for stage II colon cancer

**Practice point**

The optimal approach to adjuvant therapy in stage II colon cancer remains uncertain. Adjuvant therapy can be considered in high-risk patients on a case-by-case basis.

Back to top

### 2.2.44 Irinotecan and targeted (biological) agents in adjuvant therapy for stage II and stage III colon cancer

**Practice point**

Neither Irinotecan nor a biological agent (either bevacizumab or cetuximab) should be used as adjuvant therapy for patients with stage II or III colon cancer.

Back to top

### 2.2.45 Neoadjuvant and adjuvant therapy for rectal cancer

### 2.2.46 Neoadjuvant therapy for rectal cancer

**Practice point**

Accurate determination of suitability for neoadjuvant therapy is based on careful preoperative location and staging assessments, and requires optimal quality of care from each aspect of the multidisciplinary team's assessment.

**Practice point**

'Early' cT3N0 rectal cancer (<1mm extension) is considered potentially suitable for surgery without neoadjuvant treatment in some international guidelines; but requires a high level of confidence in staging investigations and interpretation.

Back to top

### 2.2.47 Short-course radiation treatment

**Practice point**

Preoperative (neoadjuvant) radiation treatment (either short-course radiation treatment alone or long-course chemoradiation) is recommended for most patients with stage II and III rectal cancers, to reduce risk of local recurrence.

**Practice point**

Short-course radiation treatment should be considered if there are clear concerns regarding a patient's physical or psychosocial ability to tolerate long-course chemoradiation.

| Practice point |
| --- |
| MRI imaging, patient and clinical factors including comorbidity status should be carefully reviewed by the multidisciplinary team. If clinical T4 primary or nodal disease is seen, or tumour extends close to the mesorectal fascia, then long-course chemoradiation is preferable where possible. |

Back to top

## 2.2.48 Neoadjuvant long-course chemoradiation

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
| --- | --- |
| Consider neoadjuvant chemoradiation for patients with stage II-III rectal cancer where appropriate. | **C** |

| Practice point |
| --- |
| The current standard dose of neoadjuvant chemoradiation is 50–50.4 Gy (boost volume after 45 Gy) with either continuous infusional 5FU or capecitabine. |

| Practice point |
| --- |
| ‘Early’ cT3N0 rectal cancer (<1mm extension) is considered potentially suitable for surgery without neoadjuvant treatment in some international guidelines; but requires a high level of confidence in staging investigations and interpretation. |

Back to top

## 2.2.49 'Watch and wait' approach after clinical complete response to neoadjuvant chemoradiation (NEO1a)

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
| --- | --- |
| | **D** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| For patients with rectal cancer who have had a clinical complete response to neoadjuvant chemoradiation, and planned resection according to the standard recommendation is either not possible or the patient declines it, a 'watch and wait' approach can be considered, provided that:<br>■ the risks and benefits have been discussed with the multidisciplinary team and the patient<br>■ the patient is monitored closely for local recurrence<br>■ the patient is offered an appropriate surgical resection procedure if local recurrence is detected. | |

**Practice point**

A 'watch and wait' approach for patients with clinical complete response following chemoradiation is not considered standard practice. Clinicians and patients who select this option must be aware of increased risk of recurrence necessitating surgical intervention, and the importance of close follow-up.

**Practice point**

Follow-up and surveillance guidelines for a 'watch and wait' approach, in particular the frequency of follow-up tests, are not established. Testing may include serial CEA measurements, clinical examination, radiological surveillance, and sigmoidoscopy/colonoscopy.

Back to top

## 2.2.50 Neoadjuvant chemotherapy regimen

**Practice point**

Infusional fluoropyrimidine is preferable to bolus fluoropyrimidine for use in combination with radiation treatment for rectal cancer.

**Practice point**

Oral capecitabine or intravenous infusional 5FU are both acceptable agents to combine with radiation treatment for rectal cancer.

**Practice point**

If capecitabine is considered, patients should be carefully selected to minimise risk of non-compliance or overdosing.

**Practice point**

Neoadjuvant oxaliplatin with radiation treatment for rectal cancer is not currently regarded as standard therapy. Data for local control or survival benefit are mixed and oxaliplatin is associated with higher toxicity than fluoropyrimidine alone.

**Practice point**

The role of neoadjuvant systemic chemotherapy is still under investigation and is not regarded as routine.

**Practice point**

The roles of bevacizumab, panitumumab and cetuximab in the neoadjuvant setting for rectal cancer are uncertain, based on available evidence. These are not currently available for the treatment of non-metastatic rectal cancer, and they are not indicated in this setting.

Back to top

### 2.2.51 Optimal timing surgery after neoadjuvant therapy

**Practice point**

Available data for the optimal timing between completion of neoadjuvant C-RT and surgery indicate that surgery at least 6 weeks but by 12 weeks appears to be appropriate, until results from further studies become available.

**Practice point**

Waiting longer within the 6-12 week time frame to allow optimal pathological downstaging may be selected preferentially, for example for patients with T4 tumours, where maximal downstaging is desirable.

Back to top

### 2.2.52 Postoperative chemotherapy

**Practice point**

Strong evidence for benefit of adjuvant chemotherapy for rectal cancer is lacking, even in patients with node positive disease. In disease regarded as high risk, the uncertain benefits of adjuvant chemotherapy should be acknowledged.

**Practice point**

Patients with upper third rectal tumours (10–15cm from the anal verge) with either cN+ or pN+ findings, are possibly those who may derive any/most benefit from adjuvant chemotherapy.

**Practice point**

For patients with pathological stage II/III rectal cancer, adjuvant oxaliplatin-based chemotherapy is associated with increased toxicities. Benefits, if any, may be confined to those with stage III disease; but not all data concur.

**Practice point**

The uncertain benefits of oxaliplatin as adjuvant therapy in rectal cancer should be acknowledged.

**Practice point**

There are no randomised trials for adjuvant chemotherapy for patients with pathological complete response after chemoradiation followed by surgery. Available evidence suggests that these patients have a very good prognosis and any absolute benefits are likely to be small.

Back to top

### 2.2.53 Postoperative radiation treatment

**Practice point**

Patients with higher risk disease post-operatively who did not receive neoadjuvant treatment should be considered for adjuvant pelvic radiotherapy concurrent with 5 fluorouracil chemotherapy.

Back to top

### 2.2.54 Management of resectable locally recurrent disease and metastatic disease

### 2.2.55 Investigation of recurrent cancer

**Practice point**

Initial assessment of patients with suspected local or systematic recurrence should include serum CEA, contrast CT scan of the chest, abdomen and pelvis (unless contraindicated) and PET.

**Practice point**

Depending on the type of recurrence, additional investigations are likely to be necessary. A high-quality pelvic MRI is recommended for patients with locally recurrent rectal cancer. Additional local investigations may also need to be considered depending on patient and disease factors such as CT or MRA if mesenteric or iliac vessel involvement is suspected, or cystoscopy if bladder involvement is suspected.

**Practice point**

If possible, local recurrence should be histologically confirmed before surgery. If this is not possible because of the extraluminal location of the disease, a transvaginal biopsy may be feasible where the recurrence abuts the vagina. Alternatively, CT-guided percutaneous biopsies can be considered after assessing the need for biopsy at a multidisciplinary team meeting.

**Practice point**

In patients with liver metastases, an MRI of the liver is usually also necessary if surgery is being considered. The use of disodium gadoxetate (*Primovist*) contrast can increase the sensitivity and specificity of MRI for detecting liver metastases. Colonoscopy may be needed if further resection is planned.

**Practice point**

In patients with suspected lung metastases, CT chest and PET are usually sufficient to confirm diagnosis. In patients where there is diagnostic uncertainty or concerns for mediastinal nodal involvement, an endobronchial ultrasound or bronchoscopy may be needed.

**Practice point**

All patients with locally recurrent disease or metastatic disease should be discussed in a multidisciplinary team meeting taking into consideration patient's previous surgical history, current imaging, fitness and desire for further treatment.

Back to top

## 2.2.56 Management of locally recurrent resectable colorectal cancer

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| For patients with isolated local recurrence of rectal cancer, consider referral to a centre with the necessary expertise to perform curative surgery (also known as pelvic exenteration). | **D** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| Re-operative surgery for locally recurrent rectal cancer should only be offered after due consideration of, and discussion with the patient about, the potential survival advantage, quality-of-life outcomes, and potential treatment-related morbidity. | **D** |

**Consensus-based recommendation**

Patients who have not previously received radiotherapy should be considered for neoadjuvant chemoradiation prior to re-operative surgery.

**Practice point**

Patients with locally recurrent colorectal cancer should be referred to a centre with the expertise in the management of these cancers.

**Practice point**

All patients with locally recurrent colorectal cancer should be discussed at a multi-disciplinary team meeting with clinicians who have the expertise in the management of such malignancies. These meetings should review the patient’s previous histology and relevant imaging prior to making an appropriate clinical recommendation.

**Practice point**

Re-operative surgery for locally recurrent colorectal cancer can be associated with significant morbidity. As such, all re-resections should only be offered when cure is considered possible.

| Practice point |
| --- |
| The key factor in achieving long-term survival in patients with locally recurrent colorectal cancer is a complete resection with clear resection margins (R0 margins), which is an important consideration when making clinical decision about disease resectability. |

Back to top

## 2.2.57 Management of resectable metastatic colorectal cancer (MNG14)

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
| --- | --- |
| In patients with resectable liver metastases, liver resection should be offered, as this improves overall and progression free survival. | **D** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
| --- | --- |
| Patients referred for liver resection should be counselled about the potential complications associated with liver resection in comparison with non-curative treatments. | **D** |

| Consensus-based recommendation |
| --- |
| Patients at higher risk of recurrence should receive adjuvant therapy following liver resection, so as to reduce the likelihood of further local or systemic recurrences. |

| Consensus-based recommendation |
| --- |
| For patients with liver metastases that are considered ‘borderline’ resectable, neoadjuvant chemotherapy should be considered and the case should be discussed by a multidisciplinary team that includes an experienced liver surgeon. |

**Consensus-based recommendation**

In patients with pulmonary metastases, pulmonary resection improves locoregional control and may improve survival.

**Consensus-based recommendation**

Systemic adjuvant chemotherapy following complete resection of pulmonary metastases may reduce the likelihood of further systemic or local recurrences.

**Consensus-based recommendation**

In patients with liver and lung metastases, curative treatment may still be feasible. Combined or staged resection of the metastases may be possible provided both the liver and lung metastases can be completely resected and after taking into account the anatomic as well as functional considerations of the remnant liver and lung. Furthermore, lung resection may be considered in patients who have previously undergone a liver resection and vice versa. The use of neoadjuvant chemotherapy with subsequent restaging may also be considered in patients with synchronous liver and lung metastases prior to offering definitive resection.

**Consensus-based recommendation**

In patients with other isolated metastases, metasectomy may be appropriate in a well-informed patient after appropriate investigations and discussion in a multi-disciplinary team meeting.

**Practice point**

Patients with liver metastases should be referred to a centre with expertise in the management of these malignancies, for consideration of liver resection, if appropriate.

**Practice point**

Following curative treatment of liver metastases, patients need ongoing regular follow-up so as to permit early detection of further recurrences that may be amendable to further therapy.

Back to top

## 2.2.58 Management of non-resectable locally recurrent disease and metastatic disease

## 2.2.59 Liver-directed therapies for patients with incurable metastatic colorectal cancer

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| For patients with non-resectable liver metastases of colorectal cancer, liver-directed therapies (selective internal radiation treatment, radiofrequency ablation, hepatic arterial infusion of chemotherapy agents or transarterial chemoembolisation) can be considered in centres with expertise in the specific technique after multidisciplinary team discussion, or in the context of a clinical trial. | **D** |

| Consensus-based recommendation |
|---|
| In patients with non-resectable liver metastases only (or oligometastatic disease) liver directed techniques can be considered by the MDT based on local experience, patient preference and tumour characteristics. Treating clinicians should have an in-depth discussion with every patient regarding technical complexity, potential outcomes and complications in addition to other therapies available for that patient. |

| Practice point |
|---|
| All patients with metastatic colorectal cancer should be discussed at a multidisciplinary team meeting with clinicians who have expertise in management of metastatic colorectal cancer. |

| Practice point |
|---|
| For patients who could be considered surgical candidates if their metastases were smaller, we suggest initial systemic chemotherapy followed by re-evaluation for surgery. |

**Practice point**

Wherever possible, patients considering liver-directed therapies should be enrolled into clinical trials examining these treatments in comparison to standard therapies.

**Practice point**

SIRT in combination with systemic chemotherapy can be used to prolong the time to liver progression but not improve colorectal cancer survival with most evidence currently in the chemo-refractory patients. At present there is insufficient data to recommend SIRT in the first line setting for patients with non-resectable mCRC.

Back to top

## 2.2.60 Management of synchronous primary colorectal cancer with unresectable metastatic disease

**Practice point**

Routine palliative resection of asymptomatic synchronous primary lesion in patients with unresectable metastatic colorectal cancer remains controversial and there are no prospective randomised studies to guide treatment. Recruitment into such trials has been difficult.

**Practice point**

All patients with an asymptomatic primary and unresectable metastatic colorectal cancer should be discussed in a multi-disciplinary team meeting and the risks and benefits of a palliative resection for an individual patient be carefully discussed bearing in mind the volume of metastatic disease, degree of stenosis/risk of impending obstruction, comorbidities and patient preferences.

**Practice point**

Patients with an asymptomatic primary and good medium to long term disease control after initial systemic therapy could be re-evaluated for potential resection of both the primary tumour and metastases in the absence of widespread disease progression.

**Practice point**

For patients with a symptomatic primary tumour (obstruction, bleeding or perforation) and synchronous metastatic disease, resection of the primary tumour should be considered before initiation of systemic therapy. For candidates not suitable for primary tumour resection other palliative options to control symptoms including surgical bypass, radiotherapy, stents, laser ablation in addition to systemic treatment should be considered.

**Practice point**

For patients with unresectable metastatic rectal cancer with symptomatic primary tumour, irradiation (+/- chemotherapy) of the primary tumour should be considered after multidisciplinary discussion in order to obtain optimal symptom control and reduce patient morbidity.

Back to top

## 2.2.61 The role of systemic therapies in non-resectable metastatic disease

## 2.2.62 Molecular pathology and biomarkers – implications for systemic therapy

**Practice point**

RAS testing should be carried out on all patients at the time of diagnosis of metastatic colorectal cancer.

**Practice point**

RAS mutational status is a negative predictive biomarker for therapeutic choices involving EGFR antibody therapies in metastatic colorectal cancer.

**Practice point**

Cetuximab and panitumumab should only be considered for the treatment of patients with RAS wild-type metastatic colorectal cancer.

**Practice point**

The BRAF mutation status should ideally be performed at the time of diagnosis of metastatic colorectal cancer, as this represents a distinct biologic subtype.

**Practice point**

The presence of a BRAF mutation in metastatic colorectal cancer is considered a poor prognostic marker.

**Practice point**

BRAF mutation status in combination with testing for DNA mismatch repair deficiency can assist in the identification of a germline versus somatic cause of DNA mismatch repair deficiency.

**Practice point**

The preponderance of the available evidence is that response to EGFR-targeted agents is less likely in patients whose tumours harbour a BRAF mutation.

**Practice point**

Metastatic colorectal cancer patients with a BRAF mutation should be considered for a clinical trial where available or triplet chemotherapy if suitable.

**Practice point**

MSI testing in the metastatic setting can be useful to help identify patients who require referral for further genetic testing and counselling.

**Practice point**

BRAF V600 mutational analysis should be done in conjunction with MSI testing for prognostic stratification.

**Practice point**

MSI testing may be a predictive marker for the use of immune checkpoint inhibitors in the treatment of patients with metastatic colorectal cancer.

**Practice point**

Emerging biomarkers are not recommended for routine patient management outside of the clinical trial setting.

**Practice point**

The location of the primary tumour is a strong prognostic factor. Patients with left sided primary tumours have a favourable outcome compared with those with right sided tumours regardless of treatment type received.

**Practice point**

Left sided colorectal cancer should be considered for initial doublet chemotherapy and anti-EGFR therapy where appropriate. Alternate options remain appropriate based on patient preference and comorbidity.

**Practice point**

Right sided colorectal cancer should be considered for initial doublet chemotherapy plus or minus anti-VEGF. There may be a role for initial chemotherapy with anti-EGFR in right sided colon cancer where the aim of treatment is down staging for resection given the improved response with anti-EGFR. However, this should be done with caution given the lack of benefit on overall survival or progression free survival.

**Practice point**

Sequential use of all available therapies should continue to be utilised in patients with colorectal cancer regardless of the side of the primary tumour, provided it is appropriate for the individual patient.

**Practice point**

Future trials for colon cancer should stratify patients by 'sidedness,' to better understand this issue.

Back to top

## 2.2.63 Systemic chemotherapy treatment options for first-line treatment

**Practice point**

For patients who are able to tolerate it, combination chemotherapy with a doublet (FOLFOX, XELOX [CAPOX], or FOLFIRI) rather than a single agent sequential therapy for initial treatment of metastatic colorectal cancer, is preferred.

**Practice point**

Patients with potentially resectable metastatic disease should be discussed at a multidisciplinary meeting, and treatment plans should consider patient comorbidity and suitability for an aggressive treatment strategy

**Practice point**

Monotherapy is not appropriate and combination chemotherapy with a doublet (FOLFOX, XELOX [CAPOX], or FOLRIR) should be used where the aim of therapy is significant cytoreduction. For those with RAS wild-type tumours, an anti-EGFR antibody in conjunction with combination chemotherapy can be considered especially in those with left sided primaries.

**Practice point**

For those with good performance status and without significant comorbidities intensive triplet chemotherapy with FOLFIRINOX can be considered.

**Practice point**

Patient comorbidities, ECOG performance status, and location and burden of metastatic disease should be considered in treatment decisions.

**Practice point**

For patients who are medically unfit with poor performance status, a supportive care approach may be appropriate.

**Practice point**

In patients with poor performance status or significant comorbidities palliative treatment with single agent fluoropyrimidine (with or without bevacizumab) may be preferred to doublet chemotherapy. Fluoropyrimidine-based therapy alone (or in combination with bevacizumab) can be considered in patients with low-volume unresectable disease.

Back to top

## 2.2.64 Role of biological agents in first-line treatment of metastatic colorectal cancer

**Practice point**

Biological agents targeting EGFR or VEGF in combination with chemotherapy are recommended in the first-line treatment of most patients unless contraindicated.

**Practice point**

EGFR antibodies should:

- be used in patients with RAS wild-type tumours
- be used in combination with FOLFIRI or FOLFOX
- not be combined with capecitabine-based and bolus 5FU-based regimen.

**Practice point**

Patients with left sided colorectal cancer should be considered for initial doublet chemotherapy and anti-EGFR therapy where appropriate. Alternate options remain appropriate based on patient preference and comorbidity.See left vs. right section

**Practice point**

EGFR antibodies may be less efficacious in patients with BRAF mutations.

**Practice point**

VEGF antibody (bevacizumab):

- should be used in combination with cytotoxic doublets including FOLFOX, XELOX and FOLFIRI
- can be used in combination with the triplet cytotoxic regimen FOLFOXIRI in select fit patients where tumour shrinkage is the goal, and potentially in fit patients with a BRAF mutation
- can be used in combination with fluoropyrimidine monotherapy in less fit patients unlikely to be suitable for a doublet cytotoxic regimen.

**Practice point**

Patients with right sided colorectal cancer should be considered for initial doublet chemotherapy plus or minus anti-VEGF. See left vs. right section

Back to top

## 2.2.65 Role of biological agents in first-line treatment of metastatic colorectal cancer

**Practice point**

Biological agents targeting EGFR or VEGF in combination with chemotherapy are recommended in the first-line treatment of most patients unless contraindicated.

**Practice point**

EGFR antibodies should:

- be used in patients with RAS wild-type tumours
- be used in combination with FOLFIRI or FOLFOX
- not be combined with capecitabine-based and bolus 5FU-based regimen.

**Practice point**

Patients with left sided colorectal cancer should be considered for initial doublet chemotherapy and anti-EGFR therapy where appropriate. Alternate options remain appropriate based on patient preference and comorbidity.See left vs. right section

**Practice point**

EGFR antibodies may be less efficacious in patients with BRAF mutations.

**Practice point**

VEGF antibody (bevacizumab):

- should be used in combination with cytotoxic doublets including FOLFOX, XELOX and FOLFIRI
- can be used in combination with the triplet cytotoxic regimen FOLFOXIRI in select fit patients where tumour shrinkage is the goal, and potentially in fit patients with a BRAF mutation
- can be used in combination with fluoropyrimidine monotherapy in less fit patients unlikely to be suitable for a doublet cytotoxic regimen.

**Practice point**

Patients with right sided colorectal cancer should be considered for initial doublet chemotherapy plus or minus anti-VEGF. See left vs. right section

Back to top

## 2.2.66 Subsequent treatment and the continuum-of-care model

**Practice point**

Individualisation and discussion with the patient is essential when planning treatment breaks and or de-escalation/maintenance schedules.

**Practice point**

When the combination of leucovorin calcium (folinic acid), 5-fluorouracil (5FU) and oxaliplatin (FOLFOX), with or without bevacizumab, is used for first-line therapy, the available data suggest that it is reasonable to discontinue oxaliplatin temporarily while maintaining a fluoropyrimidine with or without bevacizumab.

**Practice point**

When the combination of folinic acid, 5FU and irinotecan hydrochloride (FOLFIRI), with or without bevacizumab, is used for first- line therapy, patients can continue on induction therapy for as long as tumour shrinkage continues and the treatment is tolerable.

**Practice point**

For patients receiving initial therapy with folinic acid, 5FU, oxaliplatin and irinotecan hydrochloride (FOLFOXIRI), with or without bevacizumab, a fluoropyrimidine plus bevacizumab may be considered as maintenance therapy (as was done in the pivotal trials examining FOLFOXIRI).

**Practice point**

For patients receiving initial therapy with a single-agent fluoropyrimidine (plus bevacizumab), induction therapy should be maintained.

**Practice point**

Initial induction therapy or a second-line therapy should be reintroduced at radiological or first signs of symptomatic progression.

**Practice point**

If a second-line therapy is chosen, re introduction of the initial induction treatment should be a part of the entire treatment strategy as long as no relevant residual toxicity is present.

Back to top

## 2.2.67 Systemic options for second-line treatment

**Practice point**

Patients who did not receive bevacizumab as part of first-line therapy should be considered for bevacizumab in second-line therapy, in combination with a second-line cytotoxic regimen.

**Practice point**

Patients who received bevacizumab as part of the first-line regimen and have RAS wild-type (BRAF wild-type) metastatic colorectal cancer should be considered for combination EGFR monoclonal antibodies with FOLFIRI/irinotecan.

**Practice point**

Patients who received a first-line oxaliplatin-containing regimen should be switched to an irinotecan-containing regimen, and vice versa.

**Practice point**

Patients who experience disease progression during first-line 5FU monotherapy should be offered an irinotecan or oxaliplatin-containing regimen if they have adequate performance status.

Back to top

## 2.2.68 Systemic options for third-line treatment

**Practice point**

Patients with mCRC considering treatment in the third-line setting have limited therapeutic options and typically have reduced quality of life; therefore physicians must carefully balance any efficacy benefit associated with therapy with its toxicity profile.

**Practice point**

Cetuximab or panitumumab treatment should be considered in patients with RAS wild-type and BRAF wild-type metastatic colorectal cancer not previously treated with these agents, taking into account the following:

- Cetuximab and Panitumumab are equally effective as single agents.
- Cetuximab in combination with irinotecan is more active than cetuximab alone in patients refractory to irinotecan with adequate performance status to receive combination therapy.

**Practice point**

If available, regorafenib or trifluridine/tipiracil can be considered for patients with metastatic colorectal cancer refractory to all standard available therapies.

**Practice point**

Patients receiving third-line therapy should be offered participation in clinical trials, wherever available.

**Practice point**

Symptom burden is often high in patients with mCRC especially as the disease progresses. Early palliative care intervention should be considered for all patients with mCRC as they can improve the quality of life of patients with cancer.

## 2.2.69 Follow-up after curative resection for colorectal cancer

## 2.2.70 Rationale for follow-up

**Practice point**

As there are no reliable indicators of an individual's risk of synchronous or metachronous lesions, nor of treatable recurrence, all patients who have undergone curative surgery should be offered follow-up if they are fit for further intervention should disease be detected.

**Practice point**

Patients who are unfit for further surgery or who have advanced disease require appropriate follow-up directed at psychological support and symptom relief.

Back to top

## 2.2.71 Optimal follow-up surveillance protocol

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| Intensive follow-up after curative surgery for colorectal cancer should include CEA and CT scan, with the aim of early detection of recurrence or residual disease where there is the possibility for curative resection.<br><br>PET/CT scan can be used as an effective adjunct for detection of recurrence, especially when the CEA and/or CT scans are suggestive of recurrence. | **D** |

**Practice point**

These recommendations apply only to asymptomatic patients. All patients who develop symptoms should be investigated rigorously.

**Practice point**

Colonoscopy should be performed at 12 months after surgery to exclude missed lesions. If the initial colonoscopy was incomplete then a colonoscopy should be performed at the latest 6 months after surgery. If the colonoscopy is normal, refer to the Clinical Practice Guidelines for Surveillance Colonoscopy for subsequent colonoscopies.

**Practice point**

Intensive follow-up for colorectal cancer should be considered for patients who have had potentially curable disease, although optimal modality and frequency are yet to be firmly established.

**Practice point**

Intensive follow-up can detect recurrences earlier, thus surgical resection for curative intent is possible. However, this is not associated with improved survival.

**Practice point**

CEA and CT scans are readily accessible and relatively sensitive investigations.

Back to top

### 2.2.72 Health professionals performing follow-up and suggested follow-up schedule

**Practice point**

Follow-up can be delivered as a combination of visits to the surgeon or associated gasteroenterologist, with ongoing care by the GP and clinical nurse consultant.

Back to top

### 2.2.73 Pyschosocial care

### 2.2.74 Psychosocial care

**Practice point**

Patients with colorectal cancer should be screened for psychological distress at diagnosis and key points in their disease trajectory.

**Practice point**

Psychological interventions should be a component of colorectal cancer care, as they can improve the quality of life for patients with cancer.

**Practice point**

The use of decision aids should be considered for preference-sensitive decisions about treatment for colorectal cancer.

Back to top

Back to top

1. ↑ National Health and Medical Research Council. *NHMRC levels of evidence and grades for recommendations for guideline developers.* Canberra: National Health and Medical Research Council; 2009 Available from: https://www.nhmrc.gov.au/_files_nhmrc/file/guidelines/developers/nhmrc_levels_grades_evidence_120423.pdf.

# 3 Plain-language summary

**Contents**



## 3.1 Introduction

Colorectal cancer (also called bowel cancer) means cancer in the large bowel (colon) or in the section at the end of the bowel (rectum). It starts in the inner lining of the bowel, and typically begins as growths on the inside of the bowel (polyps), which can become cancerous and spread if they are not detected and removed.

Bowel cancer is the second most common cancer diagnosed in both men and women. Australia has one of the highest rates of bowel cancer in the world. Approximately 9% of cancer deaths in Australia are due to bowel cancer. Bowel cancer is more common in people aged over 50 years than in younger adults. The change of developing bowel cancer before age 85 is about one in 11 for men and one in 15 for women.

Back to top

## 3.2 What increases a person's risk of bowel cancer?

The risk of bowel cancer is increased by smoking, eating red meat (especially when cooked until blackened), eating processed meats (e.g. smoked, cured, salted or preserved meats), drinking alcohol, and being overweight or obese. The risk is reduced by regular physical activity and eating plenty of foods that contain fibre.

Bowel cancer runs in some families due to inherited gene mutations. Some of these cause specific conditions, such as Lynch syndrome, familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP), and attenuated familial adenomatous polyposis. Doctors use a system of three categories to work out an individual's level of risk. A person's risk category depends on how many close relatives have bowel cancer and their age at diagnosis. Someone with several close relatives diagnosed with bowel cancer before age 55 has much higher risk than someone with no close relatives with bowel cancer.

Back to top

## 3.3 How is bowel cancer diagnosed?

Signs and symptoms of bowel cancer include bleeding from the rectum, abdominal pain, change in bowel habit, constipation, indigestion, weight less, or having a low number of red blood cells (anaemia). Most people with symptoms of bowel cancer go to their general practitioner (GP) first. If a GP thinks a person's symptoms could be due to bowel cancer, they will usually arrange blood tests and a faecal occult blood test (FOBT), which tests a small piece of faeces for invisible traces of blood. The FOBT test is also recommended for people without symptoms (see How can we reduce bowel cancer in Australia?).

The next step is to have a colonoscopy, where a video camera on a tube is inserted through the anus to look at the inside of the bowel. This should happen within 120 days of first seeing a doctor about symptoms or having a positive FOBT result (even if there are no symptoms). For someone from a family with a high risk of bowel cancer, colonoscopy should happen as soon as possible.

If a colonoscopy shows that a person could have bowel cancer, they may need to have imaging (such as bowel scans), a surgical operation, or both. During surgery, a piece of the cancer (biopsy) is taken to be tested by a pathologist.

Sometimes the first sign of bowel cancer is sudden blockage of the bowel. When this happens, bowel cancer is diagnosed by computed tomography (CT scan) and an emergency operation.

After bowel cancer is diagnosed, doctors work out what stage it is at (how far it has spread). This is done by a combination of colonoscopy, scans such as CT, positron emission tomography (PET scan), and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), and pathology testing of the cancer sample. Pathology testing includes looking at the cancer under a microscope and testing for genetic changes in the cancer cells, which can help choose the best treatment for the person. The surgeon and the pathologist work closely together to get an accurate understanding of the individual's cancer.

There are several different systems for recording cancer stage. All these systems use codes based on letters and numbers, to indicate how far the cancer has spread through different tissues and organs, and how much cancer is still in the body after surgery. Australian doctors use a combination of these systems.

Being diagnosed with bowel cancer can be stressful and frightening. Doctors should check whether people are distressed and provide psychological treatment, if needed.

Back to top

## 3.4 How can we reduce bowel cancer in Australia?

Testing healthy people for early signs of bowel cancer (screening) can reduce the number of deaths due to bowel cancer. Australia has a National Bowel Cancer Screening Program, which involves mailing FOBT kits to people in the target age groups. The person collects a sample at home and sends it to a testing centre. If the result of the test is positive, they are contacted to have more tests. In Australia, the strategy with the best balance of effectiveness, avoiding unnecessary tests, and value for money, would be to offer a FOBT every 2 years to people aged 50–74 who do not have symptoms of bowel cancer and are not from a high-risk family.

For people aged 50–70 years with average risk of bowel cancer (people with no symptoms and not from a high-risk family), a doctor may also recommend taking a low dose of aspirin for at least 2.5 years. Whether or not a person should take aspirin depends on their general health, and whether they have another condition that could be made worse by aspirin (e.g. allergy to aspirin, stomach ulcers, bleeding problems or kidney problems).

People from families with bowel cancer need extra testing to find bowel cancer early. This includes having a colonoscopy every 5 years. The age at which a person should start regular bowel check-ups depends on their risk category. They may also be advised to start taking low-dose aspirin regularly from age 25.

Back to top

## 3.5 How is bowel cancer treated?

Treatments include surgery, chemotherapy and radiation treatment.

### 3.5.1 Surgery

Most people with bowel cancer have an operation to remove as much of the cancer as possible. This may happen straight after getting the diagnosis, or after taking chemotherapy for a few months first (for example, if the cancer is in the rectum, or if the cancer has already spread beyond the lining of the bowel). Whether an operation is best for the person, and the type of operation, depends on how big the cancer is and how far it has spread, their general health, and their own wishes.

Surgery can either be a traditional operation through a long incision in the abdomen, or by ‘keyhole surgery’ (laparoscopy). Laparoscopy should only be done in hospitals with special expertise in this technique and by surgeons with the right training and skill.

Before the operation, the person should have a medical check-up, including blood tests, so that any common problems such as anaemia, iron deficiency or malnutrition can be treated before the operation. Hospitals should prevent dangerous blood clots in people having surgery for bowel cancer by using compression stockings, machines to keep the blood flowing to the legs (sequential compression devices), and blood-thinners such as low molecular-weight heparin. Prevention may need to be continued for 4 weeks after surgery.

Infections in the surgical wound are common after bowel cancer surgery. Some hospitals try to reduce the risk of infection by using laxatives to empty the bowel before surgery (called mechanical bowel preparation). This is not as effective as was once thought, and is not necessary. However, some surgeons still prefer patients to have mechanical bowel preparation before the operation.

Sometimes a part of the bowel needs to be removed, which means the person can no longer pass bowel motions (faeces) through their rectum and anus. When this happens, the surgeon makes a new opening (stoma) in the abdominal wall, which can be attached to a colostomy bag to collect faeces instead of going to the toilet the normal way. Anyone who needs (or might need) a stoma should see a stomal therapist before their operation, and a should be given education and support afterwards to take care of their stoma.

Back to top

## 3.5.2 Chemotherapy and radiation treatment

Chemotherapy uses drugs that kill cancer cells, in the main cancer but also any cancer cells that have spread through the body, including cancer cells growing in the liver or lungs. There are many different chemotherapy drugs and several different standard combinations. The best combination for a person with bowel cancer depends on how far the cancer has spread, the type of cancer, their age, and their general health.

Radiation uses X-rays to kill cancer cells. It is a standard treatment for rectal cancer, and is usually done before surgery.

When chemotherapy or radiation treatment is given before surgery that will aim to cure the cancer, it is called neoadjuvant therapy. When these treatments are given after surgery, they are called adjuvant treatment.

Chemotherapy after surgery is the standard treatment for people with colon cancer that has spread beyond the bowel, including to the lymph nodes. For people with colon cancer that has not spread to the lymph nodes, it is unclear whether chemotherapy after surgery improves outlook.

For people with rectal cancer, both chemotherapy and radiation are common treatments. Chemotherapy is often given alongside radiation treatment to boost the effect of the radiation, and both treatments are repeated several times. The combination of chemotherapy and radiation (chemoradiation) is recommended before surgery for most people with rectal cancer, to reduce the risk of the cancer returning. Surgery should be planned for 6–12 weeks after chemoradiation. Radiation treatment might be given on its own if the person is too unwell to cope with the combination of chemotherapy and radiation. If rectal cancer responds well to chemoradiation, the person has a very good outlook for survival. However, it is unclear whether they are completely cured or whether the cancer will return.

Surgery for rectal cancer causes more discomfort and disability than surgery for colon cancer. Some people who have a good response to chemoradiation choose not to go ahead with surgery, and instead opt to 'watch and wait'. If someone chooses this option, their doctor should clearly explain the risks, and should arrange regular check-ups to see if the cancer has returned. If the cancer grows back, the person should be offered surgery.

Chemotherapy after surgery for rectal cancer aims to kill any remaining cancer cells that are invisible to the surgeon but could spread afterwards. However, the benefits are not proven. Chemoradiation after surgery should be considered if a person has a high risk of rectal cancer returning, and they did not have chemoradiation before their surgery.

Back to top

## 3.6 Follow-up after surgery

After surgery for bowel cancer, there is a chance that the cancer could come back. As surgery techniques get better and better, recurrence rates are getting lower.

Recurring bowel cancer may or may not cause symptoms. The purpose of follow-up after surgery is to find new or regrowing cancers early so they can be treated. Check-ups should be regular (e.g. every 3–6 months for the first year after surgery, then every 6 months for 2 years, then once a year for 5 years). Surgeons, gastroenterologists, GPs and nurses can work together to provide thorough check-ups.

Tests should include colonoscopy 6 months after surgery, blood tests to measure levels of carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) (e.g. at each visit), a CT scan (e.g. every year), and PET scans if CEA levels start to rise.

## 3.7 What happens if bowel cancer returns or spreads?

If cancer comes back after surgery, it can be confined to the bowel or bowel area, or it could be discovered after it has already spread (metastasised) throughout the body through the blood or lymph vessels. The liver and lungs are the most common places to find these bowel cancer growths (metastases).

If doctors suspect that bowel cancer has recurred, they should arrange a CEA test, CT scan of the chest, abdomen and pelvis, and PET-CT of the colon. Other tests, such as MRI, may also be needed.

If rectal cancer returns and is confined to the area around the rectum, the person will have the best chance of long-term survival if they have surgery to completely remove the cancer (pelvic exenteration), at a hospital that has the skills to do this operation. Chemoradiation before surgery should also be considered. The risks and benefits should be carefully explained to the person before choosing surgery.

If bowel cancer has spread to the liver or lungs, there is still a chance that it could be treated. Liver surgery to remove as much cancer as possible is the best option to improve the person's chance of survival. If possible, chemotherapy should be given after liver surgery. If surgery is not possible, other treatments are available to kill colon cancer cells in the liver. These include using radiation inside the liver, using chemotherapy and blocking blood vessels in the liver, using heat to kill cancer cells, injecting chemotherapy drugs into the liver artery, and special radiation treatment techniques. These techniques are not proven, but may be offered in some hospitals. There is less information about treatments for bowel cancer that has spread to other organs.

For people with bowel cancer that is not curable by surgery, treatment aims to prolong survival and improve quality of life. Treatment can include surgery to reduce the size of the cancer and prevent other problems like bleeding, chemotherapy, radiation treatment, or a combination of these. Many different medicines and chemotherapy combinations are used to treat people with bowel cancer that has spread throughout the body (metastatic bowel cancer). The best way to combine all the available drugs is not yet known. Genetic mutations in the cancer affect which chemotherapy drugs will work best.

Back to top

# 4 Colorectal cancer in Australia

**Contents**

## 4.1 Introduction

In Australia, colorectal cancer is a major cause of morbidity and mortality. In 2014, it was estimated to be the second most commonly diagnosed cancer in Australia (excluding non-melanoma skin cancer) and the second most common cause of cancer mortality (after lung cancer), representing 9% of all deaths from cancer.[1] The risk of being diagnosed with colorectal cancer by the age of 85 years is one in 11 for males and one in 15 for females.[2]

Australia has one of the highest rates of colorectal cancer in the world.[3] The high rates of colorectal cancer in Australia and other developed Western countries are likely to be due in large part to the increased prevalence of established environmental risk factors, including physical inactivity and obesity,[4] smoking,[5] heavy alcohol consumption,[6] and a diet high in red/processed meats[7] and low in fibre.[8]

Back to top

## 4.2 Incidence and mortality

### 4.2.1 Population age-standardised rates

Table 1.1 shows the Australian incidence and mortality rates for colorectal cancer in comparison with other countries for the period up to and including 2012.[3]

A total of 14,958 new cases of colorectal cancer were diagnosed in Australia in 2012 (8239 males and 6718 females). In comparison, there were 6985 new cases diagnosed in 1982.[2]

The age-standardised incidence rate for colorectal cancer increased from 58 per 100,000 persons in 1982 to 59 cases per 100,000 persons in 2012 (70 for males and 50 for females).[2]

The introduction of the National Bowel Cancer Screening Program (NBCSP) was expected to result in short-term increases in incidence rates due to the detection of previously undetected cancers in those participating in screening for the first time.[9] However, in the long-term it is expected that the incidence of colorectal cancer in those age groups eligible for population screening will begin to fall, as pre-cancerous lesions are detected and treated before they develop into cancer. This trend has been observed in cervical cancer incidence following the introduction of the National Cervical Screening Program.[10]

In 2013, 4162 deaths from colorectal cancer in Australia (2299 males and 1863 females) were recorded.[i,2] In comparison, there were 2500 deaths recorded in 1968.[2]

The age-standardised mortality rate for colorectal cancer decreased from 31 deaths per 100,000 persons in 1968 to 16 deaths per 100,000 in 2013 (19 for males and 13 for females).[2]

Although the age-standardised incidence rate for colorectal cancer in Australia is amongst the highest in the world, it has barely increased in 30 years, and in comparison with other developed Western countries the proportion of diagnosed patients dying from the disease is low.

[i] Numbers recorded by the Australian Bureau of Statistics (ABS) based on death certificates. These figures probably significantly underestimate the true number of deaths due to colorectal cancer because the coding methods used in various jurisdiction can result in such deaths being attributed to nonspecific cancers such as 'malignant neoplasms of other and unspecified digestive organs' or 'cancers of unknown primary site'.

### 4.2.1.1 Table 1.1 Incidence and mortality rates for colorectal cancer, selected countries, 2012

| Country | Incidence [(a)] (ASRW) | Mortality [(b)] (ASRW) |
|---|---|---|
| Australia | 38.4 | 9.0 |
| New Zealand | 37.3 | 15.1 |
| Canada | 35.1 | 10.8 |
| UK | 30.2 | 10.7 |
| USA | 25.0 | 9.2 |

ASRW: age-standardised rate (standardised to World Standard Population for purpose of international comparison)
(a) Incidence is the number of new cases of colorectal cancer per 100,000 people, age-standardised to the World Standard Population;
(b) Mortality is the number of deaths from colorectal cancer per 100,000 people, age-standardised to the World Standard Population.
Source: GLOBOCAN (2012)[3]

Back to top

### 4.2.2 Age and sex

The trend in age-specific incidence rates for colorectal cancer in 2012 was similar to that of previous years, with incidence rates rising sharply for those aged 50 years and over, and remaining relatively low for those under 45 years (Figure 1.1).[2] People aged 80 years and over demonstrated the highest incidence rates, with more than 400 newly diagnosed cases per 100,000 population.

#### 4.2.2.1 Figure 1.1 Age-specific incidence rates for colorectal cancer, Australia, 2012

Source: Australian Institute of Health and Welfare (2016).[2] The incidence (or mortality) rate has been age-standardised to the Australian population (ASR) at 30 June 2001.

Figure 1.2 shows the time trends in incidence of colorectal cancer in Australian men and women.[2] Between 2000 and 2012, the age-standardised incidence rates for colorectal cancer demonstrated a gradual decline in both males (1% per year) and females (0.6% per year). However, over the same period the number of newly diagnosed cases of colorectal cancer increased by 20% in males, and 22% in females, due to the increasing size and ageing of the Australian population.[2]

#### 4.2.2.2 Figure 1.2 Age-standardised incidence rates for colorectal cancer, Australia, 1982–2012

Source: Australian Institute of Health and Welfare (2016).[2] The incidence (or mortality) rate has been age-standardised to the Australian population (ASR) at 30 June 2001.

The highest age-specific mortality rates for colorectal cancer in 2013 were observed in the oldest age groups, with those aged 80–84 demonstrating a rate of 144 deaths per 100,000 population, and those aged 85 years and over demonstrating a rate of 220 deaths per 100,000 (Figure 1.3).[2] Approximately 30% of all colorectal cancer deaths occurred in those aged between 50 and 69 years (1198 deaths). However, death from colorectal cancer was relatively uncommon among those aged less than 50 years.[2]

Figure 1.4 shows the time trends in mortality from colorectal cancer in Australian men and women.[2] Between 1994 and 2013 there was a decline in the age-standardised mortality rate, which fell by an average of 2.4% per year overall.[2]

### 4.2.2.3 Figure 1.3 Age-specific mortality rates for colorectal cancer, Australia, 2013

Source: Australian Institute of Health and Welfare (2016)[2]

### 4.2.2.4 Figure 1.4 Age-standardised mortality rates for colorectal cancer, Australia, 1968–2013

Source: Australian Institute of Health and Welfare (2016).[2] The incidence (or mortality) rate has been age-standardised to the Australian population (ASR) at 30 June 2001.

Back to top

## 4.2.3 Socioeconomic status

In the 4 years from 2006 to 2009, those living in the most disadvantaged areas of Australia accounted for the highest age-standardised incidence rate for colorectal cancer (66 per 100,000).[1]

In the 4 years from 2009 to 2012, those living in the most disadvantaged areas of Australia accounted for the highest age-standardised mortality rate[ii] for colorectal cancer (17 per 100,000).[1]

[ii]Age-standardised incidence according to socioeconomic status, jurisdiction and Indigenous status was not consistently reported for all time periods, so direct comparisons between the reporting periods cannot be made.

Back to top

## 4.2.4 Remoteness area

In the 5 years from 2005 to 2009, people living in Inner regional areas of Australia had the highest age-standardised incidence rate for colorectal cancer (70 per 100,000).[1]

Between 2008 and 2012, age-standardised mortality rates[ii] for colorectal cancer were higher in Inner regional and Outer regional areas of Australia, each with 17 deaths per 100,000. Age-standardised mortality rates were lowest in Very remote areas (11 deaths per 100,000).[1]

[ii] Age-standardised incidence according to socioeconomic status, jurisdiction and Indigenous status was not consistently reported for all time periods, so direct comparisons between the reporting periods cannot be made.

Back to top

### 4.2.5 State and territory

The incidence of colorectal cancer varied between jurisdictions in the period between 2005 and 2009. Tasmania (75 cases per 100,000 persons) and Queensland (66 cases per 100,000 persons) had the highest age-standardised incidence rates, while Western Australia and the Northern Territory (57 cases per 100,000 persons each) had the lowest.[1]

Between 2008 and 2012, Tasmania had the highest age-standardised mortality rate[ii] for colorectal cancer (20 deaths per 100,000 population), while Western Australia had the lowest (14 deaths per 100,000 population).[1]

[ii] Age-standardised incidence according to socioeconomic status, jurisdiction and Indigenous status was not consistently reported for all time periods, so direct comparisons between the reporting periods cannot be made.

Back to top

### 4.2.6 Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples

Between 2005 and 2009, colorectal cancer was the third most commonly diagnosed cancer among Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples (of the selected cancers reported for Indigenous Australians), with 79 cases per year.[1]

Colorectal cancer is one of the cancers for which the age-standardised incidence rate was lower for Indigenous Australians than non-Indigenous Australians, with a rate ratio of 0.8.[1] It is unclear why there is a lower incidence rate for some cancers among Indigenous Australians. However, it has been suggested that the lower rates of participation in screening and diagnostic testing among Indigenous people may play a role.[1] Indigenous Australians are more likely to have cancers that are diagnosed at a later stage, when the primary site is no longer apparent, which may contribute to lower incidence rates for specific primary sites.[1]

In 2008–2012, the age-standardised mortality rate for colorectal cancer was lower for Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander people (13 deaths per 100,000) than for non-Indigenous Australians (16 deaths per 100,000), based on National Mortality Database data from New South Wales, Queensland, Western Australia, South Australia and the Northern Territory.[1]

Back to top

## 4.3 Socioeconomic status

In the 5 years from 2006 to 2010, those living in the most disadvantaged areas of Australia had the highest age-standardised incidence rate for colorectal cancer (67 cases per 100,000 people), while those living in the least disadvantaged areas had the lowest age-standardised incidence rate (59 cases per 100,000).[11]

In the 5 years from 2009 to 2013, those living in the most disadvantaged areas of Australia had the highest age-standardised mortality rate for colorectal cancer (18 deaths per 100,000 people), while those living in the least disadvantaged areas had the lowest age-standardised mortality rate (14 deaths per 100,000).[11]

## 4.4 Remoteness area

In the 5 years from 2006 to 2010, people living in Outer regional areas of Australia had the highest age-standardised incidence rate for colorectal cancer (69 cases per 100,000 people), while those living in Very remote areas had the lowest age-standardised incidence rate (51 cases per 100,000).[11]

Between 2009 and 2013, age-standardised mortality rates for colorectal cancer were highest in Outer regional areas of Australia, with 17 deaths per 100,000 people. Age-standardised mortality rates were lowest in Very remote areas (12 deaths per 100,000).[11]

## 4.5 State and territory

The incidence of colorectal cancer varied between jurisdictions in the period between 2006 and 2010. Tasmania (75 cases per 100,000 people) had the highest age-standardised incidence rate, while the Northern Territory (57 cases per 100,000) had the lowest.[11]

Between 2009 and 2013, Tasmania and the Northern Territory had the highest age-standardised mortality rate for colorectal cancer (19 deaths per 100,000 people each), while Western Australia had the lowest age-standardised mortality rate (14 deaths per 100,000).[11]

## 4.6 Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples

Between 2006 and 2010, Indigenous Australians had a lower age-standardised incidence rate for colorectal cancer (47 cases per 100,000 people) compared with non-Indigenous Australians (60 cases per 100,000), based on incidence data from New South Wales, Queensland, Western Australia, and the Northern Territory.[11]

It is unclear why there is a lower incidence rate for some cancers among Indigenous Australians. However, it has been suggested that the lower rates of participation in screening and diagnostic testing among Indigenous people may play a role.[1] Indigenous Australians are more likely to have cancers that are diagnosed at a later stage, when the primary site is no longer apparent, which may contribute to lower incidence rates for specific primary sites.[1]

In 2009–2013, the age-standardised mortality rate for colorectal cancer was lower for Indigenous Australians (13 deaths per 100,000 people) than for non-Indigenous Australians (16 deaths per 100,000), based on National Mortality Database data from New South Wales, Queensland, Western Australia, South Australia and the Northern Territory.[11]

## 4.7 Colorectal cancer screening

The early detection of colorectal cancer through population screening programs is associated with better treatment options, improved prognosis and reduced mortality. A number of randomised controlled trials have shown that population screening programs using the faecal occult blood test (FOBT) can reduce colorectal cancer mortality by 15–33%.[12][13][14][15]

In Australia, screening for colorectal cancer is available through the NBCSP, which was introduced in 2006. The NBCSP aims to reduce the morbidity and mortality from colorectal cancer by actively recruiting and screening the target population for early detection or prevention of the disease using FOBT kits.[11] The program has been phased in gradually, and by 2020 will offer biennial screening for those aged 50 to 74 years.

In addition to the NBSCP, there are a number of other ways that Australians can participate in screening for colorectal cancer. In conjunction with their general practitioner, individuals can purchase a FOBT kit from a pharmacy without a prescription, or obtain a kit from non-government organisations such as the Cancer Council [16] or from community or consumer organisations like Rotary or Bowel Cancer Australia, which run screening programs through pharmacies. In addition, individuals who undergo endoscopic procedures such as sigmoidoscopy or colonoscopy, even when these procedures are not specifically for the purpose of screening for colorectal cancer, may be considered up-to-date with screening. Research suggests that a significant percentage of older Australians may be participating in screening practices such as these, outside of the NBCSP. [16]

Back to top

### 4.7.1 Screening participation rates in the general population

Of the 2,239,760 FOBT invitation kits that were sent out to eligible individuals between 1 January 2013 and 31 December 2014, a total of 836,457 people participated in the program by returning a completed FOBT for analysis.[11] Therefore, the overall Australia-wide crude participation rate[iii] was 37.0%.[11] Given the significant proportion of older Australians who may be participating in screening practices outside of the NBCSP, however, this may be an underestimate of true population screening rates.[16]

The national participation rate of 37% for 2013–2014 was slightly higher when compared with the previous rolling 2-year period (2012–2013), which had a participation rate of 36%.15 In addition, the participation rate was highest for individuals receiving their second or later (subsequent) screening invitation (41% compared with 35%).[11]

A 2014 study compared the outcomes and cancer characteristics of individuals who had been invited to participate in the NBCSP in 2006–2008, as part of the target population turning 50, 55 or 65 (invitees), with those of individuals aged 50–69 in 2006–2008, but who did not turn 50, 55 or 65 during that period and were therefore not invited to screen then (non-invitees).[17] This study demonstrated that, of those diagnosed with colorectal cancer between 2006 and 2008, non-invitees had a 68% higher risk of colorectal cancer death, compared with NBCSP invitees.[17] For NBCSP invitees specifically, the risk of death from colorectal cancer was more than twice as high in those who did not participate but later had a colorectal cancer diagnosed, compared

with those whose cancer was diagnosed through participation in colorectal cancer screening. In addition, colorectal cancers diagnosed in non-invitees had 38% higher odds of being more advanced than those diagnosed in NBCSP invitees.[17] For NBCSP invitees specifically, those with colorectal cancers detected through screening had 121% higher odds of being diagnosed at an earlier stage, compared with colorectal cancers diagnosed in invitees who did not participate. These findings suggest that the NBCSP is contributing to reducing morbidity and mortality from colorectal cancer in Australia.[17]

[iii] All colorectal screening participation rates (in the general population and by state and territory, age and sex, socioeconomic status and remoteness area) reported in the National Bowel Cancer Screening Program Monitoring Report 2016 were crude participation rates, and age-standardised participation rates were not reported.

Back to top

## 4.7.2 Screening participation rates by state and territory

In 2013–2014, NBCSP participation rates did vary by state and territory.[11] With the exception of New South Wales (34.5% crude participation rate), Queensland (36.6%) and the Northern Territory (27.6%), all other jurisdictions demonstrated participation rates that were above the overall Australian rate.[11]

While the reasons behind the observed jurisdictional variations in NBCSP participation are unclear, an analysis of participation by socioeconomic status and remoteness areas within each jurisdiction has demonstrated that participation in New South Wales and Queensland was generally lower across all subgroups (including Major cities, and Inner and outer regional areas), compared with the other jurisdictions.[11] These findings suggest that in these jurisdictions, which are larger and therefore have a bigger impact on the Australian participation rate, lower participation was an overall trend.

Back to top

## 4.7.3 Screening participation rates by age and sex

Participation rates were higher for females than males in each of the four age groups (Figure 1.5), with females 1.2 times more likely than males to participate in colorectal screening (34.7% for males, compared with 40.0% for females).[11]

Given that colorectal cancer risk and incidence is higher in men, this suggests an inequitable pattern of NBCSP participation on the basis of sex. It has been suggested that women may have higher screening rates for colorectal cancer due to the fact that they are involved in, and aware of, other population-based screening programs such as those for cervical cancer and breast cancer, and may therefore better understand the potential benefits of screening.[18]

Participation rates varied between the four target age groups, and were highest for those aged 65–69 years (44.2%), and those aged 60–64 years (43.9%). These were the only two age groups with participation rates above the national average (Figure 1.5).[11]

### 4.7.3.1 Figure 1.5 Crude participation in the National Bowel Cancer Screening Program, by age and sex, 2013–2014

Source: Data from National Bowel Cancer Screening Program Register as at 31 December 2015(AIHW 2016)[11]

Back to top

## 4.7.4 Screening participation rates by socioeconomic status

Analysis of NBCSP data according to population-based socioeconomic status quintiles showed that invitees living within areas with the lowest socioeconomic status (areas with the most socioeconomic disadvantage) had lower participation rates, when compared with those living in all other areas rated according to level of socioeconomic status (Figure 1.6).[11]

These results are consistent with the findings of studies in Australia and internationally. A UK study has shown that socioeconomic deprivation has a major effect on participation in screening.[19] It found that people from more economically deprived areas had less interest in and uptake of colorectal cancer screening than their counterparts in less deprived areas.[19] Similarly, a study in South Australia demonstrated a general pattern of lower screening participation in more disadvantaged socioeconomic groups.[18] This study found that key barriers to the NBCSP were lack of knowledge about colorectal cancer and screening tests in general, and the NBCSP in particular, suggesting a need for greater resources for social marketing to increase both awareness and health literacy in this area.[18]

### 4.7.4.1 Figure 1.6 Crude participation in the National Bowel Cancer Screening Program, by socioeconomic status area, 2013–2014

Source: Data from National Bowel Cancer Screening Program Register as at 31 December 2015(AIHW 2016)[11]

Back to top

## 4.7.5 Screening participation rates by remoteness area

Over 66% of all participants came from Major cities (with a 36.6% crude participation rate).[11] The proportion participating in screening was highest in Inner regional (40.0%) and Outer regional (38.7%) areas and lowest in Remote and Very remote areas (Figure 1.7).

### 4.7.5.1 Figure 1.7 Crude participation in the National Bowel Cancer Screening Program, by remoteness area, 2013–2014

Source: Data from National Bowel Cancer Screening Program Register as at 31 December 2015 (AIHW 2016)[11]

Back to top

# 4.8 Colorectal cancer control in Australia: now and in the future

## 4.8.1 Survival

In 2008–2012, the 5-year relative survival for colorectal cancer in the Australian population was 68% (67% for males and 69% for females) (Figure 1.8).[11] In people aged 50–74 years (the target age group for the NBCSP), the 5-year relative survival was 72%. In comparison, in 1982–1986, individuals diagnosed with colorectal cancer had a 48% chance of surviving for 5 years compared with those in the general population.[11]

The improvement in colorectal cancer survival rates may be due to a number of factors, such as earlier presentation, earlier diagnosis, and improved treatments including safer and more effective surgical techniques [20] as well as the availability of new chemotherapeutic and biologic treatment agents.[21] Better management of families with Lynch syndrome and Familial Adenomatous Polyposis, more effective colonoscopic surveillance following cancer or adenoma detection, and ad hoc screening by FOBT or colonoscopy may also have contributed to improved colorectal cancer survival rates. It is unlikely that the NBCSP has had a significant impact on the observed increases in 5-year survival, given the small number of years the program has been active, the limited ages screened during those years, and the relatively low participation rates.

At the time of diagnosis, the probability of surviving for at least 5 years was 68%, which increased to 91% and 96% at 5 years and 15 years post-diagnosis, respectively (Figure 1.8).[11]

### 4.8.1.1 Figure 1.8 Relative survival at diagnosis and 5-year conditional survival from colorectal cancer, Australia, 2008–2012

Conditional relative survival: Conditional survival estimates show the probability of surviving a given number of years provided that an individual has already survived a specified amount of time after diagnosis.
Source: Data from Australian Cancer Database (AIHW 2012)[9]

Back to top

## 4.8.2 Incidence

Projections for cancer incidence in Australia have been undertaken that involve mathematical extrapolations of past trends with the assumption that the same trend will continue into the future.[9] These projections are not forecasts and do not attempt to allow for future changes in areas such as population screening programs or treatment regimens. For colorectal cancer, projections are based on extrapolation of the trends in incidence up to 2007 and do not take into account the impact of the NBCSP on future incidence.[9]

In males, age-standardised incidence rates for colorectal cancer demonstrated an increasing trend between 1982 and 1996. However, between 1996 and 2007 there was a small but statistically significant reduction of approximately 0.3 cases per 100,000 males per year (Figure 1.9).[9]

While the age-standardised incidence rate for colorectal cancer is expected to fall to approximately 71 cases per 100,000 males by 2020, equating to approximately 10,800 new cases, the estimated number of new cases diagnosed is expected to continue to increase due to projected increases in the size of the elderly population (Figure 1.9). Males aged 45–64 years are expected to show the greatest reductions in colorectal cancer rates, while those aged 85 years and over are expected to show smaller reductions.[9]

### 4.8.2.1 Figure 1.9 Trends in number of new cases and age-standardised incidence rates(a) for colorectal cancer in Australian males, 1982 to 2007, projected to 2020

(a) Rates are expressed per 100,000 males. ASR: Age standardised rate (standardised to the Australian population as at 30 June 2001) Source: Australian Cancer Database (AIHW 2012)[9]

In females, the age-standardised incidence rate for colorectal cancer demonstrated a slight increase of approximately 0.04 cases per 100,000 females per year between 1982 and 2007 (Figure 1.10), which was not statistically significant.[9]

By 2020, the age-standardised incidence rate for colorectal cancer is expected to remain steady at approximately 54 cases diagnosed per 100,000 females, which is equivalent to approximately 9160 new cases (Figure 1.10).[9] Females aged 45–64 years are expected to show reductions in colorectal cancer rates, although these reductions are unlikely to be as significant as those observed for males in the same age group.[9]

### 4.8.2.2 Figure 1.10 Trends in number of new cases and age-standardised incidence rates(a) for colorectal cancer in Australian females, 1982 to 2007, projected to 2020

(a) Rates are expressed per 100,000 females. ASR: Age standardised rates (age standardised to the Australian population as at 30 June 2001) Source: AHW Australian Cancer Database (AIHW 2012)[9]

Back to top

## 4.9 References

1. ↑ 1.00 1.01 1.02 1.03 1.04 1.05 1.06 1.07 1.08 1.09 1.10 1.11 1.12 1.13 Australian Institute of Health and Welfare. *Cancer in Australia: an overview 2014. [Version updated 16 April 2015] Cancer series No 90. Cat. no. CAN 88.* Canberra: AIHW;.
2. ↑ 2.00 2.01 2.02 2.03 2.04 2.05 2.06 2.07 2.08 2.09 2.10 2.11 2.12 2.13 2.14 2.15 2.16 Australian Cancer Incidence and Mortality (ACIM). *Workbook for colorectal cancer.* www.aihw.gov.au/cancer/data/acim_books/index.cfm 2011.

3. ↑ 3.0 3.1 3.2 World Health Organization International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC). *GLOBOCAN 2012: estimated cancer incidence, mortality and prevalence worldwide in 2012.* [homepage on the internet]; 2012 [cited 2016 Apr 23]. Available from: http://globocan.iarc.fr/Pages/fact_sheets_cancer.aspx.
4. ↑ Steins Bisschop CN, van Gils CH, Emaus MJ, Bueno-de-Mesquita HB, Monninkhof EM, Boeing H, et al. *Weight change later in life and colon and rectal cancer risk in participants in the EPIC-PANACEA study.* Am J Clin Nutr 2014 Jan;99(1):139-47 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24225355.
5. ↑ Leufkens AM, Van Duijnhoven FJ, Siersema PD, Boshuizen HC, Vrieling A, Agudo A, et al. *Cigarette smoking and colorectal cancer risk in the European Prospective Investigation into Cancer and Nutrition study.* Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2011 Feb;9(2):137-44 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21029790.
6. ↑ Ferrari P, Jenab M, Norat T, Moskal A, Slimani N, Olsen A, et al. *Lifetime and baseline alcohol intake and risk of colon and rectal cancers in the European prospective investigation into cancer and nutrition (EPIC).* Int J Cancer 2007 Nov 1;121(9):2065-72 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17640039.
7. ↑ Norat T, Bingham S, Ferrari P, Slimani N, Jenab M, Mazuir M, et al. *Meat, fish, and colorectal cancer risk: the European Prospective Investigation into cancer and nutrition.* J Natl Cancer Inst 2005 Jun 15;97(12):906-16 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15956652.
8. ↑ Murphy N, Norat T, Ferrari P, Jenab M, Bueno-de-Mesquita B, Skeie G, et al. *Dietary fibre intake and risks of cancers of the colon and rectum in the European prospective investigation into cancer and nutrition (EPIC).* PLoS One 2012;7(6):e39361 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22761771.
9. ↑ 9.00 9.01 9.02 9.03 9.04 9.05 9.06 9.07 9.08 9.09 9.10 Australian Institute of Health and Welfare. *Cancer incidence projections: Australia, 2011 to 2020. Cancer series no. 66. Cat. no. CAN 62.* Canberra: AIHW; 2012.
10. ↑ Australian Institute of Health and Welfare. *Cervical screening in Australia 2012–2013. Cancer series no. 93. Cat. no. CAN 91.* Canberra: AIHW; 2015 Available from: http://www.aihw.gov.au/WorkArea/DownloadAsset.aspx?id=60129550872.
11. ↑ 11.00 11.01 11.02 11.03 11.04 11.05 11.06 11.07 11.08 11.09 11.10 11.11 11.12 11.13 11.14 11.15 11.16 11.17 11.18 11.19 11.20 11.21 11.22 11.23 11.24 Australian Institute of Health and Welfare. *National Bowel Cancer Screening Program: monitoring report 2016. Cancer series no. 98. Cat. no. CAN 97.* Canberra: AIHW; 2016.
12. ↑ Hardcastle JD, Chamberlain JO, Robinson MH, Moss SM, Amar SS, Balfour TW, et al. *Randomised controlled trial of faecal-occult-blood screening for colorectal cancer.* Lancet 1996 Nov 30;348(9040):1472-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8942775.
13. ↑ Kewenter J, Brevinge H, Engarås B, Haglind E, Ahrén C. *Results of screening, rescreening, and follow-up in a prospective randomized study for detection of colorectal cancer by fecal occult blood testing. Results for 68,308 subjects.* Scand J Gastroenterol 1994 May;29(5):468-73 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8036464.
14. ↑ Kronborg O, Fenger C, Olsen J, Jørgensen OD, Søndergaard O. *Randomised study of screening for colorectal cancer with faecal-occult-blood test.* Lancet 1996 Nov 30;348(9040):1467-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8942774.
15. ↑ Mandel JS, Church TR, Ederer F, Bond JH. *Colorectal cancer mortality: effectiveness of biennial screening for fecal occult blood.* J Natl Cancer Inst 1999 Mar 3;91(5):434-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10070942.

16. ↑ 16.0 16.1 16.2 Zajac, I. T. Flight, I. Turnbull, D. Young, G. Cole, S. Wilson, C.. *Self-reported bowel screening rates in older Australians and the implications for public health screening programs.* Australas Med J 2013;6(8): 411-417.
17. ↑ 17.0 17.1 17.2 17.3 Australian Institute of Health and Welfare. *Analysis of bowel cancer outcomes for the National Bowel Cancer Screening Program. Cat. no. CAN 87.* Canberra: AIHW; 2014.
18. ↑ 18.0 18.1 18.2 Ward PR, Javanparast S, Wilson C. *Equity of colorectal cancer screening: which groups have inequitable participation and what can we do about it?* Aust J Prim Health 2011;17(4):334-46 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22112702.
19. ↑ 19.0 19.1 Whynes DK,Frew EJ, Manghan CM, Scholefield JH, Hardcastle JD. *Colorectal cancer, screening and survival: the influence of socio-economic deprivation.* Public Health 2003;117(6):389-395.
20. ↑ Wiegering, A. Isbert, C. Dietz, U. A. Kunzmann, V. Ackermann, S. Kerscher, A. Maeder, U. Flentje, M. Schlegel, N. Reibetanz, J. Germer, C. T. Klein, I.. *Multimodal therapy in treatment of rectal cancer is associated with improved survival and reduced local recurrence - a retrospective analysis over two decades.* BMC Cancer 2014;14: 816.
21. ↑ Hu CY, Bailey CE, You YN, Skibber JM, Rodriguez-Bigas MA, Feig BW, et al. *Time trend analysis of primary tumor resection for stage IV colorectal cancer: less surgery, improved survival.* JAMA Surg 2015 Mar 1;150(3):245-51 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25588105.

Back to top

# 5 Primary prevention

**Contents**



## 5.1 Background

Colorectal cancer is the second most common non-skin cancer occurring in men and women in Australia, and the second most common cause of cancer death.[1] Although mortality from the disease has been decreasing over recent decades, the incidence is still rising slowly.[1]

Many observational studies have provided evidence of dietary associations with colorectal cancer risk. A limited number of randomised controlled trials (RCTs) also support diet and lifestyle advice to reduce colorectal cancer risk. Colorectal cancer is the second most preventable cancer after lung cancer.[2] Table 2.1 shows the proportion of incident colorectal cancer cases diagnosed in 2010 in Australia attributable to lifestyle and environmental factors (all both males and females).

### 5.1.1 Table 2.1 Proportion of incident colorectal cancer cases diagnosed in Australia attributable to lifestyle and environmental factors

| Lifestyle/environmental factor | Proportion (%) |
|---|---|
| Tobacco smoke | 6.4 |
| Alcohol | 9.0 |
| Overweight and obesity | 9.0 |
| Insufficient physical activity | 4.8 |
| Diet – insufficient fibre | 17.6 |
| Diet – red and processed meat | 17.6 |
| Population attributable fraction combined | 49.8 |

Proportions (%) presented are for the entire Australian population (0–-85+ years), all persons (male/female); Abridged table, adapted from Whiteman et al 2015[2] with permission from the publisher (in progress)

In the adult white population in the USA, it has been estimated that 60% and 59% of colorectal cancer incidence for women and men, respectively, could be prevented by lifestyle factors.[3] However, although these lifestyle and environmental risk factors are well described, there is no data yet available to indicate that interventions to avoid or modify favourably the factors has been less convincing except for some diet studies.

Prevention of colorectal cancer includes:

- primary prevention through chemoprevention, dietary and lifestyle modifications
- early detection and removal of precursor lesions such as the adenomatous polyp.

This chapter focuses on primary prevention, and summarises advances in the knowledge and application of interventions to prevent colorectal cancer, thereby reducing the incidence of the disease.

### 5.1.2 Chapter subsections

Please see:

- Dietary and lifestyle strategies
- Chemopreventive candidate agents (PPR1)

## 5.2 References


1. ↑ [1.0] [1.1] Australian Institute of Health and Welfare. *Cancer in Australia: an overview 2014. [Version updated 16 April 2015] Cancer series No 90. Cat. no. CAN 88.* Canberra: AIHW;.
2. ↑ [2.0] [2.1] Whiteman DC, Webb PM, Green AC, Neale RE, Fritschi L, Bain CJ, et al. *Cancers in Australia in 2010 attributable to modifiable factors: introduction and overview.* Aust N Z J Public Health 2015 Oct;39 (5):403-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26437722.
3. ↑ Song M, Giovannucci E. *Preventable Incidence and Mortality of Carcinoma Associated With Lifestyle Factors Among White Adults in the United States.* JAMA Oncol 2016 Sep 1;2(9):1154-61 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27196525.


# 5.1 Introduction: primary prevention

**Contents**



## 5.1.1 Background

Colorectal cancer is the second most common non-skin cancer occurring in men and women in Australia, and the second most common cause of cancer death.[1] Although mortality from the disease has been decreasing over recent decades, the incidence is still rising slowly.[1]

Many observational studies have provided evidence of dietary associations with colorectal cancer risk. A limited number of randomised controlled trials (RCTs) also support diet and lifestyle advice to reduce colorectal cancer risk. Colorectal cancer is the second most preventable cancer after lung cancer.[2] Table 2.1 shows the proportion of incident colorectal cancer cases diagnosed in 2010 in Australia attributable to lifestyle and environmental factors (all both males and females).

#### 5.1.1.1 Table 2.1 Proportion of incident colorectal cancer cases diagnosed in Australia attributable to lifestyle and environmental factors

| Lifestyle/environmental factor | Proportion (%) |
|---|---|
| Tobacco smoke | 6.4 |
| Alcohol | 9.0 |
| Overweight and obesity | 9.0 |
| Insufficient physical activity | 4.8 |
| Diet – insufficient fibre | 17.6 |
| Diet – red and processed meat | 17.6 |
| Population attributable fraction combined | 49.8 |

Proportions (%) presented are for the entire Australian population (0–-85+ years), all persons (male/female); Abridged table, adapted from Whiteman et al 2015[2] with permission from the publisher (in progress)

In the adult white population in the USA, it has been estimated that 60% and 59% of colorectal cancer incidence for women and men, respectively, could be prevented by lifestyle factors.[3] However, although these lifestyle and environmental risk factors are well described, there is no data yet available to indicate that interventions to avoid or modify favourably the factors has been less convincing except for some diet studies.

Prevention of colorectal cancer includes:

- primary prevention through chemoprevention, dietary and lifestyle modifications
- early detection and removal of precursor lesions such as the adenomatous polyp.

This chapter focuses on primary prevention, and summarises advances in the knowledge and application of interventions to prevent colorectal cancer, thereby reducing the incidence of the disease.

#### 5.1.1.2 Chapter subsections

Please see:

- Dietary and lifestyle strategies
- Chemopreventive candidate agents (PPR1)

## 5.1.2 References

1. ↑ [1.0] [1.1] Australian Institute of Health and Welfare. *Cancer in Australia: an overview 2014. [Version updated 16 April 2015] Cancer series No 90. Cat. no. CAN 88.* Canberra: AIHW;.
2. ↑ [2.0] [2.1] Whiteman DC, Webb PM, Green AC, Neale RE, Fritschi L, Bain CJ, et al. *Cancers in Australia in 2010 attributable to modifiable factors: introduction and overview.* Aust N Z J Public Health 2015 Oct;39 (5):403-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26437722.
3. ↑ Song M, Giovannucci E. *Preventable Incidence and Mortality of Carcinoma Associated With Lifestyle Factors Among White Adults in the United States.* JAMA Oncol 2016 Sep 1;2(9):1154-61 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27196525.

# 5.2 Dietary and lifestyle strategies

**Contents**

3 References

## 5.2.1 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews on this topic were undertaken in the development of this clinical practice guideline section.

### 5.2.1.1 Evidence sources

Two comprehensive literature reviews undertaken jointly by the World Cancer Research Fund and the American Institute for Cancer Research have reported the evidence for lifestyle factors in the prevention of cancers:

- the Second Expert Report (SER) on food, nutrition and physical activity in the prevention of cancer (2007)[1]
- the Continuous Update Project (CUP) review of food, nutrition and physical activity in the prevention of colorectal cancer (2011).[2]

The lifestyle and dietary guidance in this chapter is primarily summarised from these reviews. Updated information was included, where available. New systematic reviews were not undertaken for this guideline.

Updated systematic reviews are currently in progress by World Cancer Research Fund/American Institute for Cancer Research.[i]

[i]These guidelines may be updated after 2017 as a result of updated guidance from the World Cancer Research Fund/American Institute for Cancer Research. The provisional publication dates for The Colorectal Cancer Report and the Expert Report are April 2017 and November 2017, respectively.

Back to top

### 5.2.1.2 Summary of associations between lifestyle factors and colorectal cancer risk

Table 2.2 summarises the World Cancer Research Fund/American Institute for Cancer Research conclusions on the evidence for dietary and lifestyle factors as risk factors for, or protective against, colorectal cancer.[2]

#### 5.2.1.2.1 Table 2.2. Food, nutrition, physical activity and risk of cancers of the colon and the rectum

| Strength of association | Decreases risk | Increases risk |
|---|---|---|
| | | Red meat[4,5] |

| Strength of association | Decreases risk | Increases risk |
|---|---|---|
| Convincing | Physical activity[1, 2]<br>Foods containing dietary fibre[3] | Processed meat[4,6]<br>Alcoholic drinks (men)[7]<br>Body fatness<br>Abdominal fatness<br>Adult attained height[8] |
| Probable | Garlic<br>Milk[9]<br>Calcium[10] | Alcoholic drinks (women)[7] |
| Limited – suggestive | Non-starchy vegetables<br>Fruits<br>Foods containing vitamin D3[12] | Foods containing iron[3,4]<br>Cheese[11]<br>Foods containing animal fats[3]<br>Foods containing sugars[13] |
| Limited – no conclusion | Fish, glycaemic index, folate, vitamin C, vitamin E, selenium, low fat, dietary pattern | |
| Substantial effect on risk unlikely | None identified | |

1. Physical activity of all types: occupational, household, transport, and recreational.

2. The Panel judges that the evidence is stronger for colon cancer is convincing. No conclusion was drawn for rectal cancer.
3. Includes both foods naturally containing the constituent and foods which have the constituent added. Dietary fibre is contained in plant foods.
4. Although red and processed meats contain iron, the general category of ‘foods containing iron’ comprises many other foods, including those of plant origin.
5. The term ‘red meat’ refers to beef, pork, lamb, and goat from domesticated animals.
6. The term ‘processed meat’ refers to meats preserved by smoking, curing, or salting, or addition of chemical preservatives.
7. The judgements for men and women are different because there are fewer data for women. For colorectal cancers, the effect appears stronger in men than women.
8. Adult attained height is unlikely directly to modify the risk of cancer. It is a marker for genetic, environmental, hormonal, and also nutritional factors affecting growth during the period from preconception to completion of linear growth.
9. Milk from cows. Most data are from high-income populations, where calcium can be taken to be a marker for milk/dairy consumption. The Panel judges that a higher intake of dietary calcium is one way in which milk could have a protective effect.
10. The evidence is derived from studies using supplements at a dose of 1200 mg/day.
11. Although both milk and cheese are included in the general category of dairy products, their different

| Strength of association | Decreases risk | Increases risk |
|---|---|---|
| nutritional composition and consumption patterns may result in different findings.<br>12. Found mostly in fortified foods and animal foods.<br>13. 'Sugars' here means all 'non-milk extrinsic' sugars, including refined and other added sugars, honey, and as contained in fruit juices and syrups. It does not include sugars naturally present in whole foods such as fruits. It also does not include lactose as contained in animal or human milks. | | |

Source: World Cancer Research Fund/American Institute for Cancer Research. Continuous Update Project Report. Food, Nutrition, Physical Activity, and the Prevention of Colorectal Cancer. 2011.[2] Seeking permission from publisher, note title amendment.

Back to top

### 5.2.1.3 Tobacco smoking

The CUP review[2] reported significant associations between daily cigarette consumption, duration, pack years and age of initiation with colorectal cancer incidence, with an increase in risk of 38% for every 40 cigarettes smoked per day.[3] The large European Prospective Investigation into Cancer and Nutrition (EPIC) study found that smokers have an increased risk of colon cancer with most occurring in the proximal rather than distal colon.[4] The incidence of smoking-related colon cancer in the US is now the same for women and men, likely reflecting converging smoking patterns.[5]

Tobacco smoking is considered to be an established cause of colorectal cancer,[6] with 8.1% of colorectal cancer in the UK attributed to tobacco use.[7]

Back to top

### 5.2.1.4 Obesity and abdominal fatness

The CUP review[2] concluded that cohort studies investigating body mass index published between 2007 and 2011 showed increased risk of colorectal cancer with increased body fatness. The meta-analyses showed increased risks of 2%, 3% and 1% per kg/m2 for colorectal, colon and rectal cancers, respectively. There tended to be a larger effect for men than women and the effect was stronger for the USA and Asia than Europe.

The CUP review[2] agreed with the SER[1] finding that there was convincing evidence that greater body fatness is associated with colorectal cancer risk. Similarly, the CUP review[2] found that all new cohort studies demonstrated that increasing waist circumference and/or waist-to-hip ratio measurements increased risk for colorectal cancer. The meta-analyses showed increased risks of 3%, 5% and 3% (per inch in waist circumference for studies that did not adjust for body mass index) for colorectal, colon and rectal cancers respectively. In the UK, 13% of colorectal cancer has been attributed to overweight and obesity.[7] In the large EPIC cohort study, individuals who gained > 20 kg of weight since age 20 had a 38% higher risk of colon, but not rectal cancer, compared with those whose weight remained stable. In a recent meta-analysis of

observational studies, each 5 kg of adult body weight gain was associated with a 4% higher risk of colorectal cancer.[8] This association only applied to those with high attained waist circumference, suggesting fat accumulation in the abdominal area is important in relation to colorectal cancer risk.[9][10][11][12][13] In the Women's Health Initiative Study, the risk of colorectal cancer in postmenopausal women increased when BMI exceeded 27 kg/m2.[14] A recent review, which included seven studies, found obese patients were more likely to have distal tumours, show intact DNA mismatch repair, and have increased lymph node metastases, compared with normal-weight patients.[15] The incidence of colorectal cancer in individuals under 50 years for whom screening is limited is increasing[16] and the rising prevalence of excess weight may play a role in this trend.[17]

Other recent reviews made similar conclusions, with the risk of colorectal cancer from excess body fatness being stronger in men than women, rectal cancer being less affected by body fatness than colon cancer, and with general and regional fatness both playing a role.[9][10][11][12][13][18] Body and abdominal adiposity may increase risk through systemic effects, in which insulin and oestrogen levels encourage carcinogenesis and discourage apoptosis.[19] Patients with type-2 diabetes are at greater risk of cancers[20], including of the colorectum,[21] but particularly the proximal colon.[22][23]

Back to top

## 5.2.1.5 Nutrition

### 5.2.1.5.1 Dietary fibre

Dietary fibre is a heterogeneous group comprising primarily plant-derived structural components not digested by human digestive enzymes, consisting largely of non-starch polysaccharides and resistant starch. The suggested mechanisms for protection from colorectal cancer by high dietary fibre include fibre diluting or adsorbing digesta carcinogens, reducing intestinal transit time, reducing secondary bile acid production, reducing colonic pH and increasing the production of short chain fatty acids.[18] The short-chain fatty acid butyrate may play an important role,[24] as it enhances the deletion of genetically damaged cells by inducing cell cycle arrest, differentiation and apoptosis.[25]

The CUP review[2] concluded that 13 of 18 studies published since the SER (2007)[1] showed decreased risk of colorectal cancer with increased intake of total dietary fibre. The updated meta-analyses showed a 12% decreased risk for men and an 8% decreased risk for women (per 10 g dietary fibre/day), with a 21% decreased risk per three daily servings of wholegrains for colorectal cancer and a 16% decreased risk for colon cancer. The CUP review[2] also reported a further 12 new studies examining colon cancer alone and 10 studies looking at rectal cancer only since SER.[1] Meta-analyses undertaken for the CUP review[2] showed an 11% decrease in colon cancer risk per 10 g of dietary fibre consumed per day. For rectal cancer meta-analyses revealed a trend towards decreased risk that did not reach statistical significance as was reported previously in the SER (2007).[1]

Based on consistent evidence, with clear dose-response relationships for both women and men, the CUP review [2] concluded that the protective effect of dietary fibre had strengthened from 'probable' to 'convincing'. The CUP review[2] agreed with the SER[1] conclusion that evidence of protection from non-starchy fruits and vegetables was limited. The CUP review[2] included a pooled analysis of 756,217 participants from 14 cohort studies, followed up for between 6 and 20 years[26].

Since the CUP review[2] published its conclusions, another large systematic review and meta-analysis confirmed that ingestion of dietary fibre, in particular cereal fibre and whole grains, was inversely associated with risk of colon cancer.[27] The investigators found no association between intake of fruit or vegetable fibre and risk of colorectal cancer, but suggested that level of fibre intake from these sources may have been too low to detect effects. Intake of whole grains did not protect against colorectal cancer in the Norwegian Women Study, although consumption tended to be weakly associated with a lower risk of proximal colon cancer.[28] Intake of whole grain products, in particular whole grain wheat, was found to be associated with a lower incidence of colorectal cancer in the prospective HELGA study.[29]

The large NIH-AARP American cohort study was not included in the CUP review[2] and reported a reduction in risk of colon cancer in adults from high intake of vegetables consumed during ages 12–13 years and during the previous 10 years. High intakes of fruit consumed in the previous 10 years were also protective.[30] A healthy diet can also improve overall survival after diagnosis of colorectal cancer.[31]

Back to top

### 5.2.1.5.2 Red and processed meat

Based on the findings of nine of 12 studies published between 2007–2011, the CUP review[2] confirmed the SER [1] finding that there was convincing evidence that higher intakes of red meat increase the risk of colorectal cancer. Meta-analysis showed a 17% increase in risk of colorectal cancer per 100 g red meat consumed per day. [32]

The risk of colorectal cancer and rectal cancer differ according to the subtype of red meat consumed.[33] The mechanism underlying the increase in risk may be associated with the presence of haem in red meat, which undergoes endogenous nitrosylation with the formation of potentially carcinogenic N-nitroso compounds,[31] or due to the production of potentially carcinogenic heterocyclic amines and polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons during the cooking of meat, or the presence of nitrites and nitrates.[34]

In 10 of 13 studies included in the CUP review, increased risk of colorectal cancer with higher intake of processed meat was observed.[2] The meta-analysis showed an 18% increased risk for colorectal cancer and a 24% increased risk of colon cancer per 50 g processed meat/day intake.[2] There was a nonsignificant trend towards increased risk of rectal cancer.

The CUP review[2] concluded there was a dose-response relationship apparent from cohort studies and agreed with the SER that processed meat was a convincing cause of colorectal cancer. These conclusions are further supported by more recent studies confirming red meat consumption is a risk factor for cancer of several sites, including colon and rectum, with no effect of cooking method.[15] Further, the American Institute for Cancer Research working group on red and processed meats classified red meat as 'probably carcinogenic to humans' based on limited evidence for positive associations between red meat consumption and colorectal cancer development, but strong mechanistic evidence. The working group also upgraded their classification for processed meats to 'carcinogenic in humans' based on there being sufficient epidemiological evidence that these meats causes colorectal cancer.[35][36] Others have found an association between cooking method and colorectal cancer and rectal adenoma risk.[34][37] Recent studies have also confirmed a positive association between red processed meat and proximal colon cancer,[34] and that in Europe the negative effect of processed meat was mainly driven by the consumption of sausages.[38]

Back to top

### 5.2.1.5.3 Other nutrients

The CUP review and SER concluded milk probably protected from colorectal cancer, with a 9% decreased risk for colorectal cancer per 200 g milk consumed/day.[2][1] This conclusion is supported by the EPIC study, which found dairy products protective irrespective of fat content of the products,[39] and a meta-analysis of cohort studies that showed that milk and total dairy products are associated with a reduction in colorectal cancer risk.[40]

However, the CUP review[2] and SER review[1] found that, in six of seven cohort studies, calcium supplements reduced the risk of colorectal cancer, and the CUP panel concluded that calcium probably protected against colorectal cancer. The NIH-AARP Diet and Health study was not included in CUP review,[2] and this large study found that high intake of milk and calcium over the previous 10 years reduced the risk of colon cancer, and that intake of milk was inversely associated with risk of rectal cancer.[30] However a 2013 meta-analysis showed that calcium supplementation (≥ 500 mg/d) did not alter the risk of colorectal cancer (risk ratio [RR] 1•38, 95% confidence interval [CI] 0•89 to 2•15, P = 0•15).[41]

In contrast to the benefits seen for colorectal cancer risk, a recent randomised controlled trial investigating the impact of calcium and vitamin D alone and in combination on metachronous adenoma revealed no significant reduction of risk associated with any of the treatments:[42]

- vitamin D versus no vitamin D (adjusted RR 0.99; 95% CI 0.89 to 1.09)
- calcium versus no calcium (RR 0.95; 95% CI 0.85 to 1.06)
- both vitamin D and calcium versus neither (RR 0.93; 95% CI, 0.80 to 1.08).

The findings for advanced adenomas were similar.[42] There were few serious adverse events.

In combination, the evidence suggests that calcium and vitamin D may elicit their protective effects at points in colorectal carcinogenesis beyond the advanced adenoma stage.

The SER reviewed 15 case-controlled studies on dietary selenium that showed a decreased risk for colorectal cancer with increased serum selenium levels, but no cohort studies were identified.[1] The Panel concluded there was limited evidence that foods containing selenium protect against colorectal cancer. The updated CUP review report included two new cohort studies published since the SER but the results were inconsistent and the report concluded there was inadequate evidence to draw conclusions about the relationship between dietary selenium and colorectal cancer.[2] There were few, relatively small studies investigating selenium supplements and the World Cancer Research Fund concluded the results were inconsistent and the outcomes too limited to draw a conclusion.[1][2]

Back to top

### 5.2.1.6 Alcohol

The 15 new papers reviewed by the CUP review showed an increased risk with increased intake of ethanol for colorectal cancer and colon cancers.[2] The meta-analyses showed a 10% increased risk for colorectal cancer and rectal cancers, and an 8% increased risk for colon cancer per 10 g ethanol consumed per day. The effect was stronger in men than women, with 11% increased risk in men, compared with 7% in women.

The CUP review[2] agreed with the SER[1] conclusion that the evidence for ethanol from alcoholic drinks as a cause of colorectal cancer in men was convincing, and was probably a cause of colorectal cancer in women. In the UK, 15.5% of colorectal cancers in men and 6.9% in women have been attributed to consumption of alcohol.[7] In a recent meta-analysis, alcohol consumption was associated with an increase of risk of colorectal adenomas which was the same for both sexes and stronger in European than US and Asian studies.[43] In 2010, there were 10,865 colon cancers diagnosed in Australia, of which 868 were attributed to alcohol consumption, with 80% of those diagnosed in men.[44] The European Code against Cancer (4th edition) concluded that even low and moderate alcohol intakes increase the risk of colorectal cancer in a dose-dependent manner.[45]

Alcohol also interacts with tobacco by interfering with the repair of specific DNA mutations caused by smoking, and may also enhance the penetration of other carcinogenic molecules into mucosal surfaces.

Back to top

### 5.2.1.7 Physical activity

The SER recommended that, to prevent colorectal cancer, people should be moderately physically active (equivalent to brisk walking for at least 30 minutes a day, with the objective of ≥ 60 minutes of moderate or ≥ 30 minutes of vigorous physical activity every day).[1]

The CUP review reviewed the outcomes of cohort studies published since 2007, and concluded that a lower risk of colon cancer was associated with higher overall levels of physical activity, with evidence of a dose-response effect within the range studied.[2][46][47] The effect was strong for colon cancer, but there was no evidence of an effect for rectal cancer. The effect was strong and consistent for men, but less strong in women. The meta-analyses showed that recreational physical activity resulted in an 11% decrease in risk for colorectal and 12% decrease for colon cancer per 30 minutes of exercise per day, with maximum effect observed with approximately 10 hours per week of average-paced walking.[48] Another meta-analysis found a similar inverse relationship between colonic adenoma risk and physical activity.[46][47]

While these effects were independent of any effect of exercise on obesity, additional benefits of longer-term, sustained, moderate physical activity may also be realised through reduced body fatness and may protect against colon cancer by decreasing inflammation, reducing insulin levels and reducing insulin resistance. Physical activity and fewer sitting hours were found to significantly reduce colon cancer risk in both the distal and proximal colon, although results for rectal cancer were mixed.[46][19][49]

Increasing exercise after non-metastatic colorectal cancer treatment was associated with reduced risk of colorectal cancer-specific and overall mortality for women and men[50][51] and lower rectum cancer mortality[19]. In a meta-analysis of prospective studies both prediagnosis and postdiagnosis physical activity was found to reduce the risk of colorectal cancer-specific mortality and all-cause mortality.[52]

Back to top

## 5.2.2 Summary of key messages based on the World Cancer Research Fund/American Institute for Cancer Research and updated evidence

### 5.2.2.1 Table 2.3. Key messages regarding primary prevention of colorectal cancer

| Factor | Key message |
|---|---|
| Smoking | Avoid tobacco smoking. |
| Alcohol | (Men) Avoid alcohol or limit intake to less than 2 standard drinks per day. |
| | (Women) Avoid alcohol or limit intake to less than 1 standard drink per day. |
| | Increase intake of cereal fibre, particularly poorly soluble cereal. |
| | Moderate amounts of lean red meat (up to 100 g/day) can be eaten as part of a mixed diet. Charring of red meat is best avoided and consumption of processed meats should be limited. |
| | Garlic is probably protective against cancer. |
| | Milk is probably protective against cancer. |
| | There is limited evidence that foods containing iron increase risk of cancer. |
| | There is limited evidence that cheese intake increases risk of cancer. |

| Factor | Key message |
|---|---|
| Diet | There is limited evidence that foods containing animal fats increase risk of cancer. |
| | There is limited evidence that foods containing sugars increase risk of cancer. |
| | There is limited evidence that non-starchy vegetables and fruits reduce risk of cancer. |
| | There is limited evidence that foods containing vitamin D reduce risk of cancer. |
| | There is no evidence that foods containing folate reduce risk of cancer. |
| | There is no evidence that fish intake reduces risk of cancer. |
| | There is no evidence that foods containing selenium reduce risk of cancer. |
| Body fatness | Maintain weight in healthy BMI range. |
| | Avoid abdominal fatness. |
| Physical activity | Aim for 30–60 minutes/day of moderate physical activity. |
| | Avoid sedentary behaviour. |

Source: World Cancer Research Fund and American Institute for Cancer Research SER[1] and CUP[2] reports.

Next section: Aspirin for prevention of colorectal cancer

Back to top

## 5.2.3 References

1. ↑ 1.00 1.01 1.02 1.03 1.04 1.05 1.06 1.07 1.08 1.09 1.10 1.11 1.12 1.13 World Cancer Research Fund/American Institute for Cancer Research. *Food, nutrition, physical activity and the prevention of cancer: a global perspective.* 2007 Available from: http://www.dietandcancerreport.org/.
2. ↑ 2.00 2.01 2.02 2.03 2.04 2.05 2.06 2.07 2.08 2.09 2.10 2.11 2.12 2.13 2.14 2.15 2.16 2.17 2.18 2.19 2.20 2.21 2.22 2.23 2.24 2.25 2.26 2.27 World Cancer Research Fund/American Institute for Cancer Research. *Continuous Update Project Report: Food, Nutrition, Physical Activity, and the Prevention of Colorectal Cancer.* WCRF; 2011.
3. ↑ Liang PS, Chen TY, Giovannucci E. *Cigarette smoking and colorectal cancer incidence and mortality: systematic review and meta-analysis.* Int J Cancer 2009 May 15;124(10):2406-15 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19142968.
4. ↑ Leufkens AM, Van Duijnhoven FJ, Siersema PD, Boshuizen HC, Vrieling A, Agudo A, et al. *Cigarette smoking and colorectal cancer risk in the European Prospective Investigation into Cancer and Nutrition study.* Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2011 Feb;9(2):137-44 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21029790.
5. ↑ Freedman ND, Abnet CC, Caporaso NE, Fraumeni JF Jr, Murphy G, Hartge P, et al. *Impact of changing US cigarette smoking patterns on incident cancer: risks of 20 smoking-related cancers among the women and men of the NIH-AARP cohort.* Int J Epidemiol 2016 Jun;45(3):846-56 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26411408.
6. ↑ Secretan B, Straif K, Baan R, Grosse Y, El Ghissassi F, Bouvard V, et al. *A review of human carcinogens--Part E: tobacco, areca nut, alcohol, coal smoke, and salted fish.* Lancet Oncol 2009 Nov;10(11):1033-4 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19891056.

7. ↑ 7.0 7.1 7.2 Parkin DM, Boyd L, Walker LC. *16. The fraction of cancer attributable to lifestyle and environmental factors in the UK in 2010.* Br J Cancer 2011 Dec 6;105 Suppl 2:S77-81 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22158327.
8. ↑ Schlesinger S, Lieb W, Koch M, Fedirko V, Dahm CC, Pischon T, et al. *Body weight gain and risk of colorectal cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis of observational studies.* Obes Rev 2015 Jul;16 (7):607-19 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25925734.
9. ↑ 9.0 9.1 Aleksandrova K, Nimptsch K, Pischon T. *Obesity and colorectal cancer.* Front Biosci (Elite Ed) 2013 Jan 1;5:61-77 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23276970.
10. ↑ 10.0 10.1 Gribovskaja-Rupp I, Kosinski L, Ludwig KA. *Obesity and colorectal cancer.* Clin Colon Rectal Surg 2011 Dec;24(4):229-43 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23204938.
11. ↑ 11.0 11.1 Whitlock K, Gill RS, Birch DW, Karmali S. *The Association between Obesity and Colorectal Cancer.* Gastroenterol Res Pract 2012;2012:768247 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed /23304128.
12. ↑ 12.0 12.1 Ma Y, Yang Y, Wang F, Zhang P, Shi C, Zou Y, et al. *Obesity and risk of colorectal cancer: a systematic review of prospective studies.* PLoS One 2013;8(1):e53916 Available from: http://www.ncbi. nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23349764.
13. ↑ 13.0 13.1 Boeing H. *Obesity and cancer--the update 2013.* Best Pract Res Clin Endocrinol Metab 2013 Apr;27(2):219-27 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23731883.
14. ↑ Heo M, Kabat GC, Strickler HD, Lin J, Hou L, Stefanick ML, et al. *Optimal cutoffs of obesity measures in relation to cancer risk in postmenopausal women in the Women's Health Initiative Study.* J Womens Health (Larchmt) 2015 Mar;24(3):218-27 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25587642.
15. ↑ 15.0 15.1 Sinicrope FA, Foster NR, Sargent DJ, O'Connell MJ, Rankin C. *Obesity is an independent prognostic variable in colon cancer survivors.* Clin Cancer Res 2010 Mar 15;16(6):1884-93 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20215553.
16. ↑ Ahnen DJ, Wade SW, Jones WF, Sifri R, Mendoza Silveiras J, Greenamyer J, et al. *The increasing incidence of young-onset colorectal cancer: a call to action.* Mayo Clin Proc 2014 Feb;89(2):216-24 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24393412.
17. ↑ Patel P, De P. *Trends in colorectal cancer incidence and related lifestyle risk factors in 15-49-year-olds in Canada, 1969-2010.* Cancer Epidemiol 2016 Jun;42:90-100 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov /pubmed/27060626.
18. ↑ 18.0 18.1 Topping DL, Clifton PM. *Short-chain fatty acids and human colonic function: roles of resistant starch and nonstarch polysaccharides.* Physiol Rev 2001 Jul;81(3):1031-64 Available from: http://www.ncbi. nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11427691.
19. ↑ 19.0 19.1 19.2 Morrison DS, Parr CL, Lam TH, Ueshima H, Kim HC, Jee SH, et al. *Behavioural and metabolic risk factors for mortality from colon and rectum cancer: analysis of data from the Asia-Pacific Cohort Studies Collaboration.* Asian Pac J Cancer Prev 2013;14(2):1083-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi. nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23621191.
20. ↑ Anderson AS, Key TJ, Norat T, Scoccianti C, Cecchini M, Berrino F, et al. *European Code against Cancer 4th Edition: Obesity, body fatness and cancer.* Cancer Epidemiol 2015 Dec;39 Suppl 1:S34-45 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26205840.

21. ↑ De Bruijn KM, Arends LR, Hansen BE, Leeflang S, Ruiter R, van Eijck CH. *Systematic review and meta-analysis of the association between diabetes mellitus and incidence and mortality in breast and colorectal cancer.* Br J Surg 2013 Oct;100(11):1421-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24037561.
22. ↑ Limburg PJ, Anderson KE, Johnson TW, Jacobs DR Jr, Lazovich D, Hong CP, et al. *Diabetes mellitus and subsite-specific colorectal cancer risks in the Iowa Women's Health Study.* Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 2005 Jan;14(1):133-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15668486.
23. ↑ Lim E, Jones IT, Gibbs P, McLaughlan S, Faragher I, Skinner I, et al. *Subsite-specific colorectal cancer in diabetic and nondiabetic patients.* Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 2005 Jun;14(6):1579-82 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15941979.
24. ↑ Cassidy A, Bingham SA, Cummings JH. *Starch intake and colorectal cancer risk: an international comparison.* Br J Cancer 1994 May;69(5):937-42 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8180027.
25. ↑ Hague A, Manning AM, Hanlon KA, Huschtscha LI, Hart D, Paraskeva C. *Sodium butyrate induces apoptosis in human colonic tumour cell lines in a p53-independent pathway: implications for the possible role of dietary fibre in the prevention of large-bowel cancer.* Int J Cancer 1993 Sep 30;55(3):498-505 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8397167.
26. ↑ Koushik A, Hunter DJ, Spiegelman D, Beeson WL, van den Brandt PA, Buring JE, et al. *Fruits, vegetables, and colon cancer risk in a pooled analysis of 14 cohort studies.* J Natl Cancer Inst 2007 Oct 3;99(19):1471-83 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17895473.
27. ↑ Aune D, Chan DS, Lau R, Vieira R, Greenwood DC, Kampman E, et al. *Dietary fibre, whole grains, and risk of colorectal cancer: systematic review and dose-response meta-analysis of prospective studies.* BMJ 2011 Nov 10;343:d6617 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22074852.
28. ↑ Bakken T, Braaten T, Olsen A, Kyrø C, Lund E, Skeie G. *Consumption of Whole-Grain Bread and Risk of Colorectal Cancer among Norwegian Women (the NOWAC Study).* Nutrients 2016 Jan 13;8(1) Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26771634.
29. ↑ Kyrø C, Skeie G, Loft S, Landberg R, Christensen J, Lund E, et al. *Intake of whole grains from different cereal and food sources and incidence of colorectal cancer in the Scandinavian HELGA cohort.* Cancer Causes Control 2013 Jul;24(7):1363-74 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23624874.
30. ↑ [30.0] [30.1] Ruder EH, Thiébaut AC, Thompson FE, Potischman N, Subar AF, Park Y, et al. *Adolescent and mid-life diet: risk of colorectal cancer in the NIH-AARP Diet and Health Study.* Am J Clin Nutr 2011 Dec;94(6):1607-19 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22071715.
31. ↑ [31.0] [31.1] Norat T, Bingham S, Ferrari P, Slimani N, Jenab M, Mazuir M, et al. *Meat, fish, and colorectal cancer risk: the European Prospective Investigation into cancer and nutrition.* J Natl Cancer Inst 2005 Jun 15;97(12):906-16 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15956652.
32. ↑ Chan DS, Lau R, Aune D, Vieira R, Greenwood DC, Kampman E, et al. *Red and processed meat and colorectal cancer incidence: meta-analysis of prospective studies.* PLoS One 2011;6(6):e20456 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21674008.
33. ↑ Egeberg R, Olsen A, Christensen J, Halkjær J, Jakobsen MU, Overvad K, et al. *Associations between red meat and risks for colon and rectal cancer depend on the type of red meat consumed.* J Nutr 2013 Apr;143(4):464-72 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23427329.
34. ↑ [34.0] [34.1] [34.2] Miller PE, Lazarus P, Lesko SM, Cross AJ, Sinha R, Laio J, et al. *Meat-related compounds and colorectal cancer risk by anatomical subsite.* Nutr Cancer 2013;65(2):202-26 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23441608.

35. ↑ International Agency for Research on Cancer IARC Working Group. *Volume 114: Consumption of red meat and processed meat.*; 2015.
36. ↑ Bouvard V, Loomis D, Guyton KZ, Grosse Y, Ghissassi FE, Benbrahim-Tallaa L, et al. *Carcinogenicity of consumption of red and processed meat.* Lancet Oncol 2015 Dec;16(16):1599-600 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26514947.
37. ↑ Ferrucci LM, Sinha R, Huang WY, Berndt SI, Katki HA, Schoen RE, et al. *Meat consumption and the risk of incident distal colon and rectal adenoma.* Br J Cancer 2012 Jan 31;106(3):608-16 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22166801.
38. ↑ Parr CL, Hjartåker A, Lund E, Veierød MB. *Meat intake, cooking methods and risk of proximal colon, distal colon and rectal cancer: the Norwegian Women and Cancer (NOWAC) cohort study.* Int J Cancer 2013 Sep 1;133(5):1153-63 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23401013.
39. ↑ Murphy N, Norat T, Ferrari P, Jenab M, Bueno-de-Mesquita B, Skeie G, et al. *Consumption of dairy products and colorectal cancer in the European Prospective Investigation into Cancer and Nutrition (EPIC).* PLoS One 2013;8(9):e72715 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24023767.
40. ↑ Aune D, Lau R, Chan DS, Vieira R, Greenwood DC, Kampman E, et al. *Dairy products and colorectal cancer risk: a systematic review and meta-analysis of cohort studies.* Ann Oncol 2012 Jan;23(1):37-45 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21617020.
41. ↑ Bristow SM, Bolland MJ, MacLennan GS, Avenell A, Grey A, Gamble GD, et al. *Calcium supplements and cancer risk: a meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials.* Br J Nutr 2013 Oct;110(8):1384-93 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23601861.
42. ↑ [42.0] [42.1] Baron JA, Barry EL, Mott LA, Rees JR, Sandler RS, Snover DC, et al. *A Trial of Calcium and Vitamin D for the Prevention of Colorectal Adenomas.* N Engl J Med 2015 Oct 15;373(16):1519-30 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26465985.
43. ↑ Zhu JZ, Wang YM, Zhou QY, Zhu KF, Yu CH, Li YM. *Systematic review with meta-analysis: alcohol consumption and the risk of colorectal adenoma.* Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2014 Aug;40(4):325-37 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24943329.
44. ↑ Pandeya N, Wilson LF, Webb PM, Neale RE, Bain CJ, Whiteman DC. *Cancers in Australia in 2010 attributable to the consumption of alcohol.* Aust N Z J Public Health 2015 Oct;39(5):408-13 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26437723.
45. ↑ Scoccianti C, Cecchini M, Anderson AS, Berrino F, Boutron-Ruault MC, Espina C, et al. *European Code against Cancer 4th Edition: Alcohol drinking and cancer.* Cancer Epidemiol 2015 Dec;39 Suppl 1:S67-74 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26115567.
46. ↑ [46.0] [46.1] [46.2] Boyle T, Keegel T, Bull F, Heyworth J, Fritschi L. *Physical activity and risks of proximal and distal colon cancers: a systematic review and meta-analysis.* J Natl Cancer Inst 2012 Oct 17;104(20):1548-61 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22914790.
47. ↑ [47.0] [47.1] Robsahm TE, Aagnes B, Hjartåker A, Langseth H, Bray FI, Larsen IK. *Body mass index, physical activity, and colorectal cancer by anatomical subsites: a systematic review and meta-analysis of cohort studies.* Eur J Cancer Prev 2013 Nov;22(6):492-505 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23591454.
48. ↑ Keum N, Bao Y, Smith-Warner SA, Orav J, Wu K, Fuchs CS, et al. *Association of Physical Activity by Type and Intensity With Digestive System Cancer Risk.* JAMA Oncol 2016 Sep 1;2(9):1146-53 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27196375.

49. ↑ Simons CC, Hughes LA, van Engeland M, Goldbohm RA, van den Brandt PA, Weijenberg MP. *Physical activity, occupational sitting time, and colorectal cancer risk in the Netherlands cohort study.* Am J Epidemiol 2013 Mar 15;177(6):514-30 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23420352.
50. ↑ Meyerhardt JA, Giovannucci EL, Holmes MD, Chan AT, Chan JA, Colditz GA, et al. *Physical activity and survival after colorectal cancer diagnosis.* J Clin Oncol 2006 Aug 1;24(22):3527-34 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16822844.
51. ↑ Meyerhardt JA, Giovannucci EL, Ogino S, Kirkner GJ, Chan AT, Willett W, et al. *Physical activity and male colorectal cancer survival.* Arch Intern Med 2009 Dec 14;169(22):2102-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20008694.
52. ↑ Je Y, Jeon JY, Giovannucci EL, Meyerhardt JA. *Association between physical activity and mortality in colorectal cancer: a meta-analysis of prospective cohort studies.* Int J Cancer 2013 Oct 15;133(8):1905-13 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23580314.

Back to top

# 5.3 Chemopreventive candidate agents

**Contents**

# 5.3.1 Background

Chemoprevention is the regular use of drugs to prevent or delay the development of cancers. As chemoprevention strategies require regular use of agents over many years by people who are disease free and may never develop cancers, chemopreventive agents need to be easily administered with a convenient dosing schedule, inexpensive and with very few side effects.

Trials of chemoprevention (calcium, some vitamin supplementation, selenium, statins) have provided mixed evidence of benefit. The strong evidence for benefit has emerged from observational studies of exposure to nonsteroidal anti inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), especially aspirin.

Results of randomised controlled trials (RCTs) of aspirin in the primary and secondary prevention of colorectal cancer and adenomas are now available and point to a benefit similar to that associated with screening by colonoscopy in people under 70 years of age. Aspirin is cheap, readily available, has other benefits such as cardiovascular protective effects, and a relatively benign side-effects profile, although these side effects increase with age and the benefits for cancer prevention occur only after a latent period of 10 years and are less studied in older people, especially women.

# 5.3.2 Aspirin

## 5.3.2.1 Systematic review evidence

*In an asymptomatic population at average risk or increased risk of colorectal cancer, what is the cost-benefit ratio of prophylactic Aspirin use in reducing the mortality and incidence of colorectal cancer? (PPR1)*

A systematic review was undertaken to evaluate the effectiveness of aspirin in the primary prevention of colorectal cancer in people at average or higher risk. A total of 10 clinical trials reported in 17 articles[1][2][3][4][5][6][7][8][9][10][11][12][13][14][15][16][17] examining effects of aspirin on colorectal cancer outcomes met the criteria and were included in the systematic review. The trials included were specifically of average or high-risk populations.

The search strategy, inclusion and exclusion criteria, and quality assessment are described in detail in the Technical report.

Back to top

### 5.3.2.1.1 Average-risk population

Five randomised controlled trials compared aspirin use with placebo or no aspirin use.[3][4][5][6][9][10][11][17] Four were at low risk of bias[3][4][9][10][11][17] and one, the British Doctors Aspirin Trial (BDAT),[6] was at high risk of bias.

Three trials recruited participants with a transient ischemic attack or minor ischaemic stroke or those who were at high risk of ischaemic heart disease. Primary endpoints in these trials were various cardiovascular endpoints.[9][10][11][17] Two trials recruited healthy participants.[3][4][5][6]

Based on a weighted average calculation, the average trial duration (duration taking aspirin) was 8.9 years.[3][4][5][6][9][10][11][17]

A limitation to these trials is that none of them had colorectal cancer as the primary endpoint. Secondary study outcomes included colorectal cancer incidence and mortality, gastrointestinal side effects, incidence of other cancers, and fatal or non-fatal cardiovascular events. Most studies did not report on aspirin exposure after the randomised interventional period.

Back to top

#### 5.3.2.1.1.1 Colorectal cancer incidence

Three trials reported a statistically significant reduction in colorectal cancer incidence in average-risk populations.[3][4][5][6][10][11]

The BDAT trial showed a statistically significant reduction in colorectal cancer incidence in those taking 300 mg /day aspirin, compared with no aspirin, at 23 years' follow-up (hazard ratio [HR] 0.7, p = 0.04).[7] The Women's Health Study, which used an aspirin dosage of 100 mg on alternate days, found a statistically significant reduction in colorectal cancer incidence after 16 years' follow-up (HR 0.80, p = 0.021), but not after 10 years' follow-up (RR 0.97).[3][4][5] No difference was found for colon polyps (type not specified) between groups (HR 1.00), though the trial was not colonoscopically controlled.[3][4][5]

Pooled data from the BDAT and the United Kingdom Transient Ischaemic Attack Trial (UK-TIA) trials with up to 23 years' follow-up[7] showed that aspirin use (BDAT used 300 mg/day or 500 mg/day, UK TIA used 300 mg/day or 1200 mg/day) demonstrated a reduction in colorectal cancer incidence (HR 0.74, p = 0.02). This reduction was not seen in the first 10 years after intervention (HR 0.92; 95% confidence interval [CI] 0.56 to1.49). In non-pooled data from the UK-TIA and BDAT trials individually, each showed a reduction in colorectal cancer incidence only after 10 years of follow up (HR 0.50, p = 0.05 and HR 0.64, p = 0.05, respectively).[6][10][11] Pooled analysis of data from the BDAT, SALT, TPT and UK-TIA trials also showed a significant reduction in colorectal cancer incidence in those taking aspirin during the trial period and followed for a median of 18.3

years (HR 0.75 p = 0.02).[8] Subgroup analysis of this pooled dataset also showed that 2.5–5 years of aspirin consumption was just as beneficial as ≥ 5 years of aspirin consumption (HR 0.69 and 0.62 respectively, p = 0.003 for both).[8] In addition, subgroup analysis on the location of cancer showed that, reflecting the incidence data, aspirin was beneficial for preventing proximal colon cancer (HR 0.45, p = 0.001), but not for distal colon cancer (HR 1.10, p = 0.66) or rectal cancer (HR 0.90, p = 0.58), with a median of 18.3 years' follow-up.

It should be noted that these trials (BDAT and UK-TIA) were the pivotal trials demonstrating the secondary protective effects of aspirin against cardiovascular disease. Thus, the benefits of taking aspirin for cancer prevention can be expected to be enhanced by the benefits of protection against adverse cardiovascular outcomes (transient ischaemic attacks, stroke, and heart attacks), especially in those who carry excess risk of these latter outcomes. Modelling of results from the cardiovascular prevention trials to date shows that the cancer prevention effects dominate over the cardiovascular benefits. It must be noted that in these trials the participants were mainly men.[18]

In modelling data reported on the Women's Health Study, aspirin (mean duration 10.1 years) was shown to be associated with a modest decreased 15-year risk of colorectal cancer in women under 65 years, and the highest net benefit was only seen in the 10-year risk of colorectal cancer in women ≥ 65 years of age (number needed to treat [NNT] = 369). In this dataset, cardiovascular benefits dominated over colorectal cancer incidence.[4]

Back to top

### 5.3.2.1.1.2 Colorectal cancer mortality

Four trials reported individual data for mortality due to colorectal cancer in the average-risk population.[6][9][10][11][17] Only one reported a significant benefit (reduction) in colorectal cancer mortality for those taking aspirin with 17–20 years of follow-up (odds ratio [OR] 0.73; 95% CI 0.49 to 1.10).[9]

A meta-analysis of these trials found aspirin to be beneficial with a median of 18.3 years follow-up (OR 0.66, p = 0.002).[8] Subgroup analysis reported that this benefit was only for those who took 300 mg or less per day during the trial period.[8] The benefit from aspirin consumption was seen irrespective of aspirin consumption duration (≥ 2.5 years' versus ≥ 5 years' duration).

In addition, subgroup analysis on the location of colorectal cancer showed that, reflecting the incidence data, aspirin reduced mortality for proximal colon cancer (HR 0.34, p = 0.001), but not for distal colon (HR 1.21, p = 0.54) or rectal cancer (HR 0.80, p = 0.35), with a median 18.3 years' follow-up.[8] The benefit for proximal cancer is particularly important, given the concern that colonoscopic screening in many studies has not been shown to be protective against proximal colorectal cancer. This failure is thought to be due to poor bowel preparations, incomplete examinations, flat (sessile serrated) polyps easily overlooked, and difficulty completely removing these polyps.

The Women's Health Study[4] did not report on mortality.

Back to top

#### 5.3.2.1.1.3 Adverse effects

Two trials reported adverse effects from aspirin consumption.[3][4][5][10][11]

In the Women's Health Study, those taking aspirin experienced greater gastrointestinal bleeding and peptic ulcers (HR 1.14 and 1.17 respectively, $p < 0.001$) compared with the placebo group.

In UK-TIA, participants taking aspirin at a dosage of 300 mg/day or 1200 mg/day experienced significantly greater gastrointestinal haemorrhage, compared with the placebo group (300 mg/day: OR 1.32; 95% CI 1.06 to 1.65; 1200 mg/day: OR 1.54, 95% CI 1.25 to 1.89).[10][11] Participants taking aspirin also experienced greater upper gastrointestinal symptoms (OR 1.32, $p < 0.05$), and more so with a higher aspirin dose of 1200 mg/day (OR 1.54, $p < 0.05$ compared with 300 mg/day).[10][11] Fatal gastrointestinal bleeding rates did not differ between aspirin and placebo groups.[19]

Trials documented adverse effects well during intervention, but less well during the long periods of follow-up. However, aspirin side effects related to long-term use in other large population studies are well documented, and there is little reason to consider that dose-equivalent side effects would be different for the participants in the trials considered.

Many commentators question the clinical impact of side effects (lower) than the incidence and mortality benefits (higher), leading to analyses that provide estimates of side effects weighted downwards.[4] These point to higher benefit estimates than analyses that do not take this into account.

Back to top

### 5.3.2.1.2 High-risk population

Five randomised controlled trials compared daily aspirin use with placebo.[1][2][12][14][15][16] Two trials compared lower-dose aspirin (defined as 81 mg/day or 160 mg/day) and higher-dose aspirin (defined as 300 mg /day or 325 mg/day) with placebo.[12][14] The remaining trials compared higher-dose aspirin with placebo (325 mg/day, 600 mg/day, or 300mg/day, respectively).[1][2][15][16] All studies were at low risk of bias.[1][2][12][14][15][16]

Eligibility requirements for the trials differed. In the Colorectal Adenoma/Carcinoma Prevention Programme 2 (CAPP2) trial, eligible participants were > 25 years of age and proven carriers of a pathologic mismatch-repair mutation or members of a family that met the Amsterdam diagnostic criteria and had a personal history of a cured Lynch syndrome neoplasm but with at least some residual colon or rectum.[1][2] Colonoscopic examination and clearance of polyps within 3 months after recruitment were prerequisites to study entry. The Aspirin/Folate Polyp Prevention Study (AFPPS), the Association pour la Prevention par l'Aspirine du Cancer Colorectal (APACC) study, and the United Kingdom Colorectal Adenoma Prevention Study (ukCAP) recruited participants who had a recent history of sporadic colorectal adenomas and excluded individuals with a history of invasive large-bowel cancer.[12][14][15]

The Colorectal Adenoma Prevention Study (Cancer and Leukemia Group B [CALGB]) trial specifically recruited patients who had been treated for colorectal cancer.[16] Other eligibility criteria for these four trials were similar – all excluded individuals with inflammatory bowel disease, those with a clinical need for aspirin treatment, and those who could not take aspirin.[16][12][14][15]

The trial duration ranged from 1 month to 67 months. Based on a weighted average calculation, the average trial duration (duration taking aspirin) was 2.3 years.[12][14][15][1][2][16]

Study primary outcomes included the detection of at least one adenoma or colorectal carcinoma at follow up. Four trials used adenoma incidence as a primary endpoint.[16][12][14][15] The CAPP2 trial[1][2] had a mean follow-up of 5.5 years, and the other trials had a median follow-up between 31.3 and 47.2 months.[16][12][14][15]

Back to top

### 5.3.2.1.2.1 Colorectal cancer incidence

For the CAPP2 trial in a high-risk population, no benefit in colorectal cancer incidence was reported after mean follow-up of 29.1 months or 66.1 months (RR 1.0; HR 0.63, p = 0.12, respectively) using intention-to-treat analysis.[1][2] The most convincing benefit was found with per-protocol analysis, where aspirin reduced colorectal cancer incidence after ≥ 2 years on trial treatment compared with placebo (HR 0.41, p = 0.02), with a mean of 66.1 months follow up.[1][2] Analyses including all Lynch Syndrome-associated cancers (colorectal and other cancers) provided the strongest outcome benefit. Both intention-to-treat and per-protocol analyses reported significant benefit after ≥ 2 years on trial treatment compared with placebo (HR 0.65, p = 0.05 and HR 0.45, p = 0.005 respectively) for all Lynch Syndrome-associated cancers.[1][2] Note that there was no effect on adenomas, suggesting that the effect was on the progression of adenomas to cancers.

The AFPPS, APACC, CALGB, and ukCAP trials only report incidence of adenoma and advanced lesions.[16][12][14][15] While the primary endpoint of these trials was the incidence of new adenomas following randomisation and during follow-up, in the pooled meta-analysis, aspirin was shown to significantly reduce the risk of adenoma when comparing any dose of aspirin with placebo (RR 0.83, p = 0.012).[13] A reduction in advanced lesion risk was also reported when comparing any dose of aspirin with placebo (RR 0.72, p = 0.0046) in pooled meta-analysis.[13] In the individual trials, a reduction in adenoma incidence for any dose of aspirin was reported for the CALGB (RR 0.61, 95% CI 0.44 to 0.86)[16] and ukCAP (RR 0.79, 95% CI 0.63 to 0.99) trials[15] only (325 mg /day and 300 mg/day, respectively). However, a reduction in adenoma incidence for any dose of aspirin was not observed in the AFPPS (RR 0.88, p > 0.05)[12] or APACC (RR 0.95, p > 0.05)[14] trials. In the individual trials, a reduction in advanced lesions incidence was reported only in the ukCAP trial (RR 0.63; 95% CI 0.43 to 0.91), but then only for any dose of aspirin compared with placebo.[15]

A significant reduction in the risk of any colorectal adenoma (RR 0.83, p = 0.012) was also reported in pooled meta-analysis comparing only low-dose aspirin (81 mg or 160 mg/day) with placebo in the AFPPS and APACC trials.[13] No risk reduction was reported in pooled data comparing only low-dose aspirin (81 mg or 160 mg/day) with placebo for advanced lesion (RR 0.83, p = 0.57) in the AFPPS and APACC trials.[13] As individual trials, significant risk reduction in the risk of any colorectal adenoma was only reported for the AFPPS trial (RR 0.81; 95% CI 0.69 to 0.96).[12]

A significant risk reduction was reported for advanced lesions when comparing higher-dose aspirin (300 mg or 325 mg/day) with placebo in pooled meta-analysis (RR 0.71, p = 0.0089),[13] but no such difference was found for any colorectal adenoma (RR 0.85, p = 0.099) in the AFPPS, CALGB, ukCAP and APACC trials.[13]

In pooled analysis of the adenoma trials, rates of colorectal cancer did not differ significantly between treatment groups: 9 cases (0.54%, N = 1678) were diagnosed among participants taking aspirin (any dose), compared with 8 cases (0.62%, N = 1289) diagnosed in the placebo groups (p = 0.81).[13]

Back to top

#### 5.3.2.1.2.2 Colorectal cancer mortality

None of the five trials reported colorectal cancer mortality data in the high risk population.[1][2][12][14][15][16]

#### 5.3.2.1.2.3 Adverse effects

In pooled analysis of the AFPPS, APACC, CALGB, and ukCAP trials, stroke was the only adverse event for which a significant (p = 0.002) reduction was reported in the aspirin treatment group compared with the placebo group.[13] The CAPP2 trial did not report statistical analysis of serious adverse events, but there was no numerical difference in adverse outcomes.[1][2]

Back to top

### 5.3.2.1.3 Additional considerations

#### 5.3.2.1.3.1 Non-RCT evidence

In addition to the evidence from RCTs evaluating long-term aspirin treatment in the prevention of various conditions, there is substantial and consistent evidence from case control studies and cohort studies to support the association between aspirin exposure and colorectal cancer prevention.[7][20]

### 5.3.2.1.3.2 Cardiovascular benefits

The aligned benefits of cardiovascular and cancer prevention, well demonstrated through the analysis of the BDAT and the UK-TIA, point to synergies in prevention, especially for those who have already sustained a TIA or myocardial ischaemic event. The US Preventive Services Task Force has quantified this benefit and, taking the cancer prevention into account, extends the advice on use of aspirin to also those whose risk of a cardiovascular event is at least a 10% over the following 10 years.[21]

Analysis of the range of data available suggest that the beneficial effects of aspirin are strongest for cancer prevention, dominating over cardiovascular prevention. However, the relative risks of each disease depend on age and sex.

### 5.3.2.1.3.3 Adverse effects

An analysis of benefits versus risks of aspirin[18] based on pooled data from the BDAT, SALT, TPT and UK-TIA trials,[8] which were predominantly for males, found that the benefits of aspirin use include a reduction in risk of cancer (including colorectal cancer), myocardial infarction and ischemic stroke. The harms include increased risk of haemorrhagic stroke, gastrointestinal bleeding and peptic ulcer. Overall, the estimates of the benefits outweigh the harms. The analysis[18] made the following conclusions:

- Taking aspirin for 15 years is five times more likely to reduce morbidity than increase morbidity.
- Taking aspirin for 10 years is 10 times more likely to prevent death than cause death at age 50 years and five times more likely at age 65 years.
- Among 50-year-old males, one death would be prevented for every 106 men taking aspirin for 10 years.
- Among 50-year-old females, one death would be prevented for every 213 women taking aspirin for 10 years.
- Among 65-year-old males, one death would be prevented for every 46 men taking aspirin for 10 years.
- Among 65-year-old females, one death would be prevented for every 89 women taking aspirin for 10 years.

The side effects of aspirin use are well known. The most useful evidence on treatment-related adverse effects of long-term use comes from sources other than RCTs, because long-term follow-up of studies assessing cancer prevention did not report side effects. From available evidence, it can be concluded that there is a dose relationship, with higher doses associated with more adverse events, and that the rate of adverse events is higher in people aged over 70 years. Covering the risk of gastrointestinal ulceration with a proton pump inhibition can be considered although the benefit with low dose aspirin is controversial.

The following should also be taken into consideration:

- There is non-clinical evidence that gastric mucosal injury is attenuated with repeated administration of aspirin over time.[22]
- Most of the trials excluded patients with risk factors for aspirin use. Therefore, recommendatons for individuals must take account relative contraindications to the use of aspirin.

Notwithstanding the findings of the CAPP2 trial,[1][2] the current dose recommended for prevention of Lynch Syndrome-associated cancers, including colorectal cancer, is 100 mg daily, based on evidence that this lower dose will be effective without the dose-related side effects of the higher dose used in CAPP2. This advice could be modified when results are reported from the current CAPP3 trial, which is investigating the optimal dose of aspirin.[23]

Back to top

## 5.3.2.2 Evidence summary and recommendations

### 5.3.2.2.1 Average-risk population evidence summary table

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| **Colorectal cancer incidence and mortality**<br>In the post hoc analyses of the cardiovascular prevention trials, predominantly in males, there was evidence for a real but small reduction in incidence and mortality from colorectal cancer commencing 10 years after starting aspirin. | I, II | [3], [24], [5], [6], [7], [8], [25], [10], [11], [17] |
| Evidence from all trials showed a significant reduction in the incidence of proximal colon cancer compared to distal colon cancer in those taking aspirin. Benefit is attenuated distally. | I, II | [5], [8] |
| It is not known if the colorectal cancer risk reduction and mortality reduction benefits can be extrapolated to populations without cardiovascular risk. The risk of aspirin in these average risk settings still needs more empirical data. | I | [7], [8] |
| **Aspirin commencement age**<br>Most of the studies recruited participants aged 50 years or older. Based on the age range of recruitment into the trials, the evidence supported commencing aspirin between the ages of 50 and 70 years. | I, II | [3], [24], [5], [6], [7], [8], [25], [10], [11], [17] |
| **Aspirin duration**<br>Taking aspirin for 2.5 years was shown to be just as effective as taking it for 5 years, when considering colorectal cancer incidence and mortality, but only after a latent period of 10 years. The benefit extends to older ages with longer duration of use. | I | [8] |
| **Aspirin dose and frequency**<br>A low dose of aspirin (100–300 mg per day) is as effective at reducing colorectal mortality as a higher dose. | II | [8], [10], [11] |

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| **Potential harms of aspirin**<br><br>Aspirin was shown to be associated with increased incidence of the following adverse events:<br><br>■ dyspepsia<br>■ peptic ulcer<br>■ bleeding diathesis<br>■ gastrointestinal haemorrhage (such as associated with use of oral anticoagulants or antiplatelet agents).<br><br>Aspirin should be avoided in those with:<br><br>■ aspirin allergy<br>■ renal impairment. | I, II | [3], [24], [5], [18], [10], [11] |
| **Overall health benefit over harm**<br><br>The overall health benefit over risk depends on the likelihood of a clinically significant bleeding risk, particularly gastrointestinal and intracerebral haemorrhage. The likelihood of health benefit was 5 times greater than the health harm. The likelihood of preventing death is 5 to 10 times greater than the likelihood of causing death.<br><br>Aspirin demonstrated a benefit in reducing thrombotic strokes. | I, II | [8], [18] |
| **Sex and age considerations**<br><br>The evidence reported from the cardiovascular risk trials was from a predomintantly male population (92%).<br><br>In the only trial conducted in an average-risk population with cancer as the primary endpoint (which recruited only women at average risk of cardiovascular disease and cancer), there was evidence of colorectal cancer prevention in women under 65 years taking alternate-day 100 mg aspirin. There was a suggestion of overall health benefit in women over 65 years, but not from colorectal cancer prevention. | I, II | [3], [24], [5], [6], [7], [8], [25], [10], [11] |

### 5.3.2.2.2 High-risk population evidence summary table

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| **Colorectal cancer incidence and mortality**<br><br>In the high-risk population (notably, people with Lynch Syndrome), benefits for aspirin compliers were unequivocally greater than risks. | II | [1], [2] |
| **Aspirin dose and frequency**<br><br>The dose demonstrated in the pivotal CAPP2 trial was 600 mg daily taken for at least 2 years. | II | [1], [2] |
| **Adverse events**<br><br>The only adverse event reporting a significant reduction in participants on aspirin compared to placebo was stroke. The CAPP2 trial did not report statistical analysis of serious adverse events but numerically there was no difference in adverse outcomes. | I, II | [1], [2], [13] |

### 5.3.2.2.3 Recommendations

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| For all people aged 50–70 years who are at average risk of colorectal cancer, aspirin should be actively considered to prevent colorectal cancer. A low dose (100–300 mg per day) is recommended for at least 2.5 years, commencing at age 50 to 70 years. The benefit may extend to older ages with longer duration of use. Benefit for cancer prevention (though shorter for cardiovascular risk) is evident only 10 years after initiation so a life expectancy of at least 10 years should be taken into consideration in the advice to use aspirin.<br><br>The choice to take aspirin should be personalised based on age, sex and potential reduction in cardiovascular events, cerebrovascular events and thrombotic stroke. The individual should take into account the potential risks of taking aspirin. Aspirin should be avoided in patients with current dyspepsia, any history of peptic ulcer, aspirin allergy, bleeding diathesis, an increased risk of gastrointestinal haemorrhage (such as associated with use of oral anticoagulants or antiplatelet agents), or renal impairment.<br><br>The benefit in colorectal cancer risk reduction in women over 65 is less clear cut. However, based on limited data available, older women with cardiovascular risk factors may derive a greater overall benefit than harm. | **B** |

| Practice point |
| --- |
| Aspirin should be avoided in patients with uncontrolled hypertension. |

| Practice point |
| --- |
| Breath testing for *Helicobacter pylori* (and treatment for those who test positive) can also be considered, as gastrointestinal toxicity from aspirin is enhanced in the presence of *Helicobacter pylori*. |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
| --- | --- |
| People who are at high risk of colorectal cancer due to Lynch Syndrome carrier status should be advised to begin aspirin from the commencement of their colonoscopy screening (usually at age 25 years). | **A** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
| --- | --- |
| Non-syndromic familial cancer patients should be actively considered for aspirin, bearing in mind the possibility of adverse events.<br><br>600 mg/day has been shown to be effective, but lower dose (100 mg/day) may be as effective and is recommended based on the data available at the time of the systematic review. | **B** |

Back to top

### 5.3.2.2.3.1 Considerations in making these recommendations

RCT findings lead to the guarded conclusion that aspirin is effective in the primary prevention of colorectal cancer. After taking into account the observational epidemiological data and other potential benefits, we have made a strong recommendation to consider universal aspirin chemoprevention except where contraindicated, especially for those with excess cardiovascular risk.

Back to top

## 5.3.2.3 Benefits and harms

With appropriate consideration of risks and benefits for the individual, the benefits are considered to substantially outweigh the harms following implementation of these recommendations.

### 5.3.2.3.1 Health system implications of these recommendations

#### 5.3.2.3.1.1 Clinical practice

Aspirin is cheap and readily available. The major health system implication is the dissemination of this recommendation to primary care providers. Modelled benefits of colorectal cancer incidence can be anticipated, and due to the differential site-specific preventative benefits of aspirin (proximal) and colonoscopy (better for distal colorectal cancer), the two approaches can be considered complementary.

The national guidelines for managing absolute cardiovascular risk[26] do not recommend aspirin for primary prevention of cardiovascular disease. However, the analyses of the existing cardiovascular prevention trials and the Women's Health Study to now include cancer prevention (especially colorectal), add a new compelling perspective for the use of aspirin in preventative medicine. The current recommendations take a broader view of the benefits of aspirin to include people even at average risk of cardiovascular disease, because of the added benefits from cancer prevention.

Back to top

#### 5.3.2.3.1.2 Resourcing

Education for GPs on the risks and benefits will be needed to engage their support for the recommendations. Renal function will need to be measured if there is doubt about aspirin usage. It is anticipated most dispensing will be over the counter and user paid (rather than reimbursed by the Pharmaceutical Benefits Scheme).

Back to top

#### 5.3.2.3.1.3 Barriers to implementation

Aspirin is off patent and widely available. However, there professional education is needed about its appropriate use.

Back to top

## 5.3.2.4 Discussion

### 5.3.2.4.1 Unresolved issues

The following issues are unresolved:

- The optimal dose for colorectal cancer protection (100 mg/day, 300 mg/day or 600 mg/day) has not been identified. More data are needed before specific recommendations can be made.
- There is a lack of RCTs of aspirin in average-risk populations with CRC as the primary endpoint.
- There is no information on aspirin use in the elderly.
- There is no information on the optimal target age range (including starting and stopping ages) for aspirin use in average-risk populations.
- Better analysis is needed of dose-related risk versus benefit of aspirin use stratified by age as the balance of benefit and harm is unknown in those of 70 years.

Back to top

### 5.3.2.4.2 Studies currently underway

CAPP3[23] may demonstrate if lower doses of aspirin are as effective for people with Lynch syndrome. People with Lynch syndrome are encouraged to join trials investigating optimal aspirin dose.

The current ongoing ASPREE trial will add information on the primary prevention benefits of low-dose aspirin and its risks in older healthy individuals.[27]

Back to top

### 5.3.2.4.3 Future research priorities

Future research can help provide clarity about the unresolved questions in regards to the use of aspirin to prevent colorectal cancer.

Back to top

# 5.3.3 Other chemopreventive candidate agents

## 5.3.3.1 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

Two comprehensive literature reviews undertaken jointly by the World Cancer Research Fund and the American Institute for Cancer Research have reported the evidence for chemopreventive candidate agents in the prevention of cancers:

- the Second Expert Report (SER) on food, nutrition and physical activity in the prevention of cancer (2007)[28]

- the Continuous Update Project (CUP) review of food, nutrition and physical activity in the prevention of colorectal cancer (2011).[29]

The information on non-aspirin chemopreventive candidate agents in this chapter is primarily summarised from these reviews. Updated information was included, where available. New systematic reviews were not undertaken for this guideline.

Updated systematic reviews are currently in progress by World Cancer Research Fund/American Institute for Cancer Research.[i]

[i]These guidelines may be updated after 2017 as a result of updated guidance from the World Cancer Research Fund/American Institute for Cancer Research. The provisional publication dates for The Colorectal Cancer Report and the Expert Report are April 2017 and November 2017, respectively.

Back to top

### 5.3.3.1.1 Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)

There is strong evidence supporting the chemopreventive activity of non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) other than aspirin against colorectal cancer. However, data on the risk–benefit profile of these drugs are currently insufficient to allow definitive recommendations for their use at a population level for primary cancer prevention.

See High-risk familial syndromes chapter

| **Practice point** |
| --- |
| Where surgery is inappropriate for people with with familial adenomatous polyposis, an NSAID (e.g. sulindac) is recommended. (Kim B et al 2011) |

Back to top

### 5.3.3.1.2 Statins

The commonly prescribed cholesterol-lowering statin drugs have chemopreventive properties. They are very well tolerated and serious adverse effects of these drugs are rare.

Results from a prospective case-control study indicating that the use of statins for more than 5 years was associated with a reduced relative risk of colorectal cancer (OR 0.53; 95% CI 0.38 to 0.74) pointed to the potential colorectal cancer-protective properties of statins.[30] There has now been a number of trials with widely variable findings ranging from strong reduction in colorectal cancer risk to no association between statin usage and colorectal cancer risk. A recent meta-analysis of 27 clinical trials found no benefit from statin use for either incidence or recurrence of a number of cancers, including colorectal cancer.[31] Despite these inconsistent and findings, the accumulating clinical evidence still suggests a significant association between statin usage and reduced colorectal cancer risk.[31]

More nuanced studies suggest statin protection is strongest when consumed for > 3 years or > 5 years in modest doses (e.g. 40 mg simvastatin). The effects seem more reproducible where the lipophilic statins are used.[32]

However, the impact of statin use on colorectal adenoma remains unclear. Statin use was associated with an increased risk of adenoma recurrence in a secondary analysis of a prospective cohort study (RR 1.39; 95% CI 1.04 to 1.46).[33] A negative association between prior statin use and adenoma diagnosis (OR 0.40; 95% CI 0.24 to 0.76) has also been reported in a smaller retrospective case-control study.[34]

More data from randomised control trials with colorectal cancer as a primary end point are required before any clear recommendations for the use of statins for colorectal cancer prevention can be made.

| **Practice point** |
| --- |
| Without RCT evidence, statins cannot be recommended for chemoprevention at this time. |

Back to top

## 5.3.3.1.3 Metformin

Patients with diabetes mellitus have an increased risk of colorectal cancer.[35] Metformin is an oral hypoglycaemic drug, widely prescribed for the treatment of type-2 diabetes with few side effects. Metformin lowers intestinal glucose absorption, hepatic glucose production and improves insulin sensitivity in the peripheral tissues, leading to lower levels of circulating insulin.[36] Elevated insulin levels have been associated with an increased risk of colorectal cancer.

Two early meta-analyses of cancer incidence in patients with type-2 diabetes have both shown an inverse association between metformin use and colorectal cancer: RR 0.63 (95% CI 0.50 to 0.79, $p < 0.001$), and RR 0.66 (95% CI 0.49 to 0.88), respectively.[37][38] Since then numerous other meta-analyses and observational studies of metformin use and colorectal cancer risk in diabetes patients have been published showing a range of outcomes, but with a general trend towards metformin being protective. A recent systematic review of the effect on colorectal cancer risk and mortality amongst diabetes patients receiving and not receiving metformin

treatment reported a reduction of colorectal cancer incidence (OR 0.9, 95% CI 0.85 to 0.96) and improved survival (HR 0.68; 95% CI 0.58 to 0.81), while a recent retrospective chart review of 1304 colorectal cancer patients revealed that, amongst those patients with diabetes, those receiving metformin treatments survived significantly longer (overall survival 91% at year 1, 80.5% at year 2) than those taking other treatments (including diet control) (overall survival 80.6% at year 1, 67.4% at year 2) with multivariate analysis suggesting that colorectal cancer patients with diabetes taking treatments other than metformin (diet control, insulin or non-metformin oral hypoglycaemics) had a worse prognosis (HR 1.35; 95% CI 1.039 to 1.753, p = 0.025) than those taking metformin (HR 0.807; 95% CI 0.601 to 1.084, p = 0.154).[39]

Given the increased risk of colorectal cancer associated with type-2 diabetes, metformin's potent hypoglycaemic activity and protective activity against colorectal cancer make it an attractive drug for the management of diabetes patients, particularly amongst those who have had colorectal cancer. Whether metformin can be beneficial in reducing the incidence of or increase survival after colorectal cancer in non-diabetic patients remains unclear and randomised placebo controlled trials to address this question are needed. Of 11 currently active clinical trials listed in the US clinical trials registry that are evaluating the effect of metformin on colorectal cancer risk, four use metformin alone as the intervention, while the others involve the use of metformin as an adjunct to other interventions.

Overall, it is unclear whether metformin is protective against colorectal cancer in non-diabetic populations, either by reducing incidence or increasing survival.

| **Practice point** |
| --- |
| Without RCT evidence, metformin cannot be recommended for chemoprevention at this time. |

Back to top

### 5.3.3.1.4 Bisphosphonates

Bisphosphonates are used in treatment of osteoporosis, multiple myeloma, and bone overgrowth in malignancy, and for the prevention or treatment of solid tumour metastases to the bone.[40] Their anti-cancer activity is likely mediated through inhibition of angiogenesis and cell proliferation, induction of cell-cycle arrest and apoptosis in cancer cells, and immune cell activation.[40]

No RCTs have evaluated the use of bisphosphonates in the primary prevention of colorectal cancer. Several observational studies of bisphosphonate use have recorded cancer-related outcomes as secondary end-points. Three studies in women found quite substantial reductions in the risk of colorectal cancer.[41][42][43] In the first, receipt of 2–13 bisphosphonate prescriptions over a period of ≥ 5 years was associated with a reduced risk of colorectal cancer (O 0.84; 95% CI 0.71 to 1.00), while for those receiving ≥ 14 prescriptions over ≥ 5 years the colorectal cancer risk reduction was stronger (OR 0.78; 95% CI 0.65 to 0.94) with the effect significant only

where risedronic acid was the agent used.[41] In the second, colorectal cancer risk was reduced with the use of bisphosphonates for more than 1 year before diagnosis (OR 0.50; 95% CI 0.35 to 0.85).[42] In the third study, a reduced risk of colorectal cancer was again associated with bisphosphonates use (OR 0.50; 95% CI 0.35 to 0.71), with the reduced risk comprising the following components: a lower colorectal cancer incidence (adjusted HR 0.69; 95% CI 0.6 to 0.79) and a lower mortality rate post colorectal cancer diagnosis (HR 0.82; 95% CI 0.70 to 0.97).[43]

In contrast, analyses of data from the Women's Health Initiative and the Nurse's Health Study found no such reduction: adjusted HR 0.88 (95% CI 0.72 to 1.07, p = 0.19) and HR 1.04 (95% CI 0.82 to 1.33), respectively.[44] [45] Further, a recent analysis of the post-diagnostic use of oral bisphosphonates on colorectal cancer mortality revealed no benefits from bisphosphonate use (adjusted HR 1.11; 95% CI 0.80 to 1.54),[46] while a recent meta-analysis of 10 clinical studies comprising four case-control and six cohort studies showed borderline significant colorectal cancer risk reduction from bisphosphonate usage (pooled risk estimate 0.89; 95% CI 0.79 to 1.00, p=0.04).[47]

Meta-analyses of these observational studies are subject to a number of methological limitations that could compromise their findings with respect to colorectal cancer prevention:

- The number of studies was relatively small.
- Colorectal cancer was a secondary end point in studies on osteoporosis prevention.
- Men were underrepresented in study samples.
- A range of different doses and dose durations were used, making any recommendation difficult.

Bisphosphonates are associated with rare but serious adverse events. Evidence from appropriately designed RCTs, including evidence for treatment-related adverse events, is needed before guidance can be given on their use in the prevention of colorectal cancer. Currently there are no clinical trials in the US clinical trials registry investigating bisphosphonates and their impact on colorectal cancer.

More data from randomised control trials with colorectal cancer as a primary end point are required before any clear recommendations for the use of bisphosphonates for colorectal cancer prevention can be made.

| **Practice point** |
| --- |
| Bisphosphontes cannot be recommended for chemoprevention. |

Back to top

## 5.3.3.2 References

1. ↑ 1.00 1.01 1.02 1.03 1.04 1.05 1.06 1.07 1.08 1.09 1.10 1.11 1.12 1.13 1.14 1.15 Burn J, Bishop DT, Mecklin JP, Macrae F, Möslein G, Olschwang S, et al. *Effect of aspirin or resistant starch on colorectal neoplasia in the Lynch syndrome.* N Engl J Med 2008 Dec 11;359(24):2567-78 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19073976.
2. ↑ 2.00 2.01 2.02 2.03 2.04 2.05 2.06 2.07 2.08 2.09 2.10 2.11 2.12 2.13 2.14 2.15 Burn J, Gerdes AM, Macrae F, Mecklin JP, Moeslein G, Olschwang S, et al. *Long-term effect of aspirin on cancer risk in carriers of hereditary colorectal cancer: an analysis from the CAPP2 randomised controlled trial.* Lancet 2011 Dec 17;378(9809):2081-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22036019.
3. ↑ 3.00 3.01 3.02 3.03 3.04 3.05 3.06 3.07 3.08 3.09 3.10 3.11 3.12 Cook NR, Lee IM, Gaziano JM, Gordon D, Ridker PM, Manson JE, et al. *Low-dose aspirin in the primary prevention of cancer: the Women's Health Study: a randomized controlled trial.* JAMA 2005 Jul 6;294(1):47-55 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15998890.
4. ↑ 4.00 4.01 4.02 4.03 4.04 4.05 4.06 4.07 4.08 4.09 4.10 4.11 van Kruijsdijk RC, Visseren FL, Ridker PM, Dorresteijn JA, Buring JE, van der Graaf Y, et al. *Individualised prediction of alternate-day aspirin treatment effects on the combined risk of cancer, cardiovascular disease and gastrointestinal bleeding in healthy women.* Heart 2015 Mar;101(5):369-76 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25475110.
5. ↑ 5.00 5.01 5.02 5.03 5.04 5.05 5.06 5.07 5.08 5.09 5.10 5.11 5.12 Cook NR, Lee IM, Zhang SM, Moorthy MV, Buring JE. *Alternate-day, low-dose aspirin and cancer risk: long-term observational follow-up of a randomized trial.* Ann Intern Med 2013 Jul 16;159(2):77-85 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23856681.
6. ↑ 6.00 6.01 6.02 6.03 6.04 6.05 6.06 6.07 6.08 6.09 6.10 Peto R, Gray R, Collins R, Wheatley K, Hennekens C, Jamrozik K, et al. *Randomised trial of prophylactic daily aspirin in British male doctors.* Br Med J (Clin Res Ed) 1988 Jan 30;296(6618):313-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3125882.
7. ↑ 7.0 7.1 7.2 7.3 7.4 7.5 7.6 7.7 Flossmann E, Rothwell PM, British Doctors Aspirin Trial and the UK-TIA Aspirin Trial. *Effect of aspirin on long-term risk of colorectal cancer: consistent evidence from randomised and observational studies.* Lancet 2007 May 12;369(9573):1603-13 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17499602.
8. ↑ 8.00 8.01 8.02 8.03 8.04 8.05 8.06 8.07 8.08 8.09 8.10 8.11 8.12 8.13 8.14 Rothwell PM, Wilson M, Elwin CE, Norrving B, Algra A, Warlow CP, et al. *Long-term effect of aspirin on colorectal cancer incidence and mortality: 20-year follow-up of five randomised trials.* Lancet 2010 Nov 20;376(9754):1741-50 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20970847.
9. ↑ 9.0 9.1 9.2 9.3 9.4 9.5 9.6 Meade TW, Wilke HC, Kelleher CC, Roderick PJ, Brennan PJ, Wilson CW, et al. *Thrombosis prevention trial: randomised trial of low-intensity oral anticoagulation with warfarin and low-dose aspirin in the primary prevention of ischaemic heart disease in men at increased risk. The Medical Research Council's General Practice Research Framework.* Lancet 1998 Jan 24;351(9098):233-41 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9457092.

10. ↑ 10.00 10.01 10.02 10.03 10.04 10.05 10.06 10.07 10.08 10.09 10.10 10.11 10.12 10.13 10.14 10.15 *United Kingdom transient ischaemic attack (UK-TIA) aspirin trial: interim results. UK-TIA Study Group.* Br Med J (Clin Res Ed) 1988 Jan 30;296(6618):316-20 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2894232.
11. ↑ 11.00 11.01 11.02 11.03 11.04 11.05 11.06 11.07 11.08 11.09 11.10 11.11 11.12 11.13 11.14 11.15 Farrell B, Godwin J, Richards S, Warlow C. *The United Kingdom transient ischaemic attack (UK-TIA) aspirin trial: final results.* J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry 1991 Dec;54(12):1044-54 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1783914.
12. ↑ 12.00 12.01 12.02 12.03 12.04 12.05 12.06 12.07 12.08 12.09 12.10 12.11 12.12 Baron JA, Cole BF, Sandler RS, Haile RW, Ahnen D, Bresalier R, et al. *A randomized trial of aspirin to prevent colorectal adenomas.* N Engl J Med 2003 Mar 6;348(10):891-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12621133.
13. ↑ 13.0 13.1 13.2 13.3 13.4 13.5 13.6 13.7 13.8 13.9 Cole BF, Logan RF, Halabi S, Benamouzig R, Sandler RS, Grainge MJ, et al. *Aspirin for the chemoprevention of colorectal adenomas: meta-analysis of the randomized trials.* J Natl Cancer Inst 2009 Feb 18;101(4):256-66 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19211452.
14. ↑ 14.00 14.01 14.02 14.03 14.04 14.05 14.06 14.07 14.08 14.09 14.10 14.11 Benamouzig R, Deyra J, Martin A, Girard B, Jullian E, Piednoir B, et al. *Daily soluble aspirin and prevention of colorectal adenoma recurrence: one-year results of the APACC trial.* Gastroenterology 2003 Aug;125(2):328-36 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12891533.
15. ↑ 15.00 15.01 15.02 15.03 15.04 15.05 15.06 15.07 15.08 15.09 15.10 15.11 15.12 Logan RF, Grainge MJ, Shepherd VC, Armitage NC, Muir KR, ukCAP Trial Group. *Aspirin and folic acid for the prevention of recurrent colorectal adenomas.* Gastroenterology 2008 Jan;134(1):29-38 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18022173.
16. ↑ 16.00 16.01 16.02 16.03 16.04 16.05 16.06 16.07 16.08 16.09 16.10 16.11 Sandler RS, Halabi S, Baron JA, Budinger S, Paskett E, Keresztes R, et al. *A randomized trial of aspirin to prevent colorectal adenomas in patients with previous colorectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 2003 Mar 6;348(10):883-90 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12621132.
17. ↑ 17.0 17.1 17.2 17.3 17.4 17.5 17.6 17.7 Norrving B, Elwin CE, Peterson B, Blomstrand C, Olsson JE, Nilsson B, et al. *Swedish Aspirin Low-Dose Trial (SALT) of 75 mg aspirin as secondary prophylaxis after cerebrovascular ischaemic events. The SALT Collaborative Group.* Lancet 1991 Nov 30;338(8779):1345-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1682734.
18. ↑ 18.0 18.1 18.2 18.3 18.4 Cuzick J, Thorat MA, Bosetti C, Brown PH, Burn J, Cook NR, et al. *Estimates of benefits and harms of prophylactic use of aspirin in the general population.* Ann Oncol 2015 Jan;26(1):47-57 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25096604.
19. ↑ Chubak J, Kamineni A, Buist DSM, Anderson ML, Whitlock EP. 2015 Sep Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26491758.
20. ↑ Hawk ET, Limburg PJ, Viner JL. *Epidemiology and prevention of colorectal cancer.* Surg Clin North Am 2002 Oct;82(5):905-41 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12507200.
21. ↑ Bibbins-Domingo K, U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. *Aspirin Use for the Primary Prevention of Cardiovascular Disease and Colorectal Cancer: U.S. Preventive Services Task Force Recommendation Statement.* Ann Intern Med 2016 Apr 12 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27064677.
22. ↑ St John DJ, Yeomans ND, McDermott FT, De Boer WG. *Adaptation of the gastric mucosa to repeated administration of aspirin in the rat.* Am J Dig Dis 1973 Oct;18(10):881-5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4582544.

23. ↑ 23.0 23.1 Burn J, Mathers JC, Bishop DT. *Chemoprevention in Lynch syndrome.* Fam Cancer 2013 Dec;12 (4):707-18 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23880960.
24. ↑ 24.0 24.1 24.2 24.3 van Kruijsdijk RC, Visseren FL, Ridker PM, Dorresteijn JA, Buring JE, van der Graaf Y, Cook NR.. *Individualised prediction of alternate-day aspirin treatment effects on the combined risk of cancer, cardiovascular disease and gastrointestinal bleeding in healthy women.* Heart 2015 Mar;101(5): 369-76 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/?term=individualised+prediction+of+alternate-day.
25. ↑ 25.0 25.1 25.2 Meade TW, Wilke HC, Kelleher CC, Roderick PJ, Brennan PJ, Wilson CW, et al. *Thrombosis prevention trial: randomised trial of low-intensity oral anticoagulation with warfarin and low-dose aspirin in the primary prevention of ischaemic heart disease in men at increased risk. The Medical Research Council's General Practice Research Framework.* Lancet 1998 Jan 24;351(9098):233-41 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9457092.
26. ↑ National Vascular Disease Prevention Alliance. *Guidelines for the management of absolute cardiovascular disease risk.*; 2012.
27. ↑ ASPREE Investigator Group. *Study design of ASPirin in Reducing Events in the Elderly (ASPREE): a randomized, controlled trial.* Contemp Clin Trials 2013 Nov;36(2):555-64 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24113028.
28. ↑ World Cancer Research Fund/American Institute for Cancer Research. *Food, nutrition, physical activity and the prevention of cancer: a global perspective.* 2007 Available from: http://www.dietandcancerreport.org/.
29. ↑ World Cancer Research Fund/American Institute for Cancer Research. *Continuous Update Project Report: Food, Nutrition, Physical Activity, and the Prevention of Colorectal Cancer.* WCRF; 2011.
30. ↑ Poynter JN, Gruber SB, Higgins PD, Almog R, Bonner JD, Rennert HS, et al. *Statins and the risk of colorectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 2005 May 26;352(21):2184-92 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15917383.
31. ↑ 31.0 31.1 Emberson JR, Kearney PM, Blackwell L, Newman C, Reith C, Bhala N, et al. *Lack of effect of lowering LDL cholesterol on cancer: meta-analysis of individual data from 175,000 people in 27 randomised trials of statin therapy.* PLoS One 2012;7(1):e29849 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22276132.
32. ↑ Hague A, Manning AM, Hanlon KA, Huschtscha LI, Hart D, Paraskeva C. *Sodium butyrate induces apoptosis in human colonic tumour cell lines in a p53-independent pathway: implications for the possible role of dietary fibre in the prevention of large-bowel cancer.* Int J Cancer 1993 Sep 30;55(3):498-505 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8397167.
33. ↑ Bertagnolli MM, Hsu M, Hawk ET, Eagle CJ, Zauber AG, Adenoma Prevention with Celecoxib (APC) Study Investigators. *Statin use and colorectal adenoma risk: results from the adenoma prevention with celecoxib trial.* Cancer Prev Res (Phila) 2010 May;3(5):588-96 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20403998.
34. ↑ Broughton T, Sington J, Beales IL. *Statin use is associated with a reduced incidence of colorectal adenomatous polyps.* Int J Colorectal Dis 2013 Apr;28(4):469-76 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23114474.
35. ↑ Larsson SC, Orsini N, Wolk A. *Diabetes mellitus and risk of colorectal cancer: a meta-analysis.* J Natl Cancer Inst 2005 Nov 16;97(22):1679-87 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16288121.
36. ↑ Rizza RA VA. In: Waldman S, Terzic A. *Pharmacology and Therapeutics: principles to practice.* Amsterdam: Elsevier; 2009 Available from: P. 557-70.

37. ↑ Zhang ZJ, Zheng ZJ, Kan H, Song Y, Cui W, Zhao G, et al. *Reduced risk of colorectal cancer with metformin therapy in patients with type 2 diabetes: a meta-analysis.* Diabetes Care 2011 Oct;34(10):2323-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21949223.
38. ↑ Noto H, Goto A, Tsujimoto T, Noda M. *Cancer risk in diabetic patients treated with metformin: a systematic review and meta-analysis.* PLoS One 2012;7(3):e33411 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22448244.
39. ↑ Ramjeesingh R, Orr C, Bricks CS, Hopman WM, Hammad N. *A retrospective study on the role of diabetes and metformin in colorectal cancer disease survival.* Curr Oncol 2016 Apr;23(2):e116-22 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27122979.
40. ↑ [40.0] [40.1] Clarke LC KS. In: Waldman S, Terzic A. *Pharmacology and Therapeutics: principles to practice.* Amsterdam: Elsevier; 2009 Available from: P. 587-610.
41. ↑ [41.0] [41.1] Singh H, Nugent Z, Demers A, Mahmud S, Bernstein C. *Exposure to bisphosphonates and risk of colorectal cancer: a population-based nested case-control study.* Cancer 2012 Mar 1;118(5):1236-43 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21823104.
42. ↑ [42.0] [42.1] Rennert G, Pinchev M, Rennert HS, Gruber SB. *Use of bisphosphonates and reduced risk of colorectal cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2011 Mar 20;29(9):1146-50 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21321296.
43. ↑ [43.0] [43.1] Pazianas M, Abrahamsen B, Eiken PA, Eastell R, Russell RG. *Reduced colon cancer incidence and mortality in postmenopausal women treated with an oral bisphosphonate--Danish National Register Based Cohort Study.* Osteoporos Int 2012 Nov;23(11):2693-701 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22392160.
44. ↑ Passarelli MN, Newcomb PA, LaCroix AZ, Lane DS, Ho GY, Chlebowski RT. *Oral bisphosphonate use and colorectal cancer incidence in the Women's Health Initiative.* J Bone Miner Res 2013 Sep;28(9):2043-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23519920.
45. ↑ Khalili H, Huang ES, Ogino S, Fuchs CS, Chan AT. *A prospective study of bisphosphonate use and risk of colorectal cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2012 Sep 10;30(26):3229-33 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22649131.
46. ↑ Hicks BM, Murray LJ, Hughes C, Cardwell CR. *Post-diagnostic oral bisphosphonate use and colorectal cancer mortality: a population-based cohort study within the UK Clinical Practice Research Datalink.* Br J Cancer 2015 Jun 30;113(1):123-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25989268.
47. ↑ Eiken P, Vestergaard P. *Oral bisphosphonates and colon cancer: an update.* Ther Adv Musculoskelet Dis 2015 Aug;7(4):160-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26288666.

Back to top

## 5.3.3.3 Appendices

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| View recommendation components | View pending evidence | View body of evidence | View all comments | View literature search |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| View PICO | NHMRC Evidence statement form PPR1 | Systematic review report PPR1 |

Back to top

# 6 Population screening for colorectal cancer

**Contents**

## 6.1 Background

Colorectal cancer is an exemplar disease for population screening. It is one of only three cancers – the others being cancers of the female breast and the cervix – which satisfies all 10 of the World Health Organization's principles of screening:[1]

- It is an important health problem.[2]
- Risk increases with advancing age.
- Its biology is generally well understood.
- Effective and acceptable screening tests are available.
- Outcomes are changed by intervention.
- In countries where colorectal cancer is common, there is an economically balanced case for screening in relation to expenditure on healthcare as a whole.[3]
- There is agreement on who should be screened.
- Screening is a continuous process.[1]

Colorectal cancer screening is primarily directed at middle-aged people in good general health, with no symptoms that might indicate colorectal cancer. Invitations to participate in screening, therefore, should encourage invitees with colorectal cancer symptoms to consult a GP rather than undergo a screening test.

Ideally, centrally organised population programs should take responsibility for identification of those eligible for screening, choice of screening test, the invitation process, provision of screening at no cost to participants, documentation of follow-up investigations, and evaluation of outcomes and cost-effectiveness, as well as assessment of the quality of each step in the screening pathway.[4][5][6][7] Screening for colorectal cancer now has widespread acceptance at an international level, although local circumstances affect program design and choice of screening test.[8] Many national programs, especially those in Europe, Canada and Australasia, utilise organised population screening rather than opportunistic approaches.[9]

Back to top

### 6.1.1 Colorectal cancer screening in Australia

In 1997, the Australian Health Technology Advisory Committee (AHTAC) reviewed the evidence on screening and recommended that Australia should develop a program for the introduction of population screening for colorectal cancer by faecal occult blood testing for the average-risk population (well population aged over 50 years).[10] A pilot study conducted in three regions (2002–2004) indicated that a national program in Australia would meet the criteria of the Australian Cancer Screening Framework and was likely to be well accepted by health professionals and the recommended screening cohort.[11]

The Australian Government introduced the National Bowel Cancer Screening Program (NBCSP) in 2006, with a mail-out of immunochemical faecal occult blood test (iFOBT, also known as faecal immunochemical tests or FITs) kits to Australians turning 55 and 65 from August that year. This marked the commencement of an incremental roll-out, expanding the program as capacity increased and working towards coverage of the 50–74 years age group by 2020 (see Table 3.1).[12]

The key elements of the NBCSP are:[12]

- the use of iFOBT as the screening test
- provision of iFOBT screening at no cost to participants
- distribution of invitations and screening tests by mail
- analysis of screening in a central laboratory
- follow-up of positive test results, mostly by colonoscopy, through the usual care pathway backed up by a central reminder service
- central collection of data and reporting of NBCSP outcomes via regular reports.

See the NBCSP participant's screening pathway.

#### 6.1.1.1 Table 3.1 Australian National Bowel Cancer Screening Program target populations in 2006–2019

| Period | Target ages |
|---|---|
| 2006–2008 | 55 and 65 |
| 2008–2013 | 50, 55 and 65 |
| 2013–2014 | 50, 55, 60 and 65 |
| 2015 | 50, 55, 60, 65, 70 and 74 |
| 2016 | 50, 55, 60, 64, 65, 70, 72 and 74 |
| 2017 | 50, 54, 55, 58, 60, 64, 68, 70, 72, 74 |
| 2018 | 50, 54, 58, 60, 62, 64, 66, 68, 70, 72, 74 |
| 2019 onward | 50, 52, 54, 56, 58, 60, 62, 64, 66, 68, 70, 72, 74 |

Source: Australian Institute of Health and Welfare[12]

Extensive published research has shown that the NBCSP, even in its incomplete form, is having a significant impact on reducing colorectal cancer burden. Key findings include:

- a favourable shift in pathological stage in screen-detected cancers [13][14][15]
- modelling studies hyperlink supporting both marked cost-effectiveness[16] and a considerable impact on colorectal cancer mortality[17]
- data linkage studies demonstrating that NBCSP invitees, especially those who participated in the program, have a lower risk of dying from colorectal cancer.[15][18]

Screening infrastructure in the NBCSP is being progressively strengthened to improve its efficiency and effectiveness. Recent initiatives include the development of a new, interactive central register (the National Cancer Screening Register [NCSR]), public awareness campaigns and measures to boost training and quality of colonoscopy. On current evidence, the most significant barrier to improved program effectiveness is the relatively low participation rate (37% of all invitees at December 2014).[19]

There is, as a matter of course, a requirement to continually review screening policy (screening test, interval, pathway, cohort, etc.) for optimal population benefit as new evidence is published. In 2015 the Australian Commonwealth Department of Health commissioned a review of national guidelines for population screening for colorectal cancer, as part of the revision of the 2005 NHMRC-approved Clinical practice guidelines for the prevention, early detection and management of colorectal cancer.[20]

This revision of population screening guidelines provides a review of up-to-date evidence relating to the effectiveness, acceptability, feasibility and cost-effectiveness of a range of currently available screening methods. The review also examines starting and stopping ages for population screening and the frequency with which screening tests should be offered to the target population. In addition to systematic reviews of published clinical evidence, modelling studies were commissioned to evaluate the cost-effectiveness of alternate technology options for screening and the optimal target age range.

Back to top

## 6.1.2 Screening benefit

The primary aims of colorectal cancer screening are to reduce the morbidity and mortality of the disease through (1) earlier detection of cancer and (2) prevention of cancer through detection and removal of pre-malignant adenomas.[20] Such screening can be provided on an individual basis (opportunistic screening) or for populations through centrally organised programs.

Opportunistic screening has been adopted as the preferred approach in some health settings, particularly in the USA. However, centrally organised screening is designed to promote participation within the target population, irrespective of social determinants of health such as income, level of education, language spoken or geographic location.[4] This potentially increases the impact on bowel cancer morbidity and mortality as well as providing more equitable health care for the population. Other advantages of organised screening include more efficient and cost-effective use of resources and the ability to systematically address quality assurance throughout the screening pathway.

Back to top

## 6.1.3 Screening test accuracy

There are a number of tests designed to detect signs of colorectal cancer in asymptomatic patients, with differing performance, costs, acceptability and risks.[10] These include:

- faecal tests – faecal occult blood tests (FOBTs) to detect bleeding arising from cancers or adenomas, or newer technologies involving detection of DNA mutations shed by cancer (faecal DNA test)
- endoscopic tests to directly visualise mucosal abnormalities (flexible sigmoidoscopy, colonoscopy)

- computed tomography (CT) colonography to detect anatomical abnormalities with x-ray
- plasma tests to detect cancer biomarkers.

There are two types of FOBTs:[21][22]

- guaiac FOBTs (gFOBTs) detect peroxidase activity, an indirect method for identification of haemoglobin
- immunochemical FOBTs (iFOBTs), which directly detect haemoglobin, using antibodies specific for the globin moiety of human haemoglobin.

During the 1990s, randomised controlled trials (RCTs) performed in Minnesota (USA), Nottingham (UK) and Funen (Denmark) showed that FOBTs were an effective method of screening for colorectal cancer.[23][24][25][26][27] Subsequent meta-analyses provided Level I evidence for a 15–30% reduction in mortality.[28][29]High-level evidence for effectiveness has now become available for one-time flexible sigmoidoscopy,[30][31][32][33] with reductions in colorectal cancer-related mortality. However, the other modalities have yet to undergo comparable trials and thus the evidence base to support effectiveness relies primarily on observational data. Three RCTs to evaluate colonoscopy are currently in progress.[34][35][36]

Back to top

### 6.1.4 The balance of benefits, harms and cost-effectiveness

To achieve its primary aim of reducing cancer-related mortality, a population-based cancer screening program must be acceptable to the target population, feasible within the overall system for delivery of health care, and have an acceptable level of cost-effectiveness.

A recent comparative modelling evaluation conducted on behalf of the US Preventive Services Task Force used life–years gained as a measurement of effectiveness and the estimated number of colonoscopies as a measurement of burden to compare colorectal cancer screening strategies using eight different screening test technologies.[37] Under the assumption of 100% screening adherence in each case, the evaluation found that, in the US context, the strategies providing the best balance of benefits to harms would be 10-yearly colonoscopy screening, 10-yearly flexible sigmoidoscopy screening combined with annual iFOBT, 5-yearly CTC screening, and yearly iFOBT alone for screening for ages 50–74 years. However, the study did not report on the impact of more realistic adherence assumptions (which could be expected to differ by screening modality and frequency) on either benefits or harms. Furthermore, the cost-effectiveness of the alternative strategies was not considered.

The comparative benefits, harms and cost-effectiveness of the NBCSP in Australia have recently been estimated compared to other potential future alternative or adjunctive options for screening in Australia.[38] A modelling study was therefore conducted to evaluate the health benefits, harms, and cost-effectiveness of colorectal cancer screening with iFOBT versus flexible sigmoidoscopy, colonoscopy, CTC, faecal DNA and plasma biomarkers.

The modelling is described in detail in the Technical report.

Back to top

## 6.1.5 Screening age

The early RCTs on gFOBT-based screening showed benefit for people aged 45–50 years and older. Cost-effectiveness studies also demonstrate that the age range for screening influences cost-effectiveness. [12] The risk of colorectal cancer increases with age, as shown in Table 3.2. The observation that 10-year risk increases 4-fold between ages of 40 and 50 years has led to the recommendation that screening of average risk people should commence at age 50 years, a recommendation that is consistent with the deliberations of several major international bodies.[12][13][14][15][16][17]

The recently published US Preventive Services Task Force guidelines endorsed 50 years as the starting age for screening and found convincing evidence showing that screening from 50 to 75 years of age reduces mortality from colorectal cancer.[39] They observed a diminishing benefit and a greater risk of adverse events after age 75.

When complete in 2020, the NBCSP will invite the general population aged 50 to 74 to screen. The starting age was based on the low age-specific incidence of colorectal cancer in those below 50 years of age and concern that the risk with follow-up colonoscopy (including the small risk of death from colonoscopy) is much closer to the low risk of colorectal cancer and its mortality in younger people.[40]

This review re-examines evidence on the appropriate age range for screening, prompted by suggestions of an increase in risk for colorectal cancer in younger people and the longer life expectancy for the elderly.

A detailed modelled analysis has also been undertaken to quantify the benefits, harms and cost-effectiveness of extending the age range for screening in the Australian context. hyperlink to second modelling report This analysis concluded that continuing to screen at a population level was no longer cost-effective in people over the age of 74 years (due to the competing mortality risk). For younger people, the analysis found that starting screening at age 45 years could be cost-effective, but the ratio of benefits to harms, expressed as the number-needed-to-colonoscope (NNC) for each death prevented, was far less favourable than when screening people aged 50–74 years.

### 6.1.5.1 Table 3.2. Absolute risk of colorectal cancer

| If a person is aged | Risk of colorectal cancer over the next 10 years | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Men** | | **Women** | | |
| 30 | 0.074% | 1 in 1350 | 0.072% | 1 in 1390 |
| 40 | 0.32% | 1 in 313 | 0.27% | 1 in 370 |
| 50 | 1.15% | 1 in 87 | 0.80% | 1 in 125 |
| 60 | 2.79% | 1 in 36 | 1.74% | 1 in 57 |
| 70 | 4.57% | 1 in 22 | 2.90% | 1 in 34 |

Absolute risk is the observed or calculated probability of the occurrence of colorectal cancer a population. Data source: Australian Institute of Health and Welfare[40]. Ten-year risks calculated based on this data.

### 6.1.6 Chapter subsections

Please see:

- Evidence: population screening for CRC
- Evidence summary, recommendations and considerations
- Discussion

Back to top

## 6.2 References

1. ↑ [1.0] [1.1] Wilson J, Junger G. *Principles and practices of screening for disease.* Geneva, Switzerland; 1968. Report No.: 34.
2. ↑ Gnauck R. *World Health Organization for screening* In: David Schottenfeld, Paul Sherlock, Sidney J. Winawer. Colorectal Cancer: Prevention, Epidemiology and Screening New York: Raven Press; 1980.
3. ↑ Schottenfeld D. *Fundamental issues in cancer screening* In: David Schottenfeld, Paul Sherlock, Sidney J. Winawer. Colorectal Cancer: Prevention, Epidemiology and Screening New York: Raven Press; 1980.
4. ↑ [4.0] [4.1] Miles A, Cockburn J, Smith RA, Wardle J. *A perspective from countries using organized screening programs.* Cancer 2004 Sep 1;101(5 Suppl):1201-13 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15316915.
5. ↑ Malila N Senore C Armaroli P. *Organisation* In: N Segnan J Patnick L von Karsa. European guidelines for quality assurance in colorectal cancer screening and diagnosis, First Edition Luxembourg: Publications Office of the European Union; 2010. p. 33-70. Available from: http://www.kolorektum.cz/res/file/guidelines/CRC-screening-guidelines-EC-2011-02-03.pdf.
6. ↑ Benson VS, Atkin WS, Green J, Nadel MR, Patnick J, Smith RA, et al. *Toward standardizing and reporting colorectal cancer screening indicators on an international level: The International Colorectal Cancer Screening Network.* Int J Cancer 2012 Jun 15;130(12):2961-73 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21792895.
7. ↑ Brawley OW. *Colorectal cancer control: providing adequate care to those who need it.* J Natl Cancer Inst 2014 Apr;106(4):dju075 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24681601.
8. ↑ Flitcroft KL, St John DJ, Howard K, Carter SM, Pignone MP, Salkeld GP, et al. *A comparative case study of bowel cancer screening in the UK and Australia: evidence lost in translation?* J Med Screen 2011;18(4):193-203 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22106435.
9. ↑ Schreuders EH, Ruco A, Rabeneck L, Schoen RE, Sung JJ, Young GP, et al. *Colorectal cancer screening: a global overview of existing programmes.* Gut 2015 Oct;64(10):1637-49 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26041752.
10. ↑ [10.0] [10.1] Australian Health Technology Advisory Committee (AHTAC). *Colorectal cancer screening: a report of the Australian Health Technology Advisory Committee.* Canberra, Australia: Commonwealth Department of Health and Family Services; 1997 [cited 2016 Dec 15].
11. ↑ Australian Government Department of Health. *The Australian bowel cancer screening pilot program and beyond: final evaluation report.*; 2005.

12. ↑ 12.0 12.1 12.2 12.3 12.4 Australian Institute of Health and Welfare. *National Bowel Cancer Screening Program: monitoring report 2016. Cancer series no. 98. Cat. no. CAN 97.* Canberra: AIHW; 2016.
13. ↑ 13.0 13.1 Cole SR, Tucker GR, Osborne JM, Byrne SE, Bampton PA, Fraser RJ, et al. *Shift to earlier stage at diagnosis as a consequence of the National Bowel Cancer Screening Program.* Med J Aust 2013 Apr 1; 198(6):327-30 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23545032.
14. ↑ 14.0 14.1 Ananda S, Wong H, Faragher I, Jones IT, Steele M, Kosmider S, et al. *Survival impact of the Australian National Bowel Cancer Screening Programme.* Intern Med J 2016 Feb;46(2):166-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26418334.
15. ↑ 15.0 15.1 15.2 Australian Institute of Health and Welfare., Australian Government Department of Health.. *Analysis of colorectal cancer outcomes for the Australian National Bowel Cancer Screening Program.* Asia Pac J Clin Oncol 2016 Mar;12(1):22-32 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26803949.
16. ↑ 16.0 16.1 Pignone MP, Flitcroft KL, Howard K, Trevena LJ, Salkeld GP, St John DJ. *Costs and cost-effectiveness of full implementation of a biennial faecal occult blood test screening program for bowel cancer in Australia.* Med J Aust 2011 Feb 21;194(4):180-5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov /pubmed/21401458.
17. ↑ 17.0 17.1 Cenin DR, St John DJ, Ledger MJ, Slevin T, Lansdorp-Vogelaar I. *Optimising the expansion of the National Bowel Cancer Screening Program.* The Medical Journal of Australia 2014;201:456-61 Available from: https://www.mja.com.au/journal/2014/201/8/optimising-expansion-national-bowel-cancer-screening-program.
18. ↑ St John J, Grogan P. *Compelling new data on the effectiveness of Australia's National Bowel Cancer Screening Program: A model for best practice?* Asia-Pacific journal of clinical oncology 2016;12:7-9.
19. ↑ Australian Institute of Health and Welfare, Australian Government Department of Health and Ageing. *National Bowel Cancer Screening Program monitoring report 2007.* Cancer Series no. 40. Cat. no.CAN36. Canberra ACT 2008.
20. ↑ 20.0 20.1 Australian Cancer Network Colorectal Cancer Guidelines Revision Committee. *Clinical practice guidelines for the prevention, early detection and management of colorectal cancer.* The Cancer Council Australia and Australian Cancer Network 2005.
21. ↑ Park DI, Ryu S, Kim YH, Lee SH, Lee CK, Eun CS, et al. *Comparison of guaiac-based and quantitative immunochemical fecal occult blood testing in a population at average risk undergoing colorectal cancer screening.* Am J Gastroenterol 2010 Sep;105(9):2017-25 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov /pubmed/20502450.
22. ↑ van Rossum LG, van Rijn AF, Laheij RJ, van Oijen MG, Fockens P, van Krieken HH, et al. *Random comparison of guaiac and immunochemical fecal occult blood tests for colorectal cancer in a screening population.* Gastroenterology 2008 Jul;135(1):82-90 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed /18482589.
23. ↑ Mandel JS, Bond JH, Church TR, Snover DC, Bradley GM, Schuman LM, et al. *Reducing mortality from colorectal cancer by screening for fecal occult blood. Minnesota Colon Cancer Control Study.* N Engl J Med 1993 May 13;328(19):1365-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8474513.
24. ↑ Hardcastle JD, Chamberlain JO, Robinson MH, Moss SM, Amar SS, Balfour TW, et al. *Randomised controlled trial of faecal-occult-blood screening for colorectal cancer.* Lancet 1996 Nov 30;348(9040):1472-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8942775.

25. ↑ Kronborg O, Fenger C, Olsen J, Jørgensen OD, Søndergaard O. *Randomised study of screening for colorectal cancer with faecal-occult-blood test.* Lancet 1996 Nov 30;348(9040):1467-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8942774.
26. ↑ Mandel JS, Church TR, Bond JH, Ederer F, Geisser MS, Mongin SJ, et al. *The effect of fecal occult-blood screening on the incidence of colorectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 2000 Nov 30;343(22):1603-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11096167.
27. ↑ Mandel JS, Church TR, Ederer F, Bond JH. *Colorectal cancer mortality: effectiveness of biennial screening for fecal occult blood.* J Natl Cancer Inst 1999 Mar 3;91(5):434-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10070942.
28. ↑ Hewitson P, Glasziou P, Irwig L, Towler B, Watson E. *Screening for colorectal cancer using the faecal occult blood test, Hemoccult.* Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2007 Jan 24;(1):CD001216 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17253456.
29. ↑ Towler B, Irwig L, Glasziou P, Kewenter J, Weller D, Silagy C. *A systematic review of the effects of screening for colorectal cancer using the faecal occult blood test, hemoccult.* BMJ (Clinical research ed) 1998;317:559-65 Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC28648/.
30. ↑ Segnan N, Armaroli P, Bonelli L, Risio M, Sciallero S, Zappa M, et al. *Once-only sigmoidoscopy in colorectal cancer screening: follow-up findings of the Italian Randomized Controlled Trial--SCORE.* J Natl Cancer Inst 2011 Sep 7;103(17):1310-22 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21852264.
31. ↑ Schoen RE, Pinsky PF, Weissfeld JL, Yokochi LA, Church T, Laiyemo AO, et al. *Colorectal-cancer incidence and mortality with screening flexible sigmoidoscopy.* N Engl J Med 2012 Jun 21;366(25):2345-57 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22612596.
32. ↑ Atkin WS, Edwards R, Kralj-Hans I, Wooldrage K, Hart AR, Northover JM, et al. *Once-only flexible sigmoidoscopy screening in prevention of colorectal cancer: a multicentre randomised controlled trial.* Lancet 2010 May 8;375(9726):1624-33 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20430429.
33. ↑ Elmunzer BJ, Hayward RA, Schoenfeld PS, Saini SD, Deshpande A, Waljee AK. *Effect of flexible sigmoidoscopy-based screening on incidence and mortality of colorectal cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials.* PLoS Med 2012;9(12):e1001352 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23226108.
34. ↑ Quintero E, Castells A, Bujanda L, Cubiella J, Salas D, Lanas Á, et al. *Colonoscopy versus fecal immunochemical testing in colorectal-cancer screening.* N Engl J Med 2012 Feb 23;366(8):697-706 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22356323.
35. ↑ Bretthauer M, Kaminski MF, Løberg M, Zauber AG, Regula J, Kuipers EJ, et al. *Population-Based Colonoscopy Screening for Colorectal Cancer: A Randomized Clinical Trial.* JAMA Intern Med 2016 Jul 1;176(7):894-902 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27214731.
36. ↑ ClinicalTrials.gov. *Colonoscopy vs fecal immunochemical test in reducing mortality from colorectal cancer (CONFIRM) [NCT01239082].* [homepage on the internet]; 2016 Available from: https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01239082.
37. ↑ Knudsen AB, Zauber AG, Rutter CM, et al. *Estimation of benefits, burden, and harms of colorectal cancer screening strategies: modeling study for the US Preventive Services Task Force.* JAMA 2016;315:2595-609.
38. ↑ Lew, JB; St John, DJ; Xu, XM; Greuter, MJ; Caruana, M; Cenin, DR. *Benefits, harms and cost-effectiveness of National Bowel Cancer Screening Program in Australia (manuscript submitted).*; 2017.
39. ↑ U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. *Screening for Colorectal Cancer US Preventive Services Task Force Recommendation Statement.* JAMA 2016;315:2564-75.

40. ↑ 40.0 40.1 Australian Institute of Health and Welfare. *Australian Cancer Incidence and Mortality (ACIM) books: Bowel Cancer.* Canberra, Australia: Australian Institute of Health and Welfare; 2014 Available from: http://www.aihw.gov.au/WorkArea//DownloadAsset.aspx?id=60129558412.

Back to top

## 6.3 Appendices

NHMRC Evidence statement form PSC1a

| Systematic review report PSC1a | NHMRC Evidence statement form PSC1b | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Systematic review report PSC1b | Modelling report PSC1c | Modelling report PSC1d |

# 6.1 Introduction: population screening for colorectal cancer

**Contents**



## 6.1.1 Background

Colorectal cancer is an exemplar disease for population screening. It is one of only three cancers – the others being cancers of the female breast and the cervix – which satisfies all 10 of the World Health Organization's principles of screening:[1]

- It is an important health problem.[2]
- Risk increases with advancing age.

- Its biology is generally well understood.
- Effective and acceptable screening tests are available.
- Outcomes are changed by intervention.
- In countries where colorectal cancer is common, there is an economically balanced case for screening in relation to expenditure on healthcare as a whole.[3]
- There is agreement on who should be screened.
- Screening is a continuous process.[1]

Colorectal cancer screening is primarily directed at middle-aged people in good general health, with no symptoms that might indicate colorectal cancer. Invitations to participate in screening, therefore, should encourage invitees with colorectal cancer symptoms to consult a GP rather than undergo a screening test.

Ideally, centrally organised population programs should take responsibility for identification of those eligible for screening, choice of screening test, the invitation process, provision of screening at no cost to participants, documentation of follow-up investigations, and evaluation of outcomes and cost-effectiveness, as well as assessment of the quality of each step in the screening pathway.[4][5][6][7] Screening for colorectal cancer now has widespread acceptance at an international level, although local circumstances affect program design and choice of screening test.[8] Many national programs, especially those in Europe, Canada and Australasia, utilise organised population screening rather than opportunistic approaches.[9]

Back to top

### 6.1.1.1 Colorectal cancer screening in Australia

In 1997, the Australian Health Technology Advisory Committee (AHTAC) reviewed the evidence on screening and recommended that Australia should develop a program for the introduction of population screening for colorectal cancer by faecal occult blood testing for the average-risk population (well population aged over 50 years).[10] A pilot study conducted in three regions (2002–2004) indicated that a national program in Australia would meet the criteria of the Australian Cancer Screening Framework and was likely to be well accepted by health professionals and the recommended screening cohort.[11]

The Australian Government introduced the National Bowel Cancer Screening Program (NBCSP) in 2006, with a mail-out of immunochemical faecal occult blood test (iFOBT, also known as faecal immunochemical tests or FITs) kits to Australians turning 55 and 65 from August that year. This marked the commencement of an incremental roll-out, expanding the program as capacity increased and working towards coverage of the 50–74 years age group by 2020 (see Table 3.1).[12]

The key elements of the NBCSP are:[12]

- the use of iFOBT as the screening test
- provision of iFOBT screening at no cost to participants
- distribution of invitations and screening tests by mail
- analysis of screening in a central laboratory
- follow-up of positive test results, mostly by colonoscopy, through the usual care pathway backed up by a central reminder service

- central collection of data and reporting of NBCSP outcomes via regular reports.

See the NBCSP participant's screening pathway.

#### 6.1.1.1.1 Table 3.1 Australian National Bowel Cancer Screening Program target populations in 2006–2019

| Period | Target ages |
|---|---|
| 2006–2008 | 55 and 65 |
| 2008–2013 | 50, 55 and 65 |
| 2013–2014 | 50, 55, 60 and 65 |
| 2015 | 50, 55, 60, 65, 70 and 74 |
| 2016 | 50, 55, 60, 64, 65, 70, 72 and 74 |
| 2017 | 50, 54, 55, 58, 60, 64, 68, 70, 72, 74 |
| 2018 | 50, 54, 58, 60, 62, 64, 66, 68, 70, 72, 74 |
| 2019 onward | 50, 52, 54, 56, 58, 60, 62, 64, 66, 68, 70, 72, 74 |

Source: Australian Institute of Health and Welfare[12]

Extensive published research has shown that the NBCSP, even in its incomplete form, is having a significant impact on reducing colorectal cancer burden. Key findings include:

- a favourable shift in pathological stage in screen-detected cancers [13][14][15]
- modelling studies hyperlink supporting both marked cost-effectiveness[16] and a considerable impact on colorectal cancer mortality[17]
- data linkage studies demonstrating that NBCSP invitees, especially those who participated in the program, have a lower risk of dying from colorectal cancer.[15][18]

Screening infrastructure in the NBCSP is being progressively strengthened to improve its efficiency and effectiveness. Recent initiatives include the development of a new, interactive central register (the National Cancer Screening Register [NCSR]), public awareness campaigns and measures to boost training and quality of colonoscopy. On current evidence, the most significant barrier to improved program effectiveness is the relatively low participation rate (37% of all invitees at December 2014).[19]

There is, as a matter of course, a requirement to continually review screening policy (screening test, interval, pathway, cohort, etc.) for optimal population benefit as new evidence is published. In 2015 the Australian Commonwealth Department of Health commissioned a review of national guidelines for population screening for colorectal cancer, as part of the revision of the 2005 NHMRC-approved Clinical practice guidelines for the prevention, early detection and management of colorectal cancer.[20]

This revision of population screening guidelines provides a review of up-to-date evidence relating to the effectiveness, acceptability, feasibility and cost-effectiveness of a range of currently available screening methods. The review also examines starting and stopping ages for population screening and the frequency with which screening tests should be offered to the target population. In addition to systematic reviews of published clinical evidence, modelling studies were commissioned to evaluate the cost-effectiveness of alternate technology options for screening and the optimal target age range.

Back to top

### 6.1.1.2 Screening benefit

The primary aims of colorectal cancer screening are to reduce the morbidity and mortality of the disease through (1) earlier detection of cancer and (2) prevention of cancer through detection and removal of pre-malignant adenomas.[20] Such screening can be provided on an individual basis (opportunistic screening) or for populations through centrally organised programs.

Opportunistic screening has been adopted as the preferred approach in some health settings, particularly in the USA. However, centrally organised screening is designed to promote participation within the target population, irrespective of social determinants of health such as income, level of education, language spoken or geographic location.[4] This potentially increases the impact on bowel cancer morbidity and mortality as well as providing more equitable health care for the population. Other advantages of organised screening include more efficient and cost-effective use of resources and the ability to systematically address quality assurance throughout the screening pathway.

Back to top

### 6.1.1.3 Screening test accuracy

There are a number of tests designed to detect signs of colorectal cancer in asymptomatic patients, with differing performance, costs, acceptability and risks.[10] These include:

- faecal tests – faecal occult blood tests (FOBTs) to detect bleeding arising from cancers or adenomas, or newer technologies involving detection of DNA mutations shed by cancer (faecal DNA test)
- endoscopic tests to directly visualise mucosal abnormalities (flexible sigmoidoscopy, colonoscopy)
- computed tomography (CT) colonography to detect anatomical abnormalities with x-ray
- plasma tests to detect cancer biomarkers.

There are two types of FOBTs:[21][22]

- guaiac FOBTs (gFOBTs) detect peroxidase activity, an indirect method for identification of haemoglobin
- immunochemical FOBTs (iFOBTs), which directly detect haemoglobin, using antibodies specific for the globin moiety of human haemoglobin.

During the 1990s, randomised controlled trials (RCTs) performed in Minnesota (USA), Nottingham (UK) and Funen (Denmark) showed that FOBTs were an effective method of screening for colorectal cancer.[23][24][25][26][27] Subsequent meta-analyses provided Level I evidence for a 15–30% reduction in mortality.[28][29]High-level evidence for effectiveness has now become available for one-time flexible sigmoidoscopy,[30][31][32][33] with reductions in colorectal cancer-related mortality. However, the other modalities have yet to undergo comparable trials and thus the evidence base to support effectiveness relies primarily on observational data. Three RCTs to evaluate colonoscopy are currently in progress.[34][35][36]

Back to top

### 6.1.1.4 The balance of benefits, harms and cost-effectiveness

To achieve its primary aim of reducing cancer-related mortality, a population-based cancer screening program must be acceptable to the target population, feasible within the overall system for delivery of health care, and have an acceptable level of cost-effectiveness.

A recent comparative modelling evaluation conducted on behalf of the US Preventive Services Task Force used life–years gained as a measurement of effectiveness and the estimated number of colonoscopies as a measurement of burden to compare colorectal cancer screening strategies using eight different screening test technologies.[37] Under the assumption of 100% screening adherence in each case, the evaluation found that, in the US context, the strategies providing the best balance of benefits to harms would be 10-yearly colonoscopy screening, 10-yearly flexible sigmoidoscopy screening combined with annual iFOBT, 5-yearly CTC screening, and yearly iFOBT alone for screening for ages 50–74 years. However, the study did not report on the impact of more realistic adherence assumptions (which could be expected to differ by screening modality and frequency) on either benefits or harms. Furthermore, the cost-effectiveness of the alternative strategies was not considered.

The comparative benefits, harms and cost-effectiveness of the NBCSP in Australia have recently been estimated compared to other potential future alternative or adjunctive options for screening in Australia.[38] A modelling study was therefore conducted to evaluate the health benefits, harms, and cost-effectiveness of colorectal cancer screening with iFOBT versus flexible sigmoidoscopy, colonoscopy, CTC, faecal DNA and plasma biomarkers.

The modelling is described in detail in the Technical report.

Back to top

### 6.1.1.5 Screening age

The early RCTs on gFOBT-based screening showed benefit for people aged 45–50 years and older. Cost-effectiveness studies also demonstrate that the age range for screening influences cost-effectiveness. [12] The risk of colorectal cancer increases with age, as shown in Table 3.2. The observation that 10-year risk increases 4-fold between ages of 40 and 50 years has led to the recommendation that screening of average risk people should commence at age 50 years, a recommendation that is consistent with the deliberations of several major international bodies.[12][13][14][15][16][17]

The recently published US Preventive Services Task Force guidelines endorsed 50 years as the starting age for screening and found convincing evidence showing that screening from 50 to 75 years of age reduces mortality from colorectal cancer.[39] They observed a diminishing benefit and a greater risk of adverse events after age 75.

When complete in 2020, the NBCSP will invite the general population aged 50 to 74 to screen. The starting age was based on the low age-specific incidence of colorectal cancer in those below 50 years of age and concern that the risk with follow-up colonoscopy (including the small risk of death from colonoscopy) is much closer to the low risk of colorectal cancer and its mortality in younger people.[40]

This review re-examines evidence on the appropriate age range for screening, prompted by suggestions of an increase in risk for colorectal cancer in younger people and the longer life expectancy for the elderly.

A detailed modelled analysis has also been undertaken to quantify the benefits, harms and cost-effectiveness of extending the age range for screening in the Australian context. hyperlink to second modelling report This analysis concluded that continuing to screen at a population level was no longer cost-effective in people over the age of 74 years (due to the competing mortality risk). For younger people, the analysis found that starting screening at age 45 years could be cost-effective, but the ratio of benefits to harms, expressed as the number-needed-to-colonoscope (NNC) for each death prevented, was far less favourable than when screening people aged 50–74 years.

#### 6.1.1.5.1 Table 3.2. Absolute risk of colorectal cancer

| If a person is aged | Risk of colorectal cancer over the next 10 years | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Men** | | **Women** | | |
| 30 | 0.074% | 1 in 1350 | 0.072% | 1 in 1390 |
| 40 | 0.32% | 1 in 313 | 0.27% | 1 in 370 |
| 50 | 1.15% | 1 in 87 | 0.80% | 1 in 125 |
| 60 | 2.79% | 1 in 36 | 1.74% | 1 in 57 |
| 70 | 4.57% | 1 in 22 | 2.90% | 1 in 34 |

Absolute risk is the observed or calculated probability of the occurrence of colorectal cancer a population. Data source: Australian Institute of Health and Welfare[40]. Ten-year risks calculated based on this data.

### 6.1.1.6 Chapter subsections

Please see:

- Evidence: population screening for CRC
- Evidence summary, recommendations and considerations
- Discussion

Back to top

## 6.1.2 References

1. ↑ [1.0] [1.1] Wilson J, Junger G. *Principles and practices of screening for disease.* Geneva, Switzerland; 1968. Report No.: 34.
2. ↑ Gnauck R. *World Health Organization for screening* In: David Schottenfeld, Paul Sherlock, Sidney J. Winawer. Colorectal Cancer: Prevention, Epidemiology and Screening New York: Raven Press; 1980.
3. ↑ Schottenfeld D. *Fundamental issues in cancer screening* In: David Schottenfeld, Paul Sherlock, Sidney J. Winawer. Colorectal Cancer: Prevention, Epidemiology and Screening New York: Raven Press; 1980.
4. ↑ [4.0] [4.1] Miles A, Cockburn J, Smith RA, Wardle J. *A perspective from countries using organized screening programs.* Cancer 2004 Sep 1;101(5 Suppl):1201-13 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15316915.
5. ↑ Malila N Senore C Armaroli P. *Organisation* In: N Segnan J Patnick L von Karsa. European guidelines for quality assurance in colorectal cancer screening and diagnosis, First Edition Luxembourg: Publications Office of the European Union; 2010. p. 33-70. Available from: http://www.kolorektum.cz/res/file/guidelines/CRC-screening-guidelines-EC-2011-02-03.pdf.
6. ↑ Benson VS, Atkin WS, Green J, Nadel MR, Patnick J, Smith RA, et al. *Toward standardizing and reporting colorectal cancer screening indicators on an international level: The International Colorectal Cancer Screening Network.* Int J Cancer 2012 Jun 15;130(12):2961-73 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21792895.
7. ↑ Brawley OW. *Colorectal cancer control: providing adequate care to those who need it.* J Natl Cancer Inst 2014 Apr;106(4):dju075 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24681601.
8. ↑ Flitcroft KL, St John DJ, Howard K, Carter SM, Pignone MP, Salkeld GP, et al. *A comparative case study of bowel cancer screening in the UK and Australia: evidence lost in translation?* J Med Screen 2011;18(4):193-203 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22106435.
9. ↑ Schreuders EH, Ruco A, Rabeneck L, Schoen RE, Sung JJ, Young GP, et al. *Colorectal cancer screening: a global overview of existing programmes.* Gut 2015 Oct;64(10):1637-49 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26041752.
10. ↑ [10.0] [10.1] Australian Health Technology Advisory Committee (AHTAC). *Colorectal cancer screening: a report of the Australian Health Technology Advisory Committee.* Canberra, Australia: Commonwealth Department of Health and Family Services; 1997 [cited 2016 Dec 15].
11. ↑ Australian Government Department of Health. *The Australian bowel cancer screening pilot program and beyond: final evaluation report.*; 2005.
12. ↑ [12.0] [12.1] [12.2] [12.3] [12.4] Australian Institute of Health and Welfare. *National Bowel Cancer Screening Program: monitoring report 2016. Cancer series no. 98. Cat. no. CAN 97.* Canberra: AIHW; 2016.
13. ↑ [13.0] [13.1] Cole SR, Tucker GR, Osborne JM, Byrne SE, Bampton PA, Fraser RJ, et al. *Shift to earlier stage at diagnosis as a consequence of the National Bowel Cancer Screening Program.* Med J Aust 2013 Apr 1;198(6):327-30 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23545032.
14. ↑ [14.0] [14.1] Ananda S, Wong H, Faragher I, Jones IT, Steele M, Kosmider S, et al. *Survival impact of the Australian National Bowel Cancer Screening Programme.* Intern Med J 2016 Feb;46(2):166-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26418334.

15. ↑ 15.0 15.1 15.2 Australian Institute of Health and Welfare., Australian Government Department of Health.. *Analysis of colorectal cancer outcomes for the Australian National Bowel Cancer Screening Program.* Asia Pac J Clin Oncol 2016 Mar;12(1):22-32 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26803949.
16. ↑ 16.0 16.1 Pignone MP, Flitcroft KL, Howard K, Trevena LJ, Salkeld GP, St John DJ. *Costs and cost-effectiveness of full implementation of a biennial faecal occult blood test screening program for bowel cancer in Australia.* Med J Aust 2011 Feb 21;194(4):180-5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21401458.
17. ↑ 17.0 17.1 Cenin DR, St John DJ, Ledger MJ, Slevin T, Lansdorp-Vogelaar I. *Optimising the expansion of the National Bowel Cancer Screening Program.* The Medical Journal of Australia 2014;201:456-61 Available from: https://www.mja.com.au/journal/2014/201/8/optimising-expansion-national-bowel-cancer-screening-program.
18. ↑ St John J, Grogan P. *Compelling new data on the effectiveness of Australia's National Bowel Cancer Screening Program: A model for best practice?* Asia-Pacific journal of clinical oncology 2016;12:7-9.
19. ↑ Australian Institute of Health and Welfare, Australian Government Department of Health and Ageing. *National Bowel Cancer Screening Program monitoring report 2007.* Cancer Series no. 40. Cat. no.CAN36. Canberra ACT 2008.
20. ↑ 20.0 20.1 Australian Cancer Network Colorectal Cancer Guidelines Revision Committee. *Clinical practice guidelines for the prevention, early detection and management of colorectal cancer.* The Cancer Council Australia and Australian Cancer Network 2005.
21. ↑ Park DI, Ryu S, Kim YH, Lee SH, Lee CK, Eun CS, et al. *Comparison of guaiac-based and quantitative immunochemical fecal occult blood testing in a population at average risk undergoing colorectal cancer screening.* Am J Gastroenterol 2010 Sep;105(9):2017-25 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20502450.
22. ↑ van Rossum LG, van Rijn AF, Laheij RJ, van Oijen MG, Fockens P, van Krieken HH, et al. *Random comparison of guaiac and immunochemical fecal occult blood tests for colorectal cancer in a screening population.* Gastroenterology 2008 Jul;135(1):82-90 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18482589.
23. ↑ Mandel JS, Bond JH, Church TR, Snover DC, Bradley GM, Schuman LM, et al. *Reducing mortality from colorectal cancer by screening for fecal occult blood. Minnesota Colon Cancer Control Study.* N Engl J Med 1993 May 13;328(19):1365-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8474513.
24. ↑ Hardcastle JD, Chamberlain JO, Robinson MH, Moss SM, Amar SS, Balfour TW, et al. *Randomised controlled trial of faecal-occult-blood screening for colorectal cancer.* Lancet 1996 Nov 30;348(9040):1472-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8942775.
25. ↑ Kronborg O, Fenger C, Olsen J, Jørgensen OD, Søndergaard O. *Randomised study of screening for colorectal cancer with faecal-occult-blood test.* Lancet 1996 Nov 30;348(9040):1467-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8942774.
26. ↑ Mandel JS, Church TR, Bond JH, Ederer F, Geisser MS, Mongin SJ, et al. *The effect of fecal occult-blood screening on the incidence of colorectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 2000 Nov 30;343(22):1603-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11096167.
27. ↑ Mandel JS, Church TR, Ederer F, Bond JH. *Colorectal cancer mortality: effectiveness of biennial screening for fecal occult blood.* J Natl Cancer Inst 1999 Mar 3;91(5):434-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10070942.

28. ↑ Hewitson P, Glasziou P, Irwig L, Towler B, Watson E. *Screening for colorectal cancer using the faecal occult blood test, Hemoccult.* Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2007 Jan 24;(1):CD001216 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17253456.
29. ↑ Towler B, Irwig L, Glasziou P, Kewenter J, Weller D, Silagy C. *A systematic review of the effects of screening for colorectal cancer using the faecal occult blood test, hemoccult.* BMJ (Clinical research ed) 1998;317:559-65 Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC28648/.
30. ↑ Segnan N, Armaroli P, Bonelli L, Risio M, Sciallero S, Zappa M, et al. *Once-only sigmoidoscopy in colorectal cancer screening: follow-up findings of the Italian Randomized Controlled Trial--SCORE.* J Natl Cancer Inst 2011 Sep 7;103(17):1310-22 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21852264.
31. ↑ Schoen RE, Pinsky PF, Weissfeld JL, Yokochi LA, Church T, Laiyemo AO, et al. *Colorectal-cancer incidence and mortality with screening flexible sigmoidoscopy.* N Engl J Med 2012 Jun 21;366(25):2345-57 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22612596.
32. ↑ Atkin WS, Edwards R, Kralj-Hans I, Wooldrage K, Hart AR, Northover JM, et al. *Once-only flexible sigmoidoscopy screening in prevention of colorectal cancer: a multicentre randomised controlled trial.* Lancet 2010 May 8;375(9726):1624-33 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20430429.
33. ↑ Elmunzer BJ, Hayward RA, Schoenfeld PS, Saini SD, Deshpande A, Waljee AK. *Effect of flexible sigmoidoscopy-based screening on incidence and mortality of colorectal cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials.* PLoS Med 2012;9(12):e1001352 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23226108.
34. ↑ Quintero E, Castells A, Bujanda L, Cubiella J, Salas D, Lanas Á, et al. *Colonoscopy versus fecal immunochemical testing in colorectal-cancer screening.* N Engl J Med 2012 Feb 23;366(8):697-706 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22356323.
35. ↑ Bretthauer M, Kaminski MF, Løberg M, Zauber AG, Regula J, Kuipers EJ, et al. *Population-Based Colonoscopy Screening for Colorectal Cancer: A Randomized Clinical Trial.* JAMA Intern Med 2016 Jul 1;176 (7):894-902 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27214731.
36. ↑ ClinicalTrials.gov. *Colonoscopy vs fecal immunochemical test in reducing mortality from colorectal cancer (CONFIRM) [NCT01239082].* [homepage on the internet]; 2016 Available from: https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01239082.
37. ↑ Knudsen AB, Zauber AG, Rutter CM, et al. *Estimation of benefits, burden, and harms of colorectal cancer screening strategies: modeling study for the US Preventive Services Task Force.* JAMA 2016;315: 2595-609.
38. ↑ Lew, JB; St John, DJ; Xu, XM; Greuter, MJ; Caruana, M; Cenin, DR. *Benefits, harms and cost-effectiveness of National Bowel Cancer Screening Program in Australia (manuscript submitted).*; 2017.
39. ↑ U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. *Screening for Colorectal Cancer US Preventive Services Task Force Recommendation Statement.* JAMA 2016;315:2564-75.
40. ↑ [40.0] [40.1] Australian Institute of Health and Welfare. *Australian Cancer Incidence and Mortality (ACIM) books: Bowel Cancer.* Canberra, Australia: Australian Institute of Health and Welfare; 2014 Available from: http://www.aihw.gov.au/WorkArea//DownloadAsset.aspx?id=60129558412.

Back to top

## 6.1.3 Appendices

NHMRC Evidence statement form PSC1a

Systematic review report PSC1a | NHMRC Evidence statement form PSC1b | Systematic review report PSC1b | Modelling report PSC1c | Modelling report PSC1d

# 6.2 Evidence: Population screening for CRC

Systematic reviews and modelling were performed to determine:

- the benefit of screening with various modalities (PSC1a)
- test accuracy (PSC1b)
- the cost-effectiveness of population screening using various strategies (PSC1c)
- the optimal target age range for population screening (PSC1d).

Back to top

# 6.2.1 Evidence: Screening benefit (PSC1a)

**Contents**



## 6.2.1.1 Systematic review evidence

*In persons without a colorectal cancer diagnosis or symptoms that might indicate colorectal cancer, which screening modality (immunochemical faecal occult blood test [iFOBT], flexible sigmoidoscopy, colonoscopy, CT colonography, faecal or blood biomarkers, or any combinations) compared with no screening, reduces colorectal cancer mortality, or the incidence of metastases at diagnosis? (PSC1a)*

A systematic review was performed to update the 2005 Australian guidelines for the prevention, early detection and management of colorectal cancer.[1]

We identified two later, relevant evidence-based guidelines which conducted systematic reviews of the literature for the period 2004–2010:

- the International Agency for Research on Cancer's European guidelines for quality assurance in colorectal cancer screening and diagnosis (2010)[2]
- the Ontario Ministry of Health and Long-term Care's Fecal occult blood test for colorectal cancer screening: evidence-based analysis (2009).[2][3]

We chose to adapt these three guidelines, updating the systematic literature review up to 31 August 2016. The search strategy, inclusion and exclusion criteria, and quality assessment are described in detail in the Technical Report.

While this systematic review was in preparation, the US Preventive Services Task Force published the 2016 update[4] of its 2008 colorectal cancer screening guidelines.[5] The literature described in the 2016 edition[4] is also covered in this review.

At the time of publication of the 2005 Australian Guidelines[1] the only high level evidence of screening benefit was from three randomised controlled trials (RCTs).[6][7][8][9][10][11] All three RCTs used Hemoccult, a guaiac faecal occult blood test (gFOBT). These trials collectively reported that screening for faecal occult blood reduced overall mortality from colorectal cancer on the basis of intention-to-screen by 15–33% (noting that the trials involved differing numbers of rounds of screening and differing follow-up periods). These findings are further supported by a 2012 update from the Nottingham trial of faecal occult blood testing for colorectal cancer [12] which, after a median of 19.5 years' follow-up, reported a colorectal cancer-specific mortality reduction of 13%. To date, only one published RCT[13] has compared immunochemical faecal occult blood test (iFOBT) to no screening in a population based setting. In this study, 94,423 individuals were offered once-only iFOBT screening and follow-up was 8 years.

The update systematic review identified four level II RCTs reported in 5 articles comparing outcomes for an asymptomatic population receiving flexible sigmoidoscopy with no screening (no contact). [14][15][16][17][18] No RCTs conducted in an asymptomatic population were found which compared any other screening methodology to no screening.

A meta-analysis of pooled data from the United Kingdom Flexible Sigmoidoscopy Screening (UKFSS), Norwegian Colorectal Cancer Prevention (NORCCAP), Italian '**SC**reening for **CO**lon**RE**ctum' (SCORE) and US Prostate, Lung, Colorectal and Ovarian (PLCO) trials was also identified.[19] This meta-analysis was at low risk of bias, and reported colorectal cancer-specific mortality, with subgroup analysis for distal and proximal disease.

### 6.2.1.1.1 Overall (all-cause) mortality

None of the screening RCTs,[6][7][8][14][15][13][17] whether based on screening by FOBT or flexible sigmoidoscopy, reported any significant difference in overall (all-cause) mortality.

Back to top

### 6.2.1.1.2 Colorectal cancer-specific mortality

As reported in the review supporting the 2005 Colorectal Cancer guidelines,[1] three level II RCTs reported colorectal cancer-specific mortality in gFOBT screening trials.[6][7][8] These trials, which involved 1–11 rounds of screening, collectively reported that screening for faecal occult blood reduced overall mortality from colorectal cancer on the basis of intention-to-screen by 15–33%. The 2012 update from the Nottingham trial[12] reported a colorectal cancer-specific mortality reduction of 13% at approximately 20 years follow-up. A 2003 Chinese RCT [13] reported a statistically significant 32% reduction in rectal cancer mortality (Poisson test $U = 2.5$, $p < 0.05$, log-rank test $p = 0.003$), but no reduction in colonic (log-rank test, $p = 0.222$) or overall colorectal cancer-specific mortality.

In this update review of the flexible sigmoidoscopy trials, the UKFSS,[16] and PLCO[15] trials both reported a statistically significant reduction in colorectal cancer specific mortality in the screened group compared with the control (no screening) group after a single round of sigmoidoscopy screening and will follow-up durations from 7–12 years. The relative reduction in colorectal cancer specific mortality varied from hazard ratio (HR) 0.57[16] to relative risk (RR) 0.74.[15] In the final NORCCAP trial report[17] intention-to-treat analysis showed a significant reduction in colorectal cancer-specific mortality ($HR = 0.73$, $p = 0.02$) in the screened group. The NORCCAP trial is unique among these RCTs, as 50% of those screened had an iFOBT in addition to flexible sigmoidoscopy.[17] In sub-analysis according to the screening modality, the overall reduction in colorectal cancer-specific mortality was statistically significant only for those who had both flexible sigmoidoscopy and iFOBT ($HR = 0.62$, $p = 0.01$) and not for flexible sigmoidoscopy alone ($HR = 0.84$, $p = 0.30$).

The meta-analysis[19] of pooled data from the UKFSS,[16] NORCCAP,[18] SCORE,[14] and PLCO[15] trials included data from a population of 337,905 participants with an average weighted median follow-up period of 10.8 years. It showed a statistically significant reduction in colorectal cancer-specific mortality in flexible sigmoidoscopy screened group, compared with the non-screened group: 28% relative risk reduction ($RR = 0.72$; 95% confidence interval (CI) 0.65 to 0.80).

All populations included in this update systematic review[14][15][16][13][17][18][19], were asymptomatic and from Western countries (UK, Sweden, Norway, USA, Italy), except for one RCT conducted in a Chinese population.[13] The early gFOBT screening trials[9][10][11] included participants from USA, UK, and Denmark.

In three flexible sigmoidoscopy trials,[14][15][16] those involved were volunteers who expressed willingness to accept flexible sigmoidoscopy if randomised to the screening arm. Reported participation rates may therefore over-estimate participation rates achievable in the general population.

Back to top

### 6.2.1.1.3 Application of the evidence on screening benefit

To date, the only RCT level evidence comparing screening with an unscreened control group comes from three large gFOBT trials[6][7][8] first reported in the 1990s, one iFOBT trial,[13] and the recent flexible sigmoidoscopy trials.[14][15][16][17][18][19]

Currently, many countries around the world, including Australia, New Zealand, Canada, and a number of European countries, have established national population-based bowel cancer screening programs that utilise either gFOBT or iFOBT for screening. The use of FOBT is the preferred screening modality in those countries, based on the available evidence and their own screening experience.

An advantage of FOBT is that the test kit can be posted in the mail to the participant, with collection of tiny samples at home and return of these samples by mail. As reported in the 2010 European guidelines for quality assurance in colorectal cancer screening and diagnosis,[2] iFOBTs have the added advantage that they specifically detect human globin, and there is no need to change diet or medication prior to testing. The analysis of many brands of iFOBT is automated and a number of them allow quantitative analysis of haemoglobin. In contrast, flexible sigmoidoscopy is an invasive procedure, requiring a highly trained workforce and special facilities. There are particular concerns about its acceptability and feasibility in the Australian setting as well as its cost-effectiveness.

**See the Evidence summary and recommendations section for guidance resulting from this systematic review.**

Next section: screening test accuracy

Back to top

## 6.2.1.2 References

1. ↑ 1.0 1.1 1.2 Australian Cancer Network Colorectal Cancer Guidelines Revision Committee. *Clinical practice guidelines for the prevention, early detection and management of colorectal cancer.* The Cancer Council Australia and Australian Cancer Network 2005.
2. ↑ 2.0 2.1 2.2 International Agency for Research on Cancer. *European guidelines for quality assurance in colorectal cancer screening and diagnosis.* First Edition: International Agency for Research on Cancer; 2010.
3. ↑ Medical Advisory Secretariat. *Fecal Occult Blood Test for Colorectal Cancer Screening: an evidence-based analysis.* Toronto, Ontario: Canada: Ministry of Health and Long-Term Care; 2009.
4. ↑ 4.0 4.1 U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. *Screening for Colorectal Cancer US Preventive Services Task Force Recommendation Statement.* JAMA 2016;315:2564-75.
5. ↑ U.S. Preventive Services Task Force, Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality. *Screening for Colorectal Cancer: U.S. Preventive Services Task Force Recommendation Statement.* Annals of Internal Medicine 2008;149:627-37 Available from: http://annals.org/aim/article/743535/screening-colorectal-cancer-u-s-preventive-services-task-force-recommendation.

6. ↑ 6.0 6.1 6.2 6.3 Mandel JS, Bond JH, Church TR, Snover DC, Bradley GM, Schuman LM, et al. *Reducing mortality from colorectal cancer by screening for fecal occult blood. Minnesota Colon Cancer Control Study.* N Engl J Med 1993 May 13;328(19):1365-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8474513.
7. ↑ 7.0 7.1 7.2 7.3 Hardcastle JD, Chamberlain JO, Robinson MH, Moss SM, Amar SS, Balfour TW, et al. *Randomised controlled trial of faecal-occult-blood screening for colorectal cancer.* Lancet 1996 Nov 30;348(9040):1472-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8942775.
8. ↑ 8.0 8.1 8.2 8.3 Kronborg O, Fenger C, Olsen J, Jørgensen OD, Søndergaard O. *Randomised study of screening for colorectal cancer with faecal-occult-blood test.* Lancet 1996 Nov 30;348(9040):1467-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8942774.
9. ↑ 9.0 9.1 Mandel JS, Church TR, Ederer F, Bond JH. *Colorectal cancer mortality: effectiveness of biennial screening for fecal occult blood.* J Natl Cancer Inst 1999 Mar 3;91(5):434-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10070942.
10. ↑ 10.0 10.1 Jørgensen OD, Kronborg O, Fenger C. *A randomised study of screening for colorectal cancer using faecal occult blood testing: results after 13 years and seven biennial screening rounds.* Gut 2002 Jan;50(1):29-32 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11772963.
11. ↑ 11.0 11.1 Scholefield JH, Moss S, Sufi F, Mangham CM, Hardcastle JD. *Effect of faecal occult blood screening on mortality from colorectal cancer: results from a randomised controlled trial.* Gut 2002 Jun;50(6):840-4 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12010887.
12. ↑ 12.0 12.1 Scholefield JH, Moss SM, Mangham CM, Whynes DK, Hardcastle JD. *Nottingham trial of faecal occult blood testing for colorectal cancer: a 20-year follow-up.* Gut 2012 Jul;61(7):1036-40 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22052062.
13. ↑ 13.0 13.1 13.2 13.3 13.4 13.5 Zheng S, Chen K, Liu X, Ma X, Yu H, Chen K, et al. *Cluster randomization trial of sequence mass screening for colorectal cancer.* Dis Colon Rectum 2003 Jan;46(1):51-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12544522.
14. ↑ 14.0 14.1 14.2 14.3 14.4 14.5 Segnan N, Armaroli P, Bonelli L, Risio M, Sciallero S, Zappa M, et al. *Once-only sigmoidoscopy in colorectal cancer screening: follow-up findings of the Italian Randomized Controlled Trial--SCORE.* J Natl Cancer Inst 2011 Sep 7;103(17):1310-22 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21852264.
15. ↑ 15.0 15.1 15.2 15.3 15.4 15.5 15.6 15.7 Schoen RE, Pinsky PF, Weissfeld JL, Yokochi LA, Church T, Laiyemo AO, et al. *Colorectal-cancer incidence and mortality with screening flexible sigmoidoscopy.* N Engl J Med 2012 Jun 21;366(25):2345-57 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22612596.
16. ↑ 16.0 16.1 16.2 16.3 16.4 16.5 16.6 Atkin WS, Edwards R, Kralj-Hans I, Wooldrage K, Hart AR, Northover JM, et al. *Once-only flexible sigmoidoscopy screening in prevention of colorectal cancer: a multicentre randomised controlled trial.* Lancet 2010 May 8;375(9726):1624-33 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20430429.
17. ↑ 17.0 17.1 17.2 17.3 17.4 17.5 Holme Ø, Løberg M, Kalager M, Bretthauer M, Hernán MA, Aas E, et al. *Effect of flexible sigmoidoscopy screening on colorectal cancer incidence and mortality: a randomized clinical trial.* JAMA 2014 Aug 13;312(6):606-15 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25117129.

18. ↑ 18.0 18.1 18.2 18.3 Hoff G, Grotmol T, Skovlund E, Bretthauer M, Norwegian Colorectal Cancer Prevention Study Group. *Risk of colorectal cancer seven years after flexible sigmoidoscopy screening: randomised controlled trial.* BMJ 2009 May 29;338:b1846 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19483252.
19. ↑ 19.0 19.1 19.2 19.3 Shroff J, Thosani N, Batra S, Singh H, Guha S. *Reduced incidence and mortality from colorectal cancer with flexible-sigmoidoscopy screening: a meta-analysis.* World J Gastroenterol 2014 Dec 28;20(48):18466-76 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25561818.

## 6.2.1.3 Appendices

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| View recommendation components | View pending evidence | View body of evidence | View all comments | View literature search |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| View PICO | NHMRC Evidence statement form PSC1a | Systematic review report PSC1a |

Back to top

# 6.2.2 Evidence: Screening test accuracy (PSC1b)

**Contents**

## 6.2.2.1 Systematic review evidence

*For persons without a colorectal cancer diagnosis or symptoms that might indicate colorectal cancer, which screening modality (immunochemical faecal occult blood test [iFOBT], flexible sigmoidoscopy, colonoscopy, faecal or blood biomarkers, or any combination) performs best in detecting colorectal cancer, and does the diagnostic performance change with family history, age, or sex? (PSC1b)*

A systematic review was performed to update the 2005 Australian guidelines for the prevention, early detection and management of colorectal cancer.[1]

We identified two later relevant evidence-based guidelines which conducted systematic reviews of the literature for the period 2004–2010:

- the European guidelines for quality assurance in colorectal cancer screening and diagnosis (2010)[2]
- the Ontario evidence-based analysis of faecal occult blood test for colorectal cancer screening (2009).[3]

We chose to adapt these guidelines,[2][3] updating the systematic literature review up to 31 August 2016. The search strategy, inclusion and exclusion criteria, and quality assessment are described in detail in the Technical report.

While this systematic review was in preparation, the US Preventive Services Task Force published the 2016 update[4] of its 2008 colorectal cancer screening guidelines.[5] The literature described in the 2016 edition[4] is also covered in this review.

Our update systematic review identified 29 diagnosis accuracy studies[6][7][8][9][10][11][12][13][14][15][16][17][18][19][20][21][22][23][24][25][26][27][28][29][30][31][32][33][34] reporting the performance of colorectal cancer screening modalities, including immunochemical FOBT (iFOBT) and faecal or serum biomarkers for the detection of colorectal cancer and/or advanced adenoma.

All studies used colonoscopy as the reference standard and all participants underwent colonoscopy. Three studies[7][8][9] (1,333 participants in total) reported the performance of iFOBT at detecting colorectal cancer and /or advanced adenoma in an above average risk population with known family history of colorectal cancer.

The majority of studies (26 in total) used iFOBTs of various brands. Very few studies reported blood/plasma cancer-specific biomarkers, or faecal cancer-specific biomarkers. Only three studies[10][11][33] reported the performance of multi-target faecal DNA tests. One study[12] reported the diagnostic performance of the faecal cancer-specific biomarker MMP-9 protein, and another[13] reported the diagnostic performance of plasma cancer-specific biomarker SEPT9 methylated DNA. Several studies reported the diagnostic performance of iFOBT [14][15] or the SEPT9[13] cancer-specific biomarker depending on participant age, and a few studies reported the diagnostic performance for iFOBT[14][16] or the SEPT9 cancer-specific biomarker[13] by sex. All participants had a colonoscopy as the reference standard.

Back to top

#### 6.2.2.1.1 Immunochemical faecal occult blood test (iFOBT)

The diagnostic performance for detection of colorectal cancer using iFOBT was reported across 20 studies,[6][7][9][11][15][17][18][19][20][21][22][23][24][25][26][27][28][29][33][34] most of which used an Eiken branded test kit. Colorectal cancer prevalence determined by reference colonoscopy was 0.48% in a combined population of 100,093 participants in these 20 studies. All studies consistently reported a sensitivity of greater than 50%, with most studies reporting sensitivities in the 60–85% range. Specificity was consistently high across all 20 studies and ranged from 85% to 100%. The positive predictive value ranged from 1% to 25%, with the majority of studies reporting single-digit values. Negative predictive value was consistently above 99% for most studies.

The diagnostic performance for detection of advanced adenomas using iFOBT was reported in 13 studies. [6][11][14][18][19][25][27][28][29][30][31][33][34] The prevalence of advanced adenomas was 4.5% in a combined population of 60,671 participants included in these 13 studies. Sensitivities reported were lower than for colorectal cancer, the majority of studies reporting 20–40% sensitivity. Specificity was consistently high and most studies reported > 85%. Most studies reported a positive predictive value for adenoma ranging from 20–40%. Negative predictive value was consistently > 90%.

The diagnostic performance for detection of colorectal cancer and/or advanced adenomas was reported in 10 studies.[7][9][15][16][17][21][22][24][26][32] The prevalence of colorectal cancer and/or advanced adenomas was 3.6% in a combined population of 40,272 participants included in these 10 studies. Sensitivities reported ranged from 5% to 75%, but was commonly reported in the range 40–60%. Specificity was > 80% in most studies, and positive predictive value was < 30% in most studies. Negative predictive value was > 90% for all studies.

Only three studies[7][8][9] reported the diagnostic performance of iFOBT for the detection of colorectal cancer and/or advanced adenoma in above-average risk populations with known family history of colorectal cancer. These studies reported inconsistent results. No studies reported the use of biomarker assays in this above average risk population.

Back to top

#### 6.2.2.1.2 Faecal cancer-specific biomarker (DNA)

One study reported the diagnostic performance of two faecal DNA tests[10] for the detection of colorectal cancer. In addition, two studies[11][33] reported different multi-target faecal DNA assays to detect colorectal cancer.

Both multi-target faecal DNA tests outperformed other faecal DNA tests. One study reported sensitivities above 90%,[11] and the other reported sensitivities ranging from 25% to 58%.[33]

Specificities were above 84% for all tests reported.[10]

Two studies reported the diagnostic performance of faecal DNA tests[10][33] at detecting advanced adenomas. Reported sensitivities ranged from 17% to 46% and specificities ranged from 84% to 96%.

One study[11] reported the diagnostic performance of a multi-target faecal DNA in combination with an iFOBT for detection of colorectal cancer and/or advanced adenomas. Sensitivity and specificity were 42.4% and 86.6% respectively.[11]

No studies reported the use of faecal biomarker assays in an above-average risk population.

Back to top

### 6.2.2.1.3 Blood cancer-specific biomarkers

A single study[13] reported the diagnostic performance of a plasma methylated SEPT9 DNA assay for the detection of colorectal cancer or advanced adenomas. Sensitivities ranged from 48% to 56% and specificity ranged from 89% to 92%, depending on age (< 65 versus ≥ 65 years) or sex analysis for detection of colorectal cancer. Sensitivities ranged from 4.6% to 13% and specificity ranged from 88.6% to 92.6%, depending on age (< 65 versus ≥ 65 years) or sex analysis for detection of advanced adenomas.

No studies specifically reported the diagnostic performance of blood cancer-specific biomarker assays for advance neoplasms (i.e. the combination of cancer and advanced adenomas) or in participants with above-average risk of colorectal cancer.

**See the Evidence summary and recommendations section for guidance resulting from this systematic review.**

Next section: screening cost effectiveness

Back to top

## 6.2.2.2 References

1. ↑ Australian Cancer Network Colorectal Cancer Guidelines Revision Committee. *Clinical practice guidelines for the prevention, early detection and management of colorectal cancer.* The Cancer Council Australia and Australian Cancer Network 2005.
2. ↑ [2.0] [2.1] International Agency for Research on Cancer. *European guidelines for quality assurance in colorectal cancer screening and diagnosis.* First Edition: International Agency for Research on Cancer; 2010.
3. ↑ [3.0] [3.1] Medical Advisory Secretariat. *Fecal Occult Blood Test for Colorectal Cancer Screening: an evidence-based analysis.* Toronto, Ontario: Canada: Ministry of Health and Long-Term Care; 2009.
4. ↑ [4.0] [4.1] U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. *Screening for Colorectal Cancer US Preventive Services Task Force Recommendation Statement.* JAMA 2016;315:2564-75.
5. ↑ U.S. Preventive Services Task Force, Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality. *Screening for Colorectal Cancer: U.S. Preventive Services Task Force Recommendation Statement.* Annals of Internal Medicine 2008;149:627-37 Available from: http://annals.org/aim/article/743535/screening-colorectal-cancer-u-s-preventive-services-task-force-recommendation.

6. ↑ 6.0 6.1 6.2 Park DI, Ryu S, Kim YH, Lee SH, Lee CK, Eun CS, et al. *Comparison of guaiac-based and quantitative immunochemical fecal occult blood testing in a population at average risk undergoing colorectal cancer screening.* Am J Gastroenterol 2010 Sep;105(9):2017-25 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20502450.
7. ↑ 7.0 7.1 7.2 7.3 7.4 Castro I, Cubiella J, Rivera C, González-Mao C, Vega P, Soto S, et al. *Fecal immunochemical test accuracy in familial risk colorectal cancer screening.* Int J Cancer 2014 Jan 15;134 (2):367-75 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23818169.
8. ↑ 8.0 8.1 8.2 Gimeno-García AZ, Quintero E, Nicolás-Pérez D, Hernández-Guerra M, Parra-Blanco A, Jiménez-Sosa A. *Screening for familial colorectal cancer with a sensitive immunochemical fecal occult blood test: a pilot study.* Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2009 Sep;21(9):1062-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19307978.
9. ↑ 9.0 9.1 9.2 9.3 9.4 Ng SC, Ching JY, Chan V, Wong MC, Suen BY, Hirai HW, et al. *Diagnostic accuracy of faecal immunochemical test for screening individuals with a family history of colorectal cancer.* Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2013 Oct;38(7):835-41 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23957462.
10. ↑ 10.0 10.1 10.2 10.3 10.4 Ahlquist DA, Sargent DJ, Loprinzi CL, Levin TR, Rex DK, Ahnen DJ, et al. *Stool DNA and occult blood testing for screen detection of colorectal neoplasia.* Ann Intern Med 2008 Oct 7;149(7): 441-50, W81 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18838724.
11. ↑ 11.0 11.1 11.2 11.3 11.4 11.5 11.6 11.7 Imperiale TF, Ransohoff DF, Itzkowitz SH, Levin TR, Lavin P, Lidgard GP, et al. *Multitarget stool DNA testing for colorectal-cancer screening.* N Engl J Med 2014 Apr 3;370(14): 1287-97 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24645800.
12. ↑ 12.0 12.1 Annaházi A, Ábrahám S, Farkas K, Rosztóczy A, Inczefi O, Földesi I, et al. *A pilot study on faecal MMP-9: a new noninvasive diagnostic marker of colorectal cancer.* Br J Cancer 2016 Mar 29;114(7):787-92 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26908323.
13. ↑ 13.0 13.1 13.2 13.3 13.4 Church TR, Wandell M, Lofton-Day C, Mongin SJ, Burger M, Payne SR, et al. *Prospective evaluation of methylated SEPT9 in plasma for detection of asymptomatic colorectal cancer.* Gut 2014 Feb;63(2):317-25 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23408352.
14. ↑ 14.0 14.1 14.2 14.3 Khalid-de Bakker CA, Jonkers DM, Sanduleanu S, de Bruïne AP, Meijer GA, Janssen JB, et al. *Test performance of immunologic fecal occult blood testing and sigmoidoscopy compared with primary colonoscopy screening for colorectal advanced adenomas.* Cancer Prev Res (Phila) 2011 Oct;4 (10):1563-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21750209.
15. ↑ 15.0 15.1 15.2 15.3 Chen Y-Y, Chen T-H, Su M-Y, Ning H-C, Kuo C-J, Lin W-P, et al.. *Accuracy of immunochemical fecal occult blood test for detecting colorectal neoplasms in individuals undergoing health check-ups.* Advances in Digestive Medicine 2014 Sep;Volume 1, Issue 3, Pages 74–79 Available from: http://www.aidm-online.com/article/S2351-9797(14)00045-0/abstract.
16. ↑ 16.0 16.1 16.2 Brenner H, Haug U, Hundt S. *Sex differences in performance of fecal occult blood testing.* Am J Gastroenterol 2010 Nov;105(11):2457-64 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed /20700114.
17. ↑ 17.0 17.1 17.2 Brenner H, Tao S. *Superior diagnostic performance of faecal immunochemical tests for haemoglobin in a head-to-head comparison with guaiac based faecal occult blood test among 2235 participants of screening colonoscopy.* Eur J Cancer 2013 Sep;49(14):3049-54 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23706981.

18. ↑ 18.0 18.1 18.2 Chiu HM, Lee YC, Tu CH, Chen CC, Tseng PH, Liang JT, et al. *Association between early stage colon neoplasms and false-negative results from the fecal immunochemical test.* Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2013 Jul;11(7):832-8.e1-2 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23376002.
19. ↑ 19.0 19.1 19.2 de Wijkerslooth TR, Stoop EM, Bossuyt PM, Meijer GA, van Ballegooijen M, van Roon AH, et al. *Immunochemical fecal occult blood testing is equally sensitive for proximal and distal advanced neoplasia.* Am J Gastroenterol 2012 Oct;107(10):1570-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22850431.
20. ↑ 20.0 20.1 Elsafi SH, Alqahtani NI, Zakary NY, Al Zahrani EM. *The sensitivity, specificity, predictive values, and likelihood ratios of fecal occult blood test for the detection of colorectal cancer in hospital settings.* Clin Exp Gastroenterol 2015;8:279-84 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26392783.
21. ↑ 21.0 21.1 21.2 Hernandez V, Cubiella J, Gonzalez-Mao MC, Iglesias F, Rivera C, Iglesias MB, et al. *Fecal immunochemical test accuracy in average-risk colorectal cancer screening.* World J Gastroenterol 2014 Jan 28;20(4):1038-47 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24574776.
22. ↑ 22.0 22.1 22.2 Kato J, Morikawa T, Kuriyama M, Yamaji Y, Wada R, Mitsushima T, et al. *Combination of sigmoidoscopy and a fecal immunochemical test to detect proximal colon neoplasia.* Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2009 Dec;7(12):1341-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19426835.
23. ↑ 23.0 23.1 Lee YC, Chiu HM, Chiang TH, Yen AM, Chiu SY, Chen SL, et al. *Accuracy of faecal occult blood test and Helicobacter pylori stool antigen test for detection of upper gastrointestinal lesions.* BMJ Open 2013 Oct 30;3(10):e003989 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24176798.
24. ↑ 24.0 24.1 24.2 Lee YH, Hur M, Kim H, Jeon KN, Yun CH, Lee CH, et al. *Optimal cut-off concentration for a faecal immunochemical test for haemoglobin by Hemo Techt NS-Plus C15 system for the colorectal cancer screening.* Clin Chem Lab Med 2015 Feb;53(3):e69-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25153599.
25. ↑ 25.0 25.1 25.2 Morikawa T, Kato J, Yamaji Y, Wada R, Mitsushima T, Shiratori Y. *A comparison of the immunochemical fecal occult blood test and total colonoscopy in the asymptomatic population.* Gastroenterology 2005 Aug;129(2):422-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16083699.
26. ↑ 26.0 26.1 26.2 Omata F, Shintani A, Isozaki M, Masuda K, Fujita Y, Fukui T. *Diagnostic performance of quantitative fecal immunochemical test and multivariate prediction model for colorectal neoplasms in asymptomatic individuals.* Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2011 Nov;23(11):1036-41 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21897207.
27. ↑ 27.0 27.1 27.2 Parra-Blanco A, Gimeno-García AZ, Quintero E, Nicolás D, Moreno SG, Jiménez A, et al. *Diagnostic accuracy of immunochemical versus guaiac faecal occult blood tests for colorectal cancer screening.* J Gastroenterol 2010 Jul;45(7):703-12 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20157748.
28. ↑ 28.0 28.1 28.2 Terhaar sive Droste JS, Oort FA, van der Hulst RW, van Heukelem HA, Loffeld RJ, van Turenhout ST, et al. *Higher fecal immunochemical test cutoff levels: lower positivity rates but still acceptable detection rates for early-stage colorectal cancers.* Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 2011 Feb;20(2):272-80 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21135261.
29. ↑ 29.0 29.1 29.2 Viana Freitas BR, Kibune Nagasako C, Pavan CR, Silva Lorena SL, Guerrazzi F, Saddy Rodrigues Coy C, et al. *Immunochemical fecal occult blood test for detection of advanced colonic adenomas and colorectal cancer: comparison with colonoscopy results.* Gastroenterol Res Pract 2013; 2013:384561 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24319453.

30. ↑ 30.0 30.1 Graser A, Stieber P, Nagel D, Schäfer C, Horst D, Becker CR, et al. *Comparison of CT colonography, colonoscopy, sigmoidoscopy and faecal occult blood tests for the detection of advanced adenoma in an average risk population.* Gut 2009 Feb;58(2):241-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18852257.
31. ↑ 31.0 31.1 Hundt S, Haug U, Brenner H. *Comparative evaluation of immunochemical fecal occult blood tests for colorectal adenoma detection.* Ann Intern Med 2009 Feb 3;150(3):162-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19189905.
32. ↑ 32.0 32.1 Levy BT, Bay C, Xu Y, Daly JM, Bergus G, Dunkelberg J, et al. *Test characteristics of faecal immunochemical tests (FIT) compared with optical colonoscopy.* J Med Screen 2014 Sep;21(3):133-43 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24958730.
33. ↑ 33.0 33.1 33.2 33.3 33.4 33.5 33.6 Redwood DG, Asay ED, Blake ID, Sacco PE, Christensen CM, Sacco FD, et al. *Stool DNA Testing for Screening Detection of Colorectal Neoplasia in Alaska Native People.* Mayo Clin Proc 2016 Jan;91(1):61-70 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26520415.
34. ↑ 34.0 34.1 34.2 Nakazako M. YH, Matsushita H., Sato K., Fujita K., Yamanaka Y., Imai Y.. *Immunologic Fecal Occult Blood test for Colorectal cancer Screening.* Japan med Assoc J 2006 Jun;49:203-7 Available from: http://www.med.or.jp/english/pdf/2006_05+/203_207.pdf.

Back to top

## 6.2.2.3 Appendices

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| View recommendation components | View pending evidence | View body of evidence | View all comments | View literature search |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| View PICO | NHMRC Evidence statement form PSC1b | Systematic review report PSC1b |

Back to top

# 6.2.3 Evidence: Screening cost effectiveness (PSC1c)

## 6.2.3.1 Background

The literature review found high-level evidence supporting effectiveness (mortality reduction) of immunochemical faecal occult blood testing (iFOBT) and flexible sigmoidoscopy in population screening for colorectal cancer, compared with no screening. However, there was no high-level evidence evaluating colonoscopy, computed tomography (CT) colonography, or cancer-specific faecal or blood biomarkers.

Future large-scale trials to further evaluate screening strategies are unlikely, due to the cost and necessary duration. When RCT evidence cannot be obtained, modelling studies based on sophisticated understanding of colorectal cancer natural history are an acceptable source of data to guide public health planning decisions.[1][2][3][4][5]

Back to top

## 6.2.3.2 Modelling study findings

*In persons without a bowel cancer diagnosis or symptoms that might indicate bowel cancer, what is the most cost-effective, feasible and acceptable screening modality (iFOBT, flexible sigmoidoscopy, colonoscopy, CT colonography, faecal or blood biomarkers test, or any combinations) compared with no screening? (PSC1c)*

A comprehensive validated model of colorectal cancer development and bowel screening ('Policy1-Bowel') was used to simulate the National Bowel Cancer Screening Program (NBCSP) and alternative screening approaches (Table 3.3). Details of the methods and result can be found in the Technical Report.

The term 'adherence' applies to compliance with recommendations for screening, follow-up and surveillance.

The strategies were evaluated in context of three scenarios:

- Scenario 1 assumes perfect adherence to screening, follow-up and surveillance recommendations.
- Scenario 2 assumes high (but imperfect) participation (participation after first invitation was 57% for screening strategies using iFOBT and faecal/ blood biomarkers test, and was 35% for screening strategies using colonoscopy, sigmoidoscopy and CT colonography).
- Scenario 3 assumes lower participation (participation after first invitation was 27% for screening strategies using iFOBT and faecal/ blood biomarkers test, and was 15% for screening strategies using colonoscopy, sigmoidoscopy and CT colonography).

Specific participation assumptions differed according to screening modality and an individual's screening history and were derived based on currently observed screening participation in Australia and expert opinion for new modalities (see Appendix for details of participation assumptions for each modality).

### 6.2.3.2.1 Table 3.3 Screening strategies evaluated

| Strategy name | Description |
|---|---|
| No screening (comparator) | No screening |

| Strategy name | Description |
|---|---|
| iFOBT2y | iFOBT screening every 2 years at age 50–74 years (NBCSP from 2020) |
| iFOBT1y | iFOBT every year screening at age 50–74 years |
| plasmaDNA2y (exploratory modelling based on limited data from a small number of cross-sectional studies; no data on longitudinal outcomes for this technology available) | Citation:Church TR, Wandell M, Lofton-Day |

1. ↑ Cenin DR, St John DJ, Ledger MJ, Slevin T, Lansdorp-Vogelaar I. *Optimising the expansion of the National Bowel Cancer Screening Program.* The Medical Journal of Australia 2014;201:456-61 Available from: https://www.mja.com.au/journal/2014/201/8/optimising-expansion-national-bowel-cancer-screening-program.
2. ↑ Knudsen AB, Zauber AG, Rutter CM, et al. *Estimation of benefits, burden, and harms of colorectal cancer screening strategies: modeling study for the US Preventive Services Task Force.* JAMA 2016;315: 2595-609.
3. ↑ Meester RG, Doubeni CA, Lansdorp-Vogelaar I, Jensen CD, van der Meulen MP, Levin TR, et al. *Variation in Adenoma Detection Rate and the Lifetime Benefits and Cost of Colorectal Cancer Screening: A Microsimulation Model.* JAMA 2015 Jun 16;313(23):2349-58 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26080339.
4. ↑ van Hees F, Zauber AG, van Veldhuizen H, Heijnen ML, Penning C, de Koning HJ, et al. *The value of models in informing resource allocation in colorectal cancer screening: the case of The Netherlands.* Gut 2015 Dec;64(12):1985-97 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26063755.
5. ↑ Greuter MJ, Demirel E, Lew JB, Berkhof J, Xu XM, Canfell K, et al. *Long-Term Impact of the Dutch Colorectal Cancer Screening Program on Cancer Incidence and Mortality-Model-Based Exploration of the Serrated Pathway.* Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 2016 Jan;25(1):135-44 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26598535.

## 6.2.4 Evidence: Screening age (PSC1d)

*Is population screening starting at an earlier age more effective and as feasible, acceptable and cost-effective as screening starting at age 50 years? In population screening, do the harms outweigh the benefits if routine screening is continued beyond the age of 75 years? (PSC1d)*

**Contents**

## 6.2.4.1 Background

Randomised clinical trials[1][2][3][4][5][6][7][8] have demonstrated that population-based colorectal cancer screening reduces colorectal cancer mortality for average-risk individuals aged between 50–75 years.

To date, no population-based colorectal cancer screening trials have specifically reported the effectiveness for population screening in average-risk individuals under 50 years, or older than 75 years.

When RCT evidence cannot be obtained, modelling studies based on sophisticated understanding of colorectal cancer natural history are an acceptable source of data to guide public health planning decisions.[9][10][11][12][13]

Back to top

## 6.2.4.2 Modelling study findings

A modelled evaluation was undertaken to assess the benefit, harms and cost-effectiveness of colorectal cancer screening in people aged 50–74 years with iFOBT every 2 years (the strategy adopted by the current NBCSP program), in comparison with potential alternatives for the target age for colorectal cancer screening in Australia:

- inviting people from age 40 or 45 years (versus 50 years)
- continuing screening to age 79 or 84 years (versus 74 years)
- a combination of these age ranges.

All strategies were evaluated for three scenarios with different screening adherence assumptions:

- Scenario 1 assumed perfect adherence to recommendations for screening, follow-up and surveillance.
- Scenario 2 assumed ‘high’ adherence (approximately 66–69% screening participation).
- Scenario 3 assumed ‘low’ adherence (approximately 49% screening participation, derived from currently observed rate[14]).

Although Strategy 1 is not achievable in practice, this analysis allows direct comparison of the outcomes and costs of screening approaches independent of the differing (and uncertain) adherence assumptions for each new strategy. Strategies 2 and 3 were selected in order to test the robustness of the study findings by evaluating strategies under realistic participation assumptions of imperfect adherence.

When the two realistic (imperfect) participation scenarios were considered, favourable assumptions were made with respect to screening participation in 40–49 year-olds and 75–84 year-olds (i.e. the screening participation rate among the 40–49 and 75–84 years age groups was assumed to be the same as the rate modelled for 50-year-olds and 74-year-olds, respectively, with no impact on screening behaviour at 50–74 years. As a result, strategies assuming an alternative screening age range were associated with a higher proportion of individuals being screened at least once in a lifetime compared to the current NBCSP, which may not be the case in practice (i.e. people screened in their forties may be, in practice, less likely to screen at older ages). These participation assumptions must therefore be considered in interpreting the result for realistic (imperfect) adherence), whereas the findings for perfectly adherent cohorts reflect the direct effects of screening age range *per se*.

Back to top

## 6.2.4.3 Health outcomes

With perfect adherence, the current NBCSP would reduce age-standardised risk (in 0-89 years) of colorectal cancer incidence by 52% and mortality by 74%, compared with no screening. Extending the target age group would result in additional, relatively modest benefits; extending screening to a younger age group (starting at 40 or 45 years) would result in additional reductions in incidence (4–6 percentage points) and mortality (4–8 percentage points). Similarly, extending screening to an older age-group (ending at 79 or 84 years) would result in an additional reductions in incidence (2 percentage points) and mortality (4–5 percentage points).

Compared with no screening, iFOBT screening every 2 years at age 50–74 years (the current NBCSP) was predicted to:

- reduce colorectal cancer incidence by 52% and reduce colorectal cancer mortality by 74% in Scenario 1 (perfect adherence)
- reduce colorectal cancer incidence by 33% and reduce colorectal cancer mortality by 53% under Scenario 2 (‘high’ adherence)
- reduce colorectal cancer incidence by 23% and reduce colorectal cancer mortality by 37% under Scenario 3 (‘low’ adherence).

Extending the target age group would result in additional reduction in colorectal cancer incidence and mortality:

- lowering the screening start age to 40 or 45 years would result in additional reductions of 2-6 percentage points in colorectal cancer incidence and 2–9 percentage points in colorectal cancer mortality in all scenarios
- extending the age of ceasing screening to 79 years or 84 years would result in an additional reduction of 1–2 percentage points in colorectal cancer incidence and 2–5 percentage points in colorectal cancer mortality in all scenarios
- extending the screening age from the current 50–74 years to 40–84 years would result an additional overall reduction of 7–8 percentage points in cancer incidence and 12–14 percentage points in cancer mortality in all scenarios.

If the screening age range was widened from the current 50–74 years to 40–84 years, an overall reduction of 7–8 percentage points in cancer incidence and 12–14 percentage points in cancer mortality was estimated.

Back to top

## 6.2.4.4 Cost-effectiveness

With an indicative willingness-to-pay threshold of A$50,000 per life–year saved in Australia, only two strategies were found to be cost-effective in all scenarios after calculating the incremental cost-effective ratio (ICER):

- the current NBCSP (ICER A$4,264–8,075 per life–year saved, depending on participation)
- screening at 45–74 years (ICER A$19,451–40,813 per life–year saved, depending on participation).

Extending screening to older ages was not cost-effective in any participation scenario.

Starting screening at age 40 years was not found to be cost-effective in all participation scenarios, but starting at 45 years was found to be potentially cost-effective in all participation scenarios.

The cost-effectiveness modelling is described in detail in the Technical report.

Back to top

## 6.2.4.5 Resource utilisation

Predicted resource requirements in the lifetime of 100,000 persons alive at 40 years within the current NBCSP strategy (iFOBT screening every 2 years in people aged 50–74 years) were:

- 1 million iFOBT tests and 127,300 colonoscopies in Scenario 1 (perfect screening adherence)
- 720,200 iFOBT tests and 66,700 colonoscopies in Scenario 2 (high screening adherence)
- 472,000 iFOBT tests and 44,700 colonoscopies in Scenario 3 (low screening adherence).

Extending the screening age-range resulted in predicted increases in resource utilisation, compared with the current NBCSP strategy:

- Screening at 50–79 years would result in a 21–30% increase in colonoscopies in all scenarios.
- Screening at 50–84 years would result in a 42–64% increase in colonoscopies in all scenarios.
- Screening at 45–74 years would result in a 7–14% increase in colonoscopies in all scenarios.
- Screening at 40–74 years would result in a 27-38% increase in colonoscopies in all scenarios.
- Screening at 40–84 years would result in a 66–91% increase in iFOBTs and a 72–109% increase in colonoscopies in all scenarios.

This modelling is described in detail in the Technical report.

Back to top

## 6.2.4.6 Balance of benefits to harms

For the current NBCSP, the model predicted the following NNCs compared with no screening:

- (Scenario 1) 28 colonoscopies per case prevented and 56 colonoscopies per death prevented

- (Scenarios 2 and 3) 22 colonoscopies per case prevented and 39–41 colonoscopies per death prevented.

For details, see the Modelling report.

The 'benefit–harms frontier' (showing strategies with the favourable balance between benefit and harm, compared with strategies of similar effectiveness considered in the evaluation) and the incremental benefits to harms ratio (IBHR) of the 'dominating' strategies are shown in the modelling report hyperink. We thus estimated the number of additional colonoscopies required to prevent one additional colorectal cancer case/colorectal death for each strategy, compared with the next most effective strategy on the frontier. These NNCs for the additional deaths prevented for age-extensions of the NBCSP are up to 2–14 times higher than that the baseline NNC for the existing NBCSP.

For example, at current levels of participation, starting screening from age 45 years would be associated with an additional 67 colonoscopies for each additional death prevented, compared with an NNC of 39 colonoscopies per death prevented by the existing program.

For more information about the balance of benefits to harms, see the Modelling report.

**See the Evidence summary and recommendations section for guidance resulting from this modelling.**

Next section: evidence summary, recommendations and considerations

Back to top

## 6.2.4.7 References

1. ↑ Mandel JS, Bond JH, Church TR, Snover DC, Bradley GM, Schuman LM, et al. *Reducing mortality from colorectal cancer by screening for fecal occult blood. Minnesota Colon Cancer Control Study.* N Engl J Med 1993 May 13;328(19):1365-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8474513.
2. ↑ Hardcastle JD, Chamberlain JO, Robinson MH, Moss SM, Amar SS, Balfour TW, et al. *Randomised controlled trial of faecal-occult-blood screening for colorectal cancer.* Lancet 1996 Nov 30;348(9040):1472-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8942775.
3. ↑ Kronborg O, Fenger C, Olsen J, Jørgensen OD, Søndergaard O. *Randomised study of screening for colorectal cancer with faecal-occult-blood test.* Lancet 1996 Nov 30;348(9040):1467-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8942774.
4. ↑ Segnan N, Armaroli P, Bonelli L, Risio M, Sciallero S, Zappa M, et al. *Once-only sigmoidoscopy in colorectal cancer screening: follow-up findings of the Italian Randomized Controlled Trial--SCORE.* J Natl Cancer Inst 2011 Sep 7;103(17):1310-22 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21852264.
5. ↑ Schoen RE, Pinsky PF, Weissfeld JL, Yokochi LA, Church T, Laiyemo AO, et al. *Colorectal-cancer incidence and mortality with screening flexible sigmoidoscopy.* N Engl J Med 2012 Jun 21;366(25):2345-57 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22612596.
6. ↑ Atkin WS, Edwards R, Kralj-Hans I, Wooldrage K, Hart AR, Northover JM, et al. *Once-only flexible sigmoidoscopy screening in prevention of colorectal cancer: a multicentre randomised controlled trial.* Lancet 2010 May 8;375(9726):1624-33 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20430429.

7. ↑ Zheng S, Chen K, Liu X, Ma X, Yu H, Chen K, et al. *Cluster randomization trial of sequence mass screening for colorectal cancer.* Dis Colon Rectum 2003 Jan;46(1):51-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12544522.
8. ↑ Hoff G, Grotmol T, Skovlund E, Bretthauer M, Norwegian Colorectal Cancer Prevention Study Group. *Risk of colorectal cancer seven years after flexible sigmoidoscopy screening: randomised controlled trial.* BMJ 2009 May 29;338:b1846 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19483252.
9. ↑ Cenin DR, St John DJ, Ledger MJ, Slevin T, Lansdorp-Vogelaar I. *Optimising the expansion of the National Bowel Cancer Screening Program.* The Medical Journal of Australia 2014;201:456-61 Available from: https://www.mja.com.au/journal/2014/201/8/optimising-expansion-national-bowel-cancer-screening-program.
10. ↑ Knudsen AB, Zauber AG, Rutter CM, et al. *Estimation of benefits, burden, and harms of colorectal cancer screening strategies: modeling study for the US Preventive Services Task Force.* JAMA 2016;315:2595-609.
11. ↑ Meester RG, Doubeni CA, Lansdorp-Vogelaar I, Jensen CD, van der Meulen MP, Levin TR, et al. *Variation in Adenoma Detection Rate and the Lifetime Benefits and Cost of Colorectal Cancer Screening: A Microsimulation Model.* JAMA 2015 Jun 16;313(23):2349-58 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26080339.
12. ↑ van Hees F, Zauber AG, van Veldhuizen H, Heijnen ML, Penning C, de Koning HJ, et al. *The value of models in informing resource allocation in colorectal cancer screening: the case of The Netherlands.* Gut 2015 Dec;64(12):1985-97 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26063755.
13. ↑ Greuter MJ, Demirel E, Lew JB, Berkhof J, Xu XM, Canfell K, et al. *Long-Term Impact of the Dutch Colorectal Cancer Screening Program on Cancer Incidence and Mortality-Model-Based Exploration of the Serrated Pathway.* Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 2016 Jan;25(1):135-44 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26598535.
14. ↑ Australian Institute of Health and Welfare. *National Bowel Cancer Screening Program: monitoring report 2016. Cancer series no. 98. Cat. no. CAN 97.* Canberra: AIHW; 2016.

Back to top

## 6.2.4.8 Appendices

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| View recommendation components | View pending evidence | View body of evidence | View all comments | Modelling report PSC1d |

Back to top

# 6.3 Evidence summary, recommendations and considerations

**Contents**



## 6.3.1 Evidence summary table

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| **Screening benefit (PSC1a)** | | |
| Several RCTs evaluating guaiac faecal occult blood test -based screening demonstrated a significant reduction in colorectal cancer-specific mortality, compared with no screening. | I, II | [1], [2], [3], [4], [5], [6], [7], [8], [9], [10], [11] |
| A large study evaluating the combination of once-only immunochemical faecal occult | II | [12] |

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| blood testing, with flexible sigmoidoscopy (but not colonoscopy) for those with a positive test, showed a 32% reduction in rectal cancer mortality, but no reduction in overall mortality or colon cancer-specific mortality, at 8-year follow-up. | | |
| A total of 4 Level II RCTs compared flexible sigmoidoscopy as a screening modality with no screening, and reported a combined 28% reduction in colorectal cancer-specific mortality in those randomised to screening after nearly 11 years of follow-up. This benefit in colorectal cancer-specific mortality was attributed only to a reduction in distal colorectal cancer-specific mortality and not proximal colorectal cancer-specific mortality. Most trials provided a once-only flexible sigmoidoscopy as the screening test. | I, II | [1], [2], [3], [4], [5], [6], [7] |
| No high-level RCTs were found that compared screening with colonoscopy, CT colonography, faecal DNA biomarkers, or blood or plasma cancer-specific biomarkers such as DNA, with no screening. | N/A | |
| Only one RCT (NORCCAP) reported the combination of two screening modalities, flexible sigmoidoscopy and immunochemical faecal occult blood testing (iFOBT). The overall reduction in colorectal cancer-specific mortality was only statistically significant for those who had flexible sigmoidoscopy and iFOBT (HR = 0.62, p = 0.01) and not for flexible sigmoidoscopy alone (HR = 0.84, p = 0.30). | II | [13] |
| **Screening test accuracy (PSC1b)** | | |
| iFOBT performed best at detection of colorectal cancer (when compared to a colonoscopy reference standard), and was also able to detect a proportion of advanced adenomas. | II, III-1 | [14], [15], [16], [17], [18], [19], [20], [21], [22], [23], [24], [25], [26], [27], [28], [29], [30], [31], [32], [33], [34], [35], [36], [37], [38] |
| There is insufficient evidence to fully assess the diagnostic performance of non-faecal occult blood test (FOBT) faecal or blood-based cancer-specific biomarker assays. | II, III-1 | [39], [40], [41], [19] |
| There is insufficient evidence to determine how the diagnostic performance of iFOBT or biomarker assays may alter with participant age, sex, or risk of colorectal cancer. | II, III-1 | [41], [19], [42], [20] |

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| **Screening cost effectiveness (PSC1c)** | | |
| Assuming 100% adherence to screening recommendations, modelling predicted the most effective screening strategies would be:<br><br>■ iFOBT every year in people aged 50–74 years<br>■ once-only colonoscopy screening at age 50 years combined with iFOBT every 2 years in people aged 52–74<br>■ colonoscopy screening every 10 years at ages 55, 65 and 75 years<br>■ iFOBT screening every 2 years at age 50–74 years, with or without adjunct flexible sigmoidoscopy (either at age 50 years or at ages 54, 64 and 74 years) for individuals with negative iFOBT.<br><br>Analysis based on early data from cross-sectional studies also suggested that screening with a faecal DNA assay every 2 years may be effective if emerging evidence supports the assumed test characteristics. | N/A | |
| The current National Bowel Cancer Screening Program (NBCSP) strategy (iFOBT every 2 years at age 50–74 years) is associated with predicted reductions of 52% in colorectal cancer incidence and 75% in colorectal cancer-specific mortality in perfectly adherent people. Overall, the most effective strategies (as noted above) were associated with a 52–67% reduction in colorectal cancer incidence and 75–82% reduction in colorectal cancer mortality, compared with no screening, given perfect adherence. | N/A | |
| The incremental cost-effectiveness (ICER) analysis identified five strategies that represented the best value for money of all the available strategies assessed (i.e. strategies found to cost the least among all strategies with similar or higher effectiveness), but only two of these would be cost-effective in Australia under all scenarios, given the indicative willingness-to-pay threshold of A$50,000 per life–year saved:<br><br>■ CT colonography every 10 years<br>■ iFOBT every 2 years at age 50–74 years (the current program).<br><br>However, analysis for CT colonography screening was based on more limited evidence for cross-sectional accuracy and there is a lack of evidence for longitudinal outcomes (long-term benefit). In the modelled analysis, the current NBCSP was the most effective of these two strategies.<br><br>iFOBT screening every year was not found to be cost-effective, with an ICER of > $100,000 per life–year saved. | N/A | |

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| The ICER for the current NBCSP (iFOBT screening every 2 years), compared with the next most effective strategy (CT colonography) on the cost-effectiveness frontier, was A$6,825-36,858 per life–year saved (depending on participation), taking into account all the other strategies included in the analysis.<br><br>This is not the same as the cost-effectiveness ratio (CER) of the current NBCSP compared with no screening (estimated at approximately $2,000–3,000 per life–year saved).<br><br>Each of these estimates provides a measure of the cost-effectiveness of the current NBCSP, but the ICER considers a range of other, theoretically possible, options. Whichever measure is used, the current NBCSP was found to be cost-effective. | N/A | |
| The current NBCSP (iFOBT screening every 2 years) requires 56 colonoscopies to prevent one colorectal cancer death, assuming 100% adherence to screening recommendations. No other strategy was found to have both fewer colorectal cancer deaths and fewer colonoscopies than iFOBT every 2 years, implying that the current NBCSP has an optimal balance of benefits and harms. | N/A | |
| **Screening age (PSC1d)** | | |
| To date, no published RCTs have reported outcomes related to colorectal cancer screening-specific outcomes in those less than 50 years of age, or greater than 75 years of age. | N/A | |
| Screening with iFOBT once every two years between 50 and 74 years (the current NBCSP) was predicted to reduce colorectal cancer incidence by 52% and reduce colorectal cancer mortality by 74%, compared to no screening (assuming perfect adherence). | N/A | |
| Compared to the current NBCSP, lowering the screening start age to 40 or 45 years would result in additional reductions of 2–6 percentage points in colorectal cancer incidence and 2–9 percentage points in colorectal cancer-specific mortality, in all participation scenarios considered. | N/A | |
| Extending the age of ceasing screening to 79 or 84 years would result an additional reduction of 1–2 percentage points in colorectal cancer incidence and 2–5 percentage points in colorectal cancer mortality. | N/A | |
| When considering cost-effectiveness only for those strategies involving iFOBT every 2 years, but with different age ranges, four strategies were found to have the best value for money of all the available strategies assessed (i.e. strategies found to cost the least among all strategies with similar or higher effectiveness). | N/A | |

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| In context of an indicative willingness-to-pay threshold of A$50,000 per life–year saved in Australia, only two were found to be cost-effective in all participation scenarios: the current program (ICER $4,264–8,075 per life–year saved) and screening at 45–74 years (ICER $19,451–40,813 per life–year saved).<br><br>Extending the screening end age to 79 or 84 years was not found to be cost-effective in this analysis. | | |
| Although potentially cost-effective, lowering the screening start age to 45 years was predicted to be associated with a less favourable ratio of benefits to harms than the current program. The number-needed-to-colonoscope (NNC) for the current program for each death prevented is 39–56, whereas the NNC for each extra death prevented by starting at age 45 years is 67–375 (depending on participation).<br><br>At current levels of participation, starting from age 45 years would be associated with an additional 67 colonoscopies for each additional death prevented, compared with an NNC of 39 colonoscopies per death prevented for the existing program. | N/A | |
| Starting at age 45 years would increase the demand for colonoscopy services by 7–14% (depending on participation). | N/A | |
| The effect of starting screening earlier is amplified in imperfect adherence scenarios because the increase in deaths prevented is primarily due to an overall increase in the number of those screened at least once in a lifetime at any age (i.e. being screened at least once is the major determinant of outcome).<br><br>Screening from age 50 to age 74 years is more cost effective than screening people in their forties. | N/A | |

N/A: not applicable

^NHMRC classification of levels of evidence does not currently encompass modelling studies.

Back to top

## 6.3.2 Recommendations

### 6.3.2.1 Overall population screening strategy

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| **Overall population screening strategy** | **C** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| The recommended strategy for population screening in Australia, directed at those at average risk of colorectal cancer and without relevant symptoms, is immunochemical faecal occult blood testing every 2 years, starting at age 50 years and continuing to age 74 years. | |

Back to top

### 6.3.2.2 Primary screening test

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| **Primary screening test**<br><br>An immunochemical faecal occult blood test is recommended as the screening modality for the detection of colorectal cancer in the average-risk population. | **C** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| **Primary screening test**<br><br>The emerging faecal, blood or serum tests for cancer-specific biomarkers such as DNA are not recommended as population screening modalities for colorectal cancer. | **C** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| **Primary screening test**<br><br>The use of flexible sigmoidoscopy as a primary screening test is not recommended for population screening in the average-risk population. | **C** |

Back to top

### 6.3.2.3 Frequency of testing

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| **Frequency of testing**<br><br>Population screening for colorectal cancer using immunochemical faecal blood testing every 2 years is recommended. It is not recommended that the frequency of screening within the NBCSP be increased to yearly. | **N/A** |

Back to top

### 6.3.2.4 Target age group

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| **Target age group**<br><br>It is recommended that the age range for organised population screening continues to be 50–74 years. | **N/A** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| **Target age group**<br><br>Extending the age range to 79 or 84 years is not recommended for population screening as it is unlikely to be cost-effective. | **N/A** |

Back to top

| Consensus-based recommendation |
|---|
| Resources should be invested in increasing participation in the existing NBCSP target age group of 50–74, rather than by lowering the starting age of screening, to optimise the balance of effectiveness, cost-effectiveness and balance of benefits to harms. |

**Consensus-based recommendation**

In people aged 45–49 years who request screening after being fully informed of the benefits and harms of testing, an immunochemical faecal occult blood test every 2 years should be offered during the lead-up to their first routine invitation by the NBCSP at age 50 years.

**Practice point**

Encouragement by GPs and practice staff substantially boosts participation in colorectal cancer screening. Patient endorsement letters in advance of receiving a test kit, the use of GP reminder systems and practice audit are approaches likely to improve participation rates. Increased participation in the NBCSP will increase the program's effectiveness and cost-effectiveness.

**Practice point**

GPs have a critically important role in managing the interface between population screening and personalised care. This role includes identifying and advising those who should opt out of the NBCSP because of the presence of major comorbidities and limited life expectancy and those who should defer participation for several months because of recent surgery or major illness.

**Practice point**

Participation in a population screening program is not recommended for people with symptoms such as rectal bleeding or persistent change in bowel habit or with iron-deficiency anaemia, nor for those who should be having regular surveillance or screening based on colonoscopy, e.g. for past colorectal cancer or adenoma, chronic inflammatory bowel disease, a strong family history of colorectal cancer, or a high-risk genetic cancer syndrome (see Risk and screening based on family history of colorectal cancer hyperlink).

**Practice point**

Individuals who have had a high-quality colonoscopy within two years should be advised to defer iFOBT screening, as almost all test positivity will be due to conditions other than colorectal cancer.

**Practice point**

GPs have a key role in advising patients who are at average or slightly above average risk that iFOBT is the preferred method of screening. They should discuss the relative harms and benefits of colonoscopy and discourage inappropriate use of colonoscopy as a screening method.

**Practice point**

Participants with positive iFOBT results should have follow-up investigation unless there was a clear breach in protocol when samples were collected (e.g. menstrual blood loss close to the time of sample collection). Repeating the iFOBT test after a positive result carries the risk of a falsely negative test result on the second occasion because of low levels of bleeding from a cancer or adenoma, intermittent bleeding, or uneven distribution of blood in the stools.

**Practice point**

Colonoscopy should be performed as promptly as possible after a positive screening test, because of the risk of psychological harm related to fear of cancer as well as concern that delay in investigation may lead to progression in pathological stage if cancer is present.

Back to top

## 6.3.3 Considerations in making these recommendations

The recommendation for iFOBT every 2 years, starting at age 50 years and continuing to age 74 years, is based on effectiveness, cost-effectiveness, the balance of benefits to harms and feasibility within the current Australian health care system. A previous analysis with '*Policy1-Bowel*' model found that with current levels of

participation, the NBCSP is expected to prevent 92,200 cancer cases and 59,000 deaths over the period 2015-2040; an additional 24,300 and 37,300 cases and 16,800 and 24,800 deaths would be prevented if participation was increased to 50% and 60%, respectively.[43] In 2020, an estimated 101,000 program-related colonoscopies will be performed, associated with approximately 270 adverse events; an additional 32,500 and 49,800 colonoscopies and 88 and 134 adverse events would occur if participation was increased to 50% and 60%, respectively. The overall number-needed-to-screen (NNS) is 647-788 per death prevented, with NNC of 52-59 colonoscopies per death prevented. The program is highly cost-effective due to the cancer treatment costs averted (cost-effectiveness ratio compared to no screening, A$2,000-3,000/life-year saved) and is expected to become cost saving by 2029, with A$1.7, A$2.0 and A$2.1 billion in savings accrued (2015 prices) between 2030-2040, at participation rates of 40%, 50% and 60%, respectively.

We used a comprehensive validated model to simulate the NBCSP. The analysis of 14 screening scenarios showed that only iFOBT every 2 years, and CT colonography every 10 years, were cost-effective at all three levels of participation and that iFOBT every 2 years (as used in the current NBCSP) had a cost-effectiveness ratio of $2,000–$3,000 per life–year saved as well as a favourable profile with respect to the NNC.

Back to top

### 6.3.3.1 Applicability to the Australian setting

The '*Policy1-Bowel*' model was used to simulate the NBCSP and alternative screening approaches. Calculated rates of colorectal cancer incidence and mortality, survival figures for colorectal cancer, the probability of dying from other causes and population size and projected size were all derived from Australian data. The costs of screening, investigation and stage-specific treatment all related to Australia. In addition, cost-effectiveness assessment related to the willingness-to-pay threshold of $AUD 50,000 per life–year saved used in Australia.

These findings relate to population screening in Australia. Their applicability to other countries will depend on similarities to Australia, including level of risk for colorectal cancer and the design and costs of their health services.

### 6.3.3.2 Balance of benefits and harms

The risks of screening include potential psychological adverse effects, which range from the trauma of identifying disease in symptom-free, healthy individuals, to stress experienced by people in whom cancer is suspected although later discounted, to more subtle concerns of participants during the screening process.[44] Healthcare professionals must recognise the potential adverse psychological effects of screening, although several studies have shown no evidence of long-term harm after screening.[45][46][47] These potential adverse effects are balanced by avoiding the distress associated with diagnosis of an advanced cancer when there has been no opportunity for early detection by screening.

Back to top

### 6.3.3.3 Choice of target age range for population screening

The age range for organised population screening continues to be 50–74 years, based on considerations of effectiveness, cost-effectiveness and the balance of benefits to harms.

When assessing changes to the screening age, reducing the starting age of 45 years was cost-effective, but with a much less favourable ratio of benefits to harms than for 50–74 years and required a substantially higher number of colonoscopies for each extra cancer death prevented.

Since screening from age 50–74 years was both more effective and cost-effective, resources would be better invested in increasing participation in the existing NBCSP target age group rather than in starting screening at the age of 45 years. Screening after 75 years of age was not found to be cost-effective and is not recommended.

### 6.3.3.4 Choice of testing interval for population screening

The recommendation not to increase the current frequency of testing is based on the modelling study findings that annual testing with iFOBTs would not be a cost-effective screening strategy in the Australian setting.

Modelling indicated that testing with iFOBTs every 2 years is a very cost-effective screening strategy for colorectal cancer in the Australian setting.

Back to top

### 6.3.3.5 Choice of immunochemical occult blood test as preferred screening test for population screening

#### 6.3.3.5.1 Faecal occult blood tests versus flexible sigmoidoscopy and CT colonography

Population-based screening using faecal occult blood tests or flexible sigmoidoscopy can reduce bowel cancer-specific mortality. While both methods of screening are effective, there are major concerns about feasibility, acceptability, and cost-effectiveness with flexible sigmoidoscopy.

While the literature review demonstrated the effectiveness of flexible sigmoidoscopy for population screening, it has several disadvantages. Its acceptability to health professionals and the target population is unclear in Australia. Participants are likely to request sedation, which substantially increases costs. Requests for flexible sigmoidoscopy may result in complete colonoscopy instead. Population screening based on flexible sigmoidoscopy would not be feasible in Australia because of the lack of dedicated facilities and staff to support such a program, the high capital cost of developing those facilities, problems of access related to travel times for participants living in outer regional, rural and remote areas. Modelling indicated that screening based on flexible sigmoidoscopy would not be cost-effective.

The high level of cost effectiveness for CT colonography should be interpreted in the light of a limited evidence base for long-term outcomes after CT colonography screening. Furthermore, we were unable to fully take into account infrastructure investments and costs that would be required. CT colonography was not considered to be a feasible option for population screening, as a substantial increase in infrastructure, capacity and workforce would be necessary.

Back to top

#### 6.3.3.5.2 Immunochemical versus guaiac occult blood tests

There is supporting high-level evidence from one RCT of iFOBT,[12] three large RCTs evaluating screening with guaiac faecal occult blood test (gFOBT)[1][2][3] from the 1990s, as well as three case-control studies[48][49][50] on the effectiveness of FOBT as a population-based screening modality.

The success of FOBT screening for bowel cancer in the Australian population was reported in the 2012 Analysis of Bowel Cancer Outcomes for the National Bowel Cancer Screening Program.[51] In this report, bowel cancer mortality was compared between people in the NBCSP invitee and the never-invited groups in an intention-to-screen bowel cancer mortality analysis. Of the 10,080 never-invited people with a bowel cancer diagnosis, 1,973 (19.6%) had died of bowel cancer before 2012. Of the 2,609 people in the NBCSP invitee group with a bowel cancer diagnosis, 298 (11.4%) had died of bowel cancer by the same date: hazard ratio (HR) 1.77; 95% confidence interval (CI) 1.57 to 2.00. When corrected for potential lead-time bias in screen-detected cancers, the risk of death from colorectal cancer was still significantly higher in the never-invited group (hazard ratio 1.15, 95% CI: 1.01–1.31). The mean follow-up time to bowel cancer death for all diagnoses was 18.6 months (range 0–64.3 months, standard deviation 13.9 months).

There is a relative lack of evidence from RCTs comparing iFOBTs-based screening with no screening. With the widespread availability of evidence-based colorectal cancer screening in many countries including Australia (National Bowel Cancer Screening Program [NBCSP]), it would be unethical to initiate new randomised controlled trials to compare screening by iFOBT with no screening.[52]

Whilst population-based trials of iFOBT have not been as comprehensive as for gFOBT, the European guidelines for quality assurance in colorectal cancer screening and diagnosis (2010)[53] recommend population screening with iFOBT over gFOBt on the basis of:

- superior performance (e.g. sensitivity and specificity) in detecting cancers and adenomas
- greater acceptability to participants
- comparable complication rates and costs.[54]

iFOBTs used as a screening modality for colorectal cancer will also detect a significant proportion of advanced adenomas in the average-risk population. Removal of advanced adenomas at colonoscopy should reduce the future incidence of colorectal cancer.

Back to top

## 6.3.4 Health system implications of the recommendations

### 6.3.4.1 Clinical practice

Implementation of the recommendation to continue the current NBCSP strategy for screening in the average-risk population (iFOBT every 2 years, at age 50–74 years) will not result in any change in clinical practice.

GPs have a critically important role in managing the interface between population screening and personalised care, identifying and advising those who should opt out because of major co-morbidities and limited life expectancy, the presence of special risk factors, recent colonoscopy for whatever reason, and those who should defer the invitation until they recover from recent surgery or major illness.

GPs are able to promote and substantially boost participation in the NBCSP. Other key roles include explaining the significance of positive screening test results, arranging colonoscopy, discussing any further action that needs to be taken as well as interacting with the central register.

Colonoscopy services urgently need to introduce booking systems that give priority to these and other high-risk groups to put this into effect.

Back to top

### 6.3.4.2 Resourcing

Implementation of the screening recommendations will not result in any change from the resource requirements already predicted.

Resourcing considerations for implementation of the recommendations include:

- continued expansion of the NBCSP to complete rollout of screening every two years by 2020
- expansion of public awareness campaigns and promotion of the NBCSP to GPs to boost participation rates
- exploration of alternative screening pathways to boost participation rates in the Indigenous population and other disadvantaged groups.

It would be highly desirable to establish centralised adenoma registers to evaluate the extent and significance of detection of adenomas in the NBCSP, to predict the likely contribution of adenoma resection to incidence and mortality reduction in colorectal cancer, and to support quality improvement in the high volume and costly area of colonoscopic post-polypectomy surveillance.

Back to top

### 6.3.4.3 Barriers to implementation

No new barriers to the implementation of the screening recommendations are envisaged.

Existing barriers to participation in FOBT screening fall into several categories, including inconvenience of the testing process, aversion to manipulating faeces, lack of perceived benefit of screening, fear of a diagnosis of cancer, cost, views about personal invulnerability, and cultural beliefs and attitudes.[55][56] Recent studies have demonstrated that several of these barriers can be at least partially overcome so as to improve participation.[57][58][59]

The use of iFOBTs, which require no change in diet or medication, simplifying the method of stool sampling, and endorsement of screening by a person's own GP all lead to a significant improvement in participation.[57][58][59]

Appropriate public education and promotion is usually necessary to enhance participation rates.

In Australia, weather conditions and geographic factors may affect performance of iFOBTs.[60][61] High temperatures and delays to sample analysis may each reduce test sensitivity for cancer and advanced adenomas. This is of special importance in remote regions where return of postal items may be slow and throughout Australia during hot summer months.

Next section: discussion

Back to top

## 6.3.5 References

1. ↑ 1.0 1.1 1.2 Mandel JS, Bond JH, Church TR, Snover DC, Bradley GM, Schuman LM, et al. *Reducing mortality from colorectal cancer by screening for fecal occult blood. Minnesota Colon Cancer Control Study.* N Engl J Med 1993 May 13;328(19):1365-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8474513.
2. ↑ 2.0 2.1 2.2 Hardcastle JD, Chamberlain JO, Robinson MH, Moss SM, Amar SS, Balfour TW, et al. *Randomised controlled trial of faecal-occult-blood screening for colorectal cancer.* Lancet 1996 Nov 30;348(9040):1472-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8942775.
3. ↑ 3.0 3.1 3.2 Kronborg O, Fenger C, Olsen J, Jørgensen OD, Søndergaard O. *Randomised study of screening for colorectal cancer with faecal-occult-blood test.* Lancet 1996 Nov 30;348(9040):1467-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8942774.
4. ↑ 4.0 4.1 Mandel JS, Church TR, Bond JH, Ederer F, Geisser MS, Mongin SJ, et al. *The effect of fecal occult-blood screening on the incidence of colorectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 2000 Nov 30;343(22):1603-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11096167.
5. ↑ 5.0 5.1 Mandel JS, Church TR, Ederer F, Bond JH. *Colorectal cancer mortality: effectiveness of biennial screening for fecal occult blood.* J Natl Cancer Inst 1999 Mar 3;91(5):434-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10070942.
6. ↑ 6.0 6.1 Jørgensen OD, Kronborg O, Fenger C. *A randomised study of screening for colorectal cancer using faecal occult blood testing: results after 13 years and seven biennial screening rounds.* Gut 2002 Jan;50(1):29-32 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11772963.
7. ↑ 7.0 7.1 Scholefield JH, Moss S, Sufi F, Mangham CM, Hardcastle JD. *Effect of faecal occult blood screening on mortality from colorectal cancer: results from a randomised controlled trial.* Gut 2002 Jun;50(6):840-4 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12010887.
8. ↑ Hewitson P, Glasziou P, Irwig L, Towler B, Watson E. *Screening for colorectal cancer using the faecal occult blood test, Hemoccult.* Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2007 Jan 24;(1):CD001216 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17253456.
9. ↑ Hewitson P, Glasziou P, Watson E, Towler B, Irwig L. *Cochrane systematic review of colorectal cancer screening using the fecal occult blood test (hemoccult): an update.* Am J Gastroenterol 2008 Jun;103(6):1541-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18479499.
10. ↑ Scholefield JH, Moss SM, Mangham CM, Whynes DK, Hardcastle JD. *Nottingham trial of faecal occult blood testing for colorectal cancer: a 20-year follow-up.* Gut 2012 Jul;61(7):1036-40 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22052062.

11. ↑ Towler B, Irwig L, Glasziou P, Kewenter J, Weller D, Silagy C. *A systematic review of the effects of screening for colorectal cancer using the faecal occult blood test, hemoccult.* BMJ (Clinical research ed) 1998;317:559-65 Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC28648/.
12. ↑ 12.0 12.1 Zheng S, Chen K, Liu X, Ma X, Yu H, Chen K, et al. *Cluster randomization trial of sequence mass screening for colorectal cancer.* Dis Colon Rectum 2003 Jan;46(1):51-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12544522.
13. ↑ Holme Ø, Løberg M, Kalager M, Bretthauer M, Hernán MA, Aas E, et al. *Effect of flexible sigmoidoscopy screening on colorectal cancer incidence and mortality: a randomized clinical trial.* JAMA 2014 Aug 13;312(6):606-15 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25117129.
14. ↑ Park DI, Ryu S, Kim YH, Lee SH, Lee CK, Eun CS, et al. *Comparison of guaiac-based and quantitative immunochemical fecal occult blood testing in a population at average risk undergoing colorectal cancer screening.* Am J Gastroenterol 2010 Sep;105(9):2017-25 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20502450.
15. ↑ Castro I, Cubiella J, Rivera C, González-Mao C, Vega P, Soto S, et al. *Fecal immunochemical test accuracy in familial risk colorectal cancer screening.* Int J Cancer 2014 Jan 15;134(2):367-75 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23818169.
16. ↑ Gimeno-García AZ, Quintero E, Nicolás-Pérez D, Hernández-Guerra M, Parra-Blanco A, Jiménez-Sosa A. *Screening for familial colorectal cancer with a sensitive immunochemical fecal occult blood test: a pilot study.* Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2009 Sep;21(9):1062-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19307978.
17. ↑ Ng SC, Ching JY, Chan V, Wong MC, Suen BY, Hirai HW, et al. *Diagnostic accuracy of faecal immunochemical test for screening individuals with a family history of colorectal cancer.* Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2013 Oct;38(7):835-41 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23957462.
18. ↑ Imperiale TF, Ransohoff DF, Itzkowitz SH, Levin TR, Lavin P, Lidgard GP, et al. *Multitarget stool DNA testing for colorectal-cancer screening.* N Engl J Med 2014 Apr 3;370(14):1287-97 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24645800.
19. ↑ 19.0 19.1 19.2 Khalid-de Bakker CA, Jonkers DM, Sanduleanu S, de Bruïne AP, Meijer GA, Janssen JB, et al. *Test performance of immunologic fecal occult blood testing and sigmoidoscopy compared with primary colonoscopy screening for colorectal advanced adenomas.* Cancer Prev Res (Phila) 2011 Oct;4(10):1563-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21750209.
20. ↑ 20.0 20.1 Brenner H, Haug U, Hundt S. *Sex differences in performance of fecal occult blood testing.* Am J Gastroenterol 2010 Nov;105(11):2457-64 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20700114.
21. ↑ Brenner H, Tao S. *Superior diagnostic performance of faecal immunochemical tests for haemoglobin in a head-to-head comparison with guaiac based faecal occult blood test among 2235 participants of screening colonoscopy.* Eur J Cancer 2013 Sep;49(14):3049-54 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23706981.
22. ↑ Chiu HM, Lee YC, Tu CH, Chen CC, Tseng PH, Liang JT, et al. *Association between early stage colon neoplasms and false-negative results from the fecal immunochemical test.* Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2013 Jul;11(7):832-8.e1-2 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23376002.
23. ↑ de Wijkerslooth TR, Stoop EM, Bossuyt PM, Meijer GA, van Ballegooijen M, van Roon AH, et al. *Immunochemical fecal occult blood testing is equally sensitive for proximal and distal advanced neoplasia.* Am J Gastroenterol 2012 Oct;107(10):1570-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22850431.

24. ↑ Elsafi SH, Alqahtani NI, Zakary NY, Al Zahrani EM. *The sensitivity, specificity, predictive values, and likelihood ratios of fecal occult blood test for the detection of colorectal cancer in hospital settings.* Clin Exp Gastroenterol 2015;8:279-84 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26392783.
25. ↑ Hernandez V, Cubiella J, Gonzalez-Mao MC, Iglesias F, Rivera C, Iglesias MB, et al. *Fecal immunochemical test accuracy in average-risk colorectal cancer screening.* World J Gastroenterol 2014 Jan 28;20(4):1038-47 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24574776.
26. ↑ Kato J, Morikawa T, Kuriyama M, Yamaji Y, Wada R, Mitsushima T, et al. *Combination of sigmoidoscopy and a fecal immunochemical test to detect proximal colon neoplasia.* Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2009 Dec;7(12):1341-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19426835.
27. ↑ Lee YC, Chiu HM, Chiang TH, Yen AM, Chiu SY, Chen SL, et al. *Accuracy of faecal occult blood test and Helicobacter pylori stool antigen test for detection of upper gastrointestinal lesions.* BMJ Open 2013 Oct 30;3(10):e003989 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24176798.
28. ↑ Lee YH, Hur M, Kim H, Jeon KN, Yun CH, Lee CH, et al. *Optimal cut-off concentration for a faecal immunochemical test for haemoglobin by Hemo Techt NS-Plus C15 system for the colorectal cancer screening.* Clin Chem Lab Med 2015 Feb;53(3):e69-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25153599.
29. ↑ Morikawa T, Kato J, Yamaji Y, Wada R, Mitsushima T, Shiratori Y. *A comparison of the immunochemical fecal occult blood test and total colonoscopy in the asymptomatic population.* Gastroenterology 2005 Aug;129(2):422-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16083699.
30. ↑ Omata F, Shintani A, Isozaki M, Masuda K, Fujita Y, Fukui T. *Diagnostic performance of quantitative fecal immunochemical test and multivariate prediction model for colorectal neoplasms in asymptomatic individuals.* Eur J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2011 Nov;23(11):1036-41 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21897207.
31. ↑ Parra-Blanco A, Gimeno-García AZ, Quintero E, Nicolás D, Moreno SG, Jiménez A, et al. *Diagnostic accuracy of immunochemical versus guaiac faecal occult blood tests for colorectal cancer screening.* J Gastroenterol 2010 Jul;45(7):703-12 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20157748.
32. ↑ Terhaar sive Droste JS, Oort FA, van der Hulst RW, van Heukelem HA, Loffeld RJ, van Turenhout ST, et al. *Higher fecal immunochemical test cutoff levels: lower positivity rates but still acceptable detection rates for early-stage colorectal cancers.* Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 2011 Feb;20(2):272-80 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21135261.
33. ↑ Viana Freitas BR, Kibune Nagasako C, Pavan CR, Silva Lorena SL, Guerrazzi F, Saddy Rodrigues Coy C, et al. *Immunochemical fecal occult blood test for detection of advanced colonic adenomas and colorectal cancer: comparison with colonoscopy results.* Gastroenterol Res Pract 2013;2013:384561 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24319453.
34. ↑ Graser A, Stieber P, Nagel D, Schäfer C, Horst D, Becker CR, et al. *Comparison of CT colonography, colonoscopy, sigmoidoscopy and faecal occult blood tests for the detection of advanced adenoma in an average risk population.* Gut 2009 Feb;58(2):241-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18852257.
35. ↑ Hundt S, Haug U, Brenner H. *Comparative evaluation of immunochemical fecal occult blood tests for colorectal adenoma detection.* Ann Intern Med 2009 Feb 3;150(3):162-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19189905.
36. ↑ Levy BT, Bay C, Xu Y, Daly JM, Bergus G, Dunkelberg J, et al. *Test characteristics of faecal immunochemical tests (FIT) compared with optical colonoscopy.* J Med Screen 2014 Sep;21(3):133-43 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24958730.

37. ↑ Redwood DG, Asay ED, Blake ID, Sacco PE, Christensen CM, Sacco FD, et al. *Stool DNA Testing for Screening Detection of Colorectal Neoplasia in Alaska Native People.* Mayo Clin Proc 2016 Jan;91(1):61-70 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26520415.
38. ↑ Nakazako M. YH, Matsushita H., Sato K., Fujita K., Yamanaka Y., Imai Y.. *Immunologic Fecal Occult Blood test for Colorectal cancer Screening.* Japan med Assoc J 2006 Jun;49:203-7 Available from: http://www.med.or.jp/english/pdf/2006_05+/203_207.pdf.
39. ↑ Ahlquist DA, Sargent DJ, Loprinzi CL, Levin TR, Rex DK, Ahnen DJ, et al. *Stool DNA and occult blood testing for screen detection of colorectal neoplasia.* Ann Intern Med 2008 Oct 7;149(7):441-50, W81 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18838724.
40. ↑ Annaházi A, Ábrahám S, Farkas K, Rosztóczy A, Inczefi O, Földesi I, et al. *A pilot study on faecal MMP-9: a new noninvasive diagnostic marker of colorectal cancer.* Br J Cancer 2016 Mar 29;114(7):787-92 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26908323.
41. ↑ [41.0] [41.1] Church TR, Wandell M, Lofton-Day C, Mongin SJ, Burger M, Payne SR, et al. *Prospective evaluation of methylated SEPT9 in plasma for detection of asymptomatic colorectal cancer.* Gut 2014 Feb;63(2):317-25 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23408352.
42. ↑ Chen Y-Y, Chen T-H, Su M-Y, Ning H-C, Kuo C-J, Lin W-P, et al.. *Accuracy of immunochemical fecal occult blood test for detecting colorectal neoplasms in individuals undergoing health check-ups.* Advances in Digestive Medicine 2014 Sep;Volume 1, Issue 3, Pages 74–79 Available from: http://www.aidm-online.com/article/S2351-9797(14)00045-0/abstract.
43. ↑ Lew, JB; St John, DJ; Xu, XM; Greuter, MJ; Caruana, M; Cenin, DR. *Benefits, harms and cost-effectiveness of National Bowel Cancer Screening Program in Australia (manuscript submitted).*; 2017.
44. ↑ Wardle J, Pope R. *The psychological costs of screening for cancer.* J Psychosom Res 1992 Oct;36(7):609-24 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1403996.
45. ↑ Lindholm E, Berglund B, Kewenter J, Haglind E. *Worry associated with screening for colorectal carcinomas.* Scand J Gastroenterol 1997 Mar;32(3):238-45 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9085461.
46. ↑ Parker MA, Robinson MH, Scholefield JH, Hardcastle JD. *Psychiatric morbidity and screening for colorectal cancer.* J Med Screen 2002;9(1):7-10 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11943790.
47. ↑ Wardle J, Taylor T, Sutton S, Atkin W. *Does publicity about cancer screening raise fear of cancer? Randomised trial of the psychological effect of information about cancer screening.* BMJ (Clinical research ed) 1999;319:1037-8.
48. ↑ Nakajima M, Saito H, Soma Y, Sobue T, Tanaka M, Munakata A. *Prevention of advanced colorectal cancer by screening using the immunochemical faecal occult blood test: a case-control study.* Br J Cancer 2003 Jul 7;89(1):23-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12838295.
49. ↑ Saito H, Soma Y, Nakajima M, et al.. *A case-control study evaluating occult blood screening for colorectal cancer with hemoccult test and an immunochemical hemagglutination test.* Oncology reports 2000;7:815-9.
50. ↑ Saito H, Soma Y, Koeda J, Wada T, Kawaguchi H, Sobue T, et al. *Reduction in risk of mortality from colorectal cancer by fecal occult blood screening with immunochemical hemagglutination test. A case-control study.* Int J Cancer 1995 May 16;61(4):465-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7759151.

51. ↑ Australian Institute of Health and Welfare., Australian Government Department of Health.. *Analysis of colorectal cancer outcomes for the Australian National Bowel Cancer Screening Program.* Asia Pac J Clin Oncol 2016 Mar;12(1):22-32 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26803949.
52. ↑ National Health and Medical Research Council Australian Research Council Australian Vice-Chancellors' Committee. *National Statement of Ethical Conduct in Human Research.* Canberra, Australia: National Health and Medical Research Council; 2007. Report No.: ISBN: 1864962755.
53. ↑ International Agency for Research on Cancer. *European guidelines for quality assurance in colorectal cancer screening and diagnosis.* First Edition: International Agency for Research on Cancer; 2010.
54. ↑ van Rossum LG, van Rijn AF, Laheij RJ, van Oijen MG, Fockens P, van Krieken HH, et al. *Random comparison of guaiac and immunochemical fecal occult blood tests for colorectal cancer in a screening population.* Gastroenterology 2008 Jul;135(1):82-90 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18482589.
55. ↑ Cole SR, Young GP, Esterman A, Cadd B, Morcom J. *A randomised trial of the impact of new faecal haemoglobin test technologies on population participation in screening for colorectal cancer.* The Medical Journal of Australia 2003;175:195-8.
56. ↑ Macrae FA, Hill DJ, St John DJ, Ambikapathy A, Garner JF. *Predicting colon cancer screening behavior from health beliefs.* Prev Med 1984 Jan;13(1):115-26 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6718327.
57. ↑ [57.0] [57.1] Cole SR, Young GP. *Effect of dietary restriction on participation in faecal occult blood test screening for colorectal cancer.* Med J Aust 2001 Aug 20;175(4):195-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11587278.
58. ↑ [58.0] [58.1] McCusker J, Morrow GR. *Factors related to the use of cancer early detection techniques.* Prev Med 1980 May;9(3):388-97 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7208447.
59. ↑ [59.0] [59.1] Salkeld GP, Solomon MJ, Short L, Ward J. *Measuring the importance of attributes that influence consumer attitudes to colorectal cancer screening.* ANZ J Surg 2003 Mar;73(3):128-32 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12608975.
60. ↑ Grazzini G, Ventura L, Zappa M et al. *Influence of seasonal variations in ambient temperatures on performance of immunochemical faecal occult blood test for colorectal cancer: observational study from Florence district.* Gut 2010;59:1511-5.
61. ↑ Australian Institute of Health and Welfare. *National Bowel Cancer Screening Program monitoring report: phase 2, July 2008-June 2011.* Canberra, Australia: Australian Institute of Health and Welfare; 2012.

Back to top

## 6.3.6 Appendices

NHMRC Evidence statement form PSC1a

| Systematic review report PSC1a | NHMRC Evidence statement form PSC1b | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Systematic review report PSC1b | Modelling report PSC1c | Modelling report PSC1d |

# 6.4 Discussion

**Contents**



## 6.4.1 Unresolved issues

There is currently insufficient evidence from appropriately designed studies to determine the following:

- the diagnostic performance of non-FOBT faecal or blood-based cancer-specific biomarker assays, and whether these are influenced by participant age, sex, or risk of colorectal cancer
- the effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of population screening based on colonoscopy, CT colonography, faecal DNA biomarkers, or blood or plasma cancer-specific biomarkers such as DNA
- the effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of population screening based on combinations of screening modalities
- the effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of population screening in people younger than 50 years or older than 75 years.

Other unresolved issues include:

- whether the inappropriately high rate of colonoscopy in Australia reduces effectiveness of the NBCSP
- how the NBSCP should respond to the changing epidemiology of colorectal cancer, including incidence at younger age and changes in distribution of cancer within the large bowel
- how to maximise participation rates.

Back to top

## 6.4.2 Studies currently underway

No evidence was identified from randomised controlled trials (RCTs) evaluating colonoscopy, computed tomography (CT) colonography, or cancer-specific faecal or blood biomarkers. Three RCTs evaluating colonoscopy-based screening are in progress:

- The Northern-European Initiative on Colorectal Cancer (NordICC)[1]
- Colonoscopy Versus Fecal Immunochemical Test in Reducing Mortality From Colorectal Cancer (CONFIRM)[2]

- Colorectal Cancer Screening in Average-risk Population: Immunochemical Fecal Occult Blood Testing Versus Colonoscopy.[3]

Only one of these RCTs[2] includes a no-screening arm.

Back to top

## 6.4.3 Future research priorities

Future research opportunities include:

- studies assessing the place of combinations of screening tests (e.g. iFOBT every 2 years and flexible sigmoidoscopy every 10 years (at ages 55, 65 and 75 years)
- studies on screening tailored to the presence of special risk factors (e.g. adjusting the starting age of screening, using more sensitive iFOBT conditions or combining screening tests tailored to factors such as sex, BMI, history of cigarette smoking)
- evaluation of the performance characteristics of new versions of tests for faecal and blood-based cancer-specific biomarkers.

Back to top

## 6.4.4 References

1. ↑ Bretthauer M, Kaminski MF, Løberg M, Zauber AG, Regula J, Kuipers EJ, et al. *Population-Based Colonoscopy Screening for Colorectal Cancer: A Randomized Clinical Trial.* JAMA Intern Med 2016 Jul 1;176 (7):894-902 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27214731.
2. ↑ [2.0] [2.1] ClinicalTrials.gov. *Colonoscopy vs fecal immunochemical test in reducing mortality from colorectal cancer (CONFIRM) [NCT01239082].* [homepage on the internet]; 2016 Available from: https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01239082.
3. ↑ Quintero E, Castells A, Bujanda L, Cubiella J, Salas D, Lanas Á, et al. *Colonoscopy versus fecal immunochemical testing in colorectal-cancer screening.* N Engl J Med 2012 Feb 23;366(8):697-706 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22356323.

Back to top

# 7 The symptomatic patient

## 7.1 Background

In Australia approximately 75% of bowel cancers are diagnosed symptomatically, although this may fall with the implementation of biennial screening through the National Bowel Cancer Screening Program (NBCSP).[1] The majority of people with symptomatic colorectal cancer first present to general practice. General practitioners (GPs) are faced with the challenge of identifying patients with symptoms that are due to colorectal cancer amongst the many people with similar symptoms that are caused by benign conditions. A recent study from Victoria, Australia, found that over a third of patients with colorectal cancer had taken more than 3 months from developing symptoms to seeing a hospital specialist.[2] This finding may reflect poor community symptom awareness, later GP referral or limited access to colonoscopy services.

There is significant growth in demand for colonoscopy, with almost 600,000 Medical Benefits Schedule (MBS)-funded colonoscopies performed in Australia in 2013–2014 and significant problems of managing demand in the public hospital system.[3] The majority of these colonoscopies are likely to be for people with symptoms. Guidance is needed, therefore, to inform selection of patients in primary care who warrant referral for investigation of symptoms suggestive of colorectal cancer. Guidance is also needed in endoscopy units to inform triage of patients with symptoms suggestive of colorectal cancer, and determine the appropriateness and urgency for colonoscopy.

### 7.1.1 Chapter subsections

Please see sections:

- Signs and symptoms predictive of colorectal cancer
- Optimal maximum time from referral to diagnosis and treatment

## 7.2 References

1. ↑ Australian Institute of Health and Welfare. *National Bowel Cancer Screening Program: monitoring report 2016. Cancer series no. 98. Cat. no. CAN 97.* Canberra: AIHW; 2016.
2. ↑ Lacey K, Bishop JF, Cross HL, Chondros P, Lyratzopoulos G, Emery JD. *Presentations to general practice before a cancer diagnosis in Victoria: a cross-sectional survey.* Med J Aust 2016 Jul 18;205(2):66-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27456447.
3. ↑ Australian Commission on Safety and Quality in Health Care. *Australian atlas of healthcare variation.* [homepage on the internet]; 2016 Available from: http://www.safetyandquality.gov.au/atlas.

# 7.1 Introduction: the symptomatic patient

## 7.1.1 Background

In Australia approximately 75% of bowel cancers are diagnosed symptomatically, although this may fall with the implementation of biennial screening through the National Bowel Cancer Screening Program (NBCSP).[1] The majority of people with symptomatic colorectal cancer first present to general practice. General practitioners (GPs) are faced with the challenge of identifying patients with symptoms that are due to colorectal cancer amongst the many people with similar symptoms that are caused by benign conditions. A recent study from Victoria, Australia, found that over a third of patients with colorectal cancer had taken more than 3 months from developing symptoms to seeing a hospital specialist.[2] This finding may reflect poor community symptom awareness, later GP referral or limited access to colonoscopy services.

There is significant growth in demand for colonoscopy, with almost 600,000 Medical Benefits Schedule (MBS)-funded colonoscopies performed in Australia in 2013–2014 and significant problems of managing demand in the public hospital system.[3] The majority of these colonoscopies are likely to be for people with symptoms. Guidance is needed, therefore, to inform selection of patients in primary care who warrant referral for investigation of symptoms suggestive of colorectal cancer. Guidance is also needed in endoscopy units to inform triage of patients with symptoms suggestive of colorectal cancer, and determine the appropriateness and urgency for colonoscopy.

### 7.1.1.1 Chapter subsections

Please see sections:

- Signs and symptoms predictive of colorectal cancer
- Optimal maximum time from referral to diagnosis and treatment

## 7.1.2 References

1. ↑ Australian Institute of Health and Welfare. *National Bowel Cancer Screening Program: monitoring report 2016. Cancer series no. 98. Cat. no. CAN 97.* Canberra: AIHW; 2016.
2. ↑ Lacey K, Bishop JF, Cross HL, Chondros P, Lyratzopoulos G, Emery JD. *Presentations to general practice before a cancer diagnosis in Victoria: a cross-sectional survey.* Med J Aust 2016 Jul 18;205(2):66-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27456447.
3. ↑ Australian Commission on Safety and Quality in Health Care. *Australian atlas of healthcare variation.* [homepage on the internet]; 2016 Available from: http://www.safetyandquality.gov.au/atlas.

# 7.2 Signs & symptoms predictive of CRC

**Contents**



## 7.2.1 Systematic review evidence

*In symptomatic patients without a colorectal cancer diagnosis, what signs or symptoms (persistent changed bowel movements, persistent diarrhoea or constipation, unexplained rectal bleeding, general or localised abdominal pain, unexplained palpable abdominal or rectal mass, unexplained weight loss, iron deficient anaemia, tiredness, fatigue, or any combination) correlate best with a diagnosis of colorectal cancer? (SPT1-2a)*

A systematic review of the predictive value of signs and symptoms of colorectal cancer was recently undertaken to inform the UK National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (NICE) guidelines[1]. We updated the NICE systematic review to March 2016, identifying two new relevant papers.[2][3] The systematic reviews and meta-analyses focused on the positive predictive values of individual symptoms, signs and combinations of symptoms and, where possible, stratified these by age and sex. Some studies also included levels of haemoglobin and markers of iron deficiency from a full blood count.

Due to the nature of the research question, the studies included used mainly case-control and cohort designs and are therefore subject to several biases, including patient selection, non-consecutive patient sampling and missing data, especially in relation to specification of symptoms. All studies were conducted on Western populations, with the majority based on European populations, particularly in the UK. Only one study was conducted in Australia.[4] However, the evidence is likely to be generalisable to the Australian average risk population presenting in primary care.

The NICE guidelines[1] aimed to identify symptoms associated with a positive predictive value of at least 3% to inform selection for urgent referral for investigation of colorectal cancer. This threshold should be compared against the current positive predictive value of 3.5% for a positive faecal immunochemical occult blood test (FOBT) in the Australian National Bowel Cancer Screening Programme. For those patients with symptoms associated with a positive predictive value of below 3%, NICE developed a health economic model to test different diagnostic strategies in primary care. Specifically, they modelled the following tests in people aged 40 years and over with a change in bowel habit:

- faecal occult blood test using guaiac test
- faecal occult blood test using the immunochemical faecal occult blood test (iFOBT)
- barium enema
- colonoscopy
- flexible sigmoidoscopy
- CT colonography.

At a threshold of GBP20,000 (approximately $40,000) per quality-adjusted life year (QALY),[1] iFOBT was the most cost-effective test in people aged 40 years and over with a change in bowel habit.

For details about this systematic review, please see the Technical report.

Back to top

## 7.2.2 Evidence summary and recommendations

### 7.2.2.1 Meta-analyses

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| **Rectal bleeding** presenting in primary care was associated with a PPV for colorectal cancer of up to 4.8% (95% CI 3.3 to 6.8). This PPV tended to increase with age in both men and women. | II, III-2, III-3 | [5], [6], [7], [8], [9], [10], [11], [4], [12], [13], [14], [15], [16], [17], [18] |
| **Abdominal pain** presenting in primary care was associated with a PPV for colorectal cancer of up to 2.0% (95% CI 0.5 to 7.6). This PPV tended to increase with age in both men and women. | III-2, III-3 | [5], [19], [10], [14] |
| | II, III- | [5], [20], [21], [22], [14], |

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| **Anaemia** presenting in primary care was associated with a PPV for colorectal cancer of up to 5.8% (95% CI 2.6 to 12.0). This PPV tended to increase with age in both men and women.<br><br>Two new studies since the meta-analysis estimated the PPV for anaemia in referred populations as 10.2% (95% CI 4.6 to 17.3) and 12.0% (95% CI 8.0 to 16.0). | 2, III-3, IV | [23], [24] |
| **Weight loss** presenting in primary care was associated with a PPV for colorectal cancer of up to 3% (95% CI 0.3 to 22.9). This PPV tended to increase with age in both men and women.<br><br>One new study since the meta-analysis estimated the PPV for weight loss in a referred population as 5.2% (95% CI 2.5 to 9.2). | II, III-2, III-3 | [5], [10], [14] |
| **Dyspepsia** presenting in primary care was associated with a PPV for colorectal cancer of up to 0.6% (95% CI 0.3 to 1.4). | III-2 | [25], [26], [27] |

PPV: positive predictive value; CI: confidence interval

### 7.2.2.2 Individual studies

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| **Constipation** presenting in primary care in two studies was associated with a PPV for colorectal cancer of 0.4–2.5%. In one further small study in selected patients the estimated PPV was 15.7% (95% CI 10.2 to 23.2). | II, III-2, III-3 | [28], [14], [2] |
| **Change in bowel habit** presenting in primary care in two studies was associated with a PPV for colorectal cancer of 2.8–2.9%. This PPV tended to increase with age in both men and women. In one further small study in selected patients the estimated PPV was 14% (95% CI 6.7 to 23.3). | III-2 | [10], [5], [14] |

PPV: positive predictive value; CI: confidence interval

### 7.2.2.3 Combination of symptoms

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| | III-2, III-3, | [28], [12], [7], [4], [13], [16], |

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| Nine studies that examined the PPVs for rectal bleeding in combination with other symptoms reported wide-ranging estimates. Some studies reported other combinations of symptoms.<br><br>Combinations associated with higher estimated PPVs included:<br><br>■ abdominal tenderness and abnormal rectal examination (PPV 5.8%; 95% CI not reported)<br>■ dyspepsia with anaemia (PPV 13.5%; 95% CI 5 to 29.57).<br><br>Several of the estimates from these studies are likely to be artificially inflated due to small numbers of participants with specific combinations of symptoms. | IV | [17], [8], [27] |

PPV: positive predictive value; CI: confidence interval

### 7.2.2.4 Combinations of symptoms and baseline risk factors predicting prevalent cancer

The QCancer colorectal cancer risk prediction model[10] incorporates the following variables for men and women to calculate positive predictive values for combinations of multiple symptoms and baseline risk factors:

- **Women**: age, family history of gastrointestinal cancer, abdominal pain, appetite loss, rectal bleeding, weight loss, anaemia (< 11 g/dL).
- **Men**: age, family history of gastrointestinal cancer, alcohol consumption, abdominal pain, appetite loss, rectal bleeding, weight loss, anaemia (< 11 g/dL), change in bowel habit.

On internal validation the QCancer model showed good discrimination; the area under receiver operating curve (ROC) statistics were 0.89 for women and 0.91 for men. In an independent external validation study the ROC statistics were 0.92 for women and 0.91, and the risk prediction model explained 68% and 66% of the variation in women and men, respectively.[5]

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| The urgency of colonoscopy to investigate symptoms suggestive of colorectal cancer should be based on an assessment of patient age, symptom profile and results of simple investigations including full blood count, iron studies and iFOBT (see Table 10.1 for consensus-based colonoscopy triage categories). | **C** |

### 7.2.2.5 Consensus-based colonoscopy triage categories

Table 10.1 presents triage categories to determine urgency and need for colonoscopy based on symptom profile, patient age and results from investigations available in primary care.

The guideline development group applied evidence about the predictive value of individual and combinations of symptoms, including allowance for patient age, to inform the development of colonoscopy triage categories. They build on Victorian draft guidelines for colonoscopy triage. The guideline development group discussed the use of additional investigations in primary care to support triage which had been informed by the NICE guidelines and had undergone extensive expert consultation.

In addition to its traditional use as a screening test in asymptomatic patients, iFOBT is potentially useful for assessing risk in symptomatic patients, especially those who have not recently participated in the NBCSP. In addition to the NICE[1]modelling study (see Systematic review evidence), we considered new evidence about the use of iFOBT and calprotectin in patients with bowel symptoms referred from primary care. This demonstrated that a negative iFOBT can be useful in ruling out significant bowel disease, including colorectal cancer.[29] The study also showed that faecal calprotectin is a useful test in distinguishing patients with inflammatory bowel disease (IBD) and irritable bowel syndrome, consistent with international guidance on using this test to rule out IBD.[30]

The guideline development group also discussed the role of CT colonography as an alternative investigation. CT colonography has high sensitivity for colorectal cancer and could potentially be used therefore to rule out this diagnosis in patients with bowel symptoms.[31][32][33] CT colonography may be considered as an alternative diagnostic test, particularly in the following scenarios:

- Individuals with symptoms of colorectal cancer below the 3% CRC risk threshold.
- Individuals in areas with limited access to colonoscopy services but where there is access to CT.
- Individuals who have contra-indications to colonoscopy.

The New Zealand Society of Gastroenterology recommends CT colonography as an alternative to colonoscopy in: symptomatic patients over 80 years, individuals with an abdominal mass, and in those at higher risk of complications from colonoscopy.[34] It should be noted that in the NICE modelling study of alternative testing strategies in individuals with symptoms of colorectal cancer below the 3% risk threshold, iFOBT was the most cost-effective investigation to support triage of referrals for colonoscopy. This modelling was set in a UK healthcare context and did not consider issues of differential access to colonoscopy and CT colonography.

Under current Medicare eligibility rules, GPs can only request CT colonography if a patient has had an incomplete colonoscopy in the previous 3 months or there is a contraindication to colonoscopy. This creates a significant barrier to its use in Australian primary care as an alternative test to colonoscopy in symptomatic individuals. It can be requested by a specialist ‘for exclusion of colorectal neoplasia in a symptomatic or high risk patient’, and therefore may have a potential role in triage for a colonoscopy triage setting.

### 7.2.2.5.1 Table 10.1. Colonoscopy triage categories

| Category 1 | Category 2 | Category 3 | No colonoscopy indicated |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Positive immunochemical faecal occult blood test (iFOBT)** | | | |
| **Anaemia** and any one of:<br>■ ≥ 60 years<br>■ Rectal bleeding | **Anaemia** and all of:<br>■ No GI symptoms<br>■ iFOBT –ve<br>■ No likely non-GI cause identified | **Anaemia** and all of:<br>■ No GI symptoms<br>■ iFOBT –ve<br>■ Likely non-GI cause<br>■ Age ≥ 50 years | **Anaemia** and all of:<br>■ No GI symptoms<br>■ iFOBT –ve<br>■ Untreated likely non-GI cause (e.g, menorrhagia, diet)<br>■ Age ≤ 50 years |
| **Rectal bleeding < 12 months** and any one of:<br>■ ≥ 50 years<br>■ Abdominal pain<br>■ Altered bowel habit > 6/52<br>■ Unexplained weight loss | **Rectal bleeding < 12 months** and all of:<br>■ No other GI symptoms<br>■ < 50 years<br>■ No cause identified on rigid sigmoidoscopy | **Rectal bleeding ≥ 12 months** and all of:<br>■ No other GI symptoms<br>■ No cause identified on rigid sigmoidoscopy | **Rectal bleeding ≥ 12 months** and all of:<br>■ No other GI symptoms<br>■ Likely cause identified on rigid sigmoidoscopy |
| **Altered bowel habit > 6/52** and any one of:<br>■ ≥ 60 years<br>■ Rectal bleeding < 12 months<br>■ iFOBT or calprotectin +ve* | **Altered bowel habit > 6/52** and all of:<br>■ 40–60 years<br>■ iFOBT and calprotectin –ve*<br>■ Abdominal pain or unexplained weight loss | **Altered bowel habit > 6/52** and either:<br>■ 40–60 years and no other GI symptoms<br>or:<br>■ < 40 years with abdominal pain or unexplained weight loss | |

| Category 1 | Category 2 | Category 3 | No colonoscopy indicated |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Unexplained abdominal pain** and any one of:<br>■ Rectal bleeding<br>■ Unexplained weight loss<br>■ iFOBT or calprotectin +ve* | **Unexplained abdominal pain** and all of:<br>■ ≥ 40 years<br>■ iFOBT and calprotectin – ve*<br>■ Altered bowel habit > 6/52 and < 60 years | **Unexplained abdominal pain** and either:<br>■ ≥ 40 years and no other GI symptoms<br>or:<br>■ < 40 years with altered bowel habit > 6/52 | A resolved episode of acute abdominal pain**<br>or Diverticulitis with typical CT features and no other GI symptoms |
| **Unexplained weight loss** and any one of:<br>■ Rectal bleeding<br>■ Abdominal pain<br>■ iFOBT or calprotectin +ve* | **Unexplained weight loss** and all of:<br>■ ≥ 40 years<br>■ iFOBT and calprotectin – ve*<br>■ Altered bowel habit > 6/52 and < 60 years | | **Unexplained weight loss** and all of:<br>■ no other GI symptoms<br>■ normal examination<br>■ normal full blood count and iron studies<br>■ iFOBT and calprotectin – ve* |
| **Mass** palpable on abdominal or rectal examination or on rigid sigmoidoscopy | | | |

GI: gastrointestinal; > 6/52: symptom present for more than 6 weeks per episode; CT: computed tomography NB. Faecal calprotectin is a useful test in distinguishing patients with inflammatory bowel disease and irritable bowel syndrome, but has no role in detecting colorectal cancer.

**Abdominal pain present for less than 5 weeks should be assessed and treated, with consideration of colonoscopy if no response.

**Consensus-based recommendation**

In people with symptoms other than overt rectal bleeding, faecal immunochemical occult blood testing (iFOBT) is a useful part of the diagnostic assessment in primary care

**Practice point**

Faecal immunochemical occult blood testing (iFOBT) is of particular use in the following circumstances to support diagnostic assessment and inform urgency of colonoscopy:

- people over 50 years with either unexplained weight loss or abdominal pain
- people under 60 years with either altered bowel habit or anaemia.

Back to top

## 7.2.3 Benefits and harms

The recommendations aim to support a rational process to determine the urgency of colonoscopies, particularly in the context of long waiting lists for colonoscopy in the public hospital system. It should be noted that no symptoms are strongly predictive of colorectal cancer, nor are there any symptoms which rule out cancer. Thus it remains possible that even patients in Category 3, who have 'low risk but not no risk' symptoms, may eventually be diagnosed with colorectal cancer. Those patients who do not meet criteria for colonoscopy should be reviewed by their GP and reconsider the need for investigation if new symptoms or signs have developed.

Back to top

## 7.2.4 Health system implications

### 7.2.4.1 Clinical practice

The triage categories, while moderately complex, are designed for use by endoscopy units to assess the urgency of referrals for colonoscopy. GPs should apply this evidence to inform their use of simple investigations in primary care (full blood count, iron studies and iFOBT) as part of their assessment of patients with symptoms suggestive of colorectal cancer. It should also be noted which patients are identified in this guideline as not requiring referral for colonoscopy.

### 7.2.4.2 Resourcing

Health services and endoscopy units should consider implementing specific GP referral proformas designed to capture the information needed to apply the triage criteria.[35]

Endoscopy units may need dedicated staff to apply the triage criteria consistently.

### 7.2.4.3 Barriers to implementation

Primary Health Networks should support this implementation in general practice as part of the national Optimal Care Pathways for colorectal cancer.[36]

Back to top

## 7.2.5 Discussion

### 7.2.5.1 Unresolved issues

Timely diagnosis of colorectal cancer is important for improving survival. The triage criteria are designed to improve the efficiency of the referral and triage processes for people with symptoms suggestive of colorectal cancer, but further evidence is required on the impacts of their implementation.

### 7.2.5.2 Studies currently underway

The Victorian colonoscopy guidelines are currently being piloted to assess their feasibility of implementation.

### 7.2.5.3 Future research priorities

Further research is needed to determine how best to reduce missed opportunities for colorectal cancer diagnosis in primary care, applying the evidence about symptoms as predictors of colorectal cancer risk.

The colonoscopy triage criteria are based on current best evidence. The following further research is needed to evaluate their implementation:

- prospective, comparative validation studies measuring clinical outcomes
- studies assessing the impact on waiting times, diagnostic intervals and colorectal cancer outcomes.

See also: Optimal maximum time from referral to diagnosis and treatment.

Next section: optimal max time from referral to diagnosis and treatment

Back to top

## 7.2.6 References

1. ↑ [1.0] [1.1] [1.2] [1.3] National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. *Suspected cancer: referral and recognition.* National Collaborating Centre for Cancer; 2015 Available from: https://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/ng12.
2. ↑ [2.0] [2.1] Rodríguez-Alonso L, Rodríguez-Moranta F, Ruiz-Cerulla A, Lobatón T, Arajol C, Binefa G, et al. *An urgent referral strategy for symptomatic patients with suspected colorectal cancer based on a quantitative immunochemical faecal occult blood test.* Dig Liver Dis 2015 Sep;47(9):797-804 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26055489.
3. ↑ Chowdhury ATMD, Longcroft-Wheaton G, Davis A, Massey D, Goggin P. *Role of faecal occult bloods in the diagnosis of iron deficiency anaemia.* Frontline Gastroenterology 2014 Oct 1;5(4):231-36.
4. ↑ [4.0] [4.1] [4.2] Mant, A. Bokey, E. L. Chapuis, P. H. Killingback, M. Hughes, W. Koorey, S. G. Cook, I. Goulston, K. J. Dent, O. F.. *Rectal bleeding. Do other symptoms aid in diagnosis?* Dis Colon Rectum 1989;32(3): 191-196.

5. ↑ 5.0 5.1 5.2 5.3 5.4 5.5 Collins GS, Altman DG. *Identifying patients with undetected colorectal cancer: an independent validation of QCancer (Colorectal).* Br J Cancer 2012 Jul 10;107(2):260-5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22699822.
6. ↑ du Toit J, Hamilton W, Barraclough K. *Risk in primary care of colorectal cancer from new onset rectal bleeding: 10 year prospective study.* BMJ 2006 Jul 8;333(7558):69-70 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16790459.
7. ↑ 7.0 7.1 Ellis BG, Thompson MR. *Factors identifying higher risk rectal bleeding in general practice.* Br J Gen Pract 2005 Dec;55(521):949-55 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16378565.
8. ↑ 8.0 8.1 Fijten GH, Starmans R, Muris JW, Schouten HJ, Blijham GH, Knottnerus JA. *Predictive value of signs and symptoms for colorectal cancer in patients with rectal bleeding in general practice.* Fam Pract 1995 Sep;12(3):279-86 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8536830.
9. ↑ Helfand M, Marton KI, Zimmer-Gembeck MJ, Sox HC Jr. *History of visible rectal bleeding in a primary care population. Initial assessment and 10-year follow-up.* JAMA 1997 Jan 1;277(1):44-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8980209.
10. ↑ 10.0 10.1 10.2 10.3 10.4 Hippisley-Cox J, Coupland C. *Identifying patients with suspected colorectal cancer in primary care: derivation and validation of an algorithm.* Br J Gen Pract 2012 Jan;62(594):e29-37 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22520670.
11. ↑ Jones R, Latinovic R, Charlton J, Gulliford MC. *Alarm symptoms in early diagnosis of cancer in primary care: cohort study using General Practice Research Database.* BMJ 2007 May 19;334(7602):1040 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17493982.
12. ↑ 12.0 12.1 Metcalf JV, Smith J, Jones R, Record CO. *Incidence and causes of rectal bleeding in general practice as detected by colonoscopy.* Br J Gen Pract 1996 Mar;46(404):161-4 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8731622.
13. ↑ 13.0 13.1 Norrelund N, Norrelund H. *Colorectal cancer and polyps in patients aged 40 years and over who consult a GP with rectal bleeding.* Fam Pract 1996 Apr;13(2):160-5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8732328.
14. ↑ 14.0 14.1 14.2 14.3 14.4 14.5 Panzuto, F. Chiriatti, A. Bevilacqua, S. Giovannetti, P. Russo, G. Impinna, S. Pistilli, F. Capurso, G. Annibale, B. Delle Fave, G.. *Symptom-based approach to colorectal cancer: survey of primary care physicians in Italy.* Dig Liver Dis 2003;35(12): 869-875.
15. ↑ Parker C, Hippisley-Cox J, Coupland C, Vinogradova Y. *Rectal and postmenopausal bleeding: consultation and referral of patients with and without severe mental health problems.* Br J Gen Pract 2007 May;57(538):371-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17504587.
16. ↑ 16.0 16.1 Robertson R, Campbell C, Weller DP, Elton R, Mant D, Primrose J, et al. *Predicting colorectal cancer risk in patients with rectal bleeding.* Br J Gen Pract 2006 Oct;56(531):763-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17007706.
17. ↑ 17.0 17.1 Wauters H, Van Casteren V, Buntinx F. *Rectal bleeding and colorectal cancer in general practice: diagnostic study.* BMJ 2000 Oct 21;321(7267):998-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11039968.
18. ↑ Heintze C, Matysiak-Klose D, Kröhn T, Wolf U, Brand A, Meisner C, et al. *Diagnostic work-up of rectal bleeding in general practice.* Br J Gen Pract 2005 Jan;55(510):14-9; discussion 18 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15667760.

19. ↑ Bellentani, S. Baldoni, P. Petrella, S. Tata, C. Armocida, C. Marchegiano, P. Saccoccio, G. Manenti, F.. *A simple score for the identification of patients at high risk of organic diseases of the colon in the family doctor consulting room. The Local IBS Study Group.* Fam Pract 1990;7(4): 307-312.
20. ↑ Droogendijk J, Beukers R, Berendes PB, Tax MG, Sonneveld P, Levin MD. *Screening for gastrointestinal malignancy in patients with iron deficiency anemia by general practitioners: an observational study.* Scand J Gastroenterol 2011 Sep;46(9):1105-10 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21726115.
21. ↑ Farrus Palou, M. Perez Ocana, A. Mayer Pujadas, M. A. Piquer Gibert, M. Mundet Tuduri, X. Iglesias Rodal, M.. *Anemia in primary care: etiology and morphological characteristics.* Aten Primaria 2000;25(4): 230-235.
22. ↑ Lucas CA, Logan EC, Logan RF. *Audit of the investigation and outcome of iron-deficiency anaemia in one health district.* J R Coll Physicians Lond 1996 Jan;30(1):33-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8745360.
23. ↑ Stellon AJ, Kenwright SE. *Iron deficiency anaemia in general practice: presentations and investigations.* Br J Clin Pract 1997 Mar;51(2):78-80 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9158249.
24. ↑ Yates JM, Logan EC, Stewart RM. *Iron deficiency anaemia in general practice: clinical outcomes over three years and factors influencing diagnostic investigations.* Postgrad Med J 2004 Jul;80(945):405-10 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15254305.
25. ↑ Hallissey MT, Allum WH, Jewkes AJ, Ellis DJ, Fielding JW. *Early detection of gastric cancer.* BMJ 1990 Sep 15;301(6751):513-5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2207416.
26. ↑ Heikkinen M, Pikkarainen P, Takala J, Räsänen H, Julkunen R. *Etiology of dyspepsia: four hundred unselected consecutive patients in general practice.* Scand J Gastroenterol 1995 Jun;30(6):519-23 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7569757.
27. ↑ [27.0] [27.1] Meineche-Schmidt V, Jørgensen T. *'Alarm symptoms' in patients with dyspepsia: a three-year prospective study from general practice.* Scand J Gastroenterol 2002 Sep;37(9):999-1007 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12374244.
28. ↑ [28.0] [28.1] Hamilton W, Round A, Sharp D, Peters TJ. *Clinical features of colorectal cancer before diagnosis: a population-based case-control study.* Br J Cancer 2005 Aug 22;93(4):399-405 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16106247.
29. ↑ Mowat C, Digby J, Strachan JA, Wilson R, Carey FA, Fraser CG, et al. *Faecal haemoglobin and faecal calprotectin as indicators of bowel disease in patients presenting to primary care with bowel symptoms.* Gut 2016 Sep;65(9):1463-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26294695.
30. ↑ National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. *Faecal calprotectin diagnostic tests for inflammatory diseases of the bowel.* UK: NICE; 2013 Available from: https://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/dg11.
31. ↑ Johnson CD, Chen MH, Toledano AY, Heiken JP, Dachman A, Kuo MD, et al. *Accuracy of CT colonography for detection of large adenomas and cancers.* N Engl J Med 2008 Sep 18;359(12):1207-17 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18799557.
32. ↑ de Haan MC, Pickhardt PJ, Stoker J. *CT colonography: accuracy, acceptance, safety and position in organised population screening.* Gut 2015 Feb;64(2):342-50 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25468258.
33. ↑ Halligan S, Altman DG, Taylor SA, Mallett S, Deeks JJ, Bartram CI, et al. *CT colonography in the detection of colorectal polyps and cancer: systematic review, meta-analysis, and proposed minimum data set for study level reporting.* Radiology 2005 Dec;237(3):893-904 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16304111.

34. ↑ New Zealand Society of Gastroenterology. *NZSG recommendations for the use of Computerised Tomographic Colonography (CTC) and Colonoscopy in investigations of GI disease.*; 2015 Available from: http://www.nzsg.org.nz/cms2/uploads/Position%20Statement%20on%20CTC.pdf.
35. ↑ Akbari A, Mayhew A, Al-Alawi MA, Grimshaw J, Winkens R, Glidewell E, et al. *Interventions to improve outpatient referrals from primary care to secondary care.* Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2008 Oct 8;(4): CD005471 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18843691.
36. ↑ Cancer Council Victoria. *Optimal care pathway for people with colorectal cancer.*; 2014 Available from: www.cancer.org.au/ocp.

## 7.2.7 Appendices

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| View recommendation components | View pending evidence | View body of evidence | View all comments | View literature search |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| View PICO | NHMRC Evidence statement form SPT1-2a | Systematic review report SPT1-2a |

Back to top

# 7.3 Optimal max time from referral to diagnosis and treatment

**Contents**

## 7.3.1 Background

Intuitively, it would be expected that diagnosing cancer quickly would be beneficial, as tumours grow and are more likely to metastasise with time. Indeed, perception of a 'delayed diagnosis' of cancer is a leading cause of medicolegal complaints in primary and ambulatory care, on the assumption that harm occurred as a result of late diagnosis.[1]

### 7.3.1.1 The diagnostic pathway

So-called delays in cancer diagnosis can occur at various points along the diagnostic pathway:[2] Patients may take time appraising their symptoms before seeking healthcare, they may experience multiple visits to their GP about their symptoms before referral for specialist diagnostic tests,[3] and there may be long waiting times to access these diagnostic tests. This latter point along the diagnostic pathway, from GP referral to diagnosis, is the focus of this section.

Access to timely colonoscopy is an important contributor to the overall diagnostic interval for colorectal cancer (defined usually as the time a patient first presents to healthcare until the time of diagnosis).[4]

Back to top

### 7.3.1.2 Methodological issues

Proving that earlier detection of symptomatic cancer matters is epidemiologically challenging. The 'waiting time paradox' describes the phenomenon in which patients with late stage cancers present with severe symptoms and are therefore often diagnosed promptly, but have poorer outcomes.[5] This type of confounding by indication is an important source of bias in studies examining the effect of time to diagnosis on outcomes in symptomatic cancer populations. Many studies that have examined associations between the diagnostic interval and clinical outcomes have assumed a linear relationship between time to diagnosis and mortality. Their analyses, therefore, have not accounted for potential effects of the waiting time paradox. More recent studies, led by researchers at Aarhus University, have introduced the use of spline regression to allow for flexible associations between the diagnostic interval and clinical outcome.[6][7] These important methodological considerations must be taken into account when interpreting the evidence, which includes apparently inconsistent findings. When making recommendations, we applied greater weight to studies that attempted to account for the waiting time paradox.

Back to top

## 7.3.2 Systematic review evidence

*In symptomatic patients without a colorectal cancer diagnosis, what is the optimal maximum diagnostic interval that achieves better than or equivalent outcomes in terms of survival, mortality, and diagnosis of metastatic disease? (SPT1-2b)*

Nine studies[8][9][10][7][6][11][12][13][14] examined the effect of the diagnostic interval on colorectal cancer related outcomes including mortality, cancer specific survival and mortality, and stage of tumour at diagnosis. Seven studies[8][9][10][6][7][11][12]had a moderate risk of bias and two had a high risk of bias.[13][14]

The search strategy, inclusion and exclusion criteria, and quality assessment are described in detail in the Technical report.

Back to top

### 7.3.2.1 Mortality

A Canadian retrospective cohort study[10] found that diagnostic interval had no significant effect of diagnostic interval length on colorectal cancer mortality with 1–6 years follow-up.

Danish prospective population-based cohort studies in primary care,[7][11] a UK retrospective cohort study,[9] and a study that included one retrospective and two prospective primary care cohort studies conducted in Denmark and the UK[6] reported significantly higher 3- and 5-year mortality rates associated with shorter waiting periods (all < 1 month). These findings are consistent with the 'waiting time paradox' where patients with severe symptoms associated with later stage disease are diagnosed promptly.

Three Danish and UK primary care cohort studies[6] reported U-shaped associations between diagnostic interval and overall mortality (at 3 or 5 years) using spline regression analyses. Analysis of combined datasets found that higher 5-year mortality was associated with diagnostic intervals greater than 130 days (HR=1.28 95% CI 1.28-1.55).

A large US retrospective study of > 9,000 patients diagnosed with colorectal cancer between 1998 and 2005[8] found that, for patients with colon cancer only, diagnostic intervals of ≥ 8 months compared with 14–59 days showed a significant effect on overall mortality (OR 1.31, 95% CI 1.08 to 1.58). For local stage rectal cancer, mortality was higher for diagnostic intervals < 2 weeks and 2–4 months, compared with 14–59 days, consistent with the U-shaped associations demonstrated in UK and Danish populations.[6][7][11]

Back to top

### 7.3.2.2 Colorectal cancer-specific mortality

In an analysis of a large US dataset of medical records for adults aged ≥ 66 years with invasive colon or rectal cancer, colorectal cancer-specific mortality was reported separately for patients diagnosed with either colon cancer or rectal cancer.[8] For those diagnosed with colon cancer, in unadjusted analysis, higher mortality was reported for shorter diagnostic delay (< 2 weeks), compared with 14–59 days (OR 1.27, $p < 0.05$). Significantly higher mortality was reported when comparing short diagnostic interval (14–59 days) with longer diagnostic intervals of 4–8 months and ≥ 8 months (OR 0.76, $p < 0.05$, and OR 0.82, $p < 0.05$, respectively), thus failing to demonstrate any evidence of a U-shaped association between interval and colorectal cancer-specific mortality.

A cohort study comparing outcomes in patients with early and late diagnosis[14] reported significantly higher 5-year cancer-specific survival for a diagnostic interval ≥ 50 days compared with < 50 days when all participants were included in the analysis (94% versus 73%, respectively, $p = 0.007$).[14] No attempt was made to account for the waiting time paradox in this study.

Back to top

### 7.3.2.3 Tumour stage at diagnosis

Four studies[12][13][14][10] examined associations between diagnostic intervals and tumour stage but only one [10] conducted analyses to account for a potential waiting time paradox.

A retrospective cohort study[12] compared stages for three interval cut-offs (> 41 days, > 60 days, > 90 days), assuming a linear effect of time. Shorter intervals were associated with more advanced stage disease.[12]

Another retrospective cohort study[13] reported shorter diagnostic intervals were associated with earlier stages of cancer, however this effect was non-significant.[13]

A cohort study comparing outcomes in patients with early and late diagnosis[14] reported greater rates of Dukes' stage A cancer in participants with a diagnostic interval ≥ 50 days (57.1%) compared with < 50 days (15.2%, $p = 0.006$).[14]

A large Canadian retrospective cohort study[10] reported higher rates of stage III/IV colorectal cancer for participants with a diagnostic interval < 15 days compared with 51 to < 116 days or ≥ 116 days (OR 0.59, CI 0.39 to 0.89 and OR 0.50, CI 0.33 to 0.75, respectively) but not 15 to < 51 days, consistent with a U-shaped association between diagnostic interval and clinical outcome.[10]

Back to top

#### 7.3.2.4 Summary

The studies that performed analyses to account for the waiting time paradox found potentially important U-shaped associations between diagnostic intervals and (1) overall mortality[6][7][11][8] and (2) late-stage disease at diagnosis,[10] but not colorectal cancer-specific mortality[8]

The following cut-off intervals for first presentation to healthcare to diagnosis were associated with poorer outcomes:

- 130 days in the largest study combining three datasets from Danish and UK primary care cohorts[6]
- 8 months (approximately 243 days) in a large US retrospective study[8]
- 116 days in a Canadian retrospective study from population-based cancer registry and administrative database.[10]

In the Australian setting, the presentation–diagnosis interval would most commonly represent the time from GP consultation to diagnostic colonoscopy (or other diagnostic procedure) in specialist care.

Back to top

## 7.3.3 Evidence summary and recommendations

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| Analyses of cohort data have reported U-shaped associations between diagnostic interval and (1) overall mortality and (2) late-stage disease at diagnosis, but not colorectal cancer-specific mortality. | III-2 | [11], [7], [6], [8], [10] |
| Diagnostic interval cut-off points associated with poorer outcomes range between 116 days and 8 months. | III-2 | [6], [8], [10] |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| For patients with symptoms suggestive of colorectal cancer, the total time from first healthcare presentation to diagnostic colonoscopy should be no greater than 120 days. | **C** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| A diagnostic interval of 120 days should be the maximum interval from referral to diagnosis for triage Categories 1 and 2, whether it is for a patient with symptoms or a positive iFOBT used for colorectal cancer screening. | **D** |

### 7.3.3.1 Considerations in making these recommendations

These recommendations are based on the consensus of the guideline development group and interpretation of the best available evidence. A maximum diagnostic interval of 120 days from first presentation to healthcare to diagnosis should be the target to prevent poorer outcomes in those with colorectal cancer. We noted the current recommendation in the Optimal care pathway[15] for colorectal cancer of a maximum of four weeks from referral to colonoscopy for people with symptoms suggestive of colorectal cancer. Recognising that there will be a small proportion of people with colorectal cancer in triage Category 2 (approximately 1-2%), we recommend that all Category 1 and Category 2 colonoscopies (screen positive iFOBT or symptomatic patients) should be performed no later than 120 from first presentation[i] to healthcare.

[i] Date of first presentation is defined as the positive screening iFOBT.

Back to top

## 7.3.4 Benefits and harms

There is evidence to suggest that a greater proportion of the diagnostic interval occurs from the point of referral to colonoscopy, rather than in primary care, especially where there is poorer access to colonoscopy. While recognising the current challenges of meeting demand in public health endoscopy services, the guideline development group recommended a target diagnostic interval of a maximum of 120 days for all patients meeting either Category 1 or Category 2 criteria.

Back to top

## 7.3.5 Health system implications

### 7.3.5.1 Clinical practice

GPs will need to remain alert to the possibility of colorectal cancer as a possible cause of a patient’s symptoms and investigate and refer promptly based on the evidence summarised in the previous section.

### 7.3.5.2 Resourcing

Endoscopy services will need to establish clear diagnostic pathways for patients with suspected colorectal cancer and establish systems to apply the triage criteria and organise timely colonoscopy. Meeting a 120 day target for all Category 1 and Category 2 will have significant resource implications for some public hospital endoscopy services.

### 7.3.5.3 Barriers to implementation

These recommendations are made in the context of the roll-out of the biennial NBCSP, due to be fully implemented by 2020 which will place additional demand for colonoscopy. In order to monitor the 120 day diagnostic interval target, referrals will need to record the date of first presentation to healthcare with symptoms suggestive of colorectal cancer.

Back to top

## 7.3.6 Discussion

### 7.3.6.1 Unresolved issues

Timely diagnosis of colorectal cancer is important for improving survival. While there are inevitable limitations in defining the optimal maximum time to diagnose someone with suspected colorectal cancer, we have applied the current best evidence to make our recommendations. The triage criteria and associated maximum intervals for Category 1 patients are designed to improve the efficiency of the referral and triage processes for people with symptoms suggestive of colorectal cancer.

### 7.3.6.2 Studies currently underway

The authors are not aware of any studies underway that may provide more information on this topic.

### 7.3.6.3 Future research priorities

Further well-designed research, which accounts for the waiting time paradox, is needed to confirm the estimates of minimum diagnostic intervals associated with poorer colorectal cancer outcomes. In addition, studies should monitor the impact of the implementation of colonoscopy triage categories on waiting times, diagnostic intervals and colorectal cancer outcomes.

Back to top

## 7.3.7 References

1. ↑ Wallace, E. Lowry, J. Smith, S. M. Fahey, T.. *The epidemiology of malpractice claims in primary care: a systematic review.* BMJ Open 2013;3(7).
2. ↑ Walter F, Webster A, Scott S, Emery J. *The Andersen Model of Total Patient Delay: a systematic review of its application in cancer diagnosis.* J Health Serv Res Policy 2012 Apr;17(2):110-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22008712.
3. ↑ Lyratzopoulos G, Neal RD, Barbiere JM, Rubin GP, Abel GA. *Variation in number of general practitioner consultations before hospital referral for cancer: findings from the 2010 National Cancer Patient Experience Survey in England.* Lancet Oncol 2012 Apr;13(4):353-65 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22365494.
4. ↑ Weller D, Vedsted P, Rubin G, Walter FM, Emery J, Scott S, et al. *The Aarhus statement: improving design and reporting of studies on early cancer diagnosis.* Br J Cancer 2012 Mar 27;106(7):1262-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22415239.
5. ↑ Neal RD, Tharmanathan P, France B, Din NU, Cotton S, Fallon-Ferguson J, et al. *Is increased time to diagnosis and treatment in symptomatic cancer associated with poorer outcomes? Systematic review.* Br J Cancer 2015 Mar 31;112 Suppl 1:S92-107 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25734382.

6. ↑ 6.0 6.1 6.2 6.3 6.4 6.5 6.6 6.7 6.8 6.9 Tørring ML, Frydenberg M, Hamilton W, Hansen RP, Lautrup MD, Vedsted P. *Diagnostic interval and mortality in colorectal cancer: U-shaped association demonstrated for three different datasets.* J Clin Epidemiol 2012 Jun;65(6):669-78 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22459430.
7. ↑ 7.0 7.1 7.2 7.3 7.4 7.5 7.6 Tørring ML, Frydenberg M, Hansen RP, Olesen F, Hamilton W, Vedsted P. *Time to diagnosis and mortality in colorectal cancer: a cohort study in primary care.* Br J Cancer 2011 Mar 15;104(6):934-40 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21364593.
8. ↑ 8.0 8.1 8.2 8.3 8.4 8.5 8.6 8.7 8.8 Pruitt SL, Harzke AJ, Davidson NO, Schootman M. *Do diagnostic and treatment delays for colorectal cancer increase risk of death?* Cancer Causes Control 2013 May;24(5):961-77 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23446843.
9. ↑ 9.0 9.1 9.2 Redaniel MT, Martin RM, Ridd MJ, Wade J, Jeffreys M. *Diagnostic intervals and its association with breast, prostate, lung and colorectal cancer survival in England: historical cohort study using the Clinical Practice Research Datalink.* PLoS One 2015;10(5):e0126608 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25933397.
10. ↑ 10.00 10.01 10.02 10.03 10.04 10.05 10.06 10.07 10.08 10.09 10.10 Singh H, Shu E, Demers A, Bernstein CN, Griffith J, Fradette K. *Trends in time to diagnosis of colon cancer and impact on clinical outcomes.* Can J Gastroenterol 2012 Dec;26(12):877-80 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23248786.
11. ↑ 11.0 11.1 11.2 11.3 11.4 11.5 Tørring ML, Frydenberg M, Hansen RP, Olesen F, Vedsted P. *Evidence of increasing mortality with longer diagnostic intervals for five common cancers: a cohort study in primary care.* Eur J Cancer 2013 Jun;49(9):2187-98 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23453935.
12. ↑ 12.0 12.1 12.2 12.3 12.4 Wattacheril J, Kramer JR, Richardson P, Havemann BD, Green LK, Le A, et al. *Lagtimes in diagnosis and treatment of colorectal cancer: determinants and association with cancer stage and survival.* Aliment Pharmacol Ther 2008 Nov 1;28(9):1166-74 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18691351.
13. ↑ 13.0 13.1 13.2 13.3 13.4 Gómez-Domínguez E, Trapero-Marugán M, del Pozo AJ, Cantero J, Gisbert JP, Maté J. *The colorectal carcinoma prognosis factors. Significance of diagnosis delay.* Rev Esp Enferm Dig 2006 May;98(5):322-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16944992.
14. ↑ 14.0 14.1 14.2 14.3 14.4 14.5 14.6 Rupassara KS, Ponnusamy S, Withanage N, Milewski PJ. *A paradox explained? Patients with delayed diagnosis of symptomatic colorectal cancer have good prognosis.* Colorectal Dis 2006 Jun;8(5):423-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16684087.
15. ↑ Cancer Council Victoria. *Optimal care pathway for people with colorectal cancer.*; 2014 Available from: www.cancer.org.au/ocp.

Back to top

## 7.3.8 Appendices

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| View recommendation components | View pending evidence | View body of evidence | View all comments | View literature search |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| View PICO | NHMRC Evidence statement form SPT1-2b | Systematic review report SPT1-2b |

Back to top

# 8 Risk and screening based on family history

## 8.1 Background

Evidence shows that family history of colorectal cancer is an important risk factor for developing the disease. Genes have been identified which, when inherited in a mutated form, significantly increase the risk of colorectal cancer. The best studied of these genes include:

- the DNA mismatch repair genes MLH1, MSH2, MSH6 and PMS2, mutations of which cause the hereditary cancer predisposition of Lynch syndrome (previously known as hereditary non-polyposis colorectal cancer)
- the APC gene, mutation of which causes familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP)
- the DNA base excision repair gene MUTYH, mutation of which causes attenuated familial adenomatous polyposis.

These genetic disorders have an autosomal-dominant mode of transmission (mismatch repair genes and APC) or autosomal-recessive mode of transmission (MUTYH) within families, and carry a very high risk for cancer (see High-risk familial syndromes). However, mutations in these genes account for fewer than 5%) of all colorectal cancer cases and at most, only explain half of the reason that family history is a risk factor for colorectal cancer.

[1] The remainder of the observed increases in risk may be due in part to mutations in yet-to-be-discovered genes for colorectal cancer[2], common polygenic factors such as single-nucleotide polymorphisms[3][4] or dietary and other lifestyle factors shared by family members. Many models have been developed for colorectal cancer risk that encompass family history but also include other risk factors.[5] Due to limited resources, only family history is considered in this chapter. Assessment of family history of colorectal cancer has two roles in cancer prevention and early detection:

- to determine who should be tested for mutations in these genes.
- to inform decisions about the optimal timing, frequency and modality of screening.

This chapter provides estimates of risk of colorectal cancer and screening recommendations for the large number of people in the community who have a family history of colorectal cancer, but whose family history does not have the clinical features suggestive of high-risk familial syndromes.

For information on surveillance strategies for specific high-risk familial syndromes, see:

- Familial adenomatous polyposis
- MUTYH associated polyposis
- Lynch syndrome
- Peutz-Jeghers syndrome
- Juvenile polyposis syndrome
- Serrated polyposis syndrome

### 8.1.1 Chapter subsections

Please see sections:

- Colorectal cancer risk according to family history (FHS2)
- Screening strategies for people with a family history of colorectal cancer

## 8.2 References

1. ↑ Aaltonen L, Johns L, Järvinen H, Mecklin JP, Houlston R. *Explaining the familial colorectal cancer risk associated with mismatch repair (MMR)-deficient and MMR-stable tumors.* Clin Cancer Res 2007 Jan 1;13 (1):356-61 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17200375.
2. ↑ Win AK, Jenkins MA, Dowty JG, Antoniou AC, Lee A, Giles GG, et al. *Prevalence and Penetrance of Major Genes and Polygenes for Colorectal Cancer.* Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 2016 Oct 31 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27799157.
3. ↑ Hsu L, Jeon J, Brenner H, Gruber SB, Schoen RE, Berndt SI, et al. *A model to determine colorectal cancer risk using common genetic susceptibility loci.* Gastroenterology 2015 Jun;148(7):1330-9.e14 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25683114.

4. ↑ Jenkins MA, Makalic E, Dowty JG, Schmidt DF, Dite GS, MacInnis RJ, et al. *Quantifying the utility of single nucleotide polymorphisms to guide colorectal cancer screening.* Future Oncol 2016 Feb;12(4):503-13 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26846999.
5. ↑ Usher-Smith JA, Walter FM, Emery JD, Win AK, Griffin SJ. *Risk Prediction Models for Colorectal Cancer: A Systematic Review.* Cancer Prev Res (Phila) 2016 Jan;9(1):13-26 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26464100.

# 8.1 Introduction: Risk and screening based on family history

## 8.1.1 Background

Evidence shows that family history of colorectal cancer is an important risk factor for developing the disease. Genes have been identified which, when inherited in a mutated form, significantly increase the risk of colorectal cancer. The best studied of these genes include:

- the DNA mismatch repair genes MLH1, MSH2, MSH6 and PMS2, mutations of which cause the hereditary cancer predisposition of Lynch syndrome (previously known as hereditary non-polyposis colorectal cancer)
- the APC gene, mutation of which causes familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP)
- the DNA base excision repair gene MUTYH, mutation of which causes attenuated familial adenomatous polyposis.

These genetic disorders have an autosomal-dominant mode of transmission (mismatch repair genes and APC) or autosomal-recessive mode of transmission (MUTYH) within families, and carry a very high risk for cancer (see High-risk familial syndromes). However, mutations in these genes account for fewer than 5%) of all colorectal cancer cases and at most, only explain half of the reason that family history is a risk factor for colorectal cancer.[1] The remainder of the observed increases in risk may be due in part to mutations in yet-to-be-discovered genes for colorectal cancer[2], common polygenic factors such as single-nucleotide polymorphisms[3][4] or dietary and other lifestyle factors shared by family members. Many models have been developed for colorectal cancer risk that encompass family history but also include other risk factors.[5] Due to limited resources, only family history is considered in this chapter. Assessment of family history of colorectal cancer has two roles in cancer prevention and early detection:

- to determine who should be tested for mutations in these genes.
- to inform decisions about the optimal timing, frequency and modality of screening.

This chapter provides estimates of risk of colorectal cancer and screening recommendations for the large number of people in the community who have a family history of colorectal cancer, but whose family history does not have the clinical features suggestive of high-risk familial syndromes.

For information on surveillance strategies for specific high-risk familial syndromes, see:

- Familial adenomatous polyposis
- MUTYH associated polyposis
- Lynch syndrome
- Peutz-Jeghers syndrome
- Juvenile polyposis syndrome
- Serrated polyposis syndrome

#### 8.1.1.1 Chapter subsections

Please see sections:

- Colorectal cancer risk according to family history (FHS2)
- Screening strategies for people with a family history of colorectal cancer

## 8.1.2 References

1. ↑ Aaltonen L, Johns L, Järvinen H, Mecklin JP, Houlston R. *Explaining the familial colorectal cancer risk associated with mismatch repair (MMR)-deficient and MMR-stable tumors.* Clin Cancer Res 2007 Jan 1;13 (1):356-61 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17200375.
2. ↑ Win AK, Jenkins MA, Dowty JG, Antoniou AC, Lee A, Giles GG, et al. *Prevalence and Penetrance of Major Genes and Polygenes for Colorectal Cancer.* Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev 2016 Oct 31 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27799157.
3. ↑ Hsu L, Jeon J, Brenner H, Gruber SB, Schoen RE, Berndt SI, et al. *A model to determine colorectal cancer risk using common genetic susceptibility loci.* Gastroenterology 2015 Jun;148(7):1330-9.e14 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25683114.
4. ↑ Jenkins MA, Makalic E, Dowty JG, Schmidt DF, Dite GS, MacInnis RJ, et al. *Quantifying the utility of single nucleotide polymorphisms to guide colorectal cancer screening.* Future Oncol 2016 Feb;12(4):503-13 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26846999.
5. ↑ Usher-Smith JA, Walter FM, Emery JD, Win AK, Griffin SJ. *Risk Prediction Models for Colorectal Cancer: A Systematic Review.* Cancer Prev Res (Phila) 2016 Jan;9(1):13-26 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26464100.

# 8.2 Colorectal cancer risk according to family history (FHS2)

**Contents**

## 8.2.1 Background

The best evidence for the association between colorectal cancer risk and family history of the disease comes from cohort studies that compare the risk of colorectal cancer in people with and without a family history of colorectal cancer. Ideally, these studies should control for any other differences between people with and without a family history, and for other risk factors for colorectal cancer. Such studies consistently report an elevated risk of colorectal cancer associated with family history. The strength of this association increases with the number of relatives with colorectal cancer, the closeness of the genetic relationship of the relative(s) with colorectal cancer to the person, and the age at which the relative(s) is diagnosed with colorectal cancer. Early studies indicated that first-degree relatives of patients with common colorectal cancer had a three- to four-fold increase in lifetime risk for colorectal cancer.[1][2] However, more recent studies of cancer incidence, which included appropriately matched control groups and used stringent methods for collection of family cancer data in relatives, reported an approximate doubling of lifetime risk:

- A Danish cohort study of people diagnosed with colorectal cancer before age 60 years[3] reported that, compared with the general population, the risk of colorectal cancer was 1.6 times higher among patients' mothers and 1.9 times higher among patients' fathers.
- An Australian case-control study comparing cancer risk in relatives of colorectal cancer patients and relatives of matched control[4] patients reported that the risk of common colorectal cancer was 1.8 times higher among people with only one relative with colorectal cancer, compared with relatives of controls.
- A US prospective cohort study of people without known colorectal cancer[5] reported that the age-adjusted relative risk of colorectal cancer for men and women with affected first-degree relatives was 1.72, compared with those without a family history of the disease.

- A US case-control study[6] that compared people with colon cancer with matched controls reported that the risk of colon cancer was 2.2 times higher among patients with a second-degree or third-degree relative with colon cancer than those with no family history.

In contrast to these modest levels of increased risk, colorectal cancer risk was shown to be substantially (three- to six-fold) greater for those who have a first-degree relative with colorectal cancer diagnosed at an early age (below 45 or 55 years) or when two close relatives have had colorectal cancer, irrespective of the age at diagnosis.[5][6][5]

For information on risk associated with specific high-risk familial syndromes, see High-risk familial syndromes.

Back to top

## 8.2.2 Systematic review evidence

*For individuals, has a family history of colorectal cancer been shown to be reliably associated with an increase in risk of occurrence of or death from colorectal cancer when compared to individuals who do not have a family history of colorectal cancer? (FSH2)*

A systematic review of cohort studies was undertaken to update the evidence, since the publication of the previous guidelines[7], to estimate the risk of colorectal cancer for relatives of patients with colorectal cancer. Cohort studies are less subject to recall misclassification than case-control studies in which people with colorectal cancer more likely to report any existing family history than controls.

Six studies were identified: one analysis of pooled data from two prospective cohort studies,[8] and five cohort studies14-18 [9][10][11][12][13]. All measured colorectal cancer outcomes (diagnosis or mortality) for people without a colorectal cancer diagnosis (or symptoms that might indicate colorectal cancer) at time of recruitment, and assessed risk according to the individual's independently confirmed family history of colorectal cancer. An additional modelling study19 was also identified.

Of the cohort studies, one[11] was deemed to have a low risk of bias, two[9][13] were deemed to have a moderate risk of bias, and three[8][10][12] were deemed to have a high risk of bias.

The search strategy, inclusion and exclusion criteria, and quality assessment are described in detail in the Technical report.

Back to top

### 8.2.2.1 Increased risk of colorectal cancer by family history

Overall, cohort studies show that people with a family member diagnosed with colorectal cancer have an increased risk of colorectal cancer, compared with the general population. Estimated increases in risk depend on the age at which the family member was diagnosed, and the number of first-degree and second-degree relatives with colorectal cancer (Table 5.1).

Individual colorectal cancer risk (personal risk) could, in theory, be estimated based on a person's specific family history and personal screening recommendations could be devised based on this increased risk. However, for practical reasons, only three categories of risk have been developed (Table 5.1), each with screening recommendations based on the average risk for that category.

#### 8.2.2.1.1 Table 5.1. Increased risk of colorectal cancer based on family history: results from cohort studies published since 2005

| Family history of colorectal cancer | Increased risk compared with the average risk |
|---|---|
| No family history | 0.86[13]<br>(14% decrease) |
| 1 or more first-degree relative diagnosed at any age | 1.4[12] – 2.1[10]<br>2.05[13] (40–110% increase) |
| 1 first-degree relative diagnosed before age 50 | 3.3[13]<br>(230% increase) |
| 1 first-degree relative diagnosed between ages 50 and 60 | 2.2[12] to 2.5[13]<br>(120–150% increase) |
| 2 or more first-degree relatives | 3.0[13]<br>(200% increase) |
| No first-degree relative, at least one second-degree relative | 1.1-1.5[13]<br>(10–50% increase) |

Back to top

### 8.2.2.2 Category 1 — those near average risk

**Lifetime risk is to age 75 years: approximately 5% to 10% (assuming no colorectal cancer screening).**

Asymptomatic people fit into this category if they have either of the following[4][6][5][8][10][12][14][15]:

- no first- or second-degree relative with colorectal cancer
- one first-degree or one first and one second-degree relative with colorectal cancer diagnosed at age 55 years or older.

For those with an affected first-degree relative, risk is double the average risk, although most of that extra risk is expressed after the age of 60 years. When the affected relative is second-degree (e.g. a grandparent, uncle or aunt), lifetime risk is only up to 1.5 times higher than average.[6][13]

### 8.2.2.3 Category 2 — those at moderately increased risk

**Lifetime risk to age 75 years: approximately 15–30%**

Asymptomatic people fit into this category if they have none of the high-risk features listed in category 3 and have either of the following:

- one first-degree relative with colorectal cancer diagnosed before the age of 55 years[4][6][13][16][17][18]
- two first-degree relatives or one first-degree relative and at least two second-degree relative diagnosed with colorectal cancer at any age.[13][17][18][19]*

Relative risk in these two situations is increased to 3–6 times average risk. For the majority of people in this category, the risk of colorectal cancer is 3–4 times higher than average.

- Note: Previous guidelines specified that relatives with cancer needed to be on the same side of the family in order to meet eligibility of this risk category. Recent data suggests that a similar level of risk occurs if the relatives with cancer are on opposite sides of the family,[13] therefore this restriction has now been omitted.

### 8.2.2.4 Category 3 — those at high risk

**Lifetime risk to age 75: approximately 30–40%**

Asymptomatic people fit into this category if they have any of the following:

- at least three first-degree relatives diagnosed with colorectal cancer at any age[13]
- at least three first-degree or second-degree relative with colorectal cancer with at least one diagnosed before age 55 years.

This category excludes people with confirmed or suspected Lynch syndrome based on testing of a colorectal cancer in the family, or a relative with FAP.

For guidance on managing risk in people in category 3 with a known or suspected genetic syndrome, see High-risk familial syndromes.

Relative risk for category 3 is 7–10 times average risk. For the majority of people in this category, the risk of colorectal cancer is 7 times higher than average.

#### 8.2.2.4.1 Table 5.2. Relative risk of colorectal cancer based on family history

| Category | Family history | Relative risk |
|---|---|---|
| | | No |

| Category | Family history | Relative risk |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | No first- or second-degree relative with colorectal cancer | increased risk |
| | One first-degree relative with colorectal cancer diagnosed at 55 years or older<br><br>One first-degree and one second-degree with colorectal cancer diagnosed at 55 years or older | Up to 2-fold |
| 2 | One first-degree relative with colorectal cancer diagnosed under 55 years<br><br>Two first-degree relatives with colorectal cancer diagnosed at 55 years or older<br><br>One first-degree relative and at least two second-degree relative with colorectal cancer diagnosed at 55 years or older | 3- to 6-fold |
| 3 | At least three first-degree or second-degree relatives with colorectal cancer, with at least one diagnosed under 55 years<br><br>At least three first-degree relatives with colorectal cancer diagnosed at 55 years or older | 7- to 10-fold |

Sources: St John et al (1993)[4], Fuchs et al (1994)[5], Slattery et al (1994)[6], Bass et al (2008)[9], Schoen et al (2015)[11], Taylor et al (2011)[13], Lynch et al (2003)[15], Hall et al (1996)[16], Leu et al (2008)[14], Benhamiche-Bouvier et al (2000)[17], Sandhu et al (2001)[18], Aitken et al (1996)[19], Anderson et al (2003)[20]

Note: Relative risk is the ratio of the risk of developing colorectal cancer in a particular exposed group to the average risk in the whole population.

Back to top

## 8.2.3 Evidence summary and recommendations

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| **Category 1 – Those near average risk**<br><br>Approximately 95–98% of the population are in this category. Those with a weak family history, which is approximately 65% of those with any family history, will also be in this category.<br><br>For the majority of people, the risk of colorectal cancer ranges from slightly below average to slightly above average. For some people, risk will be increased up to two-fold the average risk. | II, III-2 | [19], [20], [21], [22], [23], [24], [25], [26] |

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| Approximately 10% of people in this group will develop colorectal cancer in their lifetime. | | |
| **Category 2 – Those at moderately increase risk**<br>Approximately 2–5% of the population are in this category.<br>The risk of colorectal cancer is approximately three- to six-fold higher than average.<br>Approximately 15–30% of people in this group will develop colorectal cancer in their lifetime. | II, III-2 | [4], [6], [16], [17], [18], [19] |
| **Category 3 – Those at potentially high risk**<br>Less than 1% of the population are in this category. The risk of colorectal cancer is approximately seven to ten-fold higher than average.<br>Approximately 30–40% of people in this group will develop colorectal cancer in their lifetime. | II, III-2 | [27], [28], [29], [30] |

**Important note:** These recommendations are in relation to the risk of colorectal cancer for relatives of patients with colorectal cancer. For recommendations about tailored screening categories 1-3, please see Screening strategies for people with a family history of colorectal cancer.

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| **Category 1**<br>People who have one relative with colorectal cancer diagnosed at age 55 or older should be advised that their own risk of developing colorectal cancer could be up to twice the average risk, but is still not high enough to justify CRC screening by colonoscopy. | **C** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| **Category 2**<br>People should be advised that their risk of developing colorectal cancer is at least three times higher than average, but could be up to six times higher than average, if they have any of the following:<br>■ one first-degree relative with colorectal cancer diagnosed before age 55 years<br>■ two first-degree relatives with colorectal cancer diagnosed at any age | **C** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| ■ one first-degree relative and at least two second-degree relative diagnosed with colorectal cancer at any age. | |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| **Category 3**<br><br>People should be advised that their risk of colorectal cancer is at least seven times higher than average, but could be up to 10 times higher than average, if they have either of the following:<br><br>■ at least three first-degree or second-degree relatives with colorectal cancer, with at least one diagnosed before age 55 years<br>■ at least three first-degree relatives with colorectal cancer diagnosed at any age. | **C** |

| Practice point |
|---|
| Approximately 95-98% of the population are in Category 1 (near average risk of developing colorectal cancer). |

| Practice point |
|---|
| Approximately 65% of those with a family history of colorectal cancer only have a weak family history which means they are category 1 risk. |

**Practice point**

Medical information that patients provide about their relatives is often inaccurate. (St John et al 1993, Love et al} 1985, Douglas et al 1999, Ruo et al 2001, Mitchell et al 2004) The percentage of colorectal cancer reports that are correct (positive predictive value) is 86% meaning that reports by relatives are usually true. However, a high proportion of people appear to be unaware that their relatives have had colorectal cancer, with the percentage of all colorectal cancers in first-degree relatives that are reported (sensitivity) being 27% (Mai 2011).

**Practice point**

Given the potential importance of an accurate risk prediction for an individual, every effort should be made to collect reliable information.

**Practice point**

When there is uncertainty on family history, people should be encouraged to seek clarification within their family including details on which relatives have had colorectal cancer and their ages of diagnoses.

**Practice point**

If a family medical history appears to be significant but diagnoses prove difficult to confirm, it may be appropriate to seek expert help from a familial cancer clinic who have resources available to confirm cancer diagnoses.

Back to top

## 8.2.4 Health system implications

### 8.2.4.1 Clinical practice

The RACGP recommended use of validated family history screening questionnaire to identify people in general practice with significant family history of cancer.[31] Under-ascertainment of people with a significant family history to general practice requires the need for more proactive approaches in primary care to identify families at increased risk of CRC.

### 8.2.4.2 Resourcing

There are no known resourcing implications.

### 8.2.4.3 Barriers to implementation

Current GP software systems do not support systematic family history collection or risk assessment here.

Back to top

## 8.2.5 Discussion

### 8.2.5.1 Unresolved issues

The effect of a family history of adenoma on colorectal cancer risk is unknown, although increased risk is likely. There is insufficient evidence from which to determine the effect of family history of adenomas or advanced adenomas on colorectal cancer risk.

Because of the increasing uptake of colonoscopy in the population and the removal of pre-malignancies, recent studies of family history as a risk factor may be underestimating the true association of colorectal cancer risk with family history of the disease. Therefore older studies may be more relevant to estimates of familial risk.

### 8.2.5.2 Studies currently underway

We are not aware of any current trials that would provide more data on this question.

### 8.2.5.3 Future research priorities

Inherent difficulties in deciding the demarcation between categories or the number of categories argues for an algorithm that summarises the family history of colorectal cancer into a risk score that can then be used to decide age and modality of screening. These algorithms should also assess the effect on the accuracy of risk stratification of including personal risk factors for colorectal cancer other than family history.

Identifying the causes for familial risk of colorectal cancer will assist the evaluation of risk within these risk categories, so that more personalised screening can be recommended based on more precise estimates of risk.

Next section: screening strategies for people with a family history of colorectal cancer

Back to top

## 8.2.6 References

1. ↑ WOOLF CM. *A genetic study of carcinoma of the large intestine.* Am J Hum Genet 1958 Mar;10(1):42-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/13520697.

2. ↑ Lovett E. *Family studies in cancer of the colon and rectum.* Br J Surg 1976 Jan;63(1):13-18 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1267868.
3. ↑ Søndergaard JO, Bülow S, Lynge E. *Cancer incidence among parents of patients with colorectal cancer.* Int J Cancer 1991 Jan 21;47(2):202-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1988364.
4. ↑ 4.0 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 St John DJ, McDermott FT, Hopper JL, Debney EA, Johnson WR, Hughes ES. *Cancer risk in relatives of patients with common colorectal cancer.* Ann Intern Med 1993 May 15;118(10):785-90 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8470852.
5. ↑ 5.0 5.1 5.2 5.3 5.4 Fuchs CS, Giovannucci EL, Colditz GA, Hunter DJ, Speizer FE, Willett WC. *A prospective study of family history and the risk of colorectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 1994 Dec 22;331(25):1669-74 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7969357.
6. ↑ 6.0 6.1 6.2 6.3 6.4 6.5 6.6 Slattery ML, Kerber RA. *Family history of cancer and colon cancer risk: the Utah Population Database.* J Natl Cancer Inst 1994 Nov 2;86(21):1618-26 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7932826.
7. ↑ Australian Cancer Network Colorectal Cancer Guidelines Revision Committee. *Clinical practice guidelines for the prevention, early detection and management of colorectal cancer.* The Cancer Council Australia and Australian Cancer Network 2005.
8. ↑ 8.0 8.1 8.2 Wei EK, Giovannucci E, Wu K, Rosner B, Fuchs CS, Willett WC, et al. *Comparison of risk factors for colon and rectal cancer.* Int J Cancer 2004 Jan 20;108(3):433-42 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14648711.
9. ↑ 9.0 9.1 9.2 Bass AJ, Meyerhardt JA, Chan JA, Giovannucci EL, Fuchs CS. *Family history and survival after colorectal cancer diagnosis.* Cancer 2008 Mar 15;112(6):1222-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18219663.
10. ↑ 10.0 10.1 10.2 10.3 Murphy G, Shu XO, Gao YT, Ji BT, Cook MB, Yang G, et al. *Family cancer history affecting risk of colorectal cancer in a prospective cohort of Chinese women.* Cancer Causes Control 2009 Oct;20(8):1517-21 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19418234.
11. ↑ 11.0 11.1 11.2 Schoen RE, Razzak A, Yu KJ, Berndt SI, Firl K, Riley TL, et al. *Incidence and mortality of colorectal cancer in individuals with a family history of colorectal cancer.* Gastroenterology 2015 Nov;149(6):1438-1445.e1 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26255045.
12. ↑ 12.0 12.1 12.2 12.3 12.4 Stefansson T, Moller PH, Sigurdsson F, Steingrimsson E, Eldon BJ. *Familial risk of colon and rectal cancer in Iceland: evidence for different etiologic factors?* Int J Cancer 2006 Jul 15;119(2):304-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16477631.
13. ↑ 13.00 13.01 13.02 13.03 13.04 13.05 13.06 13.07 13.08 13.09 13.10 13.11 13.12 13.13 Taylor DP, Stoddard GJ, Burt RW, Williams MS, Mitchell JA, Haug PJ, et al. *How well does family history predict who will get colorectal cancer? Implications for cancer screening and counseling.* Genet Med 2011 May;13(5):385-91 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21270638.
14. ↑ 14.0 14.1 Leu M, Reilly M, Czene K. *Evaluation of bias in familial risk estimates: a study of common cancers using Swedish population-based registers.* J Natl Cancer Inst 2008 Sep 17;100(18):1318-25 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18780865.
15. ↑ 15.0 15.1 Lynch KL, Ahnen DJ, Byers T, Weiss DG, Lieberman DA. *First-degree relatives of patients with advanced colorectal adenomas have an increased prevalence of colorectal cancer.* Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2003 Mar;1(2):96-102 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15017501.

16. ↑ 16.0 16.1 16.2 Hall NR, Bishop DT, Stephenson BM, Finan PJ. *Hereditary susceptibility to colorectal cancer. Relatives of early onset cases are particularly at risk.* Dis Colon Rectum 1996 Jul;39(7):739-43 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8674364.
17. ↑ 17.0 17.1 17.2 17.3 Benhamiche-Bouvier AM, Lejeune C, Jouve JL, Manfredi S, Bonithon-Kopp C, Faivre J. *Family history and risk of colorectal cancer: implications for screening programmes.* J Med Screen 2000;7 (3):136-40 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11126162.
18. ↑ 18.0 18.1 18.2 18.3 Sandhu MS, Luben R, Khaw KT. *Prevalence and family history of colorectal cancer: implications for screening.* J Med Screen 2001;8(2):69-72 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov /pubmed/11480446.
19. ↑ 19.0 19.1 19.2 19.3 Aitken JF, Bain CJ, Ward M, Siskind V, MacLennan R. *Risk of colorectal adenomas in patients with a family history of colorectal cancer: some implications for screening programmes.* Gut 1996 Jul;39(1):105-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8881819.
20. ↑ 20.0 20.1 Anderson JC, Attam R, Alpern Z, Messina CR, Hubbard P, Grimson R, et al. *Prevalence of colorectal neoplasia in smokers.* Am J Gastroenterol 2003 Dec;98(12):2777-83 Available from: http://www. ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14687832.
21. ↑ Pedersen A, Johansen C, Grønbaek M. *Relations between amount and type of alcohol and colon and rectal cancer in a Danish population based cohort study.* Gut 2003 Jun;52(6):861-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12740343.
22. ↑ Calle EE, Rodriguez C, Walker-Thurmond K, Thun MJ. *Overweight, obesity, and mortality from cancer in a prospectively studied cohort of U.S. adults.* N Engl J Med 2003 Apr 24;348(17):1625-38 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12711737.
23. ↑ Grossman S, Milos ML. *Colonoscopic screening of persons with suspected risk factors for colon cancer. I. Family history.* Gastroenterology 1988 Feb;94(2):395-400 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov /pubmed/3335314.
24. ↑ Luchtefeld MA, Syverson D, Solfelt M, MacKeigan JM, Krystosek R, Waller J, et al. *Is colonoscopic screening appropriate in asymptomatic patients with family history of colon cancer?* Dis Colon Rectum 1991 Sep;34(9):763-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1914741.
25. ↑ Rex DK, Lehman GA, Ulbright TM, Smith JJ, Pound DC, Hawes RH, et al. *Colonic neoplasia in asymptomatic persons with negative fecal occult blood tests: influence of age, gender, and family history.* Am J Gastroenterol 1993 Jun;88(6):825-31 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8503374.
26. ↑ Hunt LM, Rooney PS, Hardcastle JD, Armitage NC. *Endoscopic screening of relatives of patients with colorectal cancer.* Gut 1998 Jan;42(1):71-5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9505888.
27. ↑ Rhodes M, Bradburn DM. *Overview of screening and management of familial adenomatous polyposis.* Gut 1992 Jan;33(1):125-31 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1310949.
28. ↑ Lynch HT, Smyrk T. *Hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer (Lynch syndrome). An updated review.* Cancer 1996 Sep 15;78(6):1149-67 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8826936.
29. ↑ Järvinen HJ. *Epidemiology of familial adenomatous polyposis in Finland: impact of family screening on the colorectal cancer rate and survival.* Gut 1992 Mar;33(3):357-60 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm. nih.gov/pubmed/1314763.
30. ↑ Järvinen HJ, Mecklin JP, Sistonen P. *Screening reduces colorectal cancer rate in families with hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer.* Gastroenterology 1995 May;108(5):1405-11 Available from: http://www. ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7729632.

31. ↑ Emery JD, Reid G, Prevost AT, Ravine D, Walter FM. *Development and validation of a family history screening questionnaire in Australian primary care.* Ann Fam Med 2014 May;12(3):241-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24821895.

Back to top

## 8.2.7 Appendices

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| View recommendation components | View pending evidence | View body of evidence | View all comments | View literature search |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| View PICO | NHMRC Evidence statement form FHS1 | Systematic review report FHS1 |

Back to top

# 8.3 Screening strategies for people with a family history of colorectal cancer

**Contents**

## 8.3.1 Background

A family history of colorectal cancer means a person's probability of developing colorectal cancer could be several times higher than that of someone without a family history (see Colorectal cancer risk according to family history) However, family history in itself is not a good predictor of colorectal cancer,[1] because the increased risk is applied to an average risk of colorectal cancer that is very low (lifetime risk approximately 5%), resulting in an absolute risk in those with a family history that is still low. Nevertheless, family history can be used to stratify people without a diagnosis or symptoms of colorectal cancer into risk categories in which the number of expected colorectal cancers or adenomas is high enough to warrant more intensive screening than the general population. Based on this, current practice in Australia and in many other countries to have more intensive or frequent screening for those with stronger family history. The majority of screening guidelines recommend biennial FOBT or 10-yearly colonoscopy for the lowest category of risk, 5-yearly colonoscopy for the middle category of risk and annual or biennial (every two years) colonoscopy of the highest category of risk.[2][3] The majority of screening guidelines recommend screening to begin at age 50 for all risk categories or 10 years before the youngest age of colorectal cancer diagnosis in a relative.

Risk categories are defined in Colorectal cancer risk according to family history.

Previous Australian guidelines[4] recommended an FOBT test for people at moderately increased risk (category 2) and people at high risk (category 3) due to family history. Recommendations for category 2 included 5-yearly colonoscopy beginning at age 50 years (or 10 years earlier than youngest age of relative at diagnosis) and consideration of faecal occult blood testing (FOBT) between colonoscopies.[4] Recommendations for category 3 were based on family risk profile according to familial syndrome, and included flexible sigmoidoscopy every 1–2 years for familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP), and annually or at least once every two years beginning at age 25 years or five years earlier than the age at diagnosis of the earliest cancer in the family for Lynch syndrome.[4]

Based on this recent systematic review, and given that there is sufficient evidence to support screening for 50 year-olds at average risk using iFOBT every 2 years (see General population screening), earlier commencement of 2-yearly iFOBT is recommended for people with an increased risk based on their family history.

The estimation of absolute risk, calculated as the probability that person of specific age and family history will develop colorectal cancer in the next 10 years, is a valid way to quantify risk. Screening regimens could be based on absolute risk on the principle of 'equal risk, equal screening', whereby an individual with a strong family history starts screening at a younger age because their absolute risk reaches the screening threshold earlier than someone at lower risk based on family history.

Back to top

## 8.3.2 Overview of evidence

*What is the effect of screening on risk of colorectal cancer incidence and mortality and how does it vary by family history (various categories)?*

Guidance in this section is based on the 2005 edition of this guideline[4], the systematic reviews performed for the Colorectal cancer risk according to family history and Evidence for benefit from population screening sections, selected subsequent articles and international guidelines, and adapted based on consensus. Please see Guidelines Development for more information.

It should be noted that the following recommendations are based on studies of cancer risk and on yield of lesions in screening studies, not on randomised controlled trials with colorectal cancer mortality as the outcome.

### 8.3.2.1 Effectiveness of screening in patients younger than 50 years

One study was identified that evaluated the effectiveness of FOBT prior to age 50 years.[5] This study correlated the results of FOBT tests with colonoscopy findings in 6096 asymptomatic patients aged 40 and over in Taiwan. It reported that a single immunochemical FOBT test for colorectal cancer in patients aged 40–49 years had a 60% sensitivity with a positive predictive value of 7.1%..[5]

### 8.3.2.2 Absolute risk

The 10-year risk of colorectal cancer for the average population, those at two-fold risk (both Category 1) and those at three- and six-fold increased risk (Category 2) and those at seven- and ten-fold risk, can be calculated from population-based statistics (Table 5.3). The 10-year colorectal cancer risk for a 40 year-old at three-fold risk is the same as the 10-year colorectal cancer risk for a 35 year-old at seven-fold risk which is the same as the 10-year colorectal cancer risk for a 50 year-old at average risk. For people in category 2, the 10-year risk of colorectal cancer from age 50 is 3% or higher.

#### 8.3.2.2.1 Table 5.3. Ten-year absolute risks of colorectal cancer (%) based on age and level of increased risk due to family history

| Increased risk due to family history (RR) | 30 | 35 | 40 | 45 | 50 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 (average) | 0.073 | 0.15 | 0.29 | 0.6 | 1.0 |
| 2 | 0.15 | 0.29 | 0.59 | 1.1 | 1.9 |
| 3 | 0.22 | 0.44 | 0.88 | 1.6 | 2.9 |
| 6 | 0.44 | 0.88 | 1.8 | 3.3 | 5.7 |
| 7 | 0.51 | 1.0 | 2.0 | 3.8 | 6.6 |
| 10 | 0.73 | 1.5 | 2.9 | 5.4 | 9.3 |

RR: relative risk; the risk of colorectal cancer relative to the average risk in the population. Estimates are based on the assumption that the relative risk is the same for all age groups.

The blue shaded cells represent risks approximately equivalent to the risk of a 50 year-old at average risk who are recommended to begin 2-yearly FOBT screening.

Source: Incidence data from AIHW Australian colorectal cancer incidence for males and females combined for the year 2000.[6]

Back to top

## 8.3.3 Screening by risk category

### 8.3.3.1 Category 1 — Those near average risk

| Category | Family history | Relative risk |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | No first- or second-degree relative with colorectal cancer<br>One first-degree relative with colorectal cancer diagnosed at 55 years or older | No increased risk |
| | One first-degree and one second-degree with colorectal cancer diagnosed at 55 years or older | Up to 2-fold |

Sources: St John et al (1993)[7], Fuchs et al (1994)[8], Slattery et al (1994)[9], Bass et al (2008)[10], Schoen et al (2015)[11], Taylor et al (2011)[1], Lynch et al (2003)[12], Hall et al (1996)[13], Leu et al (2008)[14], Benhamiche-Bouvier et al (2000)[15], Sandhu et al (2001)[16], Aitken et al (1996)[17], Anderson et al (2003)[18]

Note: Relative risk is the ratio of the risk of developing colorectal cancer in a particular exposed group to the average risk in the whole population.

The yield of clinically significant lesions at screening colonoscopy is low (see Colorectal cancer risk according to family history).[17][19][20][21][22] A number of organisations, including the American Cancer Society and the American Gastroenterological Association, do not consider that risk of colorectal cancer justifies more invasive screening than that recommended for the general population.[23][24] The 1997 Australian Health Technology Advisory Committee (AHTAC) Report on Colorectal Cancer Screening concluded that recommendations for people in this category should be the same as for the average-risk population.[25]

- See the evidence-based recommendation: For people with a family history of colorectal cancer who are assessed as having category 1 risk, iFOBT should be performed every 2 years from age 50 to age 74.
- See also the evidence-based recommendation on aspirin use for people aged 50–70 years who are at average risk of colorectal cancer (see

Back to top

### 8.3.3.2 Category 2 — Those at moderately increased risk

| Category | Family history | Relative risk |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | One first-degree relative with colorectal cancer diagnosed under 55 years<br>Two first-degree relatives with colorectal cancer diagnosed at any age<br>One first-degree relative and at least two second-degree relative with colorectal cancer diagnosed at any age | 3- to 6-fold |

Sources: St John et al (1993)[7], Fuchs et al (1994)[8], Slattery et al (1994)[9], Bass et al (2008)[10], Schoen et al (2015)[11], Taylor et al (2011)[1], Lynch et al (2003)[12], Hall et al (1996)[13], Leu et al (2008)[14], Benhamiche-Bouvier et al (2000)[15], Sandhu et al (2001)[16], Aitken et al (1996)[17], Anderson et al (2003)[18]

Note: Relative risk is the ratio of the risk of developing colorectal cancer in a particular exposed group to the average risk in the whole population.

For people in this category, their risk of colorectal cancer is as high at age 40 as the general population is at age 50 (see Colorectal cancer risk according to family history). Their risk of colorectal cancer at age 40 ranges from approximately 0.88% to 1.8%, which is approximately equivalent to the risk for people in category 1 at age 50 (1.0%). Accordingly, 2-yearly screening from age 40 is appropriate. By age 50 their 10-year colorectal cancer risk is approximately 2.9 to 5.7%, which is sufficiently high to warrant screening by 5-yearly colonoscopy.

**Practice point**

For people with category 2 risk of colorectal cancer:

- iFOBT should be performed every 2 years from age 40, and colonoscopy should be performed every 5 years from age 50 to age 74.
- low-dose (100 mg) aspirin daily should be considered (see Aspirin).

**Practice point**

For people in category 2, CT colonography can be offered if colonoscopy is contraindicated (Dachman 2003).

**Practice point**

Because of the possibility of Lynch syndrome, a complete family history should be taken and updated regularly, and the accuracy of the cancer diagnoses and polyp pathology should be checked carefully.

**Practice point**

Genetic testing is not appropriate at present for people with category 2 risk. Tumour testing for Lynch syndrome-related changes, using immunohistochemistry and microsatellite instability, should be considered when any of the revised Bethesda criteria are met (see Lynch syndrome).

**Practice point**

As with all forms of screening, those at risk should be carefully checked for the presence of symptoms that might be due to colorectal neoplasia. Where symptoms are present, appropriate diagnostic steps should be taken before entry into a screening program.

Back to top

### 8.3.3.3 Category 3 — those at potentially high risk

| Category | Family history | Relative risk |
|---|---|---|
| 3 | At least three first-degree or second-degree relatives with colorectal cancer, with at least one diagnosed under 55 years<br><br>At least three first-degree relatives with colorectal cancer diagnosed at any age | 7- to 10-fold |

Sources: St John et al (1993)[7], Fuchs et al (1994)[8], Slattery et al (1994)[9], Bass et al (2008)[10], Schoen et al (2015)[11], Taylor et al (2011)[1], Lynch et al (2003)[12], Hall et al (1996)[13], Leu et al (2008)[14], Benhamiche-Bouvier et al (2000)[15], Sandhu et al (2001)[16], Aitken et al (1996)[17], Anderson et al (2003)[18]

Note: Relative risk is the ratio of the risk of developing colorectal cancer in a particular exposed group to the average risk in the whole population.

The risk for some people with three (or more) relatives with colorectal cancer may be difficult to categorise, especially if all cases of colorectal cancer occur at an advanced age, are confined to one generation of the family, and if no-one in the family has had any of the extra-colonic cancers associated with Lynch syndrome.[26] If there is uncertainty about their mutation status, it may be safer to categorise people as having suspected (or possible) Lynch syndrome. New diagnoses of cancer in the family or results of microsatellite instability, immunohistochemical staining or genetic testing may clarify the situation.

For people in this category, their risk of colorectal cancer is as high at age 35 as the general population is at age 50 (see Colorectal cancer risk according to family history). Their risk of colorectal cancer at age 35 ranges from approximately 1.0% to 1.5%, which is approximately equivalent to the risk for people in category 1 at age 50 (1.0%).

Accordingly, 2-yearly iFOBT screening from age 35 is appropriate. By age 45 their 10-year colorectal cancer risk ranges from approximately 3.8% to 5.4%, which is sufficiently high to warrant screening by 5-yearly colonoscopy.

**Practice point**

For people with category 3 risk of colorectal cancer:

- iFOBT should be performed every 2 years from age 35, then 5-yearly colonoscopy from age 45 to age 74.
- low-dose (100 mg) aspirin daily should be considered (see Aspirin).
- Referral to a genetic centre for hereditary cancer syndromes should be considered. Those carrying their family-specific mutation or having uncertain genetic status require careful cancer screening (see High-risk familial syndromes).

Back to top

## 8.3.4 Evidence summary and recommendations

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| **Category 1 - Those at or slightly above average risk**<br><br>The yield of clinically significant lesions at screening colonoscopy is low, so average population screening is appropriate by biennial iFOBT from age 50 to 74 years. | II, III-2 | [17], [19], [20], [21], [22] |
| **Category 2 - Those at moderately increase risk** | II, III-2 | [7], [9], [13], [15], [16], [17] |

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| The risk of colorectal cancer is as high at age 40 as the general population is at age 50, so population-based screening is appropriate until age 50. The 10-year risk of colorectal cancer from age 50 is at least 3%, so five-yearly colonoscopy is justified from age 50. | | |
| **Category 3 - Those at potentially high risk**<br><br>Fewer than 5% of colorectal cancers occur under category 3 conditions. A proportion of people in this group will be members of families with either FAP or definite or suspected Lynch syndrome are at high risk for colorectal cancer and, depending on the syndrome, for cancer at certain other sites. See High-risk familial syndromes Another proportion of people in this group will have no known genetic cause. Their risk of colorectal cancer is as high at age 35 as the general population is at age 50, so population-based screening is appropriate till age 45. The 10-year risk of colorectal cancer from age 45 is at least 3%, so five-yearly colonoscopy is justified from age 45. | II, III-2 | [27], [28], [29], [30] |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| **Category 1**<br><br>For people with a family history of colorectal cancer who are assessed as having category 1 risk, iFOBT should be performed every 2 years from age 50 to age 74.<br><br>See Population screening for colorectal cancer. | **C** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| **Category 2**<br><br>For category 2 patients, offer iFOBT every two years starting at age 40, then colonoscopy every five years starting at age 50. CT colonography may be offered if colonoscopy is contraindicated. | **C** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| **Category 3** | **C** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| For category 3 patients, offer iFOBT every two years starting at age 35, then colonoscopy every five years starting at age 45. CT colonography may be offered if colonoscopy is contraindicated. | |

Back to top

## 8.3.5 Health system implications

### 8.3.5.1 Clinical practice

Since the last guidelines, the National Bowel Cancer Screening Program has been funded with a phased roll-out. By 2019 it will offer all Australians free colorectal cancer screening from age 50-74 by biennial iFOBT. These guidelines recommend that all people in Category 1 avail themselves of this screening program which will be sufficient given their risk of colorectal cancer.

These guidelines differ from the previous guidelines12 in in a number of ways. There have been some changes in the family history inclusion criteria for category 2; the genetic syndromes have been removed from category 3 and as a consequence colonoscopy screening for category 3 is now five yearly; and the age at which screening begins is now uniform within category and younger for category 2 and category 3 compared to category 1.

### 8.3.5.2 Resourcing

Resources must be in place to support the continued expansion of the NBCSP to complete rollout of screening every two years (biennial screening) by 2020.

### 8.3.5.3 Barriers to implementation

There may be some resistance to the change in recommendations which have been in use for over 10 years.

Back to top

## 8.3.6 Discussion

### 8.3.6.1 Unresolved issues

The optimal age to stop screening is not known. Health economic research is needed to determine whether the benefits of iFOBT screening or colonoscopy screening beyond age 74 years outweigh the inherent risks. Further research is needed, such as observational studies and health economic research, to determine whether the youngest age of colorectal cancer diagnosis should be used as an indicator of the age to begin screening unaffected relatives. Previous guidelines have recommended screening 10 years younger than the age of the youngest relative at colorectal cancer diagnosis, but there is no evidence available to support this recommendation.

Only a small number of studies examined the performance of colorectal cancer screening before age 50. Guidance presented here is based on the few studies that provide sensitivity estimates for colorectal cancer for those younger than age 50 that are similar to sensitivity estimates for ages 50 and over.[5][31]

### 8.3.6.2 Studies currently underway

We are not aware of any current clinical trial that would provide more data on this question.

### 8.3.6.3 Future research priorities

Health economic research is needed to assess the cost effectiveness of screening for various categories of family history, evaluate the screening strategies and further examine the relationship between risk and age.

In the absence of trials and observational studies for the effectiveness of screening strategies in people at elevated risk of colorectal cancer due to family history, cost-effectiveness analysis is appropriate to determine screening guidelines for the risk categories

Back to top

## 8.3.7 References

1. ↑ 1.0 1.1 1.2 1.3 Taylor DP, Stoddard GJ, Burt RW, Williams MS, Mitchell JA, Haug PJ, et al. *How well does family history predict who will get colorectal cancer? Implications for cancer screening and counseling.* Genet Med 2011 May;13(5):385-91 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21270638.
2. ↑ Medical Advisory Secretariat. *Fecal Occult Blood Test for Colorectal Cancer Screening: an evidence-based analysis.* Toronto, Ontario: Canada: Ministry of Health and Long-Term Care; 2009.
3. ↑ International Agency for Research on Cancer. *European guidelines for quality assurance in colorectal cancer screening and diagnosis.* First Edition: International Agency for Research on Cancer; 2010.
4. ↑ 4.0 4.1 4.2 4.3 Australian Cancer Network Colorectal Cancer Guidelines Revision Committee. *Clinical practice guidelines for the prevention, early detection and management of colorectal cancer.* The Cancer Council Australia and Australian Cancer Network 2005.

5. ↑ 5.0 5.1 5.2 Chen Y-Y, Chen T-H, Su M-Y, Ning H-C, Kuo C-J, Lin W-P, et al.. *Accuracy of immunochemical fecal occult blood test for detecting colorectal neoplasms in individuals undergoing health check-ups.* Advances in Digestive Medicine 2014 Sep;Volume 1, Issue 3, Pages 74–79 Available from: http://www.aidm-online.com/article/S2351-9797(14)00045-0/abstract.
6. ↑ AIHW & Australasian Association of Cancer Registries. *Cancer in Australia 2000. Cancer Series. Cat. no. CAN 18.* Canberra: AIHW; 2003.
7. ↑ 7.0 7.1 7.2 7.3 St John DJ, McDermott FT, Hopper JL, Debney EA, Johnson WR, Hughes ES. *Cancer risk in relatives of patients with common colorectal cancer.* Ann Intern Med 1993 May 15;118(10):785-90 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8470852.
8. ↑ 8.0 8.1 8.2 Fuchs CS, Giovannucci EL, Colditz GA, Hunter DJ, Speizer FE, Willett WC. *A prospective study of family history and the risk of colorectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 1994 Dec 22;331(25):1669-74 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7969357.
9. ↑ 9.0 9.1 9.2 9.3 Slattery ML, Kerber RA. *Family history of cancer and colon cancer risk: the Utah Population Database.* J Natl Cancer Inst 1994 Nov 2;86(21):1618-26 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7932826.
10. ↑ 10.0 10.1 10.2 Bass AJ, Meyerhardt JA, Chan JA, Giovannucci EL, Fuchs CS. *Family history and survival after colorectal cancer diagnosis.* Cancer 2008 Mar 15;112(6):1222-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18219663.
11. ↑ 11.0 11.1 11.2 Schoen RE, Razzak A, Yu KJ, Berndt SI, Firl K, Riley TL, et al. *Incidence and mortality of colorectal cancer in individuals with a family history of colorectal cancer.* Gastroenterology 2015 Nov;149(6):1438-1445.e1 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26255045.
12. ↑ 12.0 12.1 12.2 Lynch KL, Ahnen DJ, Byers T, Weiss DG, Lieberman DA. *First-degree relatives of patients with advanced colorectal adenomas have an increased prevalence of colorectal cancer.* Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol 2003 Mar;1(2):96-102 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15017501.
13. ↑ 13.0 13.1 13.2 13.3 Hall NR, Bishop DT, Stephenson BM, Finan PJ. *Hereditary susceptibility to colorectal cancer. Relatives of early onset cases are particularly at risk.* Dis Colon Rectum 1996 Jul;39(7):739-43 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8674364.
14. ↑ 14.0 14.1 14.2 Leu M, Reilly M, Czene K. *Evaluation of bias in familial risk estimates: a study of common cancers using Swedish population-based registers.* J Natl Cancer Inst 2008 Sep 17;100(18):1318-25 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18780865.
15. ↑ 15.0 15.1 15.2 15.3 Benhamiche-Bouvier AM, Lejeune C, Jouve JL, Manfredi S, Bonithon-Kopp C, Faivre J. *Family history and risk of colorectal cancer: implications for screening programmes.* J Med Screen 2000;7(3):136-40 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11126162.
16. ↑ 16.0 16.1 16.2 16.3 Sandhu MS, Luben R, Khaw KT. *Prevalence and family history of colorectal cancer: implications for screening.* J Med Screen 2001;8(2):69-72 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11480446.
17. ↑ 17.0 17.1 17.2 17.3 17.4 17.5 Aitken JF, Bain CJ, Ward M, Siskind V, MacLennan R. *Risk of colorectal adenomas in patients with a family history of colorectal cancer: some implications for screening programmes.* Gut 1996 Jul;39(1):105-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8881819.
18. ↑ 18.0 18.1 18.2 Anderson JC, Attam R, Alpern Z, Messina CR, Hubbard P, Grimson R, et al. *Prevalence of colorectal neoplasia in smokers.* Am J Gastroenterol 2003 Dec;98(12):2777-83 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14687832.

19. ↑ [19.0] [19.1] Grossman S, Milos ML. *Colonoscopic screening of persons with suspected risk factors for colon cancer. I. Family history.* Gastroenterology 1988 Feb;94(2):395-400 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3335314.
20. ↑ [20.0] [20.1] Luchtefeld MA, Syverson D, Solfelt M, MacKeigan JM, Krystosek R, Waller J, et al. *Is colonoscopic screening appropriate in asymptomatic patients with family history of colon cancer?* Dis Colon Rectum 1991 Sep;34(9):763-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1914741.
21. ↑ [21.0] [21.1] Rex DK, Lehman GA, Ulbright TM, Smith JJ, Pound DC, Hawes RH, et al. *Colonic neoplasia in asymptomatic persons with negative fecal occult blood tests: influence of age, gender, and family history.* Am J Gastroenterol 1993 Jun;88(6):825-31 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8503374.
22. ↑ [22.0] [22.1] Hunt LM, Rooney PS, Hardcastle JD, Armitage NC. *Endoscopic screening of relatives of patients with colorectal cancer.* Gut 1998 Jan;42(1):71-5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9505888.
23. ↑ Smith RA, Cokkinides V, von Eschenbach AC, Levin B, Cohen C, Runowicz CD, et al. *American Cancer Society guidelines for the early detection of cancer.* CA Cancer J Clin 2002 Jan;52(1):8-22 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11814067.
24. ↑ Winawer S, Fletcher R, Rex D, Bond J, Burt R, Ferrucci J, et al. *Colorectal cancer screening and surveillance: clinical guidelines and rationale-Update based on new evidence.* Gastroenterology 2003 Feb;124(2):544-60 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12557158.
25. ↑ Australian Health Technology Advisory Committee (AHTAC). *Colorectal cancer screening: a report of the Australian Health Technology Advisory Committee.* Canberra, Australia: Commonwealth Department of Health and Family Services; 1997 [cited 2016 Dec 15].
26. ↑ Lynch HT, Riley BD, Weissman SM, Coronel SM, Kinarsky Y, Lynch JF, et al. *Hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal carcinoma (HNPCC) and HNPCC-like families: Problems in diagnosis, surveillance, and management.* Cancer 2004 Jan 1;100(1):53-64 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14692024.
27. ↑ Rhodes M, Bradburn DM. *Overview of screening and management of familial adenomatous polyposis.* Gut 1992 Jan;33(1):125-31 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1310949.
28. ↑ Lynch HT, Smyrk T. *Hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer (Lynch syndrome). An updated review.* Cancer 1996 Sep 15;78(6):1149-67 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8826936.
29. ↑ Järvinen HJ. *Epidemiology of familial adenomatous polyposis in Finland: impact of family screening on the colorectal cancer rate and survival.* Gut 1992 Mar;33(3):357-60 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1314763.
30. ↑ Järvinen HJ, Mecklin JP, Sistonen P. *Screening reduces colorectal cancer rate in families with hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer.* Gastroenterology 1995 May;108(5):1405-11 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7729632.
31. ↑ Chen CH, Tsai MK, Wen CP. *Extending Colorectal Cancer Screening to Persons Aged 40 to 49 Years With Immunochemical Fecal Occult Blood Test: A Prospective Cohort Study of 513,283 Individuals.* J Clin Gastroenterol 2016 Oct;50(9):761-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26905605.

Back to top

## 8.3.8 Appendices

View recommendation components | View pending evidence | View body of evidence | View all comments

NHMRC Evidence statement form FHS1

Systematic review report FHS1

# 9 High-risk familial syndromes

**Contents**



## 9.1 Background

Approximately 5% of all colorectal cancers and 10–15% of colorectal cancers diagnosed before age 50 years are caused by high-risk germline mutations.[1][2] Genetic knowledge is rapidly expanding and new discoveries are likely to explain cases of heritable predisposition for which a mutation cannot currently be identified. For example, polymerase proofreading-associated polyposis (PPAP) has recently been described and accounts for a small number of families with polyposis.[3] Similarly, mutations in NTHL1 have been found to cause a rare autosomal recessive form of polyposis.[4]

Genetic testing for familial cancer syndromes is under going rapid change as technology improves and costs for more extensive testing strategies drop. Testing strategies are moving towards testing a panel of genes covering all polyposis conditions, or a non-polyposis Lynch panel, or both where the phenotype is unclear. Some centres offer whole exome sequencing but with analysis only of those genes which are appropriate to the clinical presentation. Large deletions, which are common causes some syndromes are not reliably detected by sequencing either in panels or examone sequencing and still need gene specific testing using the technique of MLPA. These *next gen* strategies are now cheaper than traditional Sanger sequencing of individual genes chosen to match the phenotype, with the likelihood that multiple genes will need to be tested sequentially.

### 9.1.1 Table 6.1 Familial syndromes associated with increased risk of colorectal cancer

| Syndrome | Gene responsible | Inheritance | Typical phenotype | Extracolonic manifestations |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Lynch syndrome* | *MSH2, MLH1, MSH6* or *PMS2*, *EPCAM* | Autosomal dominant | Early onset colorectal cancer, particularly in the proximal colon. The incidence of adenomas is not high but those that do arise have a high risk of rapidly progressing to malignancy. Cancers display microsatellite instability | Endometrial, ovarian, gastric, pancreatic, urothelial, renal pelvic, small intestine, biliary tract, brain, sebaceous gland adenomas and keratoacanthomas |
| Familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP)* | *APC* | Autosomal dominant | > 100 adenomas | Duodenal, gastric, desmoid, brain, thyroid, hepatoblastoma |
| Attenuated FAP (AFAP) | *APC* | Autosomal dominant | > 10 adenomas before age 30 years or 20–100 adenomas | Duodenal, gastric |
| *MUTYH*-associated polyposis | *MUTYH* | Autosomal recessive | Usually 20–100 adenomas but may have > 100 | Duodenal, gastric |
| Polymerase proofreading-associated polyposis (PPAP) | *POLD1* or *POLE* | Autosomal dominant | 10–100 adenomas and variable number of serrated polyps | Endometrial |
| *NTHL1*-associated polyposis | | Autosomal | | |

| Syndrome | Gene responsible | Inheritance | Typical phenotype | Extracolonic manifestations |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| (NAP) | *NTHL1* | recessive | 8–50 adenomatous polyps | Endometrial |
| Peutz-Jeghers syndrome | *STK11* | Autosomal dominant | Histologically characteristic hamartomatous polyps throughout gastrointestinal tract and mucocutaneous pigmentation | Upper gastrointestinal and small intestine, breast, gynaecological, pancreas |
| Juvenile polyposis syndrome | *SMAD4* or *BMPR1A* | Autosomal dominant | Histologically characteristic hamartomatous polyps throughout gastrointestinal tract; polyps of mixed histology may also be present | Upper gastrointestinal and small intestine but no evidence of excess risk for extra-gastrointestinal cancers |
| Serrated polyposis syndrome | Unknown | Unclear and low penetrance | At least 5 serrated polyps proximal to the sigmoid with ≥ 2 of these > 10 mm or > 20 serrated polyps of any size but distributed throughout the colon | Nil known |
| Cowden syndrome | *PTEN* | Autosomal dominant | Some patients develop adenomas and hyperplastic polyps in addition to colonic hamartomas.<br><br>There is no evidence that all families with PTEN are at high risk of bowel cancer. Families with a history of colorectal cancer should follow screening guidelines based on their family history. | Breast, endometrial, thyroid, renal, skin lesions (trichilemmoma, papilloma): A sensitive indicator of Cowden's Syndrome is head circumference, representing macrocephaly. |

*Note on nomenclature Historically, eponymous names were used to refer to specific clinical phenotypes in an individual patient, but now that the genetic basis of FAP and LS is known they should be avoided.

- Gardner Syndrome refers to classic FAP where intestinal polyposis is associated with extra-intestinal manifestations including osteomas (typically of the skull), fibromas, epidermoid cysts and desmoid tumours.
- Muir-Torre syndrome refers to Lynch syndrome associated with sebaceous gland tumours such as sebaceous epitheliomas, sebaceous adenomas, sebaceous carcinomas and keratoacanthomas.
- Turcot syndrome (brain tumour – polyposis syndrome) refers to the occurrence of multiple colorectal adenomas and a primary brain tumour. It can also be associated with cafe-au-lait spots. Turcot syndrome is associated with at least 2 distinct types of germline defects:
    - Type I is associated with a mutation in one of the mismatch repair genes and gliomas (predominantly astrocytomas) and accounts for about one third of cases.

- Type 2, which accounts for two thirds of cases, is associated with a mutation in the APC gene (FAP variant) and medulloblastoma is the most common type of brain tumour.

Back to top

## 9.1.2 Principles of management

The optimal management of individuals with, or at risk of, a familial colorectal cancer syndrome is dependent upon determining which syndrome is present. The provisional diagnosis should be based on well verified clinical and pathological data concerning the index patient and other affected members of the family. The diagnosis may ultimately be confirmed by the demonstration of a causative germline mutation.

Care is focused on the family as well as individual patients. It aims to reduce cancer morbidity and mortality by offering information about the risk of colorectal and other cancers and evidenced-based interventions to reduce this risk. There is evidence that participation in regular surveillance programs reduces cancer mortality in individuals carrying mutations causing familial adenomatous polyposis and Lynch syndrome.[5] Screening has not been shown to be beneficial for other rarer familial colorectal cancer syndromes. This is likely a result of small numbers in studied cohorts.

Back to top

## 9.1.3 Multidisciplinary approach

Patients with these syndromes benefit from management through familial cancer clinics that include geneticists, genetic counsellors, family based databases and multidisciplinary collaboration with gastroenterologists, colorectal surgeons and pathologists. The personal history of cancer and polyps in the index patient needs to be established and, if necessary, pathology review arranged. A detailed family history (pedigree) is collected and confirmed, where possible, by obtaining histological reports, clinical records, cancer registry information and/or death certificates. A provisional diagnosis is then reached and germline genetic testing arranged with pre- and post-test genetic counselling. Based on this, the diagnosis is refined and management recommendations made.

The index patient is supported in advising family members of the diagnosis and, where available, the benefits of predictive testing and surveillance. Communication is of utmost importance in the clinic with pre- and post-test counselling of patients and clear lines of communication with treating health professionals outside the familial cancer clinic.

Family registries have been associated with reduced cancer incidence within families. State-based familial cancer registries have been established in Australia (see Supplement. State- and territory-based familial cancer registries).

## 9.1.4 Chapter subsections

Please see sections:

- Familial adenomatous polyposis
- MUTYH associated polyposis
- Lynch syndrome

- Peutz-Jeghers syndrome
- Juvenile polyposis syndrome
- Serrated polyposis syndrome
- Supplement. State- and territory-based familial cancer registries

Back to top

## 9.2 References

1. ↑ Syngal S, Brand RE, Church JM, Giardiello FM, Hampel HL, Burt RW, et al. *ACG clinical guideline: Genetic testing and management of hereditary gastrointestinal cancer syndromes.* Am J Gastroenterol 2015 Feb; 110(2):223-62; quiz 263 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25645574.
2. ↑ Stoffel EM, Mangu PB, Gruber SB, Hamilton SR, Kalady MF, Lau MW, et al, 2015. *Hereditary colorectal cancer syndromes: American Society of Clinical Oncology Clinical Practice Guideline endorsement of the familial risk-colorectal cancer: European Society for Medical Oncology Clinical Practice Guidelines.* Journal of Clinical Oncology 2015;33: 209-17 Available from: http://jco.ascopubs.org/content/early/2014/12/01/JCO.2014.58.1322.full.pdf.
3. ↑ Church JM. *Polymerase proofreading-associated polyposis: a new, dominantly inherited syndrome of hereditary colorectal cancer predisposition.* Dis Colon Rectum 2014 Mar;57(3):396-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24509466.
4. ↑ Weren RD, Ligtenberg MJ, Kets CM, de Voer RM, Verwiel ET, Spruijt L, et al. *A germline homozygous mutation in the base-excision repair gene NTHL1 causes adenomatous polyposis and colorectal cancer.* Nat Genet 2015 Jun;47(6):668-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25938944.
5. ↑ Barrow P, Khan M, Lalloo F, Evans DG, Hill J. *Systematic review of the impact of registration and screening on colorectal cancer incidence and mortality in familial adenomatous polyposis and Lynch syndrome.* Br J Surg 2013 Dec;100(13):1719-31 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24227356.

Back to top

# 9.1 Introduction: high-risk familial syndromes

**Contents**

## 9.1.1 Background

Approximately 5% of all colorectal cancers and 10–15% of colorectal cancers diagnosed before age 50 years are caused by high-risk germline mutations.[1][2] Genetic knowledge is rapidly expanding and new discoveries are likely to explain cases of heritable predisposition for which a mutation cannot currently be identified. For example, polymerase proofreading-associated polyposis (PPAP) has recently been described and accounts for a small number of families with polyposis.[3] Similarly, mutations in NTHL1 have been found to cause a rare autosomal recessive form of polyposis.[4]

Genetic testing for familial cancer syndromes is under going rapid change as technology improves and costs for more extensive testing strategies drop. Testing strategies are moving towards testing a panel of genes covering all polyposis conditions, or a non-polyposis Lynch panel, or both where the phenotype is unclear. Some centres offer whole exome sequencing but with analysis only of those genes which are appropriate to the clinical presentation. Large deletions, which are common causes some syndromes are not reliably detected by sequencing either in panels or examone sequencing and still need gene specific testing using the technique of MLPA. These *next gen* strategies are now cheaper than traditional Sanger sequencing of individual genes chosen to match the phenotype, with the likelihood that multiple genes will need to be tested sequentially.

### 9.1.1.1 Table 6.1 Familial syndromes associated with increased risk of colorectal cancer

| Syndrome | Gene responsible | Inheritance | Typical phenotype | Extracolonic manifestations |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Lynch syndrome* | *MSH2, MLH1, MSH6* or *PMS2*, *EPCAM* | Autosomal dominant | Early onset colorectal cancer, particularly in the proximal colon. The incidence of adenomas is not high but those that do arise have a high risk of rapidly progressing to malignancy. Cancers display microsatellite instability | Endometrial, ovarian, gastric, pancreatic, urothelial, renal pelvic, small intestine, biliary tract, brain, sebaceous gland adenomas and keratoacanthomas |
| Familial adenomatous polyposis (FAP)* | *APC* | Autosomal dominant | > 100 adenomas | Duodenal, gastric, desmoid, brain, thyroid, hepatoblastoma |
| Attenuated FAP (AFAP) | *APC* | Autosomal dominant | > 10 adenomas before age 30 years or 20–100 adenomas | Duodenal, gastric |

| Syndrome | Gene responsible | Inheritance | Typical phenotype | Extracolonic manifestations |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| *MUTYH*-associated polyposis | *MUTYH* | Autosomal recessive | Usually 20–100 adenomas but may have > 100 | Duodenal, gastric |
| Polymerase proofreading-associated polyposis (PPAP) | *POLD1* or *POLE* | Autosomal dominant | 10–100 adenomas and variable number of serrated polyps | Endometrial |
| *NTHL1*-associated polyposis (NAP) | *NTHL1* | Autosomal recessive | 8–50 adenomatous polyps | Endometrial |
| Peutz-Jeghers syndrome | *STK11* | Autosomal dominant | Histologically characteristic hamartomatous polyps throughout gastrointestinal tract and mucocutaneous pigmentation | Upper gastrointestinal and small intestine, breast, gynaecological, pancreas |
| Juvenile polyposis syndrome | *SMAD4* or *BMPR1A* | Autosomal dominant | Histologically characteristic hamartomatous polyps throughout gastrointestinal tract; polyps of mixed histology may also be present | Upper gastrointestinal and small intestine but no evidence of excess risk for extra-gastrointestinal cancers |
| Serrated polyposis syndrome | Unknown | Unclear and low penetrance | At least 5 serrated polyps proximal to the sigmoid with ≥ 2 of these > 10 mm or > 20 serrated polyps of any size but distributed throughout the colon | Nil known |
| Cowden syndrome | *PTEN* | Autosomal dominant | Some patients develop adenomas and hyperplastic polyps in addition to colonic hamartomas.<br><br>There is no evidence that all families with PTEN are at high risk of bowel cancer. Families with a history of colorectal cancer should follow screening guidelines based on their family history. | Breast, endometrial, thyroid, renal, skin lesions (trichilemmoma, papilloma): A sensitive indicator of Cowden's Syndrome is head circumference, representing macrocephaly. |

*Note on nomenclature Historically, eponymous names were used to refer to specific clinical phenotypes in an individual patient, but now that the genetic basis of FAP and LS is known they should be avoided.

- Gardner Syndrome refers to classic FAP where intestinal polyposis is associated with extra-intestinal manifestations including osteomas (typically of the skull), fibromas, epidermoid cysts and desmoid tumours.
- Muir-Torre syndrome refers to Lynch syndrome associated with sebaceous gland tumours such as sebaceous epitheliomas, sebaceous adenomas, sebaceous carcinomas and keratoacanthomas.
- Turcot syndrome (brain tumour – polyposis syndrome) refers to the occurrence of multiple colorectal adenomas and a primary brain tumour. It can also be associated with cafe-au-lait spots. Turcot syndrome is associated with at least 2 distinct types of germline defects:

    - Type I is associated with a mutation in one of the mismatch repair genes and gliomas (predominantly astrocytomas) and accounts for about one third of cases.
    - Type 2, which accounts for two thirds of cases, is associated with a mutation in the APC gene (FAP variant) and medulloblastoma is the most common type of brain tumour.

Back to top

## 9.1.1.2 Principles of management

The optimal management of individuals with, or at risk of, a familial colorectal cancer syndrome is dependent upon determining which syndrome is present. The provisional diagnosis should be based on well verified clinical and pathological data concerning the index patient and other affected members of the family. The diagnosis may ultimately be confirmed by the demonstration of a causative germline mutation.

Care is focused on the family as well as individual patients. It aims to reduce cancer morbidity and mortality by offering information about the risk of colorectal and other cancers and evidenced-based interventions to reduce this risk. There is evidence that participation in regular surveillance programs reduces cancer mortality in individuals carrying mutations causing familial adenomatous polyposis and Lynch syndrome.[5] Screening has not been shown to be beneficial for other rarer familial colorectal cancer syndromes. This is likely a result of small numbers in studied cohorts.

Back to top

## 9.1.1.3 Multidisciplinary approach

Patients with these syndromes benefit from management through familial cancer clinics that include geneticists, genetic counsellors, family based databases and multidisciplinary collaboration with gastroenterologists, colorectal surgeons and pathologists. The personal history of cancer and polyps in the index patient needs to be established and, if necessary, pathology review arranged. A detailed family history (pedigree) is collected and confirmed, where possible, by obtaining histological reports, clinical records, cancer registry information and/or death certificates. A provisional diagnosis is then reached and germline genetic testing arranged with pre- and post-test genetic counselling. Based on this, the diagnosis is refined and management recommendations made.

The index patient is supported in advising family members of the diagnosis and, where available, the benefits of predictive testing and surveillance. Communication is of utmost importance in the clinic with pre- and post-test counselling of patients and clear lines of communication with treating health professionals outside the familial cancer clinic.

Family registries have been associated with reduced cancer incidence within families. State-based familial cancer registries have been established in Australia (see Supplement. State- and territory-based familial cancer registries).

### 9.1.1.4 Chapter subsections

Please see sections:

- Familial adenomatous polyposis
- MUTYH associated polyposis
- Lynch syndrome
- Peutz-Jeghers syndrome
- Juvenile polyposis syndrome
- Serrated polyposis syndrome
- Supplement. State- and territory-based familial cancer registries

Back to top

## 9.1.2 References

1. ↑ Syngal S, Brand RE, Church JM, Giardiello FM, Hampel HL, Burt RW, et al. *ACG clinical guideline: Genetic testing and management of hereditary gastrointestinal cancer syndromes.* Am J Gastroenterol 2015 Feb; 110(2):223-62; quiz 263 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25645574.
2. ↑ Stoffel EM, Mangu PB, Gruber SB, Hamilton SR, Kalady MF, Lau MW, et al, 2015. *Hereditary colorectal cancer syndromes: American Society of Clinical Oncology Clinical Practice Guideline endorsement of the familial risk-colorectal cancer: European Society for Medical Oncology Clinical Practice Guidelines.* Journal of Clinical Oncology 2015;33: 209-17 Available from: http://jco.ascopubs.org/content/early/2014/12/01/JCO.2014.58.1322.full.pdf.
3. ↑ Church JM. *Polymerase proofreading-associated polyposis: a new, dominantly inherited syndrome of hereditary colorectal cancer predisposition.* Dis Colon Rectum 2014 Mar;57(3):396-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24509466.
4. ↑ Weren RD, Ligtenberg MJ, Kets CM, de Voer RM, Verwiel ET, Spruijt L, et al. *A germline homozygous mutation in the base-excision repair gene NTHL1 causes adenomatous polyposis and colorectal cancer.* Nat Genet 2015 Jun;47(6):668-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25938944.
5. ↑ Barrow P, Khan M, Lalloo F, Evans DG, Hill J. *Systematic review of the impact of registration and screening on colorectal cancer incidence and mortality in familial adenomatous polyposis and Lynch syndrome.* Br J Surg 2013 Dec;100(13):1719-31 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24227356.

Back to top

# 9.2 Familial adenomatous polyposis

**Contents**



## 9.2.1 Background

FAP is an autosomal dominant disorder due to heritable germline mutations of the APC gene and causes the development of large numbers of colorectal adenomas at a young age. Classical FAP is defined by the presence of > 100 adenomas and young age of onset of polyposis; often thousands of adenomas are present. It is associated with a lifetime risk of CRC approaching 100% but accounts for ≤ 1% of all CRC cases. Common extra-colonic manifestations include gastric and duodenal polyps, desmoid tumours, osteomas and multiple congenital hypertrophy of the retinal pigment epithelium (pigmented ocular lesions).[1] Up to 30% of cases occur without a family history of FAP and represent either de novo germline mutations or mosaicism.[2]

Attenuated FAP (AFAP) is also due to autosomal dominant mutations in the APC gene but there are fewer adenomas and a later onset of disease. The diagnosis should be considered in patients with a cumulative count of ≥ 10 adenomas before age 30 years or 20–99 adenomas at any age.[2][3][1] In AFAP, adenomas may be predominantly in the proximal colon and there is often marked phenotypic variability within a family.

People with FAP also have an increased risk of extra-colonic malignancy, including malignancies of the upper gastrointestinal tract (most commonly duodenum), brain, thyroid and liver (hepatoblastoma). There is also an increased risk of desmoid tumours.

Back to top

## 9.2.2 Management

No systematic reviews on this topic were undertaken in the development of this section. The guidance on FAP is based on recent international guidelines.[2][3][4][1][5][6] See Guidelines Development for more information.

Back to top

### 9.2.2.1 Genetic testing

Referral to a genetics service for germline genetic testing for mutations in APC is indicated for persons with a cumulative count of ≥ 10 colorectal adenomas before 30 years of age or ≥ 20 colorectal adenomas at any age.[1] It is also indicated when a known pathogenic APC mutation is identified in a relative.

Over 70% of patients with a classical FAP phenotype have an APC mutation identified. Approximately 25% of patients with an attenuated FAP phenotype have an APC mutation identified.[1] Finding a pathogenic mutation confirms the diagnosis and allows relatives to be tested with a very high degree of accuracy. Absence of a mutation in the proband does not definitively rule out the diagnosis though it does in the context of predictive testing of relatives where there is a known family specific mutation.[2]

Back to top

### 9.2.2.2 Surveillance

**Practice point**

- Colonic surveillance should be offered to:
  - individuals found on genetic testing to carry a pathogenic APC mutation
  - first-degree relatives of patients with FAP or AFAP in whom genetic testing has been declined or is not possible because the family mutation has not been identified.

Surveillance should commence from age 10 to 15 years or earlier if there are gastrointestinal symptoms (Robays and Poppe, 2014). In families with classical FAP, flexible sigmoidoscopy is adequate since adenomas occur simultaneously throughout the colorectum (Syngal et al., 2015; Stoffel et al., 2015; Robays and Poppe, 2014). Once an adenoma is identified, annual colonoscopy should be performed until colectomy is undertaken. In AFAP, surveillance should be by colonoscopy since the first adenomas may only be present in the proximal colon but surveillance can be delayed until 18 years of age (Syngal et al., 2015; Cancer Institute NSW 2016; Robays and Poppe, 2014).

Back to top

### 9.2.2.3 Surgical management

In classical FAP, colectomy is required to prevent colorectal cancer and is usually performed between the ages of 15 and 25, once adenomas have been observed.[1][6] The exact timing of surgery and the choice between a total colectomy with an ileorectal anastomosis or a proctocolectomy with an ileal pouch-anal anastomosis (IPAA) depends on many factors including severity of polyposis in the rectum, risk of desmoid tumours and the desire to preserve fecundity and urinary, sexual and bowel function.[2][6]

**Practice point**

- Total colectomy and ileorectal anastomosis should be reserved for patients with rectal adenomas considered easily controllable by endoscopy and < 1000 colonic adenomas. Proctocolectomy with a permanent ileostomy is rarely needed (Syngal et al., 2015). Annual surveillance of the residual rectum or ileal pouch is required following colectomy (Cancer Institute NSW 2016).
- Some patients with AFAP can be managed with colonoscopic polypectomy at one- to two-yearly intervals (Syngal et al., 2015; Balmaña et al., 2013). If surgery is required due to a high number of adenomas, colectomy with ileorectal anastomosis can nearly always be performed, because of the small number of adenomas in the rectum (Syngal et al., 2015; Balmaña et al., 2013)

Back to top

### 9.2.2.4 Chemoprevention

There is no evidence that risk reducing medication such as non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) prevent colorectal cancer in FAP.[1] However, NSAIDs are well documented to reduce adenoma numbers in FAP, and all CRCs in FAP arise from adenomas. Where surgery is inappropriate (e.g. presenting also with complex intra-abdominal desmoid disease or adenomas in pouches) an NSAID (e.g. sulindac) is recommended. Refer to the Primary Prevention Part 2: Chemopreventive candidate agents chapter.

Next section: MUTYH associated polyposis

Back to top

## 9.2.3 References

1. ↑ 1.0 1.1 1.2 1.3 1.4 1.5 1.6 Cancer Institute NSW. *eviQ Cancer Genetics Referral Guidelines for Colorectal Cancer or Polyposis Risk Assessment and Consideration of Genetic Testing.* [homepage on the internet] Sydney; 2016 [cited 2016 Sep 6]. Available from: https://www.eviq.org.au/Category/tabid/65/categoryid/6/Default.aspx.
2. ↑ 2.0 2.1 2.2 2.3 2.4 Syngal S, Brand RE, Church JM, Giardiello FM, Hampel HL, Burt RW, et al. *ACG clinical guideline: Genetic testing and management of hereditary gastrointestinal cancer syndromes.* Am J Gastroenterol 2015 Feb;110(2):223-62; quiz 263 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25645574.
3. ↑ 3.0 3.1 Stoffel EM, Mangu PB, Gruber SB, Hamilton SR, Kalady MF, Lau MW, et al 2015. *Hereditary colorectal cancer syndromes: American Society of Clinical Oncology Clinical Practice Guideline endorsement of the familial risk-colorectal cancer: European Society for Medical Oncology Clinical Practice Guidelines.* Journal of Clinical Oncology 2015;33: 209-17 Available from: http://jco.ascopubs.org/content/early/2014/12/01/JCO.2014.58.1322.full.pdf.

4. ↑ Barrow P, Khan M, Lalloo F, Evans DG, Hill J. *Systematic review of the impact of registration and screening on colorectal cancer incidence and mortality in familial adenomatous polyposis and Lynch syndrome.* Br J Surg 2013 Dec;100(13):1719-31 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24227356.
5. ↑ Robays J, Poppe B. *Oncogenetic testing for Lynch syndrome and familial adenomatous polyposis.* Brussels: Belgian Health Care Knowledge Centre (KCE); 2014.
6. ↑ [6.0] [6.1] [6.2] Balmaña J, Balaguer F, Cervantes A, Arnold D, ESMO Guidelines Working Group.. *Familial risk-colorectal cancer: ESMO Clinical Practice Guidelines.* Ann Oncol 2013 Oct;24 Suppl 6:vi73-80 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23813931.

Back to top

# 9.3 MUTYH associated polyposis

**Contents**



## 9.3.1 Background

MUTYH-associated polyposis is a recessively inherited predisposition to colorectal polyps and early onset colorectal cancer due to biallelic mutations in the MUTYH gene. Germline MUTYH mutations predispose to developing somatic APC mutations and the KRAS Gly12Cys 'hotspot' mutation in the gastrointestinal tract. Affected individuals commonly have between 20 and 100 adenomas but may have > 100.[1][2]

Back to top

## 9.3.2 Management

No systematic reviews on this topic were undertaken in the development of this section. The guidance on MUTH-associated polyposis is based on recent international guidelines.[1][3][4][2] (See Guidelines Development for more information).

Back to top

### 9.3.2.1 Genetic testing

**Practice point**

- Referral to a genetics service for germline genetic testing for mutations in MUTYH is indicated for persons with a cumulative count of ≥ 20 colorectal adenomas at any age (Syngal et al., 2015). It is also indicated for siblings of a MUTYH biallelic mutation carrier (Syngal et al., 2015).

Testing may also be considered in patients with ≥ 10 adenomas and any of the following (Syngal et al., 2015) :

- age under 50
- synchronous colorectal cancer
- serrated polyposis
- family history suggestive of recessive inheritance (e.g. consanguinity in parents or siblings with documented adenomatous polyposis or colorectal cancer).

Back to top

### 9.3.2.2 Surveillance and management

**Practice point**

Biallelic mutation carriers should have colonoscopy every 2 years starting at age 18 to 20 years(Cancer Institute NSW, 2016; Robays and Poppe, 2014; Balmaña et al., 2013). If polyps are detected, annual colonoscopy may be required to control the polyp burden (Cancer Institute NSW, 2016). If polyps cannot be easily managed colonoscopically, a colectomy with ileorectal anastomosis should be considered and discussed with the patient (Cancer Institute NSW, 2016; Balmaña et al., 2013) The residual rectum requires annual surveillance.

Monoallelic *MUTYH* mutations are present in 1 to 2% of the population and may confer, on average, a 1.5- to 2-fold increase in the risk of colorectal cancer.[1] There is currently no consensus regarding surveillance and management, but an option may be to offer colonoscopy 5 yearly from 10 years younger than the earliest cancer diagnosis in the family.[1][2]

Next section: lynch syndrome

Back to top

## 9.3.3 References

1. ↑ [1.0] [1.1] [1.2] [1.3] Syngal S, Brand RE, Church JM, Giardiello FM, Hampel HL, Burt RW, et al. *ACG clinical guideline: Genetic testing and management of hereditary gastrointestinal cancer syndromes.* Am J Gastroenterol 2015 Feb;110(2):223-62; quiz 263 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25645574.
2. ↑ [2.0] [2.1] [2.2] Balmaña J, Balaguer F, Cervantes A, Arnold D, ESMO Guidelines Working Group.. *Familial risk-colorectal cancer: ESMO Clinical Practice Guidelines.* Ann Oncol 2013 Oct;24 Suppl 6:vi73-80 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23813931.
3. ↑ Cancer Institute NSW. *eviQ Cancer Genetics Referral Guidelines for Colorectal Cancer or Polyposis Risk Assessment and Consideration of Genetic Testing.* [homepage on the internet] Sydney; 2016 [cited 2016 Sep 6]. Available from: https://www.eviq.org.au/Category/tabid/65/categoryid/6/Default.aspx.
4. ↑ Robays J, Poppe B. *Oncogenetic testing for Lynch syndrome and familial adenomatous polyposis.* Brussels: Belgian Health Care Knowledge Centre (KCE); 2014.

Back to top

# 9.4 Lynch syndrome

**Contents**

## 9.4.1 Background

Lynch syndrome (LS), previously called hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer (HNPCC), is an autosomal dominant condition caused by germline mutations in any one of the mismatch repair genes (MSH2, MLH1, MSH6, PMS2) or loss of expression of MSH2 due to deletion in the nearby EPCAM gene. It is associated with a high risk of early onset colorectal cancer, particularly in the proximal colon. The lifetime risk of some extracolonic cancers is also elevated and is estimated to be 33% for endometrial cancer, 9% for ovarian cancer, 6% for gastric cancer and < 3% for urothelial and small intestinal cancer.[1]

LS is relatively common and is thought to account for approximately 2–3% of all colorectal cancers.[2][3] The risk estimates for colorectal cancer by age 70 years are 31–47% for MLH1 and MSH2 mutation carriers.[4] The risk of colorectal cancer is less in carriers of other mutations and risk estimates range from 10 to 22% for MSH6 mutation carriers and 15 to 20% for PMS2 mutation carriers.[1]

The incidence of adenomas is not high but those that do arise have a high risk of rapidly progressing to malignancy due to loss of the remaining wild type allele of the mutated mismatch repair gene. The cancers thus have mismatch repair deficiency leading to characteristic microsatellite instability (MSI) in the DNA of the cancer cells. The mutated protein degrades and shows loss of expression of one or more of the mismatch repair protein on immunohistochemistry (IHC). The case of MSH2 protein expression loss is usually associated with the loss of expression of the binding partner MSH6 protein as the unbound protein degrades. Similarly, MLH1 protein expression loss usually leads to loss of expression of the PMS2 protein. Isolated loss of MSH6 or PMS2 protein expression suggests the defect is in the affected gene.

Results of IHC and MSI testing need to be interpreted with the knowledge that MLH1 can be silenced by somatic methylation in the MLH1 promoter region in sporadic colorectal cancers. These cancers show high levels of MSI and loss of MLH1 and PMS2 expression on IHC. They typically occur in the proximal colon of older females without a family history of colorectal cancer. They commonly have a V600E mutation of the BRAF oncogene whereas BRAF mutation is rare in LS cancers.

Back to top

## 9.4.2 Identification of Lynch Syndrome

Identification of LS has traditionally relied on multiple factors, including recognition of typical features and appropriate testing and/or referral to a genetics provider. Although there are some histological features within individual tumours that can indicate a likelihood of MMR deficit, and other clues, such as location of the tumour (e.g. proximal colon cancer), Lynch syndrome-associated colon cancers are not necessarily distinguishable from sporadic colon cancers.[5] Systematic collection and assessment of family history are highly variable among health care providers, and rarely is this information readily available to pathologists who may recognize histological features of LS. Given these limitations and compelling reasons to identify these individuals and their at-risk family members, universal screening has been proposed as a way to adequately identify individuals with LS.

Back to top

### 9.4.2.1 Universal testing of colorectal cancers

**Practice point**

- To increase the rate of diagnosis, universal testing of all colorectal cancers (or at least all colorectal cancers diagnosed before age 70 years) is recommended, regardless of family history (Robays and Poppe, 2014; Ladabaum et al., 2015; Giardiello et al., 2014; Rubenstein et al., 2015).

There is no recommendation whether universal testing be done by IHC or MSI testing as the sensitivity and specificity of the tests are very similar. IHC is more widely available and has the advantage of indicating which gene is abnormal. However, appropriate training and experience of pathologists is required for accurate results. [6]

Implementation of universal testing requires an effective multidisciplinary programme with sufficient resources to follow-up positive results.[3] Most cancers demonstrating MSI or loss of *MLH1* and *PMS2* on IHC, will be sporadic cancers with somatic methylation and silencing of *MLH1*. It is recommended that cancers with loss of *MLH1* be tested for *BRAF* mutation or *MLH1* promoter hypermethylation before considering germline mutation testing.[7][2][3][6] This makes testing more cost effective and reduces unnecessary anxiety amongst affected individuals. However, neither test is completely sensitive or specific and the result of methylation testing can depend on the technique used. A recent study reported *MLH1* hypermethylation in 16% of patients with LS and 92% of patients with *BRAF* mutant cancer presumed to be sporadic. [2]

IHC in adenomas is of limited benefit to identify LS as a normal IHC result does not exclude LS.

**Practice point**

- All colorectal cancers diagnosed before age 70 years should be tested for Lynch syndrome.
- Testing adenomas should probably be restricted to individuals in a clinically suspected Lynch syndrome family where there is no appropriate cancer tissue available for IHC testing. IHC in serrated polyps has no role to identify Lynch syndrome.

Back to top

### 9.4.2.2 Use of risk prediction models

In individuals without a personal history of colorectal cancer but with a family history suggestive of LS, it is recommended that a risk prediction model be used to guide referral for further assessment. [7][2][3][6] Currently available appropriate risk prediction models are PREMM or MMRpro. The initial approach to further assessment would to perform IHC or MSI testing on the cancer of an affected relative if this is possible to arrange.

Back to top

## 9.4.3 Management

A systematic review of aspirin in the prevention of colorectal cancer, including Lynch syndrome-associated cancers, was undertaken in the preparation of this guideline. The results are summarised in Primary prevention (Part 2): Chemopreventive candidate agents.

No systematic reviews on testing or surgical management of LS were undertaken in the development of this section. The guidance on LS is based on recent international guidelines.[1][7][2][3][4][6][8]

Back to top

### 9.4.3.1 Genetic testing

IHC of cancer tissue from an affected family member can be used to guide germline genetic testing of mismatch repair genes. The probability of identifying a pathogenic germline mutation is shown in Table 6.2.[1]

Back to top

#### 9.4.3.1.1 Table 6.2 Probability of identifying a pathogenic germline mutation

| Finding | Probability |
|---|---|
| Loss of *MSH2* and *MSH6* | *MSH2* 67% |
| Loss of *MLH1* and *PMS2* with no *BRAF* mutation and/or no *MLH1* hypermethylation | *MLH1* 33% |
| Loss of *MSH6* only | *MSH6* 24% |
| Loss of *PMS2* only | *PMS2* 62% |

Source: eviQ Cancer Genetics Referral Guidelines for Colorectal Cancer or Polyposis Risk Assessment and Consideration of Genetic Testing (2016).[1]

If no germline mutation or a variant of unknown significance is found, LS cannot be excluded.[3] These cases are sometimes referred to as Lynch-like syndrome. Some may be due to biallelic somatic mutations and in future these may be identified on tumour testing and used to exclude LS.[9] However others, particularly those with a suggestive family history, are most likely due to germline mutations not yet detectable by currently available techniques. These families should be managed clinically according to LS guidelines and re-investigated as genetic techniques advance.

Finding a pathogenic germline mutation confirms the diagnosis and allows relatives to be tested with a very high degree of accuracy.

Back to top

### 9.4.3.2 Surveillance

Surveillance colonoscopy every 1 to 2 years is recommended for individuals carrying a germline mutation or clinically at risk of carrying a mutation but in whom definitive testing is not possible.[1][7][2][3][6] It should commence at age 25 or 5 years younger than the youngest affected family member if < 30 years.[1] Annual surveillance is preferred in known mutation carriers.[3] The risk of colorectal cancer is lower and the age of diagnosis is later in carriers of MSH6 or PMS2 mutations and surveillance starting at age 30 years could be considered,[1][3] although there is no data to directly guide this.[2][6]

Back to top

### 9.4.3.3 Surgical management

In patients with colorectal cancer and known LS the choice of procedure should be individualised according to the site and number of tumour(s), age at diagnosis, risk of surgical morbidity, patient comorbidities and their wishes. If a segmental (partial) colectomy is performed there is a high (16–19%) 10-year cumulative risk of metachronous colorectal cancer, even with colonoscopic surveillance.[3][8] This risk is substantially reduced by performing an extended resection (either a subtotal colectomy with an ileosigmoid anastomosis or a total colectomy with an ileorectal anastomosis) and is generally favoured.[3][8] Functional outcome is however better after segmental colectomy and this procedure can still be considered in older patients.[3][8] Annual surveillance is required for the residual colorectum.

For patients with LS and rectal cancer, either a proctectomy and coloanal anastomosis or a total proctocolectomy and IPAA can be performed. A restorative proctocolectomy and IPAA will reduce the risk of metachronous cancer however is associated with more functional problems.[3][8] Ongoing surveillance of the pouch-anal anastomosis is required.

In order to plan best surgical management it is important to perform IHC on pre-operative biopsy specimens from patients likely to have LS. [3]

Back to top

### 9.4.3.4 Chemoprevention

Systematic review evidence on the effectiveness of aspirin in the prevention of colorectal cancer in people with LS is summarised in Primary prevention (Part 2): Chemopreventive candidate agents.

The considerations in making the LS recommendation, and health system implications, are described in Primary prevention (Part 2): Chemopreventive candidate agents.

Regular colonoscopy must continue for patients taking aspirin.

Next section: Peutz-Jeghers syndrome

Back to top

## 9.4.4 References

1. ↑ 1.0 1.1 1.2 1.3 1.4 1.5 1.6 1.7 Cancer Institute NSW. *eviQ Cancer Genetics Referral Guidelines for Colorectal Cancer or Polyposis Risk Assessment and Consideration of Genetic Testing.* [homepage on the internet] Sydney; 2016 [cited 2016 Sep 6]. Available from: https://www.eviq.org.au/Category/tabid/65/categoryid/6/Default.aspx.
2. ↑ 2.0 2.1 2.2 2.3 2.4 2.5 2.6 Ladabaum U, Ford JM, Martel M, Barkun AN. *American Gastroenterological Association Technical Review on the Diagnosis and Management of Lynch Syndrome.* Gastroenterology 2015 Sep;149(3):783-813.e20 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26226576.
3. ↑ 3.00 3.01 3.02 3.03 3.04 3.05 3.06 3.07 3.08 3.09 3.10 3.11 3.12 3.13 Giardiello FM, Allen JI, Axilbund JE, Boland CR, Burke CA, Burt RW, et al. *Guidelines on genetic evaluation and management of Lynch syndrome: a consensus statement by the US Multi-Society Task Force on Colorectal Cancer.* Dis Colon Rectum 2014 Aug;57(8):1025-48 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25003300.
4. ↑ 4.0 4.1 Jenkins MA, Dowty JG, Ait Ouakrim D, Mathews JD, Hopper JL, Drouet Y et al. *Short-term risk of colorectal cancer in individuals with lynch syndrome: a meta-analysis.* Journal of Clinical Oncology 2015;; 33: 326-31. Available from: http://jco.ascopubs.org/content/early/2014/12/22/JCO.2014.55.8536.short.
5. ↑ Hampel H, Frankel WL, Martin E, Arnold M, Khanduja K, Kuebler P, et al. *Feasibility of screening for Lynch syndrome among patients with colorectal cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2008 Dec 10;26(35):5783-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18809606.
6. ↑ 6.0 6.1 6.2 6.3 6.4 6.5 Rubenstein JH, Enns R, Heidelbaugh J, Barkun A, Clinical Guidelines Committee. *American Gastroenterological Association Institute Guideline on the Diagnosis and Management of Lynch Syndrome.* Gastroenterology 2015 Sep;149(3):777-82; quiz e16-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26226577.
7. ↑ 7.0 7.1 7.2 7.3 Robays J, Poppe B. *Oncogenetic testing for Lynch syndrome and familial adenomatous polyposis.* Brussels: Belgian Health Care Knowledge Centre (KCE); 2014.
8. ↑ 8.0 8.1 8.2 8.3 8.4 Rodriguez-Bigas MA, Möeslein G. *Surgical treatment of hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer (HNPCC, Lynch syndrome).* Fam Cancer 2013 Jun;12(2):295-300 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23508345.

9. ↑ Haraldsdottir S, Hampel H, Tomsic J, Frankel WL, Pearlman R, de la Chapelle A, et al. *Colon and endometrial cancers with mismatch repair deficiency can arise from somatic, rather than germline, mutations.* Gastroenterology 2014 Dec;147(6):1308-1316.e1 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25194673.

Back to top

# 9.5 Peutz-Jeghers syndrome

**Contents**



## 9.5.1 Background

Peutz-Jeghers syndrome is an autosomal dominant disorder in which hamartomatous polyps can occur throughout the gastrointestinal tract. These polyps are histologically distinctive for Peutz-Jeghers syndrome and most patients also have characteristic mucocutaneous pigmentation. There is an elevated risk of many cancers including a 39% lifetime risk of colorectal cancer.[1][2] In addition, there is a risk of small bowel intussusception.

The lifetime risk of all gastrointestinal cancers is estimated to be 57% with a 39% risk of colorectal cancer included in this. The risk of breast cancer is 45% and gynaecological cancer 18% and surveillance for these cancers is recommended. There is also a 11–26% lifetime risk of pancreatic cancer. [2]

Back to top

## 9.5.2 Management

No systematic reviews on this topic were undertaken in the development of this section. The guidance on Peutz-Jeghers syndrome is based on recent international guidelines.[1][2] See Guidelines Development for more information.

Back to top

### 9.5.2.1 Screening

Video capsule endoscopy or magnetic resonance enterography should be used to screen for small intestinal polyps from age 8–10 years or earlier if there are symptoms.[1][2] It should be repeated at least 3 times yearly.

Back to top

### 9.5.2.2 Genetic testing

Genetic testing is indicated to confirm the diagnosis and in relatives of known mutation carriers. Over 90% of patients meeting the clinical criteria for Peutz-Jeghers syndrome have an identifiable pathogenic mutation in the *STK11* gene[2] In 38–50% of cases pathogenic mutations are de novo rather than inherited.[2]. Many are deletions which are not picked up on sequencing, this requiring MLPA.

Back to top

### 9.5.2.3 Surveillance

Colonoscopy should be performed at age 8 years and then 3 yearly from age 18.[1]

Next section: Juvenile polyposis syndrome

Back to top

## 9.5.3 References

1. ↑ 1.0 1.1 1.2 1.3 Syngal S, Brand RE, Church JM, Giardiello FM, Hampel HL, Burt RW, et al. *ACG clinical guideline: Genetic testing and management of hereditary gastrointestinal cancer syndromes.* Am J Gastroenterol 2015 Feb;110(2):223-62; quiz 263 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25645574.
2. ↑ 2.0 2.1 2.2 2.3 2.4 2.5 Cancer Institute NSW. *eviQ Cancer Genetics Referral Guidelines for Colorectal Cancer or Polyposis Risk Assessment and Consideration of Genetic Testing.* [homepage on the internet] Sydney; 2016 [cited 2016 Sep 6]. Available from: https://www.eviq.org.au/Category/tabid/65/categoryid/6/Default.aspx.

Back to top

# 9.6 Juvenile polyposis syndrome

**Contents**



# 9.6.1 Background

Juvenile polyposis syndrome is an autosomal dominant disorder in which multiple hamartomatous polyps with histology characteristic of juvenile polyps occur in the gastrointestinal tract. In distinction from isolated sporadic juvenile polyps, the generally accepted clinical criteria are at least 5 juvenile polyps in the colorectum or juvenile polyps elsewhere in the gastrointestinal tract.[1] There is a 30–40% lifetime risk of colorectal cancer and an increased risk of other gastrointestinal cancers[2]. There is no excess risk of extra-gastrointestinal cancers.

Back to top

# 9.6.2 Management

No systematic reviews on this topic were undertaken in the development of this section. The guidance on juvenile polyposis syndrome is based on recent international guidelines.[1][2] See Guidelines Development for more information.

Back to top

## 9.6.2.1 Genetic testing

Genetic testing is indicated to confirm the diagnosis and in relatives of known mutation carriers. Up to 60% of individuals with clinical juvenile polyposis syndrome have identifiable pathogenic mutations in *SMAD4* or *BMPR1A*.[1] In individuals with BMPR1A mutations polyps of mixed morphology can be present in addition to juvenile polyps.

Back to top

## 9.6.2.2 Surveillance

**Practice point**

In patients with a diagnosis of juvenile polyposis syndrome, colonoscopy should commence at age 12–15 or earlier if symptoms occur (Syngal et al., 2015; Cancer Institute NSW, 2016). It should be repeated every 1 to 3 years depending on polyp burden. Colectomy is indicated if polyps cannot be managed endoscopically (Syngal et al., 2015; Cancer Institute NSW, 2016).

Next section: serrated polyposis syndrome

Back to top

## 9.6.3 References

1. ↑ 1.0 1.1 1.2 Syngal S, Brand RE, Church JM, Giardiello FM, Hampel HL, Burt RW, et al. *ACG clinical guideline: Genetic testing and management of hereditary gastrointestinal cancer syndromes.* Am J Gastroenterol 2015 Feb;110(2):223-62; quiz 263 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25645574.
2. ↑ 2.0 2.1 Cancer Institute NSW. *eviQ Cancer Genetics Referral Guidelines for Colorectal Cancer or Polyposis Risk Assessment and Consideration of Genetic Testing.* [homepage on the internet] Sydney; 2016 [cited 2016 Sep 6]. Available from: https://www.eviq.org.au/Category/tabid/65/categoryid/6/Default.aspx.

Back to top

# 9.7 Serrated polyposis syndrome

**Contents**



## 9.7.1 Background

The World Health Organization (WHO) defines serrated polyposis syndrome as the presence of any of the following:[1][2]

1. at least 5 serrated polyps proximal to the sigmoid colon, with ≥ 2 of these being > 10 mm
2. any number of serrated polyps proximal to the sigmoid colon in an individual who has a first-degree relative with serrated polyposis syndrome
3. > 20 serrated polyps of any size, but distributed throughout the colon.

The polyp count is usually interpreted as being cumulative. This definition is based on expert opinion and may be revised in future when the aetiology is better understood. Serrated polyposis syndrome was originally considered rare but with improved endoscopic detection of serrated polyps, it is becoming more common for an individual to meet this definition.[1] Often some conventional adenomas are also present. The prevalence of colorectal cancer at the time of diagnosis is high with estimates between 25% and 40%.[2] However, once a diagnosis is made and appropriate colonoscopic surveillance is being undertaken, the risk is lower with an estimate of 1.9% over 5 years.[3]

Back to top

## 9.7.2 Management

No systematic reviews on this topic were undertaken in the development of this section. The guidance on serrated polyposis syndrome is based on recent international guidelines.[1][2][4][3] See Guidelines Development for more information.

Back to top

### 9.7.2.1 Genetic testing

Although there is often a family history of colorectal cancer, it is uncommon for serrated polyposis syndrome to occur in more than one family member.[2] The genetic cause of serrated polyposis syndrome has not been established and genetic testing is not available.

Back to top

### 9.7.2.2 Surveillance and surgical management

**Practice point**

- Expert opinion is that colonoscopy should be performed every 1 to 3 years with the aim to remove all polyps ≥ 5mm. If the number and size of polyps make it impossible to achieve this, colectomy and ileorectal anastomosis should be considered.(Syngal S, Brand RE, Church JM, Giardiello FM, Hampel HL, Burt RW, et al 2015)(Cancer Institute NSW 2016)

The type of surgical procedure should be individualised according to the distribution of polyps and patient factors, but most patients will be adequately managed by either a segmental (partial) resection or extended resection (total colectomy with an ileorectal anastomosis). It is reasonable to offer colonoscopic surveillance every 5 years to first degree relatives of serrated polyposis syndrome patients, given their increased risk of colorectal cancer.[1]

Next section: supplement state and territory-based familial cancer registries

Back to top

## 9.7.3 References

1. ↑ 1.0 1.1 1.2 1.3 Syngal S, Brand RE, Church JM, Giardiello FM, Hampel HL, Burt RW, et al. *ACG clinical guideline: Genetic testing and management of hereditary gastrointestinal cancer syndromes.* Am J Gastroenterol 2015 Feb;110(2):223-62; quiz 263 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25645574.
2. ↑ 2.0 2.1 2.2 2.3 Cancer Institute NSW. *eviQ Cancer Genetics Referral Guidelines for Colorectal Cancer or Polyposis Risk Assessment and Consideration of Genetic Testing.* [homepage on the internet] Sydney; 2016 [cited 2016 Sep 6]. Available from: https://www.eviq.org.au/Category/tabid/65/categoryid/6/Default.aspx.
3. ↑ 3.0 3.1 Carballal S, Rodríguez-Alcalde D, Moreira L, Hernández L, Rodríguez L, Rodríguez-Moranta F, et al. *Colorectal cancer risk factors in patients with serrated polyposis syndrome: a large multicentre study.* Gut 2015 Aug 11 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26264224.
4. ↑ Robays J, Poppe B. *Oncogenetic testing for Lynch syndrome and familial adenomatous polyposis.* Brussels: Belgian Health Care Knowledge Centre (KCE); 2014.

Back to top

# 9.8 Supplement. State- and territory-based familial cancer registries

## Supplement\. state\- and territory\-based familial cancer registers

| State/Territory | Registry details |
|---|---|
| Australian Capital Territory and New South Wales | NSW & ACT Hereditary Cancer Registry (Cancer Institute NSW)<br>Website: https://www.cancerinstitute.org.au/data-research/data-held-by-cinsw/nsw-and-act-hereditary-cancer-registry<br>Email: HCR@cancerinstitute.org.au<br>Phone: 02 8374 3698 or 1800 505 644<br>Fax: 02 8374 3644 |
| Northern Territory | Unknown |
| | Queensland Familial Cancer Registry (QFCR) |

| State/Territory | Registry details |
|---|---|
| Queensland | Website: https://www.health.qld.gov.au/ghq/qfbcr/default.asp<br>Phone: 07 3646 1686<br>Fax: 07 3646 1987 |
| South Australia | Unknown |
| Tasmania | Tasmanian Cancer Registry<br>Website: https://secure.utas.edu.au/menzies/research/research-centres/tasmanian-cancer-registry<br>Email: TCR@menzies.utas.edu.au<br>Telephone: +61 3 6226 7757<br>Fax: 03 6226 7755 |
| Victoria | The Victorian Family Cancer Register ceased to operate after 30 June 2016. Services are now provided through family cancer centres. |
| Western Australia | Familial Cancer Registry (Genetic Services of Western Australia)<br>Email: gswa@health.wa.gov.au<br>Phone: 08 9340 1525<br>King Edward Memorial Hospital<br>Level 4, Agnes Walsh House,<br>374 Bagot Road, Subiaco WA 6008 |

Back to top

# 10 Imaging a patient with a diagnosis of CRC

## Chapter subsections

Please see sections:

- Colon cancer
- Rectal cancer

- Addenda: rectal MRI cancer report

# 10.1 Colon cancer

No systematic review has been performed on this topic. The guidance below is based on current international guidelines and consensus statements considered to be relevant to Australian practice.

**Contents**



## 10.1.1 Background

Imaging is an important part of staging patients with colon cancer.

Staging investigations should preferentially be performed pre-operatively in patients diagnosed with a colon cancer at colonoscopy or computed tomography (CT) colonography. Some patients may have a colon cancer diagnosed by CT scan if they present emergently with obstruction. Others may require postoperative staging investigations after an emergency operation.

Imaging should be reported in conjunction with the patient's clinical circumstances and previous imaging, to prevent incorrect attribution of lesions as metastases. Imaging should be reviewed at the colorectal multidisciplinary team meeting.[1][2]

Back to top

## 10.1.2 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews were undertaken for this topic. Practice points were based on selected evidence and guidelines. Please see Guidelines Development for more information.

## 10.1.3 Initial staging investigations

CT of the chest, abdomen and pelvis is the recommended imaging investigation to stage colon cancer.[1][3][4]

### 10.1.3.1 CT of chest, abdomen and pelvis

#### 10.1.3.1.1 Protocol

The protocol should involve a post-intravenous contrast-enhanced CT of the chest, abdomen and pelvis, with oral contrast.[1][3][4]

#### 10.1.3.1.2 Report

The report should identify and describe all of the following:

- location, size and local extent of the primary lesion
- invasion into adjacent structures which may affect surgical planning
- complications such as local perforation and bowel obstruction
- locoregional lymph nodes (pericolic and local drainage)
- metastatic lymph nodes (retroperitoneal, pelvic and inguinal)
- visceral (lung and liver) and peritoneal metastatic disease.

### 10.1.3.2 Alternative modalities

If a patient cannot have intravenous contrast, any of the following staging investigations may be used:

- non-contrast CT of the chest, abdomen and pelvis, plus ultrasound of the liver
- non-contrast CT chest, abdomen and pelvis, plus magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) of the liver
- MRI of the abdomen and pelvis.

Back to top

## 10.1.4 Further staging investigations

**Practice point**

CT colonoscopy should be considered for a patient with colon cancer if it has not been possible to view the entire colon by colonoscopy due to the risk of synchronous tumours. (New Zealand Guidelines Group 2011.)

MRI of the liver is not part of routine pre-operative staging of colorectal cancer and is not funded by the Medicare Benefits Scheme (MBS). If there is metastatic disease confined to the liver on CT scan, an MRI of the liver can be considered to assess suitability for surgical resection.[4] Many Australian hepatobiliary surgeons will order a post-contrast MRI of the liver, due to its proven increased sensitivity for small liver metastases, compared with CT and positron emission tomography-CT (PET-CT).[5][6] This is particularly important in cases where the background liver parenchyma is abnormal, the patient has recently received chemotherapy, or when a patient cannot have iodinated contrast.

PET-CT imaging is not routinely indicated, nor MBS funded, for pre-operative staging of colorectal cancer. It is recommended to detect additional metastases in patients with colorectal cancer who have potentially resectable lung and liver metastases[3] and is MBS funded for suspected residual, metastatic or recurrent colorectal cancer in a patient for whom active therapy is being considered.

**Practice point**

If CT shows metastatic disease confined to the liver, MRI of the liver can be considered to assess for resectability, particularly if the background liver parenchyma is abnormal, the patient has recently received chemotherapy, or when a patient cannot have iodinated contrast.

**Practice point**

For patients with colorectal cancer who have potentially resectable metastatic disease, PET-CT is recommended to detect additional metastases.

Back to top

## 10.1.5 Surveillance imaging

There is no standardised protocol in Australia for surveillance imaging. There is significant evidence from clinical trials to support integration of imaging into routine follow-up, in addition to clinical follow-up including liver function tests and carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) measurement. Any follow up imaging should be compared with previous imaging.

International recommendations for surveillance protocols vary. The most frequently followed guidelines in Australia are the American Society of Clinical Oncology (ASCO) and European Society of Medical Oncology (ESMO) guidelines.[7][8]

ASCO guidelines recommend that, for those colon and rectal cancer patients at higher risk of recurrence and where curative intent was an option, CT imaging of the chest and abdomen should be undertaken annually for 3 years. A pelvic CT should be considered for rectal cancer surveillance, especially for those who had not received radiotherapy.[7]

ESMO guidelines recommend that a CT scan of chest and abdomen every 6–12 months for the first 3 years be considered in patients who are at higher risk of recurrence. Contrast-enhanced ultrasound (CEUS) could substitute for abdominal CT scan. Other radiological examinations are of unproven benefit and must be restricted to patients with suspicious symptoms.[8]

Table 7.1 shows the surveillance schedule proposed by an ESMO consensus conference,[9] based on ASCO and European guidelines. Twelve-monthly scanning would be more typical in stage II and III surveillance, and 6-monthly scanning for resected stage IV disease based on higher risk of recurrence.

### 10.1.5.1 Table 7.1 CAP surveillance schedule for high-risk colorectal cancer proposed by ESMO

| **Stage** | **Time after surgery or adjuvant treatment (months)** | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | 6 | 12 | 18 | 24 | 30 | 36 |
| Stage II–III | | x | | x | | x |
| Stage IV | x | x | x | x | x | x |

Adapted from Schmoll et al 2012[9]

CAP: CT of chest, abdomen and pelvis

**Practice point**

For patients with stage II and III disease who have undergone initial surgery or adjuvant treatment, a suitable approach to imaging surveillance might involve 12-monthly CT of chest, abdomen and pelvis.

**Practice point**

For patients with stage IV disease who have undergone a resection procedure with curative intent, a suitable approach to imaging surveillance might involve CT of chest, abdomen and pelvis every 6 months.

Next section: imaging rectal cancer

Back to top

## 10.1.6 References

1. ↑ [1.0] [1.1] [1.2] National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. *Colorectal cancer: The Diagnosis and Management of colorectal cancer.* United Kingdom: National Institute for Health and Care Excellence; 2014.
2. ↑ New Zealand Guidelines Group. *Colorectal cancer: Management of Early Colorectal Cancer.* Wellington: Ministry of Health; 2011.
3. ↑ [3.0] [3.1] [3.2] National Comprehensive Cancer Network. *NCCN Guidelines: Colon Cancer.* National Comprehensive Cancer Network; 2016.
4. ↑ [4.0] [4.1] [4.2] Radiologists TRCo. *Recommendations for cross-sectional imaging in cancer management - colon, rectum and anal cancer.* Radiologists TRCo; 2014.
5. ↑ Vreugdenburg TD, Ma N, Duncan JK, Riitano D, Cameron AL, Maddern GJ. *Comparative diagnostic accuracy of hepatocyte-specific gadoxetic acid (Gd-EOB-DTPA) enhanced MR imaging and contrast enhanced CT for the detection of liver metastases: a systematic review and meta-analysis.* Int J Colorectal Dis 2016 Nov;31(11):1739-1749 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27682648.
6. ↑ National Collaborating Centre for Cancer. *The Diagnosis and Management of Colorectal Cancer - Evidence review United Kingdom: National Institute for Health and Care Excellence; 2011.*;.
7. ↑ [7.0] [7.1] Meyerhardt JA, Mangu PB, Flynn PJ, Korde L, Loprinzi CL, Minsky BD, et al. *Follow-up care, surveillance protocol, and secondary prevention measures for survivors of colorectal cancer: American Society of Clinical Oncology clinical practice guideline endorsement.* J Clin Oncol 2013 Dec 10;31(35): 4465-70 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24220554.
8. ↑ [8.0] [8.1] Labianca R, Nordlinger B, Beretta GD, Mosconi S, Mandalà M, Cervantes A, et al. *Early colon cancer: ESMO Clinical Practice Guidelines for diagnosis, treatment and follow-up.* Ann Oncol 2013 Oct;24 Suppl 6:vi64-72 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24078664.

9. ↑ 9.0 9.1 Schmoll HJ, Van Cutsem E, Stein A, Valentini V, Glimelius B, Haustermans K, et al. *ESMO Consensus Guidelines for management of patients with colon and rectal cancer. a personalized approach to clinical decision making.* Ann Oncol 2012 Oct;23(10):2479-516 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23012255.

Back to top

# 10.2 Rectal cancer

No systematic review has been performed for this section. The guidance below is based on current international guidelines and consensus statements considered to be relevant to Australian practice.

**Contents**

## 10.2.1 Background

Patients with a new diagnosis of rectal cancer are stratified into different treatment pathways, based upon patient factors and imaging findings after each case is discussed at a multidisciplinary team meeting. Adequate local staging with high-resolution magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) requires the scan to meet internationally recognised minimum standards for spatial resolution and scan technique.[1] A suboptimal MRI scan may compromise reporting accuracy and appropriate patient management.[2]

Back to top

## 10.2.2 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews were undertaken for this topic. Practice points were based on selected evidence and guidelines. Please see Guidelines Development for more information.

## 10.2.3 Initial staging investigations

### 10.2.3.1 High-resolution MRI

High-resolution MRI of the rectum is the recommended primary staging imaging investigation.[3][4][5][6][1][7]

#### 10.2.3.1.1 Protocol

Coverage: L5/S1 to anal verge

The tumour and all mesorectal lymph nodes at and above the level of the tumour should be covered by high-resolution (HR) sequences.

Low tumours within 5 cm of the anal verge need imaging angled to the anal canal to assess the relationship of tumour to the levator ani muscles and anal sphincter complex.

The protocol is set out in Table 7.2.

Notes:

- Anterior saturation bands should be used. Phase L-R can be useful in the axial images to reduce breathing artefact.
- An antiperistaltic agent (e.g hyoscine butylbromide) can be given to reduce artefact from adjacent bowel motion.
- Patients may fast, but there is no other bowel preparation required. The use of per-rectal fluid or gel is not recommended, as it can distort the rectal wall.[1]

#### 10.2.3.1.1.1 Table 7.2. Rectal cancer MRI protocol

| | Sequence | Notes |
|---|---|---|
| **All tumours** | Axial large FOV | To cover whole pelvis |
| | Sagittal T2 | Preferably a HR sequence (as defined in the row below) |
| | Axial oblique T2 HR | Angled to the centre of the tumour<br>Acquired voxel < 1.3 mm [5]<br>16–18 cm FOV, 3 mm slice thickness<br>0.6 mm x 0.6 mm in plane resolution^ |
| | Coronal oblique T2 HR† | |
| | Optional HR T2 oblique | Parallel to sacrum to cover mesorectum up to 5 cm above upper border of tumour if needed |
| **Low tumours‡** | Coronal oblique T2 HR | Angled to the anal canal<br>HR parameters as above |
| | Axial oblique T2 HR† | |

FOV: field of view; HR: high resolution

† optional but recommended

‡ within 5cm of anal verge

^ calculated using acquired matrix measurements. Interpolated or zipped measurements do not give the required spatial resolution.

Back to top

### 10.2.3.1.2 Report

Radiologists are expected to provide a quality report that includes all of:

- distance from anal verge (and distance from puborectalis sling for low tumours within 5 cm of anal verge)
- relationship to the peritoneal reflection
- T stage of the tumour, including the distance of spread in millimetres in the axial plane if it has spread beyond the muscularis propria
- any involvement of the peritoneal reflection or adjacent organs
- N stage of the tumour, using morphological criteria (irregularity of border and/or internal signal heterogeneity)
- presence or absence of extramural venous invasion (EMVI) and whether it is contiguous or non-contiguous
- tumour involving the potential circumferential resection margin (CRM), defined as tumour within 1 mm of the mesorectal fascia or inferior total mesorectal excision (TME) plane

- presence of involved pelvic sidewall lymph nodes outside the mesorectum.

A structured report template is preferred (see Appendix 1 for a recommended pro forma).[8] If free text is used, it should include all of the above information.

Back to top

**Practice point**

MRI of the rectum is the recommended staging investigation for rectal cancer.

**Practice point**

High-resolution sequences must be performed and must meet accepted criteria.

**Practice point**

Additional sequences coronal to the anal canal are required for low tumours (Table 12.2).

**Practice point**

Template reports are recommended, which include all of:

- Distance from anal verge (and puborectalis sling for low tumours)
- Relationship to the peritoneal reflection
- T stage including spread in mm beyond muscularis
- N stage and pelvic lymph nodes using morphological criteria
- EMVI status
- CRM status using 1mm as a cut-off distance.

Back to top

### 10.2.3.2 CT of chest, abdomen and pelvis

CT of the chest, abdomen and pelvis should be performed as part of pre-operative staging, to assess for more distant nodal and metastatic disease. This should not replace the MRI scan of the pelvis for local staging, unless MRI is contraindicated.[3]

#### 10.2.3.2.1 Protocol

Post intravenous contrast enhanced CT chest abdomen and pelvis with oral contrast.[3][6][7]

#### 10.2.3.2.2 Report

The staging report should identify and describe:

- the primary tumour (within limits of CT)
- metastatic lymph nodes
- visceral (lung, liver) and peritoneal metastatic disease.

#### 10.2.3.2.3 Alternative modalities

If a patient cannot have CT intravenous contrast, staging may be completed by either of the following:

- non-contrast CT of the chest and ultrasound of liver
- non-contrast CT of the chest and MRI of the liver.

Back to top

#### 10.2.3.2.4 Endorectal ultrasound

Endorectal ultrasound (ERUS) may be used to assess T1 and early T2 tumours in patients who may be appropriate for local resection techniques. However, it is not as accurate as MRI in detection of potential CRM involvement and should be performed in addition to a staging rectal MRI scan.[3][4][6]

### 10.2.3.3 Further staging investigations

As per colon cancer.

### 10.2.3.4 Restaging MRI following neoadjuvant therapy

The use of MRI scans following neoadjuvant treatment is limited in Australia, and is not funded by the Medicare Benefits Scheme (MBS). There is only minimal evidence that MRI scanning influences pre-treatment management plans, and it is more frequently used for assessing treatment response.[9]

#### 10.2.3.4.1 Protocol

Protocol parameters for MRI of the pelvis undertaken for the purpose of restaging are the same as for primary staging. Some groups recommend the addition of diffusion imaging,[1] and some also use post contrast sequences.

#### 10.2.3.4.2 Report

Reports should include all the same details as the staging report to give MRI (mr) findings post-neoadjuvant treatment (y) for T stage (ymrT), N stage (ymrN), EMVI status (ymrEMVI) and CRM status (ymrCRM). An additional MRI tumour regression grading system (mrTRG) score, obtained from the high-resolution T2 sequences, can be given to define the amount of residual tumour compared to fibrosis to stratify patient response (Table 7.3).[10]

##### 10.2.3.4.2.1 Table 7.3. Definition of MRI tumour regression grading system scores

| Score | Definition |
|---|---|
| mrTRG1 | No/minimal fibrosis visible (tiny linear scar) and no tumour signal |
| mrTRG2 | Dense fibrotic scar (low signal) but no tumour signal |
| mrTRG3 | Fibrosis predominates but obvious measureable areas of tumour signal visible |
| mrTRG4 | Tumour signal predominates with little / minimal fibrosis |
| mrTRG5 | Tumour signal only – no fibrosis. Includes tumour progression |

Source: Patel et al 2012[10]

Back to top

### 10.2.3.5 Surveillance imaging

As per colon cancer.

### 10.2.3.6 Staging of recurrence

Detection or suspicion of recurrence on clinical follow up, colonoscopy or CT may be further evaluated with PET-CT to assess local and systemic spread. If distant disease is absent or resectable and pelvic exenteration is planned for local recurrence, a pelvic MRI should be performed to define the extent of local disease.

Next section: rectal MRI cancer report

## 10.2.4 References

1. ↑ 1.0 1.1 1.2 1.3 Spada C, Stoker J, Alarcon O, Barbaro F, Bellini D, Bretthauer M, et al. *Clinical indications for computed tomographic colonography: European Society of Gastrointestinal Endoscopy (ESGE) and European Society of Gastrointestinal and Abdominal Radiology (ESGAR) Guideline.* Eur Radiol 2015 Feb;25 (2):331-45 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25278245.
2. ↑ Suzuki C, Torkzad MR, Tanaka S, Palmer G, Lindholm J, Holm T, et al. *The importance of rectal cancer MRI protocols on interpretation accuracy.* World J Surg Oncol 2008 Aug 20;6:89 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18715510.
3. ↑ 3.0 3.1 3.2 3.3 National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. *Colorectal cancer: The Diagnosis and Management of colorectal cancer.* United Kingdom: National Institute for Health and Care Excellence; 2014.
4. ↑ 4.0 4.1 New Zealand Guidelines Group. *Colorectal cancer: Management of Early Colorectal Cancer.* Wellington: Ministry of Health; 2011.
5. ↑ 5.0 5.1 National Comprehensive Cancer Network. *NCCN Guidelines: Colon Cancer.* National Comprehensive Cancer Network; 2016.
6. ↑ 6.0 6.1 6.2 Radiologists TRCo. *Recommendations for cross-sectional imaging in cancer management - colon, rectum and anal cancer.* Radiologists TRCo; 2014.
7. ↑ 7.0 7.1 National Comprehensive Cancer Network. *NCCN Guidelines for Rectal Cancer Version 2.*; 2016 Available from: https://www.tri-kobe.org/nccn/guideline/colorectal/english/rectal.pdf.
8. ↑ Goergen, S. *Radiology Written Report Guideline.* Sydney: The Royal Australian and New Zealand College of Radiologists; 2011 [cited 2016 Dec 24] Available from: http://www.ranzcr.edu.au/component /docman/?task=doc_download&gid=355.
9. ↑ McBrearty A, McCallion K, Moorehead RJ, McAllister I, Mulholland K, Gilliland R, et al. *Re-Staging Following Long-Course Chemoradiotherapy For Rectal Cancer: Does It Influence Management?* Ulster Med J 2016 Sep;85(3):178-181 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27698520.
10. ↑ 10.0 10.1 Patel UB, Brown G, Rutten H, West N, Sebag-Montefiore D, Glynne-Jones R, et al. *Comparison of magnetic resonance imaging and histopathological response to chemoradiotherapy in locally advanced rectal cancer.* Ann Surg Oncol 2012 Sep;19(9):2842-52 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov /pubmed/22526897.

Back to top

# 10.3 Addenda: rectal MRI cancer report

# Rectal MRI report template

**MRI Rectum**

**Clinical details:**

**REPORT:**

PRIMARY TUMOUR

Distance from anal verge:

Craniocaudal length:

Relationship to peritoneal reflection:

Morphology:

Site of invasive edge:

Muscularis propria invasion^:

Extramural venous invasion^^:

Low tumours

- Distance from puborectalis sling:
- Anal sphincter complex invasion: (intersphincteric plane / external sphincter)

LYMPH NODES

Mesorectal: *(N1 / N2 / N1C)*

Pelvic sidewall:

MESORECTAL FASCIA/TME plane: (clear / involved)

OTHER:

**CONCLUSION:**
*(T stage, EMVI status, N stage and CRM status)*

^ include maximum distance of T3 extension in millimetres, adjacent organ or peritoneal reflection involvement
^^noting continuous and discontinuous EMVI

Back to top

# 11 Pathology and staging

Staging of colorectal cancer refers to the classification of the tumour according to the extent of spread in a manner that has a clinically useful correlation with prognosis.

Applications of staging include patient management, quality assurance and research.

A number of imaging techniques, including CT scan, MRI, PET scanning, and endorectal ultrasound, can be used to define the extent of tumour spread before treatment (see Imaging for colon cancer and Imaging for rectal cancer). There is, however, no known, reliable, preoperative staging system that correlates accurately with patient survival.

## Chapter subsections

Please see:

- Development of post-surgical staging
- Post-surgical staging following neoadjuvant therapy
- Notable differences between available clinicopathological staging systems
- Selection of a clinicopathological staging system
- Clinical input
- Additional information on pathology reporting
- Sampling and specimen handling considerations for molecular markers
- Molecular profiling of colorectal cancer (PTH1)

Back to top

# 11.1 Introduction: pathology and staging

Staging of colorectal cancer refers to the classification of the tumour according to the extent of spread in a manner that has a clinically useful correlation with prognosis.

Applications of staging include patient management, quality assurance and research.

A number of imaging techniques, including CT scan, MRI, PET scanning, and endorectal ultrasound, can be used to define the extent of tumour spread before treatment (see Imaging for colon cancer and Imaging for rectal cancer). There is, however, no known, reliable, preoperative staging system that correlates accurately with patient survival.

## Chapter subsections

Please see:

- Development of post-surgical staging
- Post-surgical staging following neoadjuvant therapy
- Notable differences between available clinicopathological staging systems
- Selection of a clinicopathological staging system
- Clinical input
- Additional information on pathology reporting
- Sampling and specimen handling considerations for molecular markers
- Molecular profiling of colorectal cancer (PTH1)

Back to top

# 11.2 Development of post-surgical staging

**Contents**

## 11.2.1 Development of post-surgical staging

The first well-documented and tested staging system was that of Dukes.[1] This classification system was based entirely on the extent of direct tumour spread through the bowel wall and the presence or absence of lymph node metastases in the resected specimen. Although Dukes staging was originally conceived for rectal cancer, it is also applicable to colon cancer. Dukes stages A, B and C correlate well with patient survival, and are easy to recall and apply. For these reasons the system is widely adopted and remains an objective, unambiguous classification adaptable to multidisciplinary patient care. However, the Dukes system does not address the important issue of 'residual tumour' identified by the surgeon at the time of bowel resection, either local due to tumour transection or due to known distant metastases.

The Dukes (A, B, C) system was further modified by Turnbull, who added a stage 'D' for cases with known distant metastases and locally unresectable tumour.[2] Thus, Turnbull introduced the concept of clinicopathological staging in which residual tumour, found by the surgeon at the time of bowel resection, could determine the assigned stage. Clinicopathological staging has now gained wide acceptance as the preferred method of staging.

The ACPS system was recommended for use in Australia following two workshops on staging held in Brisbane in 1981.[3] The system was validated using prospectively collected data from the Concord Hospital Colorectal Cancer Project. The ACPS is essentially a simplified version of the system used at Concord Hospital since 1971.[4] [5] The ACPS and Concord systems are shown in Table 8.1.

### 11.2.1.1 Table 8.1. ACPS/Concord substaging definitions

| ACPS | Concord substage | Maximum spread |
|---|---|---|
| A0 | A1 | Mucosa |
| A | A2 | Submucosa |
| | A3 | Muscularis propria |
| B | B1 | Beyond muscularis propria |
| | B2 | Free serosal surface involvement by direct spread |
| C | C1 | Local nodes involved |
| | C2 | Apical nodes involved |
| D | D1 | Tumour transected (histological) |
| | D2 | Distant metastases (clinical or histological) |

Source: Davis and Newland 1983[3]

A TNM system acceptable to both the Union Internationale Contre Le Cancer (UICC) and the American Joint Committee for Cancer (AJCC)[6] was agreed in 1986 with the aim of attempting to achieve uniformity in staging of Colorectal Cancer (Tables 8.2 and 8.3)[7][8]. The 'p' prefix is used to indicate postsurgical pathological staging. This system is now in its 8th edition (implementation date 1/1/2018) and has undergone several significant revisions to the numerical coding with successive editions, including interpretation of mesenteric lymph node and non-lymph node associated tumour deposits.[9] Between the 6th and 7th editions of the AJCC cancer staging manual, the definitions of T4a and T4b were reversed, a code was added to indicate the presence of extramural tumour deposits in the absence of lymph node metastasis (N1c), and the MX code was deleted. In the 8th edition, the definitions of carcinoma in situ and lymph node status have been further refined. A separate M code has been introduced for peritoneal carcinomatosis, which has been separated out from M1b into M1c. The prognostic and predictive implications of microsatellite instability (MSI), mutations of KRAS, NRAS and BRAF are also discussed.

### 11.2.1.2 Table 8.2. Pathological TNM staging nomenclature

| **T — primary tumour** | |
|---|---|
| TX | Primary tumour cannot be assessed |
| T0 | No evidence of primary tumour |
| Tis | Carcinoma in situ: intramucosal (involvement of lamina propria with no extension through muscularis mucosae) |
| T1 | Tumour invades submucosa (through muscularis mucosae but not into the muscularis propria) |
| T2 | Tumour invades muscularis propria |
| T3 | Tumour invades through muscularis propria into pericolorectalic (subserosal) tissues |
| T4 | Tumour invades the visceral peritoneum or invades or adheres to adjacent organ or structure |
| T4a | Tumour penetrates to the surface of the visceral peritoneum (including gross perforation of the bowel through areas of inflammation to the surface of the visceral peritoneum) |
| T4b | Tumour directly invades or adheres to other organs or structures |
| **N - regional lymph node** | |
| NX | Regional lymph nodes cannot be assessed |
| NO | No regional lymph nodes metastases |
| N1 | One to three regional nodes are positive (tumour in lymph nodes measuring >0.2mm), or any number of tumour deposits are present and all identifiable lymph nodes are negative |
| N1a | One regional lymph node is positive |
| N1b | Two or three regional lymph nodes are positive |
| | No regional lymph nodes are positive, but there are tumour deposits in the<br>■ subserosa |

| T — primary tumour | |
|---|---|
| N1c | ■ mesentery<br>■ or non-peritonised pericolic or perirectal/mesorectal tissues |
| N2 | Four or more regional lymph nodes are positive |
| N2a | Four to six regional lymph nodes are positive |
| N2b | Seven or more regional lymph nodes are positive |
| **M — distant metastasis** | |
| MO | No distant metastasis by imaging, etc; no evidence of tumour in distant sites or organs (This category is not assigned by pathologists.) |
| M1 | Metastasis to one or more distant sites or organs or peritoneal metastasis is identified |
| M1a | Metastasis to one site or organ is identified without peritoneal metastasis |
| M1b | Metastases to two or more sites or organs is identified without peritoneal metastasis |
| M1c | Metastasis to the peritoneal surface is identified alone or with other site or organ metastases |

Source: AJCC 2017[9]

### 11.2.1.3 Table 8.3. AJCC prognostic stage groups

| Stage | T | N | M |
|---|---|---|---|
| 0 | Tis | N0 | M0 |
| I | T1<br>T2 | N0<br>N0 | M0<br>M0 |
| IIA | T3 | N0 | M0 |
| IIB | T4a | N0 | M0 |
| IIC | T4b | N0 | M0 |
| IIIA | T1-T2<br>T1 | N1/N1c<br>N2a | M0<br>M0 |
| IIIB | T3-T4a<br>T2-T3<br>T1-T2 | N1/N1c<br>N2a<br>N2b | M0<br>M0<br>M0 |
| IIIC | T4a<br>T3-T4a<br>T4b | N2a<br>N2b<br>N1-N2 | M0<br>M0<br>M0 |

| Stage | T | N | M |
|---|---|---|---|
| IVA | Any T | Any N | M1a |
| IVB | Any T | Any N | M1b |
| IVC | Any T | Any N | M1c |

Source: AJCC 2017[9]

Next section: post-surgical staging following neoadjuvant therapy

Back to top

## 11.2.2 References

1. ↑ Dukes, CE. *The classification of cancer of the rectum.* J. Pathol. 1932 [cited 2012 Dec 16];35(3); 323-332 Available from: http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1002/path.1700350303/abstract.
2. ↑ Turnbull RB Jr, Kyle K, Watson FR, Spratt J. *Cancer of the colon: the influence of the no-touch isolation technic on survival rates.* Ann Surg 1967 Sep;166(3):420-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6039601.
3. ↑ 3.0 3.1 Davis NC, Newland RC. *The reporting of colorectal cancer: The Australian clinico-pathological staging system.* Aust N Z J Surg 1982 Aug;52(4):395-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6180723.
4. ↑ Newland RC, Chapuis PH, Pheils MT, MacPherson JG. *The relationship of survival to staging and grading of colorectal carcinoma: a prospective study of 503 cases.* Cancer 1981 Mar 15;47(6):1424-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7226068.
5. ↑ Newland RC, Chapuis PH, Smyth EJ. *The prognostic value of substaging colorectal carcinoma. A prospective study of 1117 cases with standardized pathology.* Cancer 1987 Aug 15;60(4):852-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3594403.
6. ↑ Davis NC, Newland RC. *Terminology and classification of colorectal adenocarcinoma: the Australian clinico-pathological staging system.* Aust N Z J Surg 1983 Jun;53(3):211-21 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6309132.
7. ↑ Hermanek, P.. *The TNM/p TNM classification of colorectal carcinomas — what has changed and why?* 1986 [cited 2016 Dec 16];10, p 6-12.
8. ↑ Beahrs OH, American Cancer S, American Joint Committee on C. *Manual for staging of cancer.* Philadelphia, USA: Lippincott; 1992 [cited 2016 Dec 16].
9. ↑ 9.0 9.1 9.2 Amin MB, Edge S, Greene F, Byrd DR, Brookland RK, Washington MK, Gershenwald JE, Compton CC, Hess KR, et al. (Eds.). *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual (8th edition).* Springer International Publishing: American Joint Commission on Cancer; 2017 [cited 2016 Dec 28].

Back to top

# 11.3 Post-surgical staging following neoadjuvant therapy

## Post\-surgical staging following neoadjuvant therapy

A subset of patients with primary rectal cancer may be treated with neoadjuvant radiotherapy or chemoradiotherapy prior to surgical resection of the tumour. The stage given in this situation is an indication of the extent of tumour actually present at the time of examination of the surgical specimen, and is not an estimate of tumour prior to neoadjuvant therapy. Tumour spread is defined by the extent of direct spread of tumour cells. The presence of fibrosis, necrosis or acellular mucin pools should be reported but is not counted in the assessment of extent of tumour spread for staging purposes. The ‘yp’ prefix is used to denote postsurgical TMN stage following neoadjuvant therapy.

Next section: clinicopathological staging systems

Back to top

# 11.4 Clinicopathological staging systems

The two main clinicopathological staging systems currently used in Australia, the Australian clinicopathological staging (ACPS) system and pathological staging (pTNM — tumour, node, metastasis), may both be seen as extensions of the original Dukes staging method.

Apart from the symbols used to designate the stages, the two clinicopathological systems have some notable differences.

**Contents**



## 11.4.1 Serosal surface involvement

In the ACPS/Concord system, a “free” serosal surface is defined as a surface that is not adherent to another structure, and the involvement of such a surface by direct spread defines substage B2. A tumour that invades beyond the muscularis propria and into an adjacent structure may still be regarded as substage B1 if involvement of a free serosal surface is not demonstrated. In the pTNM system, a tumour that has infiltrated another structure is classified as T4b regardless of whether or not a free serosal surface is involved.

Back to top

## 11.4.2 Apical lymph node involvement

An apical lymph node is defined as a node within 1cm of the point of highest vascular pedicle ligation. Apical lymph node metastasis is associated with a worse prognosis than local lymph node metastasis, approaching that of distant metastasis.[1] The presence of an involved apical lymph node defines ACPS/Concord substage C2, but is not specified in the N classification of TNM staging.

## 11.4.3 Residual tumour

The ACPS/Concord stage D classifies the presence of residual tumour remaining after surgical resection of the primary tumour, at a line of resection (D1 - histological), and/or distant metastases (D2 - clinical or histological). pTNM stage IV applies only to cases with known distant metastases (clinical or histological). While the pTNM includes an optional R classification (table 8.4) for residual tumour, it is not used to assign a stage for such cases.

Data have been published supporting the inclusion of tumour in a line of resection in ACP stage D, and others have also documented the importance of this histological parameter[2]. Should the histological assessment of lines of resection be incorporated into pTNM staging and involvement [1] by tumour be a criterion for stage IV classification, then the two systems would be identical. In lieu of this, the use of the R code for residual tumour under the pTMM system would provide the necessary information to allow for closer correlation between the two staging systems (see Table 8.4). Notably the R classification definitions have changed in the latest edition of the AJCC staging manual. In the 7th edition R2 designated the total burden of residual disease, including the presence of distant residual tumour (e.g. unresected liver metastasis), whereas the 8th edition definition specifically refers only to locoregional residual tumour.[3][4]

### 11.4.3.1 Table 8.4. Residual Tumour R Classification

| R — residual tumour | |
|---|---|
| RX | Presence of residual tumour cannot be assessed |
| R0 | No residual tumour |
| R1 | Microscopic residual tumour |
| R2 | Macroscopic residual tumour at the primary cancer site or regional nodal sites (This designation is not used to indicate metastatic disease identified but not resected at surgical exploration) |

Source: AJCC 2017[4]

Back to top

Next section: selection of staging system

## 11.4.4 References

1. ↑ [1.0] [1.1] Newland RC, Dent OF, Lyttle MN, Chapuis PH, Bokey EL. *Pathologic determinants of survival associated with colorectal cancer with lymph node metastases. A multivariate analysis of 579 patients.* Cancer 1994 Apr 15;73(8):2076-82 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8156513.
2. ↑ Fielding LP, Arsenault PA, Chapuis PH, Dent O, Gathright B, Hardcastle JD, et al. *Clinicopathological staging for colorectal cancer: an International Documentation System (IDS) and an International Comprehensive Anatomical Terminology (ICAT).* J Gastroenterol Hepatol 1991 Jul;6(4):325-44 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1912440.
3. ↑ Edge SB, Compton CC. *The American Joint Committee on Cancer: the 7th edition of the AJCC cancer staging manual and the future of TNM.* Ann Surg Oncol 2010 Jun;17(6):1471-4 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20180029.
4. ↑ [4.0] [4.1] Amin MB, Edge S, Greene F, Byrd DR, Brookland RK, Washington MK, Gershenwald JE, Compton CC, Hess KR, et al. (Eds.). *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual (8th edition).* Springer International Publishing: American Joint Commission on Cancer; 2017 [cited 2016 Dec 28].

Back to top

# 11.5 Selection of staging system

## 11.5.1 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews were undertaken for this topic. Practice points were based on selected published evidence. See Guidelines development process.

The use of either one or both of the above staging systems has been variously advocated by Pathologist organisations in the USA, UK and Australasia. At the time of writing the College of American Pathologists' published protocol is based on the AJCC/UICC TNM 7th edition.[1] The Royal College of Pathologists of Australasia's protocol recommends the use of TMN 7th edition while also recognising the use of the ACPS and Dukes' systems in Australia and recommends that all variables required for staging under these systems be recorded in pathology reports.[2] The Royal College of Pathologists (UK) mandates the use of modified Dukes' staging in addition to TMN, specifically the 5th edition, to preserve the integrity of staging data for longitudinal analyses.[3]

When using the TMN staging, it is essential that the specific edition of the system be recorded in the pathology report, as significant variations in the numerical coding have occurred between successive editions of the AJCC staging manual.

The ACPS/Concord system embodies the simplicity of Dukes staging. It comprehensively defines known residual tumour, it is based on a small number of key variables (direct spread, lymph node metastases and known residual tumour) and it has been validated by a large prospective series.[4][5]

Whichever staging system is chosen, all parameters used to derive tumour stage should be recorded individually and explicitly in the pathology report to ensure effective communication and comparability between centres and over time. Table 8.5 shows a comparison between the ACPS/Concord and current AJCC staging systems.

### 11.5.1.1 Table 8.5. Translation between ACPS/Concord and AJCC staging system

| ACPS | Concord substage | AJCC 8 | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Stage grouping | T | N | M | R |
| A0 | A1 | 0 | Tis | N0 | M0 | R0 |
| A | A2 | I | T1 | N0 | M0 | R0 |
| A | A2 | I | T1 | N0 | M0 | R0 |
| | A3 | I | T2 | N0 | M0 | R0 |
| B | B1 | IIA<br>IIC | T3<br>T4b | N0 | M0 | R0 |
| | B2 | IIB | T4a | N0 | M0 | R0 |
| C | C1 | IIIA-IIIC | Any T | N1-N2 | M0 | R0 |
| | C2 | IIIA-IIIC | Any T | N1-N2 | M0 | R0 |
| D | D1 | | Any T | Any N | M0 | R1-R2 |
| | D2 | IVA-IVC | Any T | Any N | M1a-M1c | Any R |

**Practice point**

TNM staging, ACPS/Concord staging and the data required to stage the patient should all be recorded to allow national and international comparisons.

Next section: clinical input

Back to top

1. ↑ College of American Pathologists. *Protocol for Examination of Specimens From Patients With Primary Carcinoma of the Colon and Rectum. Version: ColoRectum 3.4.0.0.* CAP; 2016.

2. ↑ Royal College of Pathologists of Australasia. *Colorectal Cancer Structured Reporting Protocol (3rd edition).* Royal College of Pathologists of Australasia; 2016 Available from: https://www.rcpa.edu.au/Library/Practising-Pathology/Structured-Pathology-Reporting-of-Cancer/Cancer-Protocols/Gastrointestinal/Protocol-colorectal-cancer.
3. ↑ Royal College of Pathologists. *Standards and Datasets for Reporting Cancers — Dataset for Colorectal Cancer Histopathology Reports. 3rd edition.* London: RCP; 2014.
4. ↑ Chapuis PH, Dent OF, Bokey EL, Newland RC, Sinclair G. *Adverse histopathological findings as a guide to patient management after curative resection of node-positive colonic cancer.* Br J Surg 2004 Mar;91(3): 349-54 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14991638.
5. ↑ Jass JR, Chapuis PH, Dixon MF et al. *Symposium on staging of colorectal cancer.* Int J Colorect Dis 1987; 2:123-38.

## 11.6 Clinical input

Close collaboration between surgeon and pathologist is essential. The use of a clinicopathological staging system requires that the surgeon make the operative findings known to the pathologist. This is facilitated by completion of a convenient proforma for conveying this information to the pathologist as shown in Figure 8.1. Should this information be unavailable to the pathologist, the report should indicate that the stage has been assigned on the assumption that there were no known distant metastases present at the time of the resection.

**Figure 8.1. Cancer of the colon and rectum — information for the pathologist**

Next section: additional information - pathology reporting

Back to top

## 11.7 Additional information on pathology reporting

**Contents**

## 11.7.1 Prognostic factors independent of stage

The pathology report provides a histological confirmation of the diagnosis of colorectal cancer and summation of additional prognostic information that is used to guide further postsurgical clinical management of the patient.[1][2] Apart from tumour stage, the importance of including information on a range of other variables in the histopathology report is recognised (see Table 8.6). These variables include the components of stage and some other factors that have been shown to have a statistically independent bearing on prognosis. The independent prognostic effects of many of these variables have been assessed within the ACPS system and have been demonstrated to be stage dependent.[3][4][5] Those having independent prognostic significance have also been included in current pathology reporting protocols. These include histological tumour type, tumour grade /differentiation, non-peritonealised circumferential margin status, and lymphatic and vascular invasion.[6][7][8] The extent of tumour spread beyond the bowel wall has been shown to have prognostic significance, and while subdivision of pT3 has not been adopted by the AJCC, the maximum distance of tumour extension beyond the muscularis propria may be reported as a measurement in millimetres.[9][10][7] The true significance of other features, such as the presence of perineural invasion, tumour budding, and discontinuous extramural tumour deposits not associated with lymph nodes, is still to be fully resolved.[11]

## 11.7.2 Molecular markers

Molecular research has greatly advanced the understanding of colorectal carcinogenesis, but its impact on routine clinical practice has so far been limited.

### 11.7.2.1 Microsatellite instability (MSI), DNA mismatch repair (MMR) and Lynch syndrome

Up to 15% of colorectal cancers harbour multiple defects in repetitive non-coding regions of DNA known as microsatellites (microsatellite instability, MSI). This is the result of loss of DNA microsatellite mismatch repair (MMR) protein function.[12] MMR deficiency is the genetic defect in Lynch syndrome (hereditary non-polyposis colorectal cancer) which accounts for 2-3% of colorectal cancers. MMR deficient CRCs are more frequently right-sided and show distinctive histological features including prominent tumour-infiltrating lymphocytes, a pushing invasive tumour front, and mucinous or poor differentiation.[13] These tumours have been reported to be associated with higher risk of synchronous and metachronous tumours.[14] Their relationship to prognosis and responsiveness to FU-based chemotherapy remains controversial.[15][16][17]

Tumours that are right-sided, synchronous or metachronous, and/or show histological features described above should raise suspicion for MMR deficiency (sporadic or familial). Those that present under age 50, are associated with a strong family history or the presence of other Lynch syndrome associated cancers, further raise the possibility of Lynch syndrome.[18]

Immunohistochemical testing for the four MMR proteins (MLH1, MSH2, MSH6 and PMS2) is now widely available, and universal testing of colorectal cancers (or at least in patients under the age of 70) has been recommended for the detection of Lynch syndrome. See Lynch syndrome. The identification of a MMR deficient colorectal cancer also may have implications for selection of patients for adjuvant 5-FU based chemotherapy, and long term post-operative follow up..

### 11.7.2.2 BRAF mutation

Immunohistochemistry for the V600E mutated BRAF is now available, and is useful in distinguishing between sporadic and familial (Lynch syndrome) cases of MMR deficient colorectal cancer. Sporadic loss of MLH1 is commonly seen in elderly patients due to methylation of its promoter site, and BRAF mutation is commonly associated with hypermethylation.[19] In the context of MLH1 loss, the presence of mutated BRAF almost certainly indicates that the loss is due to MLH1 promoter methylation, and can be used to virtually exclude the possibility of Lynch syndrome.[20]

### 11.7.2.3 KRAS mutation and anti-EGFR therapy

KRAS mutation status has been reported to be associated with response to anti-epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) therapy.[21] These agents have been shown to have a beneficial effect in some colorectal cancer patients with metastatic disease, and tumours harbouring mutated KRAS are resistant to such treatment. Testing of tumour tissue for KRAS mutation status is recommended for patients with advanced colorectal cancer for whom anti-EGFR treatment is being considered.

**Practice point**

DNA mismatch repair status studies should be performed on all cases of colorectal cancer for the detection of Lynch syndrome.

**Practice point**

BRAF mutation studies should be performed in conjunction with DNA mismatch repair status studies to differentiate between sporadic and familial (Lynch syndrome) cases of DNA mismatch repair status-deficient colorectal cancer.

| Practice point |
| --- |
| RAS testing should be carried out on all patients at the time of diagnosis of metastatic colorectal cancer. |

## 11.7.3 Structured reporting of colorectal cancer

The use of structured reporting in synoptic format has been recommended to ensure the consistent quality and completeness of data. Each variable should be recorded individually and explicitly in pathology reports. The Royal College of Pathologists of Australasia has published a comprehensive protocol for structured reporting of colorectal cancer that outlines a number of standards (mandatory elements) and guidelines (optional elements), the details of which are summarised in Table 13.6.[7]

Back to top

### 11.7.3.1 Table 8.6. Reporting on colorectal cancer specimens

| | |
| --- | --- |
| **Pre-analytical data** | |
| Demographic information provided on the request form | Name, date of birth, sex, identification and contact details of requesting doctor, date of request, medical record number |
| Clinical information documented on the request form | Operating surgeon name and contact details<br><br>Perforation, clinical obstruction, tumour location, synchronous tumours, distance from anal verge, type of operation, preoperative radiotherapy, surgeon’s opinion on the existence of residual cancer postsurgery , involvement of adjacent organs, new primary cancer or recurrence |
| Pathology accession number of the specimen | |
| ˆAny other clinical information received in other communications from the requestor or other clinician | |
| **Macroscopic findings** | |
| Specimen length | Measurement in mm |
| Site of the tumour | Caecum, ascending colon, hepatic flexure, transverse colon, splenic flexure, descending colon, sigmoid colon, rectosigmoid junction, rectum |
| Maximal tumour diameter | Measurement in mm |
| Distance of tumour to | |

| | |
|---|---|
| nearer proximal or distal resection margin | Measurement in mm |
| Distance of the tumour to the circumferential margin | Measurement in mm |
| Presence or absence of tumour perforation | |
| Relationship of the tumour to the anterior peritoneal reflection (for rectal tumours) | Entirely above, astride, entirely below |
| Intactness of the fascial envelope enclosing the perirectal fat (mesorectum) | Incomplete (grade 1), nearly complete (grade 2), complete (grade 3) |
| ^Any involvement of the peritoneum | By direct spread, tumour nodule(s) discrete from the tumour mass |
| ^Number of lymph nodes placed in each cassette | |
| ^Number, diameter and gross configuration of polyps | |
| ^Any other relevant macroscopic information | |
| Nature and sites of all blocks | |
| **Microscopic findings** | |
| Tumour type | Adenocarcinoma, mucinous adenocarcinoma, signet-ring cell carcinoma, medullary carcinoma, neuroendocrine carcinoma, squamous carcinoma, adenosquamous carcinoma, undifferentiated carcinoma, other (see WHO classification, 2010[22]) |
| Histological grade | High grade (well and moderately differentiated)<br>Low grade (poorly and undifferentiated) |
| Maximal degree of local invasion into or through the bowel wall | Submucosa, muscularis propria, beyond muscularis propria, serosal surface, involves other organs/structures |
| Involvement of proximal or distal resection margins | Involved or not involved<br>Specify involved margin(s), microscopic clearance (specify in mm if less than 10mm) |

| | |
|---|---|
| Status of nonperitonealised circumferential margin in rectal tumours | Involved or not involved, microscopic clearance in mm |
| Results of lymph node histopathology | Site(s) and numbers of lymph nodes (number of positive nodes/total number of nodes from this site)<br><br>Isolated extramural tumour deposits |
| ^Apical lymph node involvement if required where staging systems additional to TNM staging are in use | Required for ACPS and Dukes |
| Venous and small vessel invasion | Intramural vein invasion, extramural vein invasion, small vessel invasion (not identified, present or extensive) |
| ^Perineural invasion | Not identified, present or extensive |
| Histologically confirmed distant metastases | Present or absent<br><br>Specify sites |
| Relevant coexistent pathological abnormalities | Polyps, ulcerative colitis, Crohn's disease, dysplasia, other |
| Microscopic residual tumour status (completeness of resection) | Text |
| Response to neoadjuvant therapy | Grade 0 (complete response): No viable cancer cells<br><br>Grade 1 (moderate response): Single cells or small groups of (viable-appearing) cancer cells<br>Grade 2 (minimal response): Residual cancer outgrown by fibrosis<br>Grade 3: (poor response): Minimal or no tumour kill; extensive residual cancer |
| **Ancillary test findings** | |
| ^Mismatch repair enzymes | MLH1, PMS2, MSH2, MSH6 immunohistochemistry<br><br>Microsatellite instability (MSI)<br>BRAF (V600E mutation) |
| ^KRAS gene mutation | |
| **Synthesis and summary** | |
| Tumour stage | pTNM and Stage grouping<br><br>ACPS stage (substage) |

| | |
|---|---|
| Year and/or edition of staging system | AJCC 2010, 7th edition<br><br>ACPS |
| Residual tumour status | R classification |
| ^Diagnostic summary | Specimen type, tumour site, type, stage, completeness of excision |
| New primary cancer or recurrence | New primary, regional (local) recurrence, distant metastases, indeterminate |
| Overarching comment | Free text |

^Guidelines – recommendations optional, where relevant

Source: RCPA 2016[7]

**Practice point**

Synoptic reporting is strongly recommended to capture the key variables to enable translation between major internationally recognised staging systems and facilitate multidisciplinary patient management.

Next section: Sampling and specimen handling considerations for molecular markers

Back to top

## 11.7.4 References

1. ↑ Chapuis PH, Bokey L, Chan C, Dent OF. *Colorectal cancer staging revisited: time for critical evaluation?* Colorectal Dis 2012 Sep;14(9):1043-4 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22909328.
2. ↑ Chapuis PH, Chan C, Dent OF. *Clinicopathological staging of colorectal cancer: Evolution and consensus-an Australian perspective.* J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2011 Jan;26 Suppl 1:58-64 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21199515.
3. ↑ Fielding LP, Arsenault PA, Chapuis PH, Dent O, Gathright B, Hardcastle JD, et al. *Clinicopathological staging for colorectal cancer: an International Documentation System (IDS) and an International Comprehensive Anatomical Terminology (ICAT).* J Gastroenterol Hepatol 1991 Jul;6(4):325-44 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1912440.
4. ↑ Newland RC, Dent OF, Lyttle MN, Chapuis PH, Bokey EL. *Pathologic determinants of survival associated with colorectal cancer with lymph node metastases. A multivariate analysis of 579 patients.* Cancer 1994 Apr 15;73(8):2076-82 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8156513.
5. ↑ Newland RC, Dent OF, Chapuis PH, Bokey L. *Survival after curative resection of lymph node negative colorectal carcinoma. A prospective study of 910 patients.* Cancer 1995 Aug 15;76(4):564-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8625148.
6. ↑ College of American Pathologists. *Protocol for Examination of Specimens From Patients With Primary Carcinoma of the Colon and Rectum. Version: ColoRectum 3.4.0.0.* CAP; 2016.

7. ↑ [7.0] [7.1] [7.2] [7.3] Royal College of Pathologists of Australasia. *Colorectal Cancer Structured Reporting Protocol (3rd edition).* Royal College of Pathologists of Australasia; 2016 Available from: https://www.rcpa.edu.au/Library/Practising-Pathology/Structured-Pathology-Reporting-of-Cancer/Cancer-Protocols/Gastrointestinal/Protocol-colorectal-cancer.
8. ↑ Royal College of Pathologists. *Standards and Datasets for Reporting Cancers — Dataset for Colorectal Cancer Histopathology Reports. 3rd edition.* London: RCP; 2014.
9. ↑ Compton CC. *Key issues in reporting common cancer specimens: problems in pathologic staging of colon cancer.* Arch Pathol Lab Med 2006 Mar;130(3):318-24 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16519558.
10. ↑ Washington MK. *Colorectal carcinoma: selected issues in pathologic examination and staging and determination of prognostic factors.* Arch Pathol Lab Med 2008 Oct;132(10):1600-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18834218.
11. ↑ Compton CC. *Colorectal carcinoma: diagnostic, prognostic, and molecular features.* Mod Pathol 2003 Apr;16(4):376-88 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12692203.
12. ↑ Liu B, Nicolaides NC, Markowitz S, Willson JK, Parsons RE, Jen J, et al. *Mismatch repair gene defects in sporadic colorectal cancers with microsatellite instability.* Nat Genet 1995 Jan;9(1):48-55 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7704024.
13. ↑ Jass JR, Do KA, Simms LA, Iino H, Wynter C, Pillay SP, et al. *Morphology of sporadic colorectal cancer with DNA replication errors.* Gut 1998 May;42(5):673-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9659163.
14. ↑ Cawkwell L, Gray S, Murgatroyd H, Sutherland F, Haine L, Longfellow M, et al. *Choice of management strategy for colorectal cancer based on a diagnostic immunohistochemical test for defective mismatch repair.* Gut 1999 Sep;45(3):409-15 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10446111.
15. ↑ Gryfe R, Kim H, Hsieh ET, Aronson MD, Holowaty EJ, Bull SB, et al. *Tumor microsatellite instability and clinical outcome in young patients with colorectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 2000 Jan 13;342(2):69-77 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10631274.
16. ↑ Ribic CM, Sargent DJ, Moore MJ, Thibodeau SN, French AJ, Goldberg RM, et al. *Tumor microsatellite-instability status as a predictor of benefit from fluorouracil-based adjuvant chemotherapy for colon cancer.* N Engl J Med 2003 Jul 17;349(3):247-57 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12867608.
17. ↑ Toh J, Chapuis PH, Bokey EL, Chan C, Spring KJ, Dent OF. *Competing risks analysis of microsatellite instability as a prognostic factor in colorectal cancer. Br J Surg (in press).*; 2017.
18. ↑ Umar A, Boland CR, Terdiman JP, Syngal S, de la Chapelle A, Rüschoff J, et al. *Revised Bethesda Guidelines for hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer (Lynch syndrome) and microsatellite instability.* J Natl Cancer Inst 2004 Feb 18;96(4):261-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14970275.
19. ↑ Weisenberger DJ, Siegmund KD, Campan M, Young J, Long TI, Faasse MA, et al. *CpG island methylator phenotype underlies sporadic microsatellite instability and is tightly associated with BRAF mutation in colorectal cancer.* Nat Genet 2006 Jul;38(7):787-93 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16804544.
20. ↑ Loughrey MB, Waring PM, Tan A, Trivett M, Kovalenko S, Beshay V, et al. *Incorporation of somatic BRAF mutation testing into an algorithm for the investigation of hereditary non-polyposis colorectal cancer.* Fam Cancer 2007;6(3):301-10 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17453358.
21. ↑ Karapetis CS, Khambata-Ford S, Jonker DJ, O'Callaghan CJ, Tu D, Tebbutt NC, et al. *K-ras mutations and benefit from cetuximab in advanced colorectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 2008 Oct 23;359(17):1757-65 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18946061.

22. ↑ Bosman FT, Carneiro F, Hruban R H, Theise N. *WHO classification of tumours of the digestive system, fourth edition.* France: IARC; 2010 [cited 2018 Jul 10] Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/nlmcatalog/101553728.

Back to top

# 11.8 Optimal molecular profiling of CRC

**Contents**

## 11.8.1 Background

In recent years there has been an increasing focus on gene expression profiling to provide additional criteria for tumour sub-classification and improve prognostication, with the ultimate goal of individualising patient therapy. Numerous abnormalities in gene expression have been reported, the significance of which needs to be evaluated in well-designed studies of large clinical populations.

See Molecular pathology and biomarkers – implications for systemic chemotherapy.

## 11.8.2 Systematic review evidence

*In patients diagnosed with colorectal cancer who have undergone surgical resection or biopsy of the primary colorectal tumour, which molecular marker (BRAF/KRAS/NRAS/DNA mismatch repair /microsatellite instability) best predicts response to surgery, or adjuvant therapy or radiotherapy (disease-free survival, overall survival, disease-specific mortality, overall mortality, or relapse incidence)? (PTH1)*

A total of 39 level II studies[1][2][3][4][5][6][7][8][9][10][11][12][13][14][15][16][17][18][19][20][21][22][23][24][25][26][27][28][29][30][31][32][33][34][35][36][37][38][39] and 66 level III-3 studies[40][41][42][43][44][45][46][47][48][49][50][51][52][53][54][55][56][57][58][59][60][61][62][63][64][65][66][67][68][69][70][71][72][73][74][75][76][77][78][79][80][81][82][83][84][85][86][87][88][89][90][91][92][93][94][95][96][97][98][99][100][101][102][103][104][105] were identified that evaluated the prognostic value of microsatellite stability status, DNA mismatch repair function, KRAS or BRAF mutation status for various outcomes related to patient response to treatment. All studies were at high risk of bias except 6 which were at medium risk of bias.[14][21][45][69][74][104]

The search strategy, inclusion and exclusion criteria, and quality assessment are described in detail in the Technical report.

## 11.8.3 Overall survival

### 11.8.3.1 KRAS mutation status

A total of 35 studies[3][9][12][16][20][21][25][26][27][36][39][42][43][46][52][53][55][59][61][62][71][74][76][77][78][82][83][88][92][94][95][96][99][103][105] reported the outcome of overall survival with respect to KRAS mutation status (any mutation versus wild type). All stages of colorectal cancer were included, as well as patients with metastatic disease.

Most studies reported a trend towards increased survival in those without KRAS mutations (wild-type KRAS), with half of the studies reporting at statistically significant difference.

No trends in overall survival and KRAS mutation status were reported against the clinical stage of colorectal cancer.

Thirteen studies[3][7][9][12][39][42][49][53][76][77][94][96][103] reported overall survival with respect to KRAS mutation status (any mutation versus wild type) in those who had anti-epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) treatment (cetuximab or panitumumab). Most studies reported a trend towards increased survival in those without KRAS mutations (wild-type KRAS), with nine of the studies reporting at statistically significant difference.

Nine studies[3][12][25][33][67][74][97][103][105] reported overall survival in respect to KRAS mutation status (any mutation versus wild-type) in those treated with the combination of leucovorin calcium (folinic acid), 5-fluorouracil (5FU) and oxaliplatin (FOLFOX). All but one study reported no statistically significant difference.

### 11.8.3.2 BRAF mutation status

A total of 25 studies[1][11][12][15][16][21][26][27][39][40][49][50][52][55][57][59][74][76][87][92][93][94][96][99][100] reported overall survival as an outcome with respect to BRAF mutation status. The majority of studies report better survival in those with wild-type BRAF tumour gene, and this was statistically significantly different in all but six studies.[1][11][52][55][59][100]

Six studies[15][39][49][57][76][94] reported overall survival as an outcome with respect to BRAF mutation status in those who had anti-EGFR treatment (cetuximab or panitumumab). All studies report better survival in those with wild-type BRAF tumour gene, and this was statistically significantly different in all six studies.

Five studies[1][12][15][40][74] reported overall survival as outcome with respect to BRAF mutation status (any mutation versus wild type) in those who had FOLFOX. All studies report a trend towards increased survival in those without BRAF mutations (wild-type BRAF), with all but one study[1] reporting a statistically significant difference.

### 11.8.3.3 Microsatellite stability status

A total of 20 studies[10][16][17][21][27][31][32][38][45][58][59][60][68][72][83][86][87][89][93][101] reported overall survival as an outcome with respect to microsatellite stability status. There was a slight trend towards better overall survival in those with microsatellite instability, with only nine studies[17][27][31][32][38][58][72][83][101] reporting a statistical significant difference.

Eighteen studies[1][2][11][12][14][18][28][29][31][32][50][58][64][65][66][73][90][104] reported overall survival as an outcome with respect to DNA mismatch repair function (proficient verse deficient, and vice versa). There was no reported consistent trends of significant between studies.

### 11.8.3.4 DNA mismatch repair status

Five studies[1][12][64][66][104] reported overall survival as an outcome with respect to DNA mismatch repair function (proficient verse deficient, and vice versa) in those who had FOLFOX treatment. There were no consistently reported trends across the studies.

Back to top

## 11.8.4 Progression-free survival

### 11.8.4.1 KRAS mutation status

A total of 21 studies[4][7][9][15][25][26][33][36][39][42][49][53][54][57][67][75][94][97][99][103][105] reported progression-free survival as an outcome with respect to KRAS mutation status. All studies reported a trend towards longer progression-free survival in those without primary tumour KRAS mutation, but fewer than 50% of studies reported a statically significant difference.

A total of 10 studies[4][7][36][42][49][53][54][57][94][103] reported progression-free survival as outcome with respect to KRAS mutation status (any mutation versus wild type) in those who had anti-EGFR treatment (cetuximab or panitumumab). Most studies reported a trend towards longer progression-free survival in those without KRAS mutations (wild-type KRAS), with six of the studies[4][36][49][53][54][94] reporting at statistically significant difference.

Six studies[4][15][33][67][97][105] reported progression-free survival as outcome in respect to KRAS mutation status (any mutation versus wild type) in those who had FOLFOX treatment. There were no consistently reported trends across the studies.

### 11.8.4.2 BRAF mutation status

Ten studies[15][23][26][39][49][54][57][93][94][99] reported progression-free survival as an outcome with respect to BRAF mutation status. All studies consistently reported longer progression free survival in those without BRAF mutation, and all but one study reported a statistically significant difference. All clinical grades of colorectal cancer were reported across these nine studies.[15][23][39][49][54][57][93][94][99]

A total of seven studies[15][23][39][49][54][57][94] reported progression free survival as an outcome with respect to BRAF mutation status in those who had anti-EGFR treatment (cetuximab or panitumumab). All studies reported longer progression-free survival in those with wild-type BRAF tumour gene, and this was statistically significantly different in six studies.[15][23][39][49][54][94]

### 11.8.4.3 Microsatellite stability status and DNA mismatch repair status

Five studies[18][63][65][66][93] reported progression-free survival as an outcome with respect to either microsatellite stability status or mismatch repair function status. No significant trends or differences were reported.

Back to top

## 11.8.5 Disease-free survival

### 11.8.5.1 KRAS mutation status

Twelve studies[16][20][21][22][37][43][46][48][52][59][70][74] reported disease-free survival as an outcome with respect to KRAS mutation status. Most studies consistently reported a trend towards longer disease free survival in those without KRAS mutations (wild-type KRAS). This difference was statistically significantly in only 5 of these studies.[16][22][46][48][70]

Four studies[22][48][70][74] reported disease-free survival as an outcome with respect to KRAS mutation status in those who had FOLFOX treatment. All studies consistently reported a trend towards longer disease-free survival in those without KRAS mutations (wild-type KRAS), but only two studies reported a statistically significantly difference.[22][70]

### 11.8.5.2 BRAF mutation status

Ten studies[11][16][21][50][52][59][71][74][79][87] reported disease free survival as an outcome with respect to BRAF mutation status. All studies consistently reported a trend towards longer disease free survival in those without BRAF mutations (wild-type BRAF). This difference was statistically significantly in five studies.[50][52][74][79][87]

### 11.8.5.3 Microsatellite stability status

Seventeen studies[10][16][19][21][31][32][37][38][51][56][59][68][72][79][86][87][102] reported disease-free survival as an outcome with respect to microsatellite stability status. Reported results were inconsistent across studies.

### 11.8.5.4 DNA mismatch repair status

Twelve studies[2][11][14][28][29][31][32][50][56][64][73][104] reported disease free survival as an outcome with respect to mismatch repair function. Most studies consistently reported a trend towards longer disease free survival in those with deficient mismatch repair function. This difference was statistically significant in eight studies.[2][11][14][28][29][32][50][104]

Back to top

## 11.8.6 Objective response rate

### 11.8.6.1 RAS mutation status

Five studies[7][9][24][67][76] reported objective response rate as an outcome with respect to KRAS or RAS (KRAS or NRAS) mutation status.

All studies consistently reported a trend towards greater response rate in those with wild-type KRAS tumours. This was statistically significant in three[9][24][76] of the five studies.

### 11.8.6.2 BRAF mutation status

One study[76] reported objective response rate as an outcome with respect to tumour BRAF mutation status. This single study reported a significantly greater objective response rate in those with tumour BRAF mutations.

### 11.8.6.3 DNA mismatch repair status

Three studies[18][65][66] reported objective response rate as an outcome with respect to mismatch repair function. No significant trends or differences were reported.

## 11.8.7 Other outcomes

A number of other outcomes relating to treatment response were reported. These outcomes included pathological complete response, overall mortality, disease control rate, disease-specific survival, time to progression, disease recurrence, recurrence free survival, recurrence-free interval, distant metastases, clinical response, risk of recurrence, and time to recurrence. All these outcomes were reported in a single or very few studies, with few or no reported significant trends.

Back to top

## 11.8.8 Evidence summary and recommendations

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| **KRAS**<br><br>There is consistent evidence that KRAS mutations are predictive of decreased overall survival (all stages of diseases including metastatic disease), decreased progression free survival (all stages of diseases including metastatic disease), and poorer objective response rate.<br><br>There is moderate consistent evidence that KRAS mutation predicts decreased disease free survival (stages I–IV) and decreased recurrence free survival (stages I–IV).<br><br>There is moderate evidence that, among patients who received anti-EGFR treatment, those with KRAS mutated tumours had decreased overall survival and progression-free survival compared to anti-EGFR treated patients with wild-type KRAS tumours. | II, III-2 | [3], [9], [12], [16], [20], [21], [25], [27], [26], [36], [39], [42], [43], [46], [52], [53], [55], [59], [62], [61], [71], [74], [76], [77], [78], [82], [83], [88], [92], [94], [95], [96], [99], [103], [105], [4], [7], [15], [22], [24], [33], [37], [48], [49], [54], [57], [67], [70], [75], [97] |

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| **BRAF**<br><br>There is consistent evidence that BRAF gene mutation is predictive for both decreased overall survival (all stages of diseases including metastatic disease) and progression free survival (all stages of diseases including metastatic disease).<br><br>There is moderate consistent evidence that BRAF mutation is predictive for decreased disease free survival (stages I-IV) and recurrence free survival (stages I-IV).<br><br>There is moderate evidence that, among patients who received anti-EGFR treatment, those with BRAF mutated tumours had decreased overall survival and progression-free survival than those with wild-type BRAF tumours.<br><br>There is moderate evidence that, among patients who received FOLFOX treatment, those with BRAF mutated tumours had decreased overall survival than those with wild-type KRAS tumours. | II, III-2 | [1], [11], [12], [15], [16], [21], [23], [26], [27], [39], [40], [49], [50], [52], [54], [55], [57], [59], [71], [74], [76], [79], [87], [92], [93], [94], [96], [99], [100] |
| **Microsatellite Instability**<br><br>There is consistent evidence that tumour microsatellite instability predicts longer time to disease recurrence (stages I–IV), increased recurrence free survival (stages II–III), and a longer recurrence free interval (stages II–III).<br><br>There is inconsistent evidence that tumour microsatellite instability predicts increase overall survival (stages I-IV).<br><br>Microsatellite stability status was not shown to predict progression-free survival or disease-free survival. | II, III-2 | [1], [2], [10], [11], [12], [14], [16], [17], [18], [19], [21], [27], [28], [29], [31], [32], [37], [38], [45], [50], [51], [56], [58], [59], [60], [63], [64], [65], [66], [68], [72], [73], [79], [83], [86], [87], [89], [90], [93], [101], [102], [104] |
| **Mismatch repair**<br><br>There is consistent evidence that tumour mismatch repair deficiency predicts increased disease free survival (stage II–III) and decreased risk of recurrence (stages I–IV). | II, III-2 | [1], [2], [11], [12], [14], [18], [28], [29], [31], [32], [50], [56], [63], [64], [65], [66], [73], [93], [104] |

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| There is no consistent evidence that mismatch repair status predicts patient overall survival, progression free survival, or objective response rate. | | |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| Current evidence remains controversial as to the use of presently available molecular markers to predict prognosis and identify those patients who may benefit most from adjuvant postoperative chemotherapy. | **D** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| KRAS mutation studies should be performed on patients with advanced (metastatic) colorectal cancer in whom anti-EGFR treatment is being considered. | **D** |

## 11.8.9 Health system implications of these recommendations

### 11.8.9.1 Clinical practice

Implementation of the recommendation would not change the way that care is currently organised.

### 11.8.9.2 Resourcing

No additional resourcing will be necessary to implement the recommendation.

### 11.8.9.3 Barriers to implementation

No barriers to the implementation of this recommendation are envisaged.

## 11.8.10 Discussion

### 11.8.10.1 Unresolved issues

The prognostic value of molecular markers is yet to be defined to a degree that can be used in routine pathological analysis.

### 11.8.10.2 Studies currently underway

Clinical trials are currently underway to test targeted therapies in BRAF-mutated metastatic colorectal cancer, akin to the development of therapies for BRAF-mutated metastatic melanoma. Early results are promising but have generally been less favourable than the melanoma trials.[106][107][108][109]

It is not known if there are other studies underway in this field.

### 11.8.10.3 Future research priorities

It is suggested that further studies are done to more precisely define the prognostic value of these molecular markers.

## 11.8.11 References

1. ↑ 1.0 1.1 1.2 1.3 1.4 1.5 1.6 1.7 1.8 1.9 André T, de Gramont A, Vernerey D, Chibaudel B, Bonnetain F, Tijeras-Raballand A, et al. *Adjuvant Fluorouracil, Leucovorin, and Oxaliplatin in Stage II to III Colon Cancer: Updated 10-Year Survival and Outcomes According to BRAF Mutation and Mismatch Repair Status of the MOSAIC Study.* J Clin Oncol 2015 Dec 10;33(35):4176-87 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26527776.
2. ↑ 2.0 2.1 2.2 2.3 2.4 2.5 Bertagnolli MM, Redston M, Compton CC, Niedzwiecki D, Mayer RJ, Goldberg RM, et al. *Microsatellite instability and loss of heterozygosity at chromosomal location 18q: prospective evaluation of biomarkers for stages II and III colon cancer--a study of CALGB 9581 and 89803.* J Clin Oncol 2011 Aug 10;29(23):3153-62 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21747089.
3. ↑ 3.0 3.1 3.2 3.3 3.4 Bokemeyer C, Bondarenko I, Hartmann JT, de Braud F, Schuch G, Zubel A, et al. *Efficacy according to biomarker status of cetuximab plus FOLFOX-4 as first-line treatment for metastatic colorectal cancer: the OPUS study.* Ann Oncol 2011 Jul;22(7):1535-46 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21228335.
4. ↑ 4.0 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 4.5 Bokemeyer C, Bondarenko I, Makhson A, Hartmann JT, Aparicio J, de Braud F, et al. *Fluorouracil, leucovorin, and oxaliplatin with and without cetuximab in the first-line treatment of metastatic colorectal cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2009 Feb 10;27(5):663-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19114683.
5. ↑ Chang EY, Dorsey PB, Frankhouse J, Lee RG, Walts D, Johnson W, et al. *Combination of microsatellite instability and lymphocytic infiltrate as a prognostic indicator in colon cancer.* Arch Surg 2009 Jun;144(6):511-5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19528382.
6. ↑ Chow OS, Kuk D, Keskin M, Smith JJ, Camacho N, Pelossof R, et al. *KRAS and Combined KRAS/TP53 Mutations in Locally Advanced Rectal Cancer are Independently Associated with Decreased Response to Neoadjuvant Therapy.* Ann Surg Oncol 2016 Aug;23(8):2548-55 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27020587.
7. ↑ 7.0 7.1 7.2 7.3 7.4 7.5 Cohn AL, Shumaker GC, Khandelwal P, Smith DA, Neubauer MA, Mehta N, et al. *An open-label, single-arm, phase 2 trial of panitumumab plus FOLFIRI as second-line therapy in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer.* Clin Colorectal Cancer 2011 Sep;10(3):171-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21855038.

8. ↑ de Weger VA, Turksma AW, Voorham QJ, Euler Z, Bril H, van den Eertwegh AJ, et al. *Clinical effects of adjuvant active specific immunotherapy differ between patients with microsatellite-stable and microsatellite-instable colon cancer.* Clin Cancer Res 2012 Feb 1;18(3):882-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22156611.
9. ↑ 9.0 9.1 9.2 9.3 9.4 9.5 9.6 Díaz-Rubio E, Gómez-España A, Massutí B, Sastre J, Reboredo M, Manzano JL, et al. *Role of Kras status in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer receiving first-line chemotherapy plus bevacizumab: a TTD group cooperative study.* PLoS One 2012;7(10):e47345 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23174912.
10. ↑ 10.0 10.1 10.2 10.3 Ferri M, Lorenzon L, Onelli MR, La Torre M, Mercantini P, Virgilio E, et al. *Lymph node ratio is a stronger prognostic factor than microsatellite instability in colorectal cancer patients: results from a 7 years follow-up study.* Int J Surg 2013;11(9):1016-21 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23747976.
11. ↑ 11.0 11.1 11.2 11.3 11.4 11.5 11.6 11.7 11.8 11.9 French AJ, Sargent DJ, Burgart LJ, Foster NR, Kabat BF, Goldberg R, et al. *Prognostic significance of defective mismatch repair and BRAF V600E in patients with colon cancer.* Clin Cancer Res 2008 Jun 1;14(11):3408-15 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18519771.
12. ↑ 12.00 12.01 12.02 12.03 12.04 12.05 12.06 12.07 12.08 12.09 12.10 12.11 Gavin PG, Colangelo LH, Fumagalli D, Tanaka N, Remillard MY, Yothers G, et al. *Mutation profiling and microsatellite instability in stage II and III colon cancer: an assessment of their prognostic and oxaliplatin predictive value.* Clin Cancer Res 2012 Dec 1;18(23):6531-41 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23045248.
13. ↑ Hutchins G, Southward K, Handley K, Magill L, Beaumont C, Stahlschmidt J, et al. *Value of mismatch repair, KRAS, and BRAF mutations in predicting recurrence and benefits from chemotherapy in colorectal cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2011 Apr 1;29(10):1261-70 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21383284.
14. ↑ 14.0 14.1 14.2 14.3 14.4 14.5 14.6 Jover R, Zapater P, Castells A, Llor X, Andreu M, Cubiella J, et al. *The efficacy of adjuvant chemotherapy with 5-fluorouracil in colorectal cancer depends on the mismatch repair status.* Eur J Cancer 2009 Feb;45(3):365-73 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18722765.
15. ↑ 15.00 15.01 15.02 15.03 15.04 15.05 15.06 15.07 15.08 15.09 15.10 15.11 Kaczirek K, Ciuleanu TE, Vrbanec D, Marton E, Messinger D, Liegl-Atzwanger B, et al. *FOLFOX4 Plus Cetuximab for Patients With Previously Untreated Metastatic Colorectal Cancer According to Tumor RAS and BRAF Mutation Status: Updated Analysis of the CECOG/CORE 1.2.002 Study.* Clin Colorectal Cancer 2015 Jun;14(2):91-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25666295.
16. ↑ 16.00 16.01 16.02 16.03 16.04 16.05 16.06 16.07 16.08 16.09 16.10 Kadowaki S, Kakuta M, Takahashi S, Takahashi A, Arai Y, Nishimura Y, et al. *Prognostic value of KRAS and BRAF mutations in curatively resected colorectal cancer.* World J Gastroenterol 2015 Jan 28;21(4):1275-83 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25632202.
17. ↑ 17.0 17.1 17.2 17.3 Klingbiel D, Saridaki Z, Roth AD, Bosman FT, Delorenzi M, Tejpar S. *Prognosis of stage II and III colon cancer treated with adjuvant 5-fluorouracil or FOLFIRI in relation to microsatellite status: results of the PETACC-3 trial.* Ann Oncol 2015 Jan;26(1):126-32 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25361982.

18. ↑ 18.0 18.1 18.2 18.3 18.4 18.5 Koopman M, Kortman GA, Mekenkamp L, Ligtenberg MJ, Hoogerbrugge N, Antonini NF, et al. *Deficient mismatch repair system in patients with sporadic advanced colorectal cancer.* Br J Cancer 2009 Jan 27;100(2):266-73 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19165197.
19. ↑ 19.0 19.1 19.2 Nehls O, Okech T, Hsieh CJ, Enzinger T, Sarbia M, Borchard F, et al. *Studies on p53, BAX and Bcl-2 protein expression and microsatellite instability in stage III (UICC) colon cancer treated by adjuvant chemotherapy: major prognostic impact of proapoptotic BAX.* Br J Cancer 2007 May 7;96(9): 1409-18 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17426704.
20. ↑ 20.0 20.1 20.2 20.3 Ogino S, Meyerhardt JA, Irahara N, Niedzwiecki D, Hollis D, Saltz LB, et al. *KRAS mutation in stage III colon cancer and clinical outcome following intergroup trial CALGB 89803.* Clin Cancer Res 2009 Dec 1;15(23):7322-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19934290.
21. ↑ 21.00 21.01 21.02 21.03 21.04 21.05 21.06 21.07 21.08 21.09 21.10 Ogino S, Shima K, Meyerhardt JA, McCleary NJ, Ng K, Hollis D, et al. *Predictive and prognostic roles of BRAF mutation in stage III colon cancer: results from intergroup trial CALGB 89803.* Clin Cancer Res 2012 Feb 1;18(3):890-900 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22147942.
22. ↑ 22.0 22.1 22.2 22.3 22.4 22.5 Pectasides D, Karavasilis V, Papaxoinis G, Gourgioti G, Makatsoris T, Raptou G, et al. *Randomized phase III clinical trial comparing the combination of capecitabine and oxaliplatin (CAPOX) with the combination of 5-fluorouracil, leucovorin and oxaliplatin (modified FOLFOX6) as adjuvant therapy in patients with operated high-risk stage II or stage III colorectal cancer.* BMC Cancer 2015 May 10;15:384 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25956750.
23. ↑ 23.0 23.1 23.2 23.3 23.4 23.5 Peeters M, Oliner KS, Parker A, Siena S, Van Cutsem E, Huang J, et al. *Massively parallel tumor multigene sequencing to evaluate response to panitumumab in a randomized phase III study of metastatic colorectal cancer.* Clin Cancer Res 2013 Apr 1;19(7):1902-12 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23325582.
24. ↑ 24.0 24.1 24.2 24.3 Price TJ, Bruhn MA, Lee CK, Hardingham JE, Townsend AR, Mann KP, et al. *Correlation of extended RAS and PIK3CA gene mutation status with outcomes from the phase III AGITG MAX STUDY involving capecitabine alone or in combination with bevacizumab plus or minus mitomycin C in advanced colorectal cancer.* Br J Cancer 2015 Mar 17;112(6):963-70 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov /pubmed/25742472.
25. ↑ 25.0 25.1 25.2 25.3 25.4 Reinacher-Schick A, Schulmann K, Modest DP, Bruns N, Graeven U, Jaworska M, et al. *Effect of KRAS codon13 mutations in patients with advanced colorectal cancer (advanced CRC) under oxaliplatin containing chemotherapy. Results from a translational study of the AIO colorectal study group.* BMC Cancer 2012 Aug 9;12:349 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22876876.
26. ↑ 26.0 26.1 26.2 26.3 26.4 26.5 26.6 Richman SD, Seymour MT, Chambers P, Elliott F, Daly CL, Meade AM, et al. *KRAS and BRAF mutations in advanced colorectal cancer are associated with poor prognosis but do not preclude benefit from oxaliplatin or irinotecan: results from the MRC FOCUS trial.* J Clin Oncol 2009 Dec 10; 27(35):5931-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19884549.
27. ↑ 27.0 27.1 27.2 27.3 27.4 27.5 27.6 27.7 Roth AD, Delorenzi M, Tejpar S, Yan P, Klingbiel D, Fiocca R, et al. *Integrated analysis of molecular and clinical prognostic factors in stage II/III colon cancer.* J Natl Cancer Inst 2012 Nov 7;104(21):1635-46 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23104212.

28. ↑ 28.0 28.1 28.2 28.3 28.4 28.5 Sargent DJ, Marsoni S, Monges G, Thibodeau SN, Labianca R, Hamilton SR, et al. *Defective mismatch repair as a predictive marker for lack of efficacy of fluorouracil-based adjuvant therapy in colon cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2010 Jul 10;28(20):3219-26 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20498393.
29. ↑ 29.0 29.1 29.2 29.3 29.4 29.5 Sinicrope FA, Foster NR, Thibodeau SN, Marsoni S, Monges G, Labianca R, et al. *DNA mismatch repair status and colon cancer recurrence and survival in clinical trials of 5-fluorouracil-based adjuvant therapy.* J Natl Cancer Inst 2011 Jun 8;103(11):863-75 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21597022.
30. ↑ Sinicrope FA, Mahoney MR, Smyrk TC, Thibodeau SN, Warren RS, Bertagnolli MM, et al. *Prognostic impact of deficient DNA mismatch repair in patients with stage III colon cancer from a randomized trial of FOLFOX-based adjuvant chemotherapy.* J Clin Oncol 2013 Oct 10;31(29):3664-72 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24019539.
31. ↑ 31.0 31.1 31.2 31.3 31.4 31.5 31.6 31.7 Sinicrope FA, Rego RL, Halling KC, Foster N, Sargent DJ, La Plant B, et al. *Prognostic impact of microsatellite instability and DNA ploidy in human colon carcinoma patients.* Gastroenterology 2006 Sep;131(3):729-37 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16952542.
32. ↑ 32.0 32.1 32.2 32.3 32.4 32.5 32.6 32.7 32.8 Sinicrope FA, Rego RL, Halling KC, Foster NR, Sargent DJ, La Plant B, et al. *Thymidylate synthase expression in colon carcinomas with microsatellite instability.* Clin Cancer Res 2006 May 1;12(9):2738-44 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16675565.
33. ↑ 33.0 33.1 33.2 33.3 33.4 Smith JC, Brooks L, Hoff PM, McWalter G, Dearden S, Morgan SR, et al. *KRAS mutations are associated with inferior clinical outcome in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer, but are not predictive for benefit with cediranib.* Eur J Cancer 2013 Jul;49(10):2424-32 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23510802.
34. ↑ Srdjan M, Jadranka A, Ivan D, Branimir Z, Daniela B, Petar S, et al. *Microsatellite instability & survival in patients with stage II/III colorectal carcinoma.* Indian J Med Res 2016 May;143(Supplement):S104-S111 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27748284.
35. ↑ Taieb J, Zaanan A, Le Malicot K, Julié C, Blons H, Mineur L, et al. *Prognostic Effect of BRAF and KRAS Mutations in Patients With Stage III Colon Cancer Treated With Leucovorin, Fluorouracil, and Oxaliplatin With or Without Cetuximab: A Post Hoc Analysis of the PETACC-8 Trial.* JAMA Oncol 2016 Jan 14;:1-11 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26768652.
36. ↑ 36.0 36.1 36.2 36.3 36.4 36.5 Tol J, Koopman M, Cats A, Rodenburg CJ, Creemers GJ, Schrama JG, et al. *Chemotherapy, bevacizumab, and cetuximab in metastatic colorectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 2009 Feb 5;360(6):563-72 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19196673.
37. ↑ 37.0 37.1 37.2 37.3 37.4 Westra JL, Schaapveld M, Hollema H, de Boer JP, Kraak MM, de Jong D, et al. *Determination of TP53 mutation is more relevant than microsatellite instability status for the prediction of disease-free survival in adjuvant-treated stage III colon cancer patients.* J Clin Oncol 2005 Aug 20;23(24):5635-43 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16110022.
38. ↑ 38.0 38.1 38.2 38.3 38.4 Yoon YS, Yu CS, Kim TW, Kim JH, Jang SJ, Cho DH, et al. *Mismatch repair status in sporadic colorectal cancer: immunohistochemistry and microsatellite instability analyses.* J Gastroenterol Hepatol 2011 Dec;26(12):1733-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21615788.

39. ↑ 39.00 39.01 39.02 39.03 39.04 39.05 39.06 39.07 39.08 39.09 39.10 39.11 Saridaki Z, Tzardi M, Sfakianaki M, Papadaki C, Voutsina A, Kalykaki A, et al. *BRAFV600E mutation analysis in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer (mCRC) in daily clinical practice: correlations with clinical characteristics, and its impact on patients' outcome.* PLoS One 2013 Dec 18;8(12):e84604 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24367680.
40. ↑ 40.0 40.1 40.2 40.3 Alonso-Espinaco V, Cuatrecasas M, Alonso V, Escudero P, Marmol M, Horndler C, et al. *RAC1b overexpression correlates with poor prognosis in KRAS/BRAF WT metastatic colorectal cancer patients treated with first-line FOLFOX/XELOX chemotherapy.* Eur J Cancer 2014 Jul;50(11):1973-81 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24833563.
41. ↑ Andrici J, Farzin M, Sioson L, Clarkson A, Watson N, Toon CW, et al. *Mismatch repair deficiency as a prognostic factor in mucinous colorectal cancer.* Mod Pathol 2016 Mar;29(3):266-74 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26769140.
42. ↑ 42.0 42.1 42.2 42.3 42.4 42.5 Azuara D, Santos C, Lopez-Doriga A, Grasselli J, Nadal M, Sanjuan X, et al. *Nanofluidic Digital PCR and Extended Genotyping of RAS and BRAF for Improved Selection of Metastatic Colorectal Cancer Patients for Anti-EGFR Therapies.* Mol Cancer Ther 2016 May;15(5):1106-12 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27037411.
43. ↑ 43.0 43.1 43.2 43.3 Bengala C, Bettelli S, Bertolini F, Sartori G, Fontana A, Malavasi N, et al. *Prognostic role of EGFR gene copy number and KRAS mutation in patients with locally advanced rectal cancer treated with preoperative chemoradiotherapy.* Br J Cancer 2010 Sep 28;103(7):1019-24 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20842128.
44. ↑ Cappuzzo F, Sacconi A, Landi L, Ludovini V, Biagioni F, D'Incecco A, et al. *MicroRNA signature in metastatic colorectal cancer patients treated with anti-EGFR monoclonal antibodies.* Clin Colorectal Cancer 2014 Mar;13(1):37-45.e4 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24503111.
45. ↑ 45.0 45.1 45.2 45.3 Carethers JM, Smith EJ, Behling CA, Nguyen L, Tajima A, Doctolero RT, et al. *Use of 5-fluorouracil and survival in patients with microsatellite-unstable colorectal cancer.* Gastroenterology 2004 Feb;126(2):394-401 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14762775.
46. ↑ 46.0 46.1 46.2 46.3 46.4 Cejas P, López-Gómez M, Aguayo C, Madero R, de Castro Carpeño J, Belda-Iniesta C, et al. *KRAS mutations in primary colorectal cancer tumors and related metastases: a potential role in prediction of lung metastasis.* PLoS One 2009 Dec 18;4(12):e8199 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20020061.
47. ↑ Dahlin AM, Palmqvist R, Henriksson ML, Jacobsson M, Eklöf V, Rutegård J, et al. *The role of the CpG island methylator phenotype in colorectal cancer prognosis depends on microsatellite instability screening status.* Clin Cancer Res 2010 Mar 15;16(6):1845-55 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20197478.
48. ↑ 48.0 48.1 48.2 48.3 48.4 Deng Y, Wang L, Tan S, Kim GP, Dou R, Chen D, et al. *KRAS as a predictor of poor prognosis and benefit from postoperative FOLFOX chemotherapy in patients with stage II and III colorectal cancer.* Mol Oncol 2015 Aug;9(7):1341-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25864038.
49. ↑ 49.00 49.01 49.02 49.03 49.04 49.05 49.06 49.07 49.08 49.09 49.10 49.11 49.12 Di Nicolantonio F, Martini M, Molinari F, Sartore-Bianchi A, Arena S, Saletti P, et al. *Wild-type BRAF is required for response to panitumumab or cetuximab in metastatic colorectal cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2008 Dec 10;26(35):5705-12 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19001320.

50. ↑ 50.0 50.1 50.2 50.3 50.4 50.5 50.6 50.7 50.8 50.9 Donada M, Bonin S, Barbazza R, Pettirosso D, Stanta G. *Management of stage II colon cancer - the use of molecular biomarkers for adjuvant therapy decision.* BMC Gastroenterol 2013 Feb 27;13:36 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23446022.
51. ↑ 51.0 51.1 51.2 Du C, Zhao J, Xue W, Dou F, Gu J. *Prognostic value of microsatellite instability in sporadic locally advanced rectal cancer following neoadjuvant radiotherapy.* Histopathology 2013 Apr;62(5):723-30 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23425253.
52. ↑ 52.0 52.1 52.2 52.3 52.4 52.5 52.6 52.7 52.8 Fariña-Sarasqueta A, van Lijnschoten G, Moerland E, Creemers GJ, Lemmens VE, Rutten HJ, et al. *The BRAF V600E mutation is an independent prognostic factor for survival in stage II and stage III colon cancer patients.* Ann Oncol 2010 Dec;21(12):2396-402 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20501503.
53. ↑ 53.0 53.1 53.2 53.3 53.4 53.5 53.6 Gajate P, Sastre J, Bando I, Alonso T, Cillero L, Sanz J, et al. *Influence of KRAS p.G13D mutation in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer treated with cetuximab.* Clin Colorectal Cancer 2012 Dec;11(4):291-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22537608.
54. ↑ 54.0 54.1 54.2 54.3 54.4 54.5 54.6 54.7 54.8 54.9 Gao J, Wang TT, Yu JW, Li YY, Shen L. *Wild-Type KRAS and BRAF Could Predict Response to Cetuximab in Chinese Colorectal Cancer Patients.* Chin J Cancer Res 2011 Dec;23(4):271-5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23357879.
55. ↑ 55.0 55.1 55.2 55.3 55.4 55.5 Garrido-Laguna I, Hong DS, Janku F, Nguyen LM, Falchook GS, Fu S, et al. *KRASness and PIK3CAness in patients with advanced colorectal cancer: outcome after treatment with early-phase trials with targeted pathway inhibitors.* PLoS One 2012;7(5):e38033 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22675430.
56. ↑ 56.0 56.1 56.2 56.3 56.4 Huh JW, Kim HC, Kim SH, Park YA, Cho YB, Yun SH, et al. *Mismatch repair system and p53 expression in patients with T1 and T2 colorectal cancer: predictive role of lymph node metastasis and survival.* J Surg Oncol 2014 Jun;109(8):848-52 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24623275.
57. ↑ 57.0 57.1 57.2 57.3 57.4 57.5 57.6 57.7 57.8 57.9 Igarashi H, Kurihara H, Mitsuhashi K, Ito M, Okuda H, Kanno S, et al. *Association of MicroRNA-31-5p with Clinical Efficacy of Anti-EGFR Therapy in Patients with Metastatic Colorectal Cancer.* Ann Surg Oncol 2015 Aug;22(8):2640-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25472647.
58. ↑ 58.0 58.1 58.2 58.3 58.4 Jensen SA, Vainer B, Kruhøffer M, Sørensen JB. *Microsatellite instability in colorectal cancer and association with thymidylate synthase and dihydropyrimidine dehydrogenase expression.* BMC Cancer 2009 Jan 20;9:25 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19154585.
59. ↑ 59.00 59.01 59.02 59.03 59.04 59.05 59.06 59.07 59.08 59.09 59.10 Vogelaar F, Van Erning F, Reimers M, Van Der Linden J, Pruijt J, Van Den Brule A, et al. *The prognostic value of Microsatellite Instability, KRAS, BRAF and PIK3CA mutations in stage II colon cancer patients.* Mol Med 2015 Dec 17;:1-26 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26716438.
60. ↑ 60.0 60.1 60.2 Kang BW, Kim JG, Lee SJ, Chae YS, Moon JH, Sohn SK, et al. *Clinical significance of microsatellite instability for stage II or III colorectal cancer following adjuvant therapy with doxifluridine.* Med Oncol 2011 Dec;28 Suppl 1:S214-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20953739.
61. ↑ 61.0 61.1 61.2 Karagkounis G, Torbenson MS, Daniel HD, Azad NS, Diaz LA Jr, Donehower RC, et al. *Incidence and prognostic impact of KRAS and BRAF mutation in patients undergoing liver surgery for colorectal metastases.* Cancer 2013 Dec 1;119(23):4137-44 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24104864.

62. ↑ 62.0 62.1 62.2 Kemeny NE, Chou JF, Capanu M, Gewirtz AN, Cercek A, Kingham TP, et al. *KRAS mutation influences recurrence patterns in patients undergoing hepatic resection of colorectal metastases.* Cancer 2014 Dec 15;120(24):3965-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25155157.
63. ↑ 63.0 63.1 63.2 63.3 Kim JC, Roh SA, Cho DH, Kim TW, Yoon SN, Kim CW, et al. *Chemoresponsiveness associated with canonical molecular changes in colorectal adenocarcinomas.* Anticancer Res 2009 Aug;29 (8):3115-23 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19661324.
64. ↑ 64.0 64.1 64.2 64.3 64.4 64.5 Kim JE, Hong YS, Kim HJ, Kim KP, Lee JL, Park SJ, et al. *Defective Mismatch Repair Status was not Associated with DFS and OS in Stage II Colon Cancer Treated with Adjuvant Chemotherapy.* Ann Surg Oncol 2015 Dec;22 Suppl 3:S630-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov /pubmed/26271397.
65. ↑ 65.0 65.1 65.2 65.3 65.4 65.5 Kim JE, Hong YS, Ryu MH, Lee JL, Chang HM, Lim SB, et al. *Association between deficient mismatch repair system and efficacy to irinotecan-containing chemotherapy in metastatic colon cancer.* Cancer Sci 2011 Sep;102(9):1706-11 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov /pubmed/21679278.
66. ↑ 66.0 66.1 66.2 66.3 66.4 66.5 66.6 Kim ST, Lee J, Park SH, Park JO, Lim HY, Kang WK, et al. *The effect of DNA mismatch repair (MMR) status on oxaliplatin-based first-line chemotherapy as in recurrent or metastatic colon cancer.* Med Oncol 2010 Dec;27(4):1277-85 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed /19949897.
67. ↑ 67.0 67.1 67.2 67.3 67.4 67.5 Kim ST, Park KH, Kim JS, Shin SW, Kim YH. *Impact of KRAS Mutation Status on Outcomes in Metastatic Colon Cancer Patients without Anti-Epidermal Growth Factor Receptor Therapy.* Cancer Res Treat 2013 Mar;45(1):55-62 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23613671.
68. ↑ 68.0 68.1 68.2 68.3 Kim YH, Min BH, Choi HK, Kim SJ, Kim KM, Kim JY, et al. *Sporadic colorectal carcinomas with low-level microsatellite instability in Korea: do they form a distinct subgroup with distinguished clinicopathological features?* J Surg Oncol 2009 May 1;99(6):351-5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih. gov/pubmed/19204939.
69. ↑ 69.0 69.1 Lanza G, Gafà R, Santini A, Maestri I, Guerzoni L, Cavazzini L. *Immunohistochemical test for MLH1 and MSH2 expression predicts clinical outcome in stage II and III colorectal cancer patients.* J Clin Oncol 2006 May 20;24(15):2359-67 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16710035.
70. ↑ 70.0 70.1 70.2 70.3 70.4 70.5 Lee DW, Kim KJ, Han SW, Lee HJ, Rhee YY, Bae JM, et al. *KRAS mutation is associated with worse prognosis in stage III or high-risk stage II colon cancer patients treated with adjuvant FOLFOX.* Ann Surg Oncol 2015 Jan;22(1):187-94 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov /pubmed/24889488.
71. ↑ 71.0 71.1 71.2 71.3 71.4 Lee JW, Lee JH, Shim BY, Kim SH, Chung MJ, Kye BH, et al. *KRAS Mutation Status Is Not a Predictor for Tumor Response and Survival in Rectal Cancer Patients Who Received Preoperative Radiotherapy With 5-Fluoropyrimidine Followed by Curative Surgery.* Medicine (Baltimore) 2015 Aug;94 (31):e1284 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26252300.
72. ↑ 72.0 72.1 72.2 72.3 72.4 Lee SY, Kim DW, Lee HS, Ihn MH, Oh HK, Min BS, et al. *Low-Level Microsatellite Instability as a Potential Prognostic Factor in Sporadic Colorectal Cancer.* Medicine (Baltimore) 2015 Dec; 94(50):e2260 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26683947.

73. ↑ 73.0 73.1 73.2 73.3 73.4 Li P, Fang YJ, Li F, Ou QJ, Chen G, Ma G. *ERCC1, defective mismatch repair status as predictive biomarkers of survival for stage III colon cancer patients receiving oxaliplatin-based adjuvant chemotherapy.* Br J Cancer 2013 Apr 2;108(6):1238-44 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23481186.

74. ↑ 74.00 74.01 74.02 74.03 74.04 74.05 74.06 74.07 74.08 74.09 74.10 74.11 Lin Q, Ye Q, Zhu D, Wei Y, Ren L, Ye L, et al. *Determinants of long-term outcome in patients undergoing simultaneous resection of synchronous colorectal liver metastases.* PLoS One 2014 Aug 27;9(8):e105747 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25162714.

75. ↑ 75.0 75.1 75.2 Lin YL, Liau JY, Yu SC, Tseng LH, Lin LI, Liang JT, et al. *Oxaliplatin-based Chemotherapy Might Provide Longer Progression-Free Survival in KRAS Mutant Metastatic Colorectal Cancer.* Transl Oncol 2013 Jun;6(3):363-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23730417.

76. ↑ 76.0 76.1 76.2 76.3 76.4 76.5 76.6 76.7 76.8 76.9 Llovet P, Sastre J, Ortega JS, Bando I, Ferrer M, García-Alfonso P, et al. *Prognostic Value of BRAF, PI3K, PTEN, EGFR Copy Number, Amphiregulin and Epiregulin Status in Patients with KRAS Codon 12 Wild-Type Metastatic Colorectal Cancer Receiving First-Line Chemotherapy with Anti-EGFR Therapy.* Mol Diagn Ther 2015 Dec;19(6):397-408 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26341080.

77. ↑ 77.0 77.1 77.2 77.3 Ma BB, Mo F, Tong JH, Wong A, Wong SC, Ho WM, et al. *Elucidating the prognostic significance of KRAS, NRAS, BRAF and PIK3CA mutations in Chinese patients with metastatic colorectal cancer.* Asia Pac J Clin Oncol 2015 Jun;11(2):160-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25865669.

78. ↑ 78.0 78.1 78.2 Margonis GA, Kim Y, Spolverato G, Ejaz A, Gupta R, Cosgrove D, et al. *Association Between Specific Mutations in KRAS Codon 12 and Colorectal Liver Metastasis.* JAMA Surg 2015 Aug;150(8):722-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26038887.

79. ↑ 79.0 79.1 79.2 79.3 79.4 79.5 Markovic S, Antic J, Dragicevic N, Hamelin R, Krivokapic Z. *High-frequency microsatellite instability and BRAF mutation (V600E) in unselected Serbian patients with colorectal cancer.* J Mol Histol 2012 Apr;43(2):137-43 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22210186.

80. ↑ Merok MA, Ahlquist T, Røyrvik EC, Tufteland KF, Hektoen M, Sjo OH, et al. *Microsatellite instability has a positive prognostic impact on stage II colorectal cancer after complete resection: results from a large, consecutive Norwegian series.* Ann Oncol 2013 May;24(5):1274-82 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23235802.

81. ↑ Mori K, Toiyama Y, Saigusa S, Fujikawa H, Hiro J, Kobayashi M, et al. *Systemic Analysis of Predictive Biomarkers for Recurrence in Colorectal Cancer Patients Treated with Curative Surgery.* Dig Dis Sci 2015 Aug;60(8):2477-87 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25840921.

82. ↑ 82.0 82.1 82.2 Nakanishi R, Harada J, Tuul M, Zhao Y, Ando K, Saeki H, et al. *Prognostic relevance of KRAS and BRAF mutations in Japanese patients with colorectal cancer.* Int J Clin Oncol 2013 Dec;18(6):1042-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23188063.

83. ↑ 83.0 83.1 83.2 83.3 83.4 83.5 Nash GM, Gimbel M, Cohen AM, Zeng ZS, Ndubuisi MI, Nathanson DR, et al. *KRAS mutation and microsatellite instability: two genetic markers of early tumor development that influence the prognosis of colorectal cancer.* Ann Surg Oncol 2010 Feb;17(2):416-24 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19813061.

84. ↑ Nehls O, Hass HG, Okech T, Zenner S, Hsieh CJ, Sarbia M, et al. *Prognostic implications of BAX protein expression and microsatellite instability in all non-metastatic stages of primary colon cancer treated by surgery alone.* Int J Colorectal Dis 2009 Jun;24(6):655-63 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19221769.
85. ↑ Nitsche U, Rosenberg R, Balmert A, Schuster T, Slotta-Huspenina J, Herrmann P, et al. *Integrative marker analysis allows risk assessment for metastasis in stage II colon cancer.* Ann Surg 2012 Nov;256(5):763-71; discussion 771 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23095620.
86. ↑ 86.0 86.1 86.2 86.3 Oh SY, Kim DY, Kim YB, Suh KW. *Oncologic outcomes after adjuvant chemotherapy using FOLFOX in MSI-H sporadic stage III colon cancer.* World J Surg 2013 Oct;37(10):2497-503 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23754140.
87. ↑ 87.0 87.1 87.2 87.3 87.4 87.5 87.6 87.7 Ooki A, Akagi K, Yatsuoka T, Asayama M, Hara H, Takahashi A, et al. *Combined microsatellite instability and BRAF gene status as biomarkers for adjuvant chemotherapy in stage III colorectal cancer.* J Surg Oncol 2014 Dec;110(8):982-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25154726.
88. ↑ 88.0 88.1 88.2 Osumi H, Shinozaki E, Suenaga M, Matsusaka S, Konishi T, Akiyoshi T, et al. *RAS mutation is a prognostic biomarker in colorectal cancer patients with metastasectomy.* Int J Cancer 2016 Aug 15;139(4):803-11 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27004837.
89. ↑ 89.0 89.1 89.2 Parc Y, Gueroult S, Mourra N, Serfaty L, Fléjou JF, Tiret E, et al. *Prognostic significance of microsatellite instability determined by immunohistochemical staining of MSH2 and MLH1 in sporadic T3N0M0 colon cancer.* Gut 2004 Mar;53(3):371-5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14960518.
90. ↑ 90.0 90.1 90.2 Park JH, Powell AG, Roxburgh CS, Horgan PG, McMillan DC, Edwards J. *Mismatch repair status in patients with primary operable colorectal cancer: associations with the local and systemic tumour environment.* Br J Cancer 2016 Mar 1;114(5):562-70 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26859693.
91. ↑ Pentheroudakis G, Kotoula V, De Roock W, Kouvatseas G, Papakostas P, Makatsoris T, et al. *Biomarkers of benefit from cetuximab-based therapy in metastatic colorectal cancer: interaction of EGFR ligand expression with RAS/RAF, PIK3CA genotypes.* BMC Cancer 2013 Feb 2;13:49 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23374602.
92. ↑ 92.0 92.1 92.2 92.3 92.4 Renaud S, Romain B, Falcoz PE, Olland A, Santelmo N, Brigand C, et al. *KRAS and BRAF mutations are prognostic biomarkers in patients undergoing lung metastasectomy of colorectal cancer.* Br J Cancer 2015 Feb 17;112(4):720-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25688918.
93. ↑ 93.0 93.1 93.2 93.3 93.4 93.5 93.6 93.7 93.8 Saridaki Z, Papadatos-Pastos D, Tzardi M, Mavroudis D, Bairaktari E, Arvanity H, et al. *BRAF mutations, microsatellite instability status and cyclin D1 expression predict metastatic colorectal patients' outcome.* Br J Cancer 2010 Jun 8;102(12):1762-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20485284.
94. ↑ 94.00 94.01 94.02 94.03 94.04 94.05 94.06 94.07 94.08 94.09 94.10 94.11 94.12 94.13 Saridaki Z, Tzardi M, Papadaki C, Sfakianaki M, Pega F, Kalikaki A, et al. *Impact of KRAS, BRAF, PIK3CA mutations, PTEN, AREG, EREG expression and skin rash in ≥ 2 line cetuximab-based therapy of colorectal cancer patients.* PLoS One 2011 Jan 20;6(1):e15980 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21283802.

95. ↑ 95.0 95.1 95.2 Sasaki K, Margonis GA, Wilson A, Kim Y, Buettner S, Andreatos N, et al. *Prognostic Implication of KRAS Status after Hepatectomy for Colorectal Liver Metastases Varies According to Primary Colorectal Tumor Location.* Ann Surg Oncol 2016 Oct;23(11):3736-43 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27352204.

96. ↑ 96.0 96.1 96.2 96.3 96.4 96.5 Sasaki Y, Hamaguchi T, Yamada Y, Takahashi N, Shoji H, Honma Y, et al. *Value of KRAS, BRAF, and PIK3CA Mutations and Survival Benefit from Systemic Chemotherapy in Colorectal Peritoneal Carcinomatosis.* Asian Pac J Cancer Prev 2016;17(2):539-43 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26925640.

97. ↑ 97.0 97.1 97.2 97.3 97.4 Sharma N, Saifo M, Tamaskar IR, Bhuvaneswari R, Mashtare T, Fakih M. *KRAS status and clinical outcome in metastatic colorectal cancer patients treated with first-line FOLFOX chemotherapy.* J Gastrointest Oncol 2010 Dec;1(2):90-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22811812.

98. ↑ Søreide K, Slewa A, Stokkeland PJ, van Diermen B, Janssen EA, Søreide JA, et al. *Microsatellite instability and DNA ploidy in colorectal cancer: potential implications for patients undergoing systematic surveillance after resection.* Cancer 2009 Jan 15;115(2):271-82 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19109816.

99. ↑ 99.0 99.1 99.2 99.3 99.4 99.5 99.6 99.7 Souglakos J, Philips J, Wang R, Marwah S, Silver M, Tzardi M, et al. *Prognostic and predictive value of common mutations for treatment response and survival in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer.* Br J Cancer 2009 Aug 4;101(3):465-72 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19603024.

100. ↑ 100.0 100.1 100.2 100.3 Stec R, Bodnar L, Charkiewicz R, Korniluk J, Rokita M, Smoter M, et al. *K-Ras gene mutation status as a prognostic and predictive factor in patients with colorectal cancer undergoing irinotecan- or oxaliplatin-based chemotherapy.* Cancer Biol Ther 2012 Nov;13(13):1235-43 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22909976.

101. ↑ 101.0 101.1 101.2 101.3 Thomas ML, Hewett PJ, Ruszkiewicz AR, Moore JW. *Clinicopathological predictors of benefit from adjuvant chemotherapy for stage C colorectal cancer: Microsatellite unstable cases benefit.* Asia Pac J Clin Oncol 2015 Dec;11(4):343-51 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26471980.

102. ↑ 102.0 102.1 102.2 Yang L, Sun Y, Huang XE, Yu DS, Zhou JN, Zhou X, et al. *Carcinoma microsatellite instability status as a predictor of benefit from fluorouracil-based adjuvant chemotherapy for stage II rectal cancer.* Asian Pac J Cancer Prev 2015;16(4):1545-51 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25743829.

103. ↑ 103.0 103.1 103.2 103.3 103.4 103.5 103.6 Yang YH, Lin JK, Chen WS, Lin TC, Yang SH, Jiang JK, et al. *Comparison of cetuximab to bevacizumab as the first-line bio-chemotherapy for patients with metastatic colorectal cancer: superior progression-free survival is restricted to patients with measurable tumors and objective tumor response--a retrospective study.* J Cancer Res Clin Oncol 2014 Nov;140(11):1927-36 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24934725.

104. ↑ 104.0 104.1 104.2 104.3 104.4 104.5 104.6 104.7 Zaanan A, Fléjou JF, Emile JF, Des GG, Cuilliere-Dartigues P, Malka D, et al. *Defective mismatch repair status as a prognostic biomarker of disease-free survival in stage III colon cancer patients treated with adjuvant FOLFOX chemotherapy.* Clin Cancer Res 2011 Dec 1;17(23):7470-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21998335.

105. ↑ 105.0 105.1 105.2 105.3 105.4 105.5 Zocche DM, Ramirez C, Fontao FM, Costa LD, Redal MA. *Global impact of KRAS mutation patterns in FOLFOX treated metastatic colorectal cancer.* Front Genet 2015 Mar 30;6: 116 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25870609.
106. ↑ Corcoran RB, Atreya CE, Falchook GS, Kwak EL, Ryan DP, Bendell JC, et al. *Combined BRAF and MEK Inhibition With Dabrafenib and Trametinib in BRAF V600-Mutant Colorectal Cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2015 Dec 1;33(34):4023-31 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26392102.
107. ↑ Corcoran RB, Ebi H, Turke AB, Coffee EM, Nishino M, Cogdill AP, et al. *EGFR-mediated re-activation of MAPK signaling contributes to insensitivity of BRAF mutant colorectal cancers to RAF inhibition with vemurafenib.* Cancer Discov 2012 Mar;2(3):227-35 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed /22448344.
108. ↑ Hyman DM, Puzanov I, Subbiah V, Faris JE, Chau I, Blay JY, et al. *Vemurafenib in Multiple Nonmelanoma Cancers with BRAF V600 Mutations.* N Engl J Med 2015 Aug 20;373(8):726-36 Available from: http://www. ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26287849.
109. ↑ Prahallad A, Sun C, Huang S, Di Nicolantonio F, Salazar R, Zecchin D, et al. *Unresponsiveness of colon cancer to BRAF(V600E) inhibition through feedback activation of EGFR.* Nature 2012 Jan 26;483(7387): 100-3 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22281684.

Back to top

## 11.8.12 Appendices

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| View recommendation components | View pending evidence | View body of evidence | View all comments | View literature search |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| View PICO | NHMRC Evidence statement form PTH1 | Systematic review report PTH1 |

Back to top

# 12 Preparation for surgery and perioperative optimisation

**Contents**



# 12.1 Background

Most patients diagnosed with colorectal carcinoma will undergo an operation. This may occur soon after diagnosis or may occur after neoadjuvant therapy in the case of rectal carcinoma, or after chemotherapy in patients with metastatic disease.

The decision to operate on an individual patient is based on an assessment of the patient's cancer burden, but also on patient factors including pre-existing comorbidities and patient's wishes.

Adequate pre-operative assessment will vary between patients, but in addition to pre-operative cancer staging, it should incorporate blood tests (including anaemia screening, electrolytes and CEA levels)[1][2][3][4] cardiopulmonary testing in selected patients, and referral to specialist services including a perioperative physician if necessary.[5][6]

Patients having elective colorectal cancer surgery should ideally be seen in a pre-admission clinic if available, and/or by an anaesthetist if possible.

A variety of measures and interventions can be used in the perioperative period to improve patient outcomes in the short and long term.

## 12.1.1 Chapter subsections

Please see sections:

- Multidisciplinary meetings
- Perioperative anaemia management
- Thromboembolic prophylaxis
- Nutritional interventions
- Stomal therapy
- Body temperature
- Enhanced recovery after surgery
- Mechanical bowel preparation with or without antibiotic prophylaxis (PRP2-5,7)

## 12.2 References

1. ↑ Harrison LE, Guillem JG, Paty P, Cohen AM. *Preoperative carcinoembryonic antigen predicts outcomes in node-negative colon cancer patients: a multivariate analysis of 572 patients.* J Am Coll Surg 1997 Jul;185 (1):55-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9208961.
2. ↑ Yang KM, Park IJ, Kim CW, Roh SA, Cho DH, Kim JC. *The prognostic significance and treatment modality for elevated pre- and postoperative serum CEA in colorectal cancer patients.* Ann Surg Treat Res 2016 Oct; 91(4):165-171 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27757393.
3. ↑ Kotzé A, Harris A, Baker C, Iqbal T, Lavies N, Richards T, et al. *British Committee for Standards in Haematology Guidelines on the Identification and Management of Pre-Operative Anaemia.* Br J Haematol 2015 Nov;171(3):322-31 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26343392.
4. ↑ Amato A, Pescatori M. *Perioperative blood transfusions for the recurrence of colorectal cancer.* Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2006 Jan 25;(1):CD005033 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov /pubmed/16437512.
5. ↑ Cheema FN, Abraham NS, Berger DH, Albo D, Taffet GE, Naik AD. *Novel approaches to perioperative assessment and intervention may improve long-term outcomes after colorectal cancer resection in older adults.* Ann Surg 2011 May;253(5):867-74 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21183846.
6. ↑ O'Neill F, Carter E, Pink N, Smith I. *Routine preoperative tests for elective surgery: summary of updated NICE guidance.* BMJ 2016 Jul 14;354:i3292 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27418436.

## 12.3 References

Back to top

# 12.1 Introduction: preparation for surgery and perioperative optimisation

**Contents**

## 12.1.1 Background

Most patients diagnosed with colorectal carcinoma will undergo an operation. This may occur soon after diagnosis or may occur after neoadjuvant therapy in the case of rectal carcinoma, or after chemotherapy in patients with metastatic disease.

The decision to operate on an individual patient is based on an assessment of the patient's cancer burden, but also on patient factors including pre-existing comorbidities and patient's wishes.

Adequate pre-operative assessment will vary between patients, but in addition to pre-operative cancer staging, it should incorporate blood tests (including anaemia screening, electrolytes and CEA levels)[1][2][3][4] cardiopulmonary testing in selected patients, and referral to specialist services including a perioperative physician if necessary.[5][6]

Patients having elective colorectal cancer surgery should ideally be seen in a pre-admission clinic if available, and/or by an anaesthetist if possible.

A variety of measures and interventions can be used in the perioperative period to improve patient outcomes in the short and long term.

### 12.1.1.1 Chapter subsections

Please see sections:

- Multidisciplinary meetings
- Perioperative anaemia management
- Thromboembolic prophylaxis
- Nutritional interventions
- Stomal therapy
- Body temperature
- Enhanced recovery after surgery
- Mechanical bowel preparation with or without antibiotic prophylaxis (PRP2-5,7)

## 12.1.2 References

1. ↑ Harrison LE, Guillem JG, Paty P, Cohen AM. *Preoperative carcinoembryonic antigen predicts outcomes in node-negative colon cancer patients: a multivariate analysis of 572 patients.* J Am Coll Surg 1997 Jul;185 (1):55-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9208961.
2. ↑ Yang KM, Park IJ, Kim CW, Roh SA, Cho DH, Kim JC. *The prognostic significance and treatment modality for elevated pre- and postoperative serum CEA in colorectal cancer patients.* Ann Surg Treat Res 2016 Oct; 91(4):165-171 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27757393.

3. ↑ Kotzé A, Harris A, Baker C, Iqbal T, Lavies N, Richards T, et al. *British Committee for Standards in Haematology Guidelines on the Identification and Management of Pre-Operative Anaemia.* Br J Haematol 2015 Nov;171(3):322-31 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26343392.
4. ↑ Amato A, Pescatori M. *Perioperative blood transfusions for the recurrence of colorectal cancer.* Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2006 Jan 25;(1):CD005033 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16437512.
5. ↑ Cheema FN, Abraham NS, Berger DH, Albo D, Taffet GE, Naik AD. *Novel approaches to perioperative assessment and intervention may improve long-term outcomes after colorectal cancer resection in older adults.* Ann Surg 2011 May;253(5):867-74 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21183846.
6. ↑ O'Neill F, Carter E, Pink N, Smith I. *Routine preoperative tests for elective surgery: summary of updated NICE guidance.* BMJ 2016 Jul 14;354:i3292 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27418436.

### 12.1.3 References

Back to top

## 12.2 MDT meetings

### 12.2.1 Background

Multidisciplinary team meetings, or tumour boards, where initiated in the mid-to-late 1990s in response to perceptions of inadequate and inequitable cancer treatment.[1] Most national and regional guidelines now suggest that all new colorectal cancer cases should be discussed at a multidisciplinary team meeting, with rectal cancers being discussed pre-operatively.[2][3][4][5][6][7][8]

Back to top

### 12.2.2 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews were undertaken for this topic. Practice points were based on selected published evidence. See Guidelines development process.

No randomised controlled trials (RCTs) were identified examining the effect of multidisciplinary team meetings on patient outcomes in colorectal cancer. However, many studies have concluded that multidisciplinary team meetings are beneficial, sometimes with limited evidence.[9] Eight papers have examined the effect of multidisciplinary team meetings on patient survival[10][11][12][13][14][15][16][17] in colorectal cancer and have reported an association with improved survival in patients discussed at a multidisciplinary team meeting. Many of these studies compared historical cohorts before and after introduction of a multidisciplinary team meeting. Thus, improved outcomes could possibly reflect other improvements in patient care such as better staging, more extensive surgery particularly of liver metastases and more effective chemotherapy.[17]

A recent Australian study[18] has suggested that their multidisciplinary team meeting rarely changed management in routine colon cancer cases, but management did change in 50% of complex cases. These included pre-operative assessments of rectal cancer, recurrence of colorectal cancer, metastatic disease and malignant polyps. The authors suggest a two-tier system for colorectal multidisciplinary team meetings, where all patients are listed, but only complex cases are discussed in detail. This is supported by a recent New Zealand study, which suggested that patients with stage 1 and 2 colorectal cancers rarely had their management impacted after discussion at an multidisciplinary team meeting.[19]

Multidisciplinary team meetings certainly have other benefits, including better communication among clinicians, [20], provision of most up-to-date treatments,[21] education and training, and improved coordination of care. They are an important part of care for colorectal cancer patients, although the resources required to run them are significant and need to be factored into service planning.[22]

**Practice point**

Ideally, all patients with newly diagnosed colorectal cancer should be discussed at a multidisciplinary team meeting.

**Practice point**

Discussion at a multidisciplinary team meeting is mandatory for high-risk and complex cases such as patients with preoperative rectal cancers, metastatic disease or recurrent disease.

Next section: perioperative anaemia management

Back to top

## 12.2.3 References

1. ↑ Expert Advisory Group on Cancer,. *A policy framework for commissioning cancer services – the Calman–Hine Report. A Report by the Expert Advisory Group on Cancer to the Chief Medical Officers of England and Wales.* London, UK: Department of Health; 1995.
2. ↑ Association of Coloproctology of Great Britain and Ireland,. *Guidelines for the Management of Colorectal Cancer.* London: Association of Coloproctology of Great Britain and Ireland; 2007.
3. ↑ Department of Health WA. *Colorectal Model of Care.* Western Australia, Australia: WA Cancer & Palliative Care Network, Department of Health; 2008 [cited 2016 Dec 16].
4. ↑ Cancer Council Victoria. *Optimal care pathway for people with colorectal cancer.*; 2014 Available from: www.cancer.org.au/ocp.
5. ↑ Oncology GGPi. *Evidence-based Guideline for Colorectal Cancer.* Berlin, Germany; 2014.
6. ↑ Chang GJ, Kaiser AM, Mills S, Rafferty JF, Buie WD, Standards Practice Task Force of the American Society of Colon and Rectal Surgeons.. *Practice parameters for the management of colon cancer.* Dis Colon Rectum 2012 Aug;55(8):831-43 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22810468.
7. ↑ Monson JR, Weiser MR, Buie WD, Chang GJ, Rafferty JF, Buie WD, et al. *Practice parameters for the management of rectal cancer (revised).* Dis Colon Rectum 2013 May;56(5):535-50 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23575392.
8. ↑ National Collaborating Centre for Cancer. *The Diagnosis and Management of Colorectal Cancer - Evidence review United Kingdom: National Institute for Health and Care Excellence; 2011.*;.
9. ↑ Meagher AP. *Colorectal cancer: are multidisciplinary team meetings a waste of time?* ANZ J Surg 2013 Mar;83(3):101-3 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23586096.
10. ↑ MacDermid E, Hooton G, MacDonald M, McKay G, Grose D, Mohammed N, et al. *Improving patient survival with the colorectal cancer multi-disciplinary team.* Colorectal Dis 2009 Mar;11(3):291-5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18477019.
11. ↑ Lordan JT, Karanjia ND, Quiney N, Fawcett WJ, Worthington TR. *A 10-year study of outcome following hepatic resection for colorectal liver metastases - The effect of evaluation in a multidisciplinary team setting.* Eur J Surg Oncol 2009 Mar;35(3):302-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18328668.
12. ↑ Du CZ, Li J, Cai Y, Sun YS, Xue WC, Gu J. *Effect of multidisciplinary team treatment on outcomes of patients with gastrointestinal malignancy.* World J Gastroenterol 2011 Apr 21;17(15):2013-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21528081.
13. ↑ Palmer G, Martling A, Cedermark B, Holm T. *Preoperative tumour staging with multidisciplinary team assessment improves the outcome in locally advanced primary rectal cancer.* Colorectal Dis 2011 Dec;13(12):1361-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20958913.
14. ↑ Ye YJ, Shen ZL, Sun XT, Wang ZF, Shen DH, Liu HJ, et al. *Impact of multidisciplinary team working on the management of colorectal cancer.* Chin Med J (Engl) 2012 Jan;125(2):172-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22340540.
15. ↑ Wille-Jørgensen P, Sparre P, Glenthøj A, Holck S, Nørgaard Petersen L, Harling H, et al. *Result of the implementation of multidisciplinary teams in rectal cancer.* Colorectal Dis 2013 Apr;15(4):410-3 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22958614.

16. ↑ Munro A, Brown M, Niblock P, Steele R, Carey F. *Do Multidisciplinary Team (MDT) processes influence survival in patients with colorectal cancer? A population-based experience.* BMC Cancer 2015 Oct 13;15: 686 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26463599.
17. ↑ [17.0] [17.1] Lan YT, Jiang JK, Chang SC, Yang SH, Lin CC, Lin HH, et al. *Improved outcomes of colorectal cancer patients with liver metastases in the era of the multidisciplinary teams.* Int J Colorectal Dis 2016 Feb;31(2):403-11 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26662193.
18. ↑ Ryan J, Faragher I. *Not all patients need to be discussed in a colorectal cancer MDT meeting.* Colorectal Dis 2014 Jul;16(7):520-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24617857.
19. ↑ Fernando C, Frizelle F, Wakeman C, Frampton C, Robinson B. *Colorectal multidisciplinary meeting audit to determine patient benefit.* ANZ J Surg 2015 Nov 3 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed /26525919.
20. ↑ Segelman J, Singnomklao T, Hellborg H, Martling A. *Differences in multidisciplinary team assessment and treatment between patients with stage IV colon and rectal cancer.* Colorectal Dis 2009 Sep;11(7):768-74 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18662241.
21. ↑ Scott NA, Susnerwala S, Gollins S, Myint AS, Levine E. *Preoperative neo-adjuvant therapy for curable rectal cancer--reaching a consensus 2008.* Colorectal Dis 2009 Mar;11(3):245-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18637934.
22. ↑ Prades J, Remue E, van Hoof E, Borras JM. *Is it worth reorganising cancer services on the basis of multidisciplinary teams (MDTs)? A systematic review of the objectives and organisation of MDTs and their impact on patient outcomes.* Health Policy 2015 Apr;119(4):464-74 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm. nih.gov/pubmed/25271171.

Back to top

# 12.3 Perioperative anaemia management

**Contents**

## 12.3.1 Background

Anaemia is common in patients with colorectal cancer, with 30-76% of patients variably reported as anaemic at diagnosis, depending on the level of haemoglobin used to define anaemia.[1][2][3][4][5][6][7] Iron deficiency is also common in colorectal cancer and associated with poor performance and advanced disease.[8][6]

Anaemia is associated with adverse perioperative outcomes including increased morbidity, prolonged length of hospital stay, excessive health resource utilisation, as well as reduced disease free survival.[6][9][10][11][12][13]

Comprehensive patient blood management programs focus on preoperative correction of anaemia, in addition to other methods of minimising blood loss and improving patient care.[14][15]

Back to top

## 12.3.2 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews were undertaken for this topic. Practice points were based on selected published evidence. See Guidelines development process.

### 12.3.2.1 Perioperative treatment options for patients with anaemia

Options for correcting perioperative anemia include allogenic blood transfusion, erythropoiesis stimulating agents (ESAs) and iron supplementation in the setting of demonstrable deficiency.

Blood transfusions in the immediate perioperative period have been utilised to rectify the physiological impact of anaemia during surgery. However, the link between blood transfusion and adverse surgical outcomes, as well as increased colorectal cancer recurrence, is now well documented.[16][6][17][18]

Given the association of erythropoiesis stimulating agents with adverse outcomes, including increased thrombosis and decreased survival in cancer patients, and current prescribing restrictions, their use has been limited in colorectal cancer.[19]

Back to top

### 12.3.2.2 Testing

Patients undergoing colorectal cancer surgery should be assessed for anaemia and iron deficiency as early as possible prior to surgery, to allow a window to correct reversible causes, in particular haematinic deficiencies, and to enable restoration of erythropoiesis.[20][21][22]

Routine blood tests should include haemoglobin, full blood count, ferritin, transferrin, transferrin saturation, B12, folate, and C-reactive protein (CRP).

The Australian National Blood Authority has easily accessible guidelines on perioperative haemoglobin assessment and optimisation, which are based on a 2010 Australian review with recommendations.[23]

Back to top

## 12.3.2.3 Preoperative management of iron-deficiency anaemia

Therapy to correct iron deficiency anaemia should be instituted as soon as possible pre-operatively.[20][21][22]

Oral and intravenous (IV) iron have both been shown to correct iron deficiency anaemia. Four studies have evaluated the efficacy of preoperative oral iron prior to colorectal cancer surgery and have shown it to achieve reduced transfusion rates, but not a consistent increase in haemoglobin preoperatively.[24][25][26][27]

Intravenously administered iron is preferential, given the time it takes to restore iron levels orally.[28][29] IV iron also appears more effective than oral iron in correcting anaemia in gastrointestinal diseases, such as inflammatory bowel disease,[29], as well as prior to most types of surgery.[30] There is emerging evidence for its use in colorectal cancer patients.[31]

A randomised controlled trial (RCT) trial of patients undergoing resectional surgery with a preoperative diagnosis of colorectal cancer randomised 60 patients presenting with colorectal cancer to two doses of iron sucrose or placebo.[32]. Less than a third of these patients were anaemic, and the dose of intravenous iron was suboptimal, but there was a trend towards decreased transfusion among the treatment group.[32]

However, two cohort studies in anaemic colorectal cancer patients have shown an increase in haemoglobin prior to surgery and a reduced transfusion rate among patients who received IV iron.[33][34]

One RCT[35] has been recently published which randomised abdominal surgery patients with iron deficiency anaemia to standard care or IV iron carboxymaltose. Seventy per cent of these patients had colorectal cancer. Those in the IV iron group had significantly fewer transfusions, increased haemoglobin at surgery and 4 weeks post surgery, and a decreased length of stay, further supporting the role of IV iron.[35]

Back to top

## 12.3.2.4 Postoperative management of iron-deficiency anaemia

If iron deficiency anaemia is not addressed preoperatively and/or the patients lose substantial amounts of blood during surgery, IV iron therapy should be considered after surgery.

A recent Australian study has demonstrated a pragmatic and effective approach to the management of post-operative functional iron deficiency anaemia with intravenous iron carboxymaltose in such patients.[36]

New formulations such as iron carboxymaltose can be given quickly in an outpatient or GP setting and have rare adverse reactions, which improve their acceptability and should increase their use.[30]

**Practice point**

Patients undergoing elective surgery for colorectal cancer should be assessed for anaemia and iron deficiency and any deficiencies should be addressed preoperatively.

**Practice point**

Intravenous iron should be considered in preference to oral iron preoperatively given its quicker therapeutic effect.

**Practice point**

Consideration should also be given to treating postoperative functional iron deficiency anaemia with intravenous iron.

Next section: Thromboembolic prophylaxis

Back to top

## 12.3.3 References

1. ↑ Ludwig H, Van Belle S, Barrett-Lee P, Birgegård G, Bokemeyer C, Gascón P, et al. *The European Cancer Anaemia Survey (ECAS): a large, multinational, prospective survey defining the prevalence, incidence, and treatment of anaemia in cancer patients.* Eur J Cancer 2004 Oct;40(15):2293-306 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15454256.
2. ↑ Beale AL, Penney MD, Allison MC. *The prevalence of iron deficiency among patients presenting with colorectal cancer.* Colorectal Dis 2005 Jul;7(4):398-402 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15932566.
3. ↑ Prutki M, Poljak-Blazi M, Jakopovic M, Tomas D, Stipancic I, Zarkovic N. *Altered iron metabolism, transferrin receptor 1 and ferritin in patients with colon cancer.* Cancer Lett 2006 Jul 18;238(2):188-96 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16111806.
4. ↑ Kim J, Konyalian V, Huynh R, Mittal R, Stamos M, Kumar R. *Identification of predictive factors for perioperative blood transfusion in colorectal resection patients.* Int J Colorectal Dis 2007 Dec;22(12):1493-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17768632.

5. ↑ Hamilton W, Lancashire R, Sharp D, Peters TJ, Cheng KK, Marshall T. *The importance of anaemia in diagnosing colorectal cancer: a case-control study using electronic primary care records.* Br J Cancer 2008 Jan 29;98(2):323-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18219289.
6. ↑ [6.0] [6.1] [6.2] [6.3] Acheson AG, Brookes MJ, Spahn DR. *Effects of allogeneic red blood cell transfusions on clinical outcomes in patients undergoing colorectal cancer surgery: a systematic review and meta-analysis.* Ann Surg 2012 Aug;256(2):235-44 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22791100.
7. ↑ Edna TH, Karlsen V, Jullumstrø E, Lydersen S. *Prevalence of anaemia at diagnosis of colorectal cancer: assessment of associated risk factors.* Hepatogastroenterology 2012 May;59(115):713-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22469713.
8. ↑ Prades J, Remue E, van Hoof E, Borras JM. *Is it worth reorganising cancer services on the basis of multidisciplinary teams (MDTs)? A systematic review of the objectives and organisation of MDTs and their impact on patient outcomes.* Health Policy 2015 Apr;119(4):464-74 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25271171.
9. ↑ Ludwig H, Müldür E, Endler G, Hübl W. *Prevalence of iron deficiency across different tumors and its association with poor performance status, disease status and anemia.* Ann Oncol 2013 Jul;24(7):1886-92 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23567147.
10. ↑ Leichtle SW, Mouawad NJ, Lampman R, Singal B, Cleary RK. *Does preoperative anemia adversely affect colon and rectal surgery outcomes?* J Am Coll Surg 2011 Feb;212(2):187-94 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21276532.
11. ↑ Musallam KM, Tamim HM, Richards T, Spahn DR, Rosendaal FR, Habbal A, et al. *Preoperative anaemia and postoperative outcomes in non-cardiac surgery: a retrospective cohort study.* Lancet 2011 Oct 15;378(9800):1396-407 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21982521.
12. ↑ Kang CY, Chaudhry OO, Halabi WJ, Nguyen V, Carmichael JC, Mills S, et al. *Risk factors for postoperative urinary tract infection and urinary retention in patients undergoing surgery for colorectal cancer.* Am Surg 2012 Oct;78(10):1100-4 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23025950.
13. ↑ Zhen L, Zhe S, Zhenning W, Zhifeng M, Zhidong L, Xiaoxia L, et al. *Iron-deficiency anemia: a predictor of diminished disease-free survival of T3N0M0 stage colon cancer.* J Surg Oncol 2012 Mar 15;105(4):371-5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21761412.
14. ↑ National Blood Authority. *Patient Blood Management Guidelines: Module 2 Perioperative.* Canberra, Australia; 2016 [cited 2016 Dec 16] Available from: https://www.blood.gov.au/pbm-module-2.
15. ↑ Clevenger B, Mallett SV, Klein AA, Richards T. *Patient blood management to reduce surgical risk.* Br J Surg 2015 Oct;102(11):1325-37; discussion 1324 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26313653.
16. ↑ Amato A, Pescatori M. *Perioperative blood transfusions for the recurrence of colorectal cancer.* Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2006 Jan 25;(1):CD005033 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16437512.
17. ↑ von Bormann B, Suksompong S, Schleinzer W. *Blood transfusions and prognosis in colorectal cancer: long-term results of a randomized controlled trial.* Ann Surg 2015 May;261(5):e136 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24378922.
18. ↑ Busch OR, Hop WC, Hoynck van Papendrecht MA, Marquet RL, Jeekel J. *Blood transfusions and prognosis in colorectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 1993 May 13;328(19):1372-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8292113.

19. ↑ Bohlius J, Schmidlin K, Brillant C, Schwarzer G, Trelle S, Seidenfeld J, et al. *Erythropoietin or Darbepoetin for patients with cancer--meta-analysis based on individual patient data.* Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2009 Jul 8;(3):CD007303 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19588423.
20. ↑ [20.0] [20.1] Froessler B, Papendorf D. *Intravenous iron sucrose--an effective and attractive modality for perioperative anaemia management.* Anaesth Intensive Care 2010 Sep;38(5):960-2 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20865896.
21. ↑ [21.0] [21.1] Muñoz M, Gómez-Ramírez S, Martín-Montañez E, Auerbach M. *Perioperative anemia management in colorectal cancer patients: a pragmatic approach.* World J Gastroenterol 2014 Feb 28;20 (8):1972-85 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24587673.
22. ↑ [22.0] [22.1] Muñoz M, Gómez-Ramírez S, Campos A, Ruiz J, Liumbruno GM. *Pre-operative anaemia: prevalence, consequences and approaches to management.* Blood Transfus 2015 Jul;13(3):370-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26192787.
23. ↑ Pasricha SR, Flecknoe-Brown SC, Allen KJ, Gibson PR, McMahon LP, Olynyk JK, et al. *Diagnosis and management of iron deficiency anaemia: a clinical update.* Med J Aust 2010 Nov 1;193(9):525-32 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21034387.
24. ↑ Okuyama M, Ikeda K, Shibata T, Tsukahara Y, Kitada M, Shimano T. *Preoperative iron supplementation and intraoperative transfusion during colorectal cancer surgery.* Surg Today 2005;35(1):36-40 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15622462.
25. ↑ Lidder PG, Sanders G, Whitehead E, Douie WJ, Mellor N, Lewis SJ, et al. *Pre-operative oral iron supplementation reduces blood transfusion in colorectal surgery - a prospective, randomised, controlled trial.* Ann R Coll Surg Engl 2007 May;89(4):418-21 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed /17535624.
26. ↑ Quinn M, Drummond RJ, Ross F, Murray J, Murphy J, Macdonald A. *Short course pre-operative ferrous sulphate supplementation--is it worthwhile in patients with colorectal cancer?* Ann R Coll Surg Engl 2010 Oct;92(7):569-72 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20573311.
27. ↑ Ferrari P, Nicolini A, Manca ML, Rossi G, Anselmi L, Conte M, et al. *Treatment of mild non-chemotherapy-induced iron deficiency anemia in cancer patients: comparison between oral ferrous bisglycinate chelate and ferrous sulfate.* Biomed Pharmacother 2012 Sep;66(6):414-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih. gov/pubmed/22795809.
28. ↑ Evstatiev R, Marteau P, Iqbal T, Khalif IL, Stein J, Bokemeyer B, et al. *FERGIcor, a randomized controlled trial on ferric carboxymaltose for iron deficiency anemia in inflammatory bowel disease.* Gastroenterology 2011 Sep;141(3):846-853.e1-2 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21699794.
29. ↑ [29.0] [29.1] Koduru P, Abraham BP. *The role of ferric carboxymaltose in the treatment of iron deficiency anemia in patients with gastrointestinal disease.* Therap Adv Gastroenterol 2016 Jan;9(1):76-85 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26770269.
30. ↑ [30.0] [30.1] Auerbach M. *New intravenous iron replacement therapies.* Clin Adv Hematol Oncol 2010 Oct;8 (10):688-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21317865.
31. ↑ Ng O, Keeler BD, Mishra A, Simpson A, Neal K, Brookes MJ, et al. *Iron therapy for pre-operative anaemia.* Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2015 Dec 22;(12):CD011588 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov /pubmed/26694949.
32. ↑ [32.0] [32.1] Edwards TJ, Noble EJ, Durran A, Mellor N, Hosie KB. *Randomized clinical trial of preoperative intravenous iron sucrose to reduce blood transfusion in anaemic patients after colorectal cancer surgery.* Br J Surg 2009;96: 1122-8.

33. ↑ Bisbe E, García-Erce JA, Díez-Lobo AI, Muñoz M, Anaemia Working Group España.. *A multicentre comparative study on the efficacy of intravenous ferric carboxymaltose and iron sucrose for correcting preoperative anaemia in patients undergoing major elective surgery.* Br J Anaesth 2011 Sep;107(3):477-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21841061.
34. ↑ Keeler BD, Simpson JA, Ng S, Tselepis C, Iqbal T, Brookes MJ, et al. *The feasibility and clinical efficacy of intravenous iron administration for preoperative anaemia in patients with colorectal cancer.* Colorectal Dis 2014 Oct;16(10):794-800 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24916374.
35. ↑ [35.0] [35.1] Froessler B, Palm P, Weber I, Hodyl NA, Singh R, Murphy EM. *The Important Role for Intravenous Iron in Perioperative Patient Blood Management in Major Abdominal Surgery: A Randomized Controlled Trial.* Ann Surg 2016 Jul;264(1):41-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26817624.
36. ↑ Khalafallah AA, Yan C, Al-Badri R, Robinson E, Kirkby BE, Ingram E, et al. *Intravenous ferric carboxymaltose versus standard care in the management of postoperative anaemia: a prospective, open-label, randomised controlled trial.* Lancet Haematol 2016 Sep;3(9):e415-25 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27570088.

Back to top

# 12.4 Thromboembolic prophylaxis

## 12.4.1 Background

Despite the availability of safe and efficacious antithrombotic agents, as well as the vast clinical experience justifying their use, thromboembolism remains a frequent complication among cancer patients, with substantial adverse health and economic consequences.[1]

Cancer-associated thrombosis remains an important negative predictor of survival as well as a leading cause of death, and is associated with higher (2- to 3-fold) thromboembolism recurrence rates, higher (2- to 6-fold) bleeding complications on anticoagulant therapy, increased hospitalisation and impaired quality of life.[2]

Moreover, an incident thromboembolic event, once a cancer has been diagnosed and treatment started, often denotes a significant clinical hurdle, not only related to the morbidity and mortality associated to the thromboembolic event, but also the potential detrimental effect of an interruption or modification in therapy, attributable to the event and/or delivery of therapeutic anticoagulation.[3][4]

Appropriate risk-adapted primary thromboprophylaxis can have a substantial impact not only on reduction of thromboembolism, but also disease response, survival, quality of life and healthcare resources.[5]

Surgical intervention at any given site, for any malignancy, is associated with a high thromboembolic risk, in particular major abdominopelvic surgery for colorectal cancer.[6] Thromboembolism remains an important and preventable complication of cancer surgery.

Back to top

## 12.4.2 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews were undertaken for this topic. Practice points were based on selected published evidence. See Guidelines development process.

Pharmacological thromboprophylaxis can reduce the rates of thromboembolism in up to 80% of high risk surgical patients and therefore should be considered for all patients with colorectal cancer undergoing major surgery, unless contraindicated.[7] The use of in-hospital thromboprophylaxis strategies, including low molecular-weight heparin or unfractionated heparin, in conjunction with graduated compression stockings and intermittent pneumatic compression, has been demonstrated to significantly reduce in-hospital rates of thromboembolism.[5][8][9][10][11][12][13][14][15][16][17][18][19][20][21][22][23][24][25][26] Two recent Australian studies[27][28] have demonstrated that with good compliance to thromboembolic prophylaxis guidelines, the clinically diagnosed thromboembolism rate is very low in Australia with a 0.79% in-hospital venous thromboembolism (VTE) rate and an out of hospital VTE rate of 0.39% in the first 28 days[27] in one study, and a 4% 90 day VTE rate in a second study[28].

There are data suggesting that the risk of thromboembolism extends beyond the in-hospital stay after major abdominopelvic surgery. A Cochrane review[29] analysing data from four Scandinavian studies published in 2009, suggested a 60% reduction in venography detected thromboembolism rates in patients undergoing abdominal or pelvic surgery who received extended prophylaxis compared to standard prophylaxis. The symptomatic thromboembolism rate was also significantly reduced, from 0.7% in the standard group to 0.2 % in the extended prophylaxis group.[29] Given this finding, recent expert guidelines have suggested extended prophylaxis for 28 days post surgery should be considered, particularly in high-risk patients.[30][31][32][33]. High-risk patients include patients aged over 60 years, those with operation times longer than two hours, patients with reduced mobility post procedure, and those with a past history of thromboembolism. The UK National Institute for Health and Care Excellence Guidelines go further and recommend extended prophylaxis for all patients having major cancer surgery in the abdomen and pelvis.[34] None of these guidelines are specific to colorectal cancer patients.

One RCT (the PROLAPS study) evaluated extended VTE prophylaxis in colorectal cancer patients undergoing laparoscopic surgery, the trial.[35] PROLAPS randomised 225 patients to either short or extended prophylaxis with a composite primary outcome measure combining clinical VTE and ultrasound-detected VTE 1 month postoperatively.[35] It reported a significantly lower rate of VTE in the extended group compared with the standard group at 3 months (0.9% versus 9.7%, p = 0.005). However, there was no difference in the clinically detected rate of VTE.

Four more RCTs have compared standard in hospital and extended VTE prophylaxis and included colorectal cancer patients, but also included patients with other conditions. The ENOXACAN II and FAME trials showed a reduced rate of VTE in the extended groups[36][37] but, as with the PROLAPS trial, there was no difference in the rate of clinically detected VTE. The CANBESURE triall[38] and a Danish RCT[39] were unable to detect any difference in VTE rate between standard and extended prophylaxis.

Given these findings, a clinical review of major clinical guidelines and published clinical data evaluating extended venous thromboprophylaxis after elective colorectal cancer surgery suggested that routine extended VTE prophylaxis should not be standard practice, and that it should be reserved for high risk patients.[40]

Back to top

**Practice point**

All patients undergoing surgery for colorectal cancer should have standard thromboprophylaxis in hospital with compression stockings, unfractionated or low molecular-weight heparin and sequential compression devices. Extended prophylaxis for 28 days can be considered in high risk patients following colorectal cancer surgery.

Next section: nutritional interventions

Back to top

## 12.4.3 References

1. ↑ Ay C, Pabinger I, Cohen AT. *Cancer-associated venous thromboembolism: Burden, mechanisms, and management.* Thromb Haemost 2016 Nov 24 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27882374.
2. ↑ Walker AJ, Card TR, West J, Crooks C, Grainge MJ. *Incidence of venous thromboembolism in patients with cancer - a cohort study using linked United Kingdom databases.* Eur J Cancer 2013 Apr;49(6):1404-13 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23146958.
3. ↑ Alcalay A, Wun T, Khatri V, Chew HK, Harvey D, Zhou H, et al. *Venous thromboembolism in patients with colorectal cancer: incidence and effect on survival.* J Clin Oncol 2006 Mar 1;24(7):1112-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16505431.
4. ↑ Devani K, Patil N, Simons-Linares CR, Patel N, Jaiswal P, Patel P, et al. *Trends in Hospitalization and Mortality of Venous Thromboembolism in Hospitalized Patients With Colon Cancer and Their Outcomes: US Perspective.* Clin Colorectal Cancer 2016 Sep 20 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27777043.

5. ↑ [5.0] [5.1] Kakkos SK, Caprini JA, Geroulakos G, Nicolaides AN, Stansby G, Reddy DJ, et al. *Combined intermittent pneumatic leg compression and pharmacological prophylaxis for prevention of venous thromboembolism.* Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2016 Sep 7;9:CD005258 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27600864.
6. ↑ Bergqvist D. *Venous thromboembolism: a review of risk and prevention in colorectal surgery patients.* Dis Colon Rectum 2006 Oct;49(10):1620-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17019655.
7. ↑ Nelson DW, Simianu VV, Bastawrous AL, Billingham RP, Fichera A, Florence MG, et al. *Thromboembolic Complications and Prophylaxis Patterns in Colorectal Surgery.* JAMA Surg 2015 Aug;150(8):712-20 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26060977.
8. ↑ Collins R, Scrimgeour A, Yusuf S, Peto R. *Reduction in fatal pulmonary embolism and venous thrombosis by perioperative administration of subcutaneous heparin. Overview of results of randomized trials in general, orthopedic, and urologic surgery.* N Engl J Med 1988 May 5;318(18):1162-73 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3283548.
9. ↑ Barbui T, Cassinelli G, Cortelazzo S. *Comparison of low molecular weight heparin cy 216 and unfractionated heparin in preventing post operative venous thromboembolism in general surgery a preliminary results of a cooperative study.* Fibrinolysis Proteolysis 1990;4(79).
10. ↑ Boneu B. *An international multicentre study: Clivarin in the prevention of venous thromboembolism in patients undergoing general surgery. Report of the International Clivarin Assessment Group.* Blood Coagul Fibrinolysis 1993 Dec;4 Suppl 1:S21-2 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8180325.
11. ↑ Creperio G, Marabini M, Ciocia G, Bergonzi M, Fincato M. *[Evaluation of the effectiveness and safety of Fragmin (Kabi 2165) versus calcium heparin in the prevention of deep venous thrombosis in general surgery].* Minerva Chir 1990 Sep 15;45(17):1101-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2177861.
12. ↑ Kakkar VV, Murray WJ. *Efficacy and safety of low-molecular-weight heparin (CY216) in preventing postoperative venous thrombo-embolism: a co-operative study.* Br J Surg 1985 Oct;72(10):786-91 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3899240.
13. ↑ Limmer J, Ellbrück D, Müller H, Eisele E, Rist J, Schütze F, et al. *Prospective randomized clinical study in general surgery comparing a new low molecular weight heparin with unfractionated heparin in the prevention of thrombosis.* Clin Investig 1994 Nov;72(11):913-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7894222.
14. ↑ McLeod RS, Geerts WH, Sniderman KW, Greenwood C, Gregoire RC, Taylor BM, et al. *Subcutaneous heparin versus low-molecular-weight heparin as thromboprophylaxis in patients undergoing colorectal surgery: results of the canadian colorectal DVT prophylaxis trial: a randomized, double-blind trial.* Ann Surg 2001 Mar;233(3):438-44 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11224634.
15. ↑ Nurmohamed MT, Verhaeghe R, Haas S, Iriarte JA, Vogel G, van Rij AM, et al. *A comparative trial of a low molecular weight heparin (enoxaparin) versus standard heparin for the prophylaxis of postoperative deep vein thrombosis in general surgery.* Am J Surg 1995 Jun;169(6):567-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7771617.
16. ↑ Samama M, Bernard P, Bonnardot JP, Combe-Tamzali S, Lanson Y, Tissot E. *Low molecular weight heparin compared with unfractionated heparin in prevention of postoperative thrombosis.* Br J Surg 1988 Feb;75(2):128-31 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2832030.
17. ↑ Allan A, Williams JT, Bolton JP, Le Quesne LP. *The use of graduated compression stockings in the prevention of postoperative deep vein thrombosis.* Br J Surg 1983;70: 172-4.

18. ↑ Holford, CP. *Graded compression for preventing deep venous thrombosis.* Br Med J 1976;2, p. 969-70.
19. ↑ Mellbring G, Palmér K. *Prophylaxis of deep vein thrombosis after major abdominal surgery. Comparison between dihydroergotamine-heparin and intermittent pneumatic calf compression and evaluation of added graduated static compression.* Acta Chir Scand 1986 Oct;152:597-600 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/3544626.
20. ↑ Scurr JH, Coleridge-Smith PD, Hasty JH. *Regimen for improved effectiveness of intermittent pneumatic compression in deep venous thrombosis prophylaxis.* Surgery 1987;102, p. 816-20.
21. ↑ Wille-Jørgensen P, Thorup J, Fischer A, Holst-Christensen J, Flamsholt R. *Heparin with and without graded compression stockings in the prevention of thromboembolic complications of major abdominal surgery: a randomized trial.* Br J Surg 1985 Jul;72(7):579-81 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4016545.
22. ↑ Wille-Jørgensen P, Hauch O, Dimo B, Christensen SW, Jensen R, Hansen B. *Prophylaxis of deep venous thrombosis after acute abdominal operation.* Surg Gynecol Obstet 1991 Jan;172(1):44-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1702235.
23. ↑ Bergqvist D, Lindblad B. *The thromboprophylactic effect of graded elastic compression stockings in combination with dextran 70.* Arch Surg 1984 Nov;119(11):1329-31 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6208877.
24. ↑ Inada K, Shirai N, Hayashi M, Matsumoto K, Hirose M. *Postoperative deep venous thrombosis in Japan. Incidence and prophylaxis.* Am J Surg 1983 Jun;145(6):775-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6859416.
25. ↑ Rasmussen A, Hansen PT, Lindholt J, Poulsen TD, Toftdahl DB, Gram J, et al. *Venous thrombosis after abdominal surgery. A comparison between subcutaneous heparin and antithrombotic stockings, or both.* J Med 1988;19(3-4):193-201 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2972790.
26. ↑ Wille-Jørgensen P, Rasmussen MS, Andersen BR, Borly L. *Heparins and mechanical methods for thromboprophylaxis in colorectal surgery.* Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2003;(4):CD001217 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14583929.
27. ↑ [27.0] [27.1] Chandra R, Melino G, Thomas M, Lawrence MJ, Hunter RA, Moore J. *Is extended thromboprophylaxis necessary in elective colorectal cancer surgery?* ANZ J Surg 2013 Dec;83(12):968-72 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23802729.
28. ↑ [28.0] [28.1] Holwell A, McKenzie JL, Holmes M, Woods R, Nandurkar H, Tam CS, et al. *Venous thromboembolism prevention in patients undergoing colorectal surgery for cancer.* ANZ J Surg 2014 Apr;84(4):284-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23782713.
29. ↑ [29.0] [29.1] Rasmussen MS, Jørgensen LN, Wille-Jørgensen P. *Prolonged thromboprophylaxis with low molecular weight heparin for abdominal or pelvic surgery.* Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2009 Jan 21;(1):CD004318 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19160234.
30. ↑ Falck-Ytter Y, Francis CW, Johanson NA, Curley C, Dahl OE, Schulman S, et al. *Prevention of VTE in orthopedic surgery patients: Antithrombotic Therapy and Prevention of Thrombosis, 9th ed: American College of Chest Physicians Evidence-Based Clinical Practice Guidelines.* Chest 2012 Feb;141(2 Suppl):e278S-325S Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22315265.
31. ↑ Lyman GH, Bohlke K, Khorana AA, Kuderer NM, Lee AY, Arcelus JI, et al. *Venous thromboembolism prophylaxis and treatment in patients with cancer: american society of clinical oncology clinical practice guideline update 2014.* J Clin Oncol 2015 Feb 20;33(6):654-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25605844.

32. ↑ National Comprehensive Cancer Network. Cancer-associated Venous Thromboembolic Disease. Washington2014.. *Cancer-associated venous thromboembolic disease.* Washington: NCCN.org; 2014 [cited 2016 Dec 16] Available from: http://williams.medicine.wisc.edu/vtecancer.pdf.
33. ↑ Gould MK, Garcia DA, Wren SM, Karanicolas PJ, Arcelus JI, Heit JA, et al. *Prevention of VTE in nonorthopedic surgical patients: Antithrombotic Therapy and Prevention of Thrombosis, 9th ed: American College of Chest Physicians Evidence-Based Clinical Practice Guidelines.* Chest 2012 Feb;141(2 Suppl): e227S-77S Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22315263.
34. ↑ National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (NICE). *Venous thromboembolism: reducing the risk. Reducing the risk of venous thromboembolism (deep vein thrombosis and pulmonary embolism) in patients admitted to hospital.* London, UK: Royal College of Physicians; 2010 Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23346611.
35. ↑ [35.0] [35.1] Vedovati MC, Becattini C, Rondelli F, Boncompagni M, Camporese G, Balzarotti R, et al. *A randomized study on 1-week versus 4-week prophylaxis for venous thromboembolism after laparoscopic surgery for colorectal cancer.* Ann Surg 2014 Apr;259(4):665-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24253138.
36. ↑ Pai A, Hurtuk MG, Park JJ, Marecik SJ, Prasad LM. *A Randomized Study on 1-Week Versus 4-Week Prophylaxis for Venous Thromboembolism After Laparoscopic Surgery for Colorectal Cancer.* Ann Surg 2016 Apr;263(4):e62 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25211266.
37. ↑ Rasmussen MS, Jorgensen LN, Wille-Jørgensen P, Nielsen JD, Horn A, Mohn AC, et al. *Prolonged prophylaxis with dalteparin to prevent late thromboembolic complications in patients undergoing major abdominal surgery: a multicenter randomized open-label study.* J Thromb Haemost 2006 Nov;4(11):2384-90 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16881934.
38. ↑ Kakkar VV, Balibrea JL, Martínez-González J, Prandoni P, CANBESURE Study Group.. *Extended prophylaxis with bemiparin for the prevention of venous thromboembolism after abdominal or pelvic surgery for cancer: the CANBESURE randomized study.* J Thromb Haemost 2010 Jun;8(6):1223-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20456751.
39. ↑ Lausen I, Jensen R, Jorgensen LN, Rasmussen MS, Lyng KM, Andersen M, et al. *Incidence and prevention of deep venous thrombosis occurring late after general surgery: randomised controlled study of prolonged thromboprophylaxis.* Eur J Surg 1998 Sep;164(9):657-63 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9728784.
40. ↑ Sammour T, Chandra R, Moore JW. *Extended venous thromboembolism prophylaxis after colorectal cancer surgery: the current state of the evidence.* J Thromb Thrombolysis 2016 Jul;42(1):27-32 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26590997.

Back to top

## 12.5 Nutritional interventions

**Contents**



# 12.5.1 Background

Malnutrition is common in patients with cancer due to a combination of the disease process, host response to tumour and anticancer treatments.[1]

Patients with colorectal cancer are more prone to malnutrition than non-GI cancers due to the direct effects of bowel obstruction and malabsorption.

Back to top

# 12.5.2 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews were undertaken for this topic. Practice points were based on selected published evidence. See Guidelines development process.

## 12.5.2.1 Assessment of nutrition

Formal preoperative assessment of nutritional status in colorectal cancer patients has not been well investigated.

The measures commonly used to assess nutrition are hypoalbuminaemia, body weight loss and body mass index (BMI).

In a large study reporting on The American College of Surgeons – National Surgical Quality Improvement Program (ACS-NSQIP) database, malnutrition, was most prevalent in colorectal cancer patients, compared with patients with other common types of cancer.[1] This was particularly evident when hypoalbuminaemia was used as a marker for malnutrition, with 27.3% of colorectal cancer patients demonstrating a low albumin.

The risk of malnutrition appears to be further compounded when combined with preoperative chemoradiation in rectal cancer patients. One study reported that 51% of their patients demonstrated malnutrition, as measured by body weight loss, at the completion of chemoradiation and 29% at the time of surgery.[2]

There appears to be a strong association between markers of malnutrition such as hypoalbuminaemia, body weight loss and BMI, and increased postoperative mortality, with hypoalbuminaemia being associated strongly even after multiple regression analysis with all postoperative complications.[1] In rectal cancer patients, malnutrition, as measured by body weight loss, was also associated with increased rates of anastomotic leakage.[2]

There are more effective and precise tools for assessing the nutritional status of patients including the subjective global assessment, malnutrition universal screening tool (MUST) and nutritional risk index (NRI).[3]. The MUST tool appears to be the cheapest and easiest tool to use in colorectal cancer patients.

Back to top

### 12.5.2.2 Nutritional support

In patients undergoing elective colorectal cancer surgery, nutritional support with supplements in the immediate preoperative period is a key component of enhanced recovery programs, with postoperative nutritional supplements also used in many programs.[4][5]

Preoperative correction of malnutrition in colorectal cancer patients has not been well studied. Similarly the medium and long term effects of nutritional interventions in colorectal cancer patients have not been evaluated systematically. One Portuguese study randomized 111 patients with colorectal cancer into three groups: a group receiving dietary counselling, a group receiving protein supplements, and those receiving standard care, whilst having preoperative radiotherapy for rectal carcinoma.[6] Both nutritional intervention groups had better intake, improved quality of life and fewer gastrointestinal symptoms than standard treatment patients at the completion of radiotherapy. With dietary counselling these changes were sustained at three months.[6] A more recent study with long term follow-up of this same group of patients demonstrated improved survival in the patients receiving nutritional counselling.[7]

| **Practice point** |
| --- |
| Patients undergoing elective surgery for colorectal cancer should be screened for malnutrition. |

| **Practice point** |
| --- |
| If patients are found to be malnourished, nutritional interventions should be put in place. |

Next section: Stomal therapy

Back to top

## 12.5.3 References

1. ↑ 1.0 1.1 1.2 Hu WH, Cajas-Monson LC, Eisenstein S, Parry L, Cosman B, Ramamoorthy S. *Preoperative malnutrition assessments as predictors of postoperative mortality and morbidity in colorectal cancer: an analysis of ACS-NSQIP.* Nutr J 2015 Sep 7;14:91 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26345703.
2. ↑ 2.0 2.1 Yamano T, Yoshimura M, Kobayashi M, Beppu N, Hamanaka M, Babaya A, et al. *Malnutrition in rectal cancer patients receiving preoperative chemoradiotherapy is common and associated with treatment tolerability and anastomotic leakage.* Int J Colorectal Dis 2016 Apr;31(4):877-84 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26888783.
3. ↑ Håkonsen SJ, Pedersen PU, Bath-Hextall F, Kirkpatrick P. *Diagnostic test accuracy of nutritional tools used to identify undernutrition in patients with colorectal cancer: a systematic review.* JBI Database System Rev Implement Rep 2015 May 15;13(4):141-87 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26447079.
4. ↑ Gustafsson UO, Tiefenthal M, Thorell A, Ljungqvist O, Nygrens J. *Laparoscopic-assisted and open high anterior resection within an ERAS protocol.* World J Surg 2012 May;36(5):1154-61 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22395344.
5. ↑ Nygren J, Thacker J, Carli F, Fearon KC, Norderval S, Lobo DN, et al. *Guidelines for perioperative care in elective rectal/pelvic surgery: Enhanced Recovery After Surgery (ERAS®) Society recommendations.* Clin Nutr 2012 Dec;31(6):801-16 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23062720.
6. ↑ 6.0 6.1 Ravasco P, Monteiro-Grillo I, Vidal PM, Camilo ME. *Dietary counseling improves patient outcomes: a prospective, randomized, controlled trial in colorectal cancer patients undergoing radiotherapy.* J Clin Oncol 2005 Mar 1;23(7):1431-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15684319.
7. ↑ Ravasco P, Monteiro-Grillo I, Camilo M. *Individualized nutrition intervention is of major benefit to colorectal cancer patients: long-term follow-up of a randomized controlled trial of nutritional therapy.* Am J Clin Nutr 2012 Dec;96(6):1346-53 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23134880.

Back to top

# 12.6 Stomal therapy

## 12.6.1 Background

Patients undergoing surgery for colorectal cancer, both in elective and emergency settings, may require a stoma. This includes formation of a permanent colostomy in patients with low rectal cancers; construction of ileostomies or colostomies in patients with an obstructing cancer, where an anastomosis is not appropriate; and formation of a temporary diverting loop stoma proximal to an anastomosis.

Back to top

## 12.6.2 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews were undertaken for this topic. Practice points were based on selected published evidence. See Guidelines development process.

Patients having surgery for colorectal cancer who definitely require a stoma, or who may require a stoma, should be seen by a stomal therapy nurse prior to surgery, and have the appropriate possible site/s for a stoma marked on their abdomen.[1]

There is evidence that patients have a better quality of life postoperatively if their stoma is sited preoperatively by a stomal therapist,[2] aand that these patients will have fewer stoma-related complications.[3][4]

Stomal therapists are able to provide counselling, education and support, and can even facilitate patients talking to other patients with stomas.[5]

**Practice point**

Patients undergoing colorectal cancer surgery who may, or will, require a stoma should be seen prior to surgery by a stomal therapist.

**Practice point**

Patients with stomas should be given postoperative education.

Next section: body temperature

Back to top

## 12.6.3 References

1. ↑ Bass EM, Del Pino A, Tan A, Pearl RK, Orsay CP, Abcarian H. *Does preoperative stoma marking and education by the enterostomal therapist affect outcome?* Dis Colon Rectum 1997 Apr;40(4):440-2 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9106693.
2. ↑ McKenna LS, Taggart E, Stoelting J, Kirkbride G, Forbes GB. *The Impact of Preoperative Stoma Marking on Health-Related Quality of Life: A Comparison Cohort Study.* J Wound Ostomy Continence Nurs 2016 Jan; 43(1):57-61 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26727684.

3. ↑ Baykara ZG, Demir SG, Karadag A, Harputlu D, Kahraman A, Karadag S, et al. *A multicenter, retrospective study to evaluate the effect of preoperative stoma site marking on stomal and peristomal complications.* Ostomy Wound Manage 2014 May;60(5):16-26 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24807019.
4. ↑ Person B, Ifargan R, Lachter J, Duek SD, Kluger Y, Assalia A. *The impact of preoperative stoma site marking on the incidence of complications, quality of life, and patient's independence.* Dis Colon Rectum 2012 Jul;55(7):783-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22706131.
5. ↑ Nugent KP, Daniels P, Stewart B, Patankar R, Johnson CD. *Quality of life in stoma patients.* Dis Colon Rectum 1999;42: 1569-74.

Back to top

# 12.7 Body temperature

**Contents**



## 12.7.1 Background

Normal thermoregulation is disrupted during anaesthesia and surgery due to multiple factors.[1] Unintended perioperative hypothermia is common in surgical patients, and has been reported to be associated with platelet dysfunction, bleeding, wound infection, alterations of pharmacotherapeutic effects and shivering.[2]

Back to top

## 12.7.2 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews were undertaken for this topic. Practice points were based on selected published evidence. See Guidelines development process.

### 12.7.2.1 Effects of perioperative body temperature on wound site

One randomised controlled trial of 200 patients undergoing colorectal surgery reported that maintenance of a normal body temperature (near 36.5°C) during colorectal surgery using forced-air warming combined with fluid warming decreased the rate of surgical site infectionand reduced length of stay, compared with allowing body temperature to decrease to approximately 34.5°C.[3]

Subsequent observational cohort studies have not always supported the three-fold reduction in surgical site infection seen in the original study.[4][5]

Avoidance of hypothermia should be encouraged for its other benefits, which may include improved wound healing associated with a reduction in hospital stay.[3]

Back to top

### 12.7.2.2 Strategies for maintaining perioperative body temperature

Strategies for maintaining perioperative body temperature include warming intravenous (IV) and irrigation fluids, the use of reflective blankets or clothing, and forced air warming, and prewarming.[6][7]

The use of warmed IV fluids has been shown to be effective in maintaining body temperature in adults.[7] Pre-warming for a minimum of 30 minutes may also reduce the risk of subsequent hypothermia.[6] There is no clear evidence that the use of reflective blankets or clothing increases body temperature, compared with usual care.[7]

| **Practice point** |
| --- |
| Perioperative normothermia should ideally be maintained at or above 36.0˚C. |

| **Practice point** |
| --- |
| The use of warmed IV fluids and forced-air warming can be used to minimise perioperative hypothermia. |

Next section: enhanced recovery after surgery

Back to top

## 12.7.3 References

1. ↑ Sessler, DI. *Temperature monitoring and perioperative thermoregulation.* Anesthesiology ;2008 Aug; 109(2): 318–338. https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC2614355/.
2. ↑ Joanna Briggs Institute. *Strategies for the management and prevention of hypothermia within the adult perioperative environment Best Practice: evidence-based information sheets for health professionals. 2010; 14(13):1-4.*;.
3. ↑ [3.0] [3.1] Kurz A, Sessler DI, Lenhardt R. *Perioperative normothermia to reduce the incidence of surgical-wound infection and shorten hospitalization. Study of Wound Infection and Temperature Group.* N Engl J Med 1996 May 9;334(19):1209-15 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8606715.
4. ↑ Baucom RB, Phillips SE, Ehrenfeld JM, Muldoon RL, Poulose BK, Herline AJ, et al. *Association of Perioperative Hypothermia During Colectomy With Surgical Site Infection.* JAMA Surg 2015 Jun;150(6):570-5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25902410.
5. ↑ Lehtinen SJ, Onicescu G, Kuhn KM, Cole DJ, Esnaola NF. *Normothermia to prevent surgical site infections after gastrointestinal surgery: holy grail or false idol?* Ann Surg 2010 Oct;252(4):696-704 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20881777.
6. ↑ [6.0] [6.1] Hart, SR; Bordes, B; Hart, J; Corsino, D; Harmon, D;. *Unintended perioperative hypothermia.* The Ochsner Journal ;2011;11(3):259-270.
7. ↑ [7.0] [7.1] [7.2] National Collaborating Centre for Nursing and Supportive Care. National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence (commissioner). *The management of inadvertent perioperative hypothermia in adults. (NICE CG65).* London: National Institute for Health and Clinical Excellence; 2008 Available from: https://www.nice.org.uk/guidance/cg65/evidence/cg65-perioperative-hypothermia-inadvertent-full-guideline2.

Back to top

# 12.8 Enhanced recovery after surgery

## 12.8.1 Background

Enhanced recovery after surgery (ERAS) (fast-track) programs are comprehensive multimodal perioperative pathways, which aim to reduce surgical stress, maintain postoperative physiological function, and enhance mobilisation after surgery.[1][2]

## 12.8.2 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews were undertaken for this topic. Practice points were based on selected published evidence. See Guidelines development process.

ERAS programs have multiple components, which vary between programs. Broadly these include:[1][2]

- preoperative education and counselling
- preoperative optimisation
- perioperative nutritional supplements
- antimicrobial and prophylaxis
- venous thromboembolism prophylaxis
- multimodal antiemetics and analgesia
- avoidance of bowel preparation, nasogastric tubes and drains.

ERAS has resulted in reduced morbidity, faster recovery and shorter length of stay in series from dedicated centres.[3][4][5][6]

A meta-analysis of six randomised controlled trials (RCTs) on ERAS compared with standard care in patients undergoing open colorectal surgery has demonstrated that length of stay is reduced and postoperative morbidity almost halved.[7][8][9] The benefits of ERAS programs are still demonstrated in laparoscopic surgery as in open surgery, with a recent systematic review and meta-analysis of three RCTs[10][11][12] and six nonrandomised and observational studies and six clinical trials[13][14][15][16][17][18] showing reduced morbidity and particularly reduced length of stay with the addition of ERAS to minimally invasive surgery.[19]

Successful ERAS programs appear to have multiple components, but need to be multidisciplinary, have ongoing education, regular audit, and be adequately resourced.[20]

**Practice point**

Patients having elective surgery for colorectal cancer should be managed within an appropriately resourced enhanced recovery after surgery (ERAS) program.

Next section: mechanical bowel prep and antibiotic prophylaxis

Back to top

## 12.8.3 References

1. ↑ [1.0] [1.1] Gustafsson UO, Tiefenthal M, Thorell A, Ljungqvist O, Nygrens J. *Laparoscopic-assisted and open high anterior resection within an ERAS protocol.* World J Surg 2012 May;36(5):1154-61 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22395344.
2. ↑ [2.0] [2.1] Nygren J, Thacker J, Carli F, Fearon KC, Norderval S, Lobo DN, et al. *Guidelines for perioperative care in elective rectal/pelvic surgery: Enhanced Recovery After Surgery (ERAS®) Society recommendations.* Clin Nutr 2012 Dec;31(6):801-16 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23062720.
3. ↑ Basse L, Hjort Jakobsen D, Billesbølle P, Werner M, Kehlet H. *A clinical pathway to accelerate recovery after colonic resection.* Ann Surg 2000 Jul;232(1):51-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10862195.
4. ↑ Basse L, Raskov HH, Hjort Jakobsen D, Sonne E, Billesbølle P, Hendel HW, et al. *Accelerated postoperative recovery programme after colonic resection improves physical performance, pulmonary function and body composition.* Br J Surg 2002 Apr;89(4):446-53 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11952586.
5. ↑ Wind J, Hofland J, Preckel B, Hollmann MW, Bossuyt PM, Gouma DJ, et al. *Perioperative strategy in colonic surgery; LAparoscopy and/or FAst track multimodal management versus standard care (LAFA trial).* BMC Surg 2006 Nov 29;6:16 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17134506.
6. ↑ Khoo CK, Vickery CJ, Forsyth N, Vinall NS, Eyre-Brook IA. *A prospective randomized controlled trial of multimodal perioperative management protocol in patients undergoing elective colorectal resection for cancer.* Ann Surg 2007 Jun;245(6):867-72 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17522511.
7. ↑ Varadhan KK, Neal KR, Dejong CH, Fearon KC, Ljungqvist O, Lobo DN. *The enhanced recovery after surgery (ERAS) pathway for patients undergoing major elective open colorectal surgery: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials.* Clin Nutr 2010 Aug;29(4):434-40 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20116145.
8. ↑ Serclová Z, Dytrych P, Marvan J, Nová K, Hankeová Z, Ryska O, et al. *Fast-track in open intestinal surgery: prospective randomized study (Clinical Trials Gov Identifier no. NCT00123456).* Clin Nutr 2009 Dec;28(6):618-24 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19535182.
9. ↑ Muller S, Zalunardo MP, Hubner M, Clavien PA, Demartines N, Zurich Fast Track Study Group.. *A fast-track program reduces complications and length of hospital stay after open colonic surgery.* Gastroenterology 2009 Mar;136(3):842-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19135997.
10. ↑ Basse L, Jakobsen DH, Bardram L, Billesbølle P, Lund C, Mogensen T, et al. *Functional recovery after open versus laparoscopic colonic resection: a randomized, blinded study.* Ann Surg 2005 Mar;241(3):416-23 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15729063.
11. ↑ King PM, Blazeby JM, Ewings P, Franks PJ, Longman RJ, Kendrick AH, et al. *Randomized clinical trial comparing laparoscopic and open surgery for colorectal cancer within an enhanced recovery programme.* Br J Surg 2006 Mar;93(3):300-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16363014.
12. ↑ Vlug MS, Wind J, Hollmann MW, Ubbink DT, Cense HA, Engel AF, et al. *Laparoscopy in combination with fast track multimodal management is the best perioperative strategy in patients undergoing colonic surgery: a randomized clinical trial (LAFA-study).* Ann Surg 2011 Dec;254(6):868-75 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21597360.

13. ↑ Al Chalabi H, Kavanagh DO, Hassan L, Donnell KO, Nugent E, Andrews E, et al. *The benefit of an enhanced recovery programme following elective laparoscopic sigmoid colectomy.* Int J Colorectal Dis 2010 Jun;25(6):761-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20177688.
14. ↑ Junghans T, Raue W, Haase O, Neudecker J, Schwenk W. *[Value of laparoscopic surgery in elective colorectal surgery with "fast-track"-rehabilitation].* Zentralbl Chir 2006 Aug;131(4):298-303 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17004188.
15. ↑ Lloyd GM, Kirby R, Hemingway DM, Keane FB, Miller AS, Neary P. *The RAPID protocol enhances patient recovery after both laparoscopic and open colorectal resections.* Surg Endosc 2010 Jun;24(6):1434-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20035353.
16. ↑ MacKay G, Ihedioha U, McConnachie A, Serpell M, Molloy RG, O'Dwyer PJ. *Laparoscopic colonic resection in fast-track patients does not enhance short-term recovery after elective surgery.* Colorectal Dis 2007 May;9(4):368-72 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17432992.
17. ↑ Raue W, Haase O, Junghans T, Scharfenberg M, Müller JM, Schwenk W. *'Fast-track' multimodal rehabilitation program improves outcome after laparoscopic sigmoidectomy: a controlled prospective evaluation.* Surg Endosc 2004 Oct;18(10):1463-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15791370.
18. ↑ Reurings JC, Spanjersberg WR, Oostvogel HJ, Buskens E, Maring J, Kruijt F, et al. *A prospective cohort study to investigate cost-minimisation, of Traditional open, open fAst track recovery and laParoscopic fASt track multimodal management, for surgical patients with colon carcinomas (TAPAS study).* BMC Surg 2010 Jun 14;10:18 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20546569.
19. ↑ Spanjersberg WR, van Sambeeck JD, Bremers A, Rosman C, van Laarhoven CJ. *Systematic review and meta-analysis for laparoscopic versus open colon surgery with or without an ERAS programme.* Surg Endosc 2015 Dec;29(12):3443-53 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25801106.
20. ↑ Pearsall EA, Meghji Z, Pitzul KB, Aarts MA, McKenzie M, McLeod RS, et al. *A qualitative study to understand the barriers and enablers in implementing an enhanced recovery after surgery program.* Ann Surg 2015 Jan;261(1):92-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24646564.

Back to top

# 12.9 Mechanical bowel prep and antibiotic prophylaxis

**Contents**

## 12.9.1 Background

Patients undergoing surgery for colorectal cancer have a significant risk of surgical site infections, with their associated health care costs and poor outcomes. In the last 100 years many interventions have been used in attempts to modify this risk.[1][2] Surgical site infection rates and anastomotic leak rates have become important clinical indicators used to measure hospital and unit outcomes, and even guide reimbursement, particularly in the USA. Surgical site infection reduction programs or 'bundles' are increasingly a focus for policy makers.

Mechanical bowel preparation (MBP) involves an oral laxative solution to cleanse the colon of faecal contents, and has been thought to reduce the number of bacteria in the bowel, and thus lower the risk of infective complications such as wound infection and anastomotic leak after colorectal surgery including cancer surgery.[1] Three main types of MBP are used currently, including sodium picosulfate, polyethylene glycol (PEG) and sodium phosphate, with no clear evidence to suggest one format is better than the others, although PEG may be better in patients who cannot tolerate electrolyte imbalances.[1]

MBP has been used routinely throughout the 21st century. However, in the last four decades, a number of publications have published results suggesting that MBP may not be necessary and in fact may even have a deleterious effect on patient outcomes.[3][4][5] A Cochrane review was originally published on this issue in 2004, and has subsequently been reviewed twice with additional papers included.[6] The most recent review published in 2011, included 18 studies with 5805 patients, comparing patients receiving MBP with those receiving no MBP.[7] It also included a small group where patients receiving MBP were compared to those only receiving an enema. The authors were unable to show any difference in anastomotic leak rates or wound infection rates between the groups.[7] This led to guidelines from a number of colorectal groups suggesting that MBP should be abandoned for most cases, particularly in colonic surgery.[8][9][7] Despite this, many surgeons still use MBP, particularly for rectal resections.

Antibiotics in one form or another have been used in colorectal surgery since the 1930s, and prophylactic administration of antibiotics has been well documented to decrease morbidity, shorten hospital stay and reduce infection-related costs.[10][11][12] There appears to be no advantage with multiple doses of intravenous antibiotics compared to a single dose of antibiotic.[13] However, cover should be provided against aerobic and anaerobic bacteria.[12]

In the early 1970s, Nichols and Condon popularised a combination of oral and intravenous antibiotics,[2] which was particularly popular in the USA.[14] However, for a variety of reasons, including poor compliance and increased day of surgery admission, this has been replaced in many regions in the last two decades by intravenous antibiotics given prophylactically at operation.[15]

Some centres, particularly in the USA, have continued to use routine preoperative oral antibiotics, with neomycin and erythromycin most commonly used, although metronidazole, ciprofloxacin and aminoglycosides are also employed. Interestingly, in the last 2 years a number of retrospective studies, some including very large data sets from North America, have published results, which suggest a clear benefit with reduced rates of surgical site infections in patients given preoperative oral antibiotics and intravenous antibiotics in combination with mechanical bowel preparation, in comparison to those patients not given oral antibiotics regardless of whether they took MBP or not.[16][17][18][19][20][21]

Analysis of a large cohort of patients from the American College of Surgeons National Surgical Quality Improvement Program (ACS-NSQIP) reported that patients receiving oral antibiotics in addition to intravenous antibiotics and MBP, also had improved outcomes in other areas in addition to a lower surgical site infection rate, with reduced rates of anastomotic leakage and postoperative ileus on multivariate analysis.[17] The improvements in outcomes were not seen in patients taking preoperative oral antibiotics and intravenous antibiotics if they did not receive MBP.

One recently published Japanese study randomised 515 patients receiving laparoscopic surgery for colorectal cancer, comparing 255 patients receiving preoperative oral antibiotics and intravenous antibiotics to 256 patients only receiving intravenous antibiotics.[22] They found no difference in any of the outcomes studied particularly SSI rates, which were 7.8% in each group, however not all patients in this study received MBP.[22]

Back to top

## 12.9.2 Systematic review evidence

*In patients diagnosed with colorectal cancer and undergoing surgical tumour resection, does mechanical bowel preparation with or without antibiotic prophylaxis, when compared to usual care, achieve better outcomes in terms of anastomotic leakage, surgical site infection, length of hospital stay and ileus?*

Fourteen level II randomised controlled trials (RCTs) were analysed examining the effect of MBP (with antibiotic prophylaxis) compared with no MBP (with or without antibiotic prophylaxis) in colorectal cancer.[23][24][25][26][27][28][29][30][31][32][33][34][35][36][37][38]

All of the RCTs were at high risk of bias, and they were from a variety of different countries in Europe and Asia, where quality of colorectal cancer treatment may be comparable to the Australian population.[23][24][25][26][27][28][29][30][31][32][33][34][35][36][37][38] One study performed in Western Australia was directly applicable to Australian colorectal cancer patients.[32]

Outcomes of interest analysed included anastomotic leakage/dehiscence, surgical site/wound infection (including abscess), postoperative ileus and length of hospital stay.

Back to top

### 12.9.2.1 Anastomotic leakage/dehiscence

Ten RCTs and one subgroup analysis reported overall anastomotic leak rates when comparing MBP (with antibiotic prophylaxis) to no MBP (with or without antibiotic prophylaxis) with postoperative follow up ranging from 24 days to 3 months.[23][24][25][26][28][29][30][32][33][35][38] No trial showed a statistically significant difference in anastomotic leak rate.

One trial[23] marginally favoured no mechanical bowel preparation, while two further trials}}[24][35] favoured mechanical bowel preparation, however these were trends and not statistically significant. The trials that did report small differences between groups were for the outcome of overall anastomotic leakage and tended to have lower participant numbers than those reporting none to negligible differences between groups. Subgroup analysis looking at low anterior resection, stapled and hand sewn anastomoses showed no difference between groups.[36]

Four RCTs looked at the rate of clinically significant anastomotic leakage/dehiscence, and showed no statistically different difference between the groups with and without MBP.[24][25][26][32]

One trial found a trend favouring mechanical MBP (with antibiotic prophylaxis) with patients experiencing lower rates of clinical anastomotic leak in the MBP group than the no-MBP group (0.7% versus 4.1%): odds ratio (OR) 1.75; 95% confidence interval (CI) 0.02 to 1.35, p = 0.06).[32]

Similarly, another group reported a trend to lower rates of clinically significant anastomotic leakage for those undergoing MPB than no MPB (7.0% versus 16.0%). However, the statistical significance was not reported.[25] There was a non-significant trend for reduced anastomotic leakage/dehiscence rates in a subgroup of patients with diverting loop ileostomies receiving MBP than those receiving no MBP (0.0% versus 4.8%; p-value NS).[36]

Three RCTs[24][25][26] and one subgroup analysis[36] reported asymptomatic or minor anastomotic leakage and found no statistically significant differences between patients receiving MBP (with antibiotic prophylaxis) compared with no MBP (with or without antibiotic prophylaxis).

## 12.9.2.2 Surgical site infection

### 12.9.2.2.1 Overall wound infection rates

Seven RCTs[32][33][34][25][38][26][34][30] and one subgroup analysis[36] examined overall wound infection rates, and found no statistically significant difference in overall wound infection rates comparing patients taking MBP (with antibiotic prophylaxis) with those taking no MBP (with or without antibiotic prophylaxis).

There were some non-significant trends to better outcomes with MBP in one study with four arms when patients added synbiotics to MBP and oral antibiotics[31], and in another study in patients who had a diverting loop ileostomy.[36] In contrast, another study showed a non-significant trend to lower overall surgical site infection rate in patients with no MBP compared with MPB (29.2% versus 17.2%, p-value NS).[30]

Back to top

### 12.9.2.2.2 Deeper abdominal, intra-abdominal or wound abscess

Six RCTs[23][24][25][28][32][38] and one subgroup analysis[36] reported deeper abdominal, intra-abdominal or wound abscess rates. Six studies consistently reported minimal to no difference between mechanical bowel preparation (with antibiotic prophylaxis) compared with no mechanical bowel preparation (with or without antibiotic prophylaxis).[24][25][28][32][38] One trial[23]{{ reported a small, non-significant difference in favour of no MBP (with antibiotic prophylaxis) (7.9% versus 3.0%, p = 0.62).

In contrast to the aforementioned trials, one RCT reported significantly lower rates of abscess in the MBP group than the no-MBP group MBP (with antibiotic prophylaxis),including for overall intra-abdominal abscess (2.2% versus 4.7%; difference 2.4; 95% CI 0.5 to 4.4; p = 0.02) and abdominal abscess with anastomotic leak (0.3% versus2.5%; difference 2.2; 95% CI 0.9 to 3.4; p = 0.001).[25]

Back to top

### 12.9.2.2.3 Organ/space surgical site infection

Two RCTs[37][30] reported organ/space surgical site infection rates and one RCT[33] reported intra-abdominal infection rates. There was no significant difference between groups taking MBP and not taking MBP.

Back to top

### 12.9.2.2.4 Mild or superficial surgical site/wound infection

Seven RCTs[30][37][23][35][28][27][25] and one subgroup analysis[36] reported mild or superficial surgical site /wound infection. No study showed a statistically significant difference in mild surgical site infection rates associated with use of MBP.

Three RCTs[23][30][37] reported lower rates of surgical site infections among those that did not have MBP (with antibiotic prophylaxis), with reductions ranging from 4.8% to 10.7%. However, none of these differences were statistically significant.

Back to top

#### 12.9.2.2.5 Severe wound infection/subcutaneous wound disruption

One RCT[25] and one subgroup analysis of low anterior resection and diverting ileostomy[36] patients reported severe wound infection. Both were consistent in finding no statistically significant differences between MBP (with antibiotic prophylaxis) compared with no MBP (with antibiotic prophylaxis).

A further RCT reported subcutaneous wound disruption rates and also found no significant differences between groups.[28]

Back to top

#### 12.9.2.2.6 Wound dehiscence

One RCT[33] that reported wound dehiscence within 6 weeks post operation and one subgroup analysis[36] of low anterior resection reporting fascia dehiscence were consistent in reporting minimal between group differences.

In contrast, the subgroup analysis of diverting ileostomy reported fascial dehiscence to be higher for the MBP (with antibiotic prophylaxis) group than the no MBP group, but this was not statistically significant (7.4% versus 0.0%; p-value reported as NS).[36]

Back to top

### 12.9.2.3 Ileus

Five RCTs reported on post-operative ileus when comparing groups of patients taking MBP (with antibiotic prophylaxis) with those not taking MBP (with or without antibiotic prophylaxis).[26][28][33][35][37] There was no statistically significant difference in the incidence or duration of ileus between the groups.

Back to top

### 12.9.2.4 Length of hospital stay

Eleven RCTs reported length of hospital stay as an outcome for MBP (with antibiotic prophylaxis) compared to no MBP (with or without antibiotic prophylaxis).[24][25][26][27][28][29][32][33][35][37]

Five trials reported less than a day difference between arms with no statistically significant differences (p-values ranging from 0.4 to 0.73).[25][28][32][33][38] Four trials reported one day difference between arms but were not statistically significant.[24][26][27][29] One further trial[35] reported a 4.4 median day difference between arms, which favoured no MBP and similarly another trial[37] also favoured no MBP with a 2 day mean difference between arms. However, differences between groups in both trials were not statistically significant (p-values 0.28 and 0.17, respectively). These latter two trials also contained low patient numbers such that results should be interpreted cautiously.[37][35]

Back to top

## 12.9.3 Evidence summary and recommendations

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| There is no significant difference in anastomotic leak rate when comparing patients who received MBP to no MBP, regardless of antibiotics administered. | II | [23], [24], [25], [26], [28], [30], [32], [33], [35], [38] |
| Overall surgical site infection rates are not significantly altered by the use of MBP, regardless of antibiotics taken.<br><br>One study (Contant 2007) did show a significant reduction in the intra-abdominal abscess rate in patients who received MBP. | II | [24], [25], [28], [32], [33], [34], [36], [38] |
| Incidence and duration of postoperative ileus is not impacted by usage of MBP. | II | [29], [31], [36], [37] |
| There is no statistically significant difference in hospital stay associated with usage of MBP. | II | [25], [28], [32], [33], [38], [24], [26], [27], [29], [35], [37] |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| Mechanical bowel preparation should not be used routinely in colonic surgery. It can be used in selectively according to individual patient and tumour characteristics, at the surgeon's discretion. | **D** |

### 12.9.3.1 Considerations in making this recommendation

Mechanical bowel preparation has not been shown to consistently alter outcomes in patients undergoing surgery for colorectal cancer.

Back to top

## 12.9.4 Health system implications

### 12.9.4.1 Clinical practice

The recommendation to consider mechanical bowel preparation on a case-by-case basis does not represent a significant departure from current practice. A 2011 survey of Australian and New Zealand colorectal surgeons found that routine oral mechanical bowel preparation was preferred by 28% for colon resection and 63% for rectal resection.[39]

### 12.9.4.2 Resourcing

The recommendation has no implications for resourcing.

### 12.9.4.3 Barriers to implementation

Surgeons who prefer routine mechanical bowel preparation may continue this practice.

Back to top

## 12.9.5 Discussion

### 12.9.5.1 Unresolved issues

It is not clear if mechanical bowel preparation used in combination with preoperative oral antibiotics and intravenous antibiotics is associated with reduced rates of surgical site infection and anastomotic leak.

### 12.9.5.2 Studies currently underway

There is a Finnish MOBILE trial currently recruiting which is randomizing patients undergoing elective colectomies to receive either mechanical and oral antibiotic bowel preparation or no bowel preparation, which will hopefully help answer this question.[40]

### 12.9.5.3 Future research priorities

There is some emerging evidence that MBP when used in combination with preoperative oral antibiotics and intravenous antibiotics is associated with reduced rates of surgical site infection and anastomotic leak. This issue will need to be the focus of future RCTs to establish the true role of MBP in patients undergoing surgery for colorectal cancer.

Back to top

## 12.9.6 References

1. ↑ [1.0] [1.1] [1.2] Kumar AS, Kelleher DC, Sigle GW. *Bowel Preparation before Elective Surgery.* Clin Colon Rectal Surg 2013 Sep;26(3):146-52 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24436665.
2. ↑ [2.0] [2.1] Nichols RL, Condon RE. *Preoperative preparation of the colon.* Surg Gynecol Obstet 1971 Feb;132 (2):323-37 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/4929735.
3. ↑ Hughes ES, McDermott FT, Polglase AL, Johnson WR, Pihl EA. *Sepsis and asepsis in large bowel cancer surgery.* World J Surg 1982 Mar;6(2):160-5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7090401.
4. ↑ Zmora O, Mahajna A, Bar-Zakai B, Rosin D, Hershko D, Shabtai M, et al. *Colon and rectal surgery without mechanical bowel preparation: a randomized prospective trial.* Ann Surg 2003 Mar;237(3):363-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12616120.
5. ↑ Burke P, Mealy K, Gillen P, Joyce W, Traynor O, Hyland J. *Requirement for bowel preparation in colorectal surgery.* Br J Surg 1994 Jun;81(6):907-10 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed /8044619.
6. ↑ Slim K, Vicaut E, Panis Y, Chipponi J. *Meta-analysis of randomized clinical trials of colorectal surgery with or without mechanical bowel preparation.* Br J Surg 2004 Sep;91(9):1125-30 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15449262.
7. ↑ [7.0] [7.1] [7.2] Güenaga KF, Matos D, Wille-Jørgensen P. *Mechanical bowel preparation for elective colorectal surgery.* Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2011 Sep 7;(9):CD001544 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih. gov/pubmed/21901677.
8. ↑ Gustafsson UO, Scott MJ, Schwenk W, Demartines N, Roulin D, Francis N, et al. *Guidelines for perioperative care in elective colonic surgery: Enhanced Recovery After Surgery (ERAS®) Society recommendations.* Clin Nutr 2012 Dec;31(6):783-800 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed /23099039.
9. ↑ Eskicioglu C, Forbes SS, Fenech DS, McLeod RS, Best Practice in General Surgery Committee.. *Preoperative bowel preparation for patients undergoing elective colorectal surgery: a clinical practice guideline endorsed by the Canadian Society of Colon and Rectal Surgeons.* Can J Surg 2010 Dec;53(6): 385-95 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21092431.
10. ↑ Baum ML, Anish DS, Chalmers TC, Sacks HS, Smith H Jr, Fagerstrom RM. *A survey of clinical trials of antibiotic prophylaxis in colon surgery: evidence against further use of no-treatment controls.* N Engl J Med 1981 Oct 1;305(14):795-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7266633.
11. ↑ Song F, Glenny AM. *Antimicrobial prophylaxis in colorectal surgery: a systematic review of randomized controlled trials.* Br J Surg 1998 Sep;85(9):1232-41 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed /9752867.
12. ↑ [12.0] [12.1] Nelson RL, Gladman E, Barbateskovic M. *Antimicrobial prophylaxis for colorectal surgery.* Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2014 May 9;(5):CD001181 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov /pubmed/24817514.
13. ↑ Rowe-Jones DC, Peel AL, Kingston RD, Shaw JF, Teasdale C, Cole DS. *Single dose cefotaxime plus metronidazole versus three dose cefuroxime plus metronidazole as prophylaxis against wound infection in colorectal surgery: multicentre prospective randomised study.* BMJ 1990 Jan 6;300(6716):18-22 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2105115.

14. ↑ Solla JA, Rothenberger DA. *Preoperative bowel preparation. A survey of colon and rectal surgeons.* Dis Colon Rectum 1990 Feb;33(2):154-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2105194.
15. ↑ Markell KW, Hunt BM, Charron PD, Kratz RJ, Nelson J, Isler JT, et al. *Prophylaxis and management of wound infections after elective colorectal surgery: a survey of the American Society of Colon and Rectal Surgeons membership.* J Gastrointest Surg 2010 Jul;14(7):1090-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20473578.
16. ↑ Althumairi AA, Canner JK, Pawlik TM, Schneider E, Nagarajan N, Safar B, et al. *Benefits of Bowel Preparation Beyond Surgical Site Infection: A Retrospective Study.* Ann Surg 2016 Dec;264(6):1051-1057 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26727098.
17. ↑ 17.0 17.1 Kiran RP, Murray AC, Chiuzan C, Estrada D, Forde K. *Combined preoperative mechanical bowel preparation with oral antibiotics significantly reduces surgical site infection, anastomotic leak, and ileus after colorectal surgery.* Ann Surg 2015 Sep;262(3):416-25; discussion 423-5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26258310.
18. ↑ Kim EK, Sheetz KH, Bonn J, DeRoo S, Lee C, Stein I, et al. *A statewide colectomy experience: the role of full bowel preparation in preventing surgical site infection.* Ann Surg 2014 Feb;259(2):310-4 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23979289.
19. ↑ Moghadamyeghaneh Z, Hanna MH, Carmichael JC, Mills SD, Pigazzi A, Nguyen NT, et al. *Nationwide analysis of outcomes of bowel preparation in colon surgery.* J Am Coll Surg 2015 May;220(5):912-20 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25907871.
20. ↑ Morris MS, Graham LA, Chu DI, Cannon JA, Hawn MT. *Oral Antibiotic Bowel Preparation Significantly Reduces Surgical Site Infection Rates and Readmission Rates in Elective Colorectal Surgery.* Ann Surg 2015 Jun;261(6):1034-40 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25607761.
21. ↑ Scarborough JE, Mantyh CR, Sun Z, Migaly J. *Combined Mechanical and Oral Antibiotic Bowel Preparation Reduces Incisional Surgical Site Infection and Anastomotic Leak Rates After Elective Colorectal Resection: An Analysis of Colectomy-Targeted ACS NSQIP.* Ann Surg 2015 Aug;262(2):331-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26083870.
22. ↑ 22.0 22.1 Ikeda A, Konishi T, Ueno M, Fukunaga Y, Nagayama S, Fujimoto Y, et al. *Randomized clinical trial of oral and intravenous versus intravenous antibiotic prophylaxis for laparoscopic colorectal resection.* Br J Surg 2016 Aug 23 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27550722.
23. ↑ 23.0 23.1 23.2 23.3 23.4 23.5 23.6 23.7 23.8 Bhattacharjee PK, Chakraborty S. *An Open-Label Prospective Randomized Controlled Trial of Mechanical Bowel Preparation vs Nonmechanical Bowel Preparation in Elective Colorectal Surgery: Personal Experience.* Indian J Surg 2015 Dec;77(Suppl 3):1233-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27011543.
24. ↑ 24.00 24.01 24.02 24.03 24.04 24.05 24.06 24.07 24.08 24.09 24.10 24.11 24.12 Bretagnol F, Panis Y, Rullier E, Rouanet P, Berdah S, Dousset B, et al. *Rectal cancer surgery with or without bowel preparation: The French GRECCAR III multicenter single-blinded randomized trial.* Ann Surg 2010 Nov;252(5):863-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21037443.
25. ↑ 25.00 25.01 25.02 25.03 25.04 25.05 25.06 25.07 25.08 25.09 25.10 25.11 25.12 25.13 25.14 25.15 25.16 Contant CM, Hop WC, van't Sant HP, Oostvogel HJ, Smeets HJ, Stassen LP, et al. *Mechanical bowel preparation for elective colorectal surgery: a multicentre randomised trial.* Lancet 2007 Dec 22;370(9605):2112-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18156032.

26. ↑ 26.00 26.01 26.02 26.03 26.04 26.05 26.06 26.07 26.08 26.09 26.10 Fa-Si-Oen P, Roumen R, Buitenweg J, van de Velde C, van Geldere D, Putter H, et al. *Mechanical bowel preparation or not? Outcome of a multicenter, randomized trial in elective open colon surgery.* Dis Colon Rectum 2005 Aug;48(8):1509-16 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15981065.

27. ↑ 27.0 27.1 27.2 27.3 27.4 27.5 Horvat M, Krebs B, Potrc S, Ivanecz A, Kompan L. *Preoperative synbiotic bowel conditioning for elective colorectal surgery.* Wien Klin Wochenschr 2010 May;122 Suppl 2:26-30 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20517667.

28. ↑ 28.00 28.01 28.02 28.03 28.04 28.05 28.06 28.07 28.08 28.09 28.10 28.11 28.12 Jung B, Påhlman L, Nyström PO, Nilsson E, Mechanical Bowel Preparation Study Group.. *Multicentre randomized clinical trial of mechanical bowel preparation in elective colonic resection.* Br J Surg 2007 Jun;94(6):689-95 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17514668.

29. ↑ 29.0 29.1 29.2 29.3 29.4 29.5 29.6 Krebs B. *Prebiotic and Synbiotic Treatment before Colorectal Surgery--Randomised Double Blind Trial.* Coll Antropol 2016 Apr;40(1):35-40 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27301235.

30. ↑ 30.0 30.1 30.2 30.3 30.4 30.5 30.6 30.7 30.8 Pena-Soria MJ, Mayol JM, Anula R, Arbeo-Escolar A, Fernandez-Represa JA. *Single-blinded randomized trial of mechanical bowel preparation for colon surgery with primary intraperitoneal anastomosis.* J Gastrointest Surg 2008 Dec;12(12):2103-8; discussion 2108-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18820977.

31. ↑ 31.0 31.1 31.2 31.3 Pena-Soria MJ, Mayol JM, Anula-Fernandez R, Arbeo-Escolar A, Fernandez-Represa JA. *Mechanical bowel preparation for elective colorectal surgery with primary intraperitoneal anastomosis by a single surgeon: interim analysis of a prospective single-blinded randomized trial.* J Gastrointest Surg 2007 May;11(5):562-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17394048.

32. ↑ 32.00 32.01 32.02 32.03 32.04 32.05 32.06 32.07 32.08 32.09 32.10 32.11 32.12 32.13 Platell C, Barwood N, Makin G. *Randomized clinical trial of bowel preparation with a single phosphate enema or polyethylene glycol before elective colorectal surgery.* Br J Surg 2006 Apr;93(4):427-33 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16491463.

33. ↑ 33.00 33.01 33.02 33.03 33.04 33.05 33.06 33.07 33.08 33.09 33.10 33.11 Ram E, Sherman Y, Weil R, Vishne T, Kravarusic D, Dreznik Z. *Is mechanical bowel preparation mandatory for elective colon surgery? A prospective randomized study.* Arch Surg 2005 Mar;140(3):285-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15781794.

34. ↑ 34.0 34.1 34.2 34.3 34.4 Reddy BS, Macfie J, Gatt M, Larsen CN, Jensen SS, Leser TD. *Randomized clinical trial of effect of synbiotics, neomycin and mechanical bowel preparation on intestinal barrier function in patients undergoing colectomy.* Br J Surg 2007 May;94(5):546-54 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17443852.

35. ↑ 35.00 35.01 35.02 35.03 35.04 35.05 35.06 35.07 35.08 35.09 35.10 Sasaki J, Matsumoto S, Kan H, Yamada T, Koizumi M, Mizuguchi Y, et al. *Objective assessment of postoperative gastrointestinal motility in elective colonic resection using a radiopaque marker provides an evidence for the abandonment of preoperative mechanical bowel preparation.* J Nippon Med Sch 2012;79(4):259-66 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22976604.

36. ↑ 36.00 36.01 36.02 36.03 36.04 36.05 36.06 36.07 36.08 36.09 36.10 36.11 36.12 36.13 Van't Sant HP, Weidema WF, Hop WC, Oostvogel HJ, Contant CM. *The influence of mechanical bowel preparation in elective lower colorectal surgery.* Ann Surg 2010 Jan;251(1):59-63 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20009750.
37. ↑ 37.00 37.01 37.02 37.03 37.04 37.05 37.06 37.07 37.08 37.09 37.10 Watanabe M, Murakami M, Nakao K, Asahara T, Nomoto K, Tsunoda A. *Randomized clinical trial of the influence of mechanical bowel preparation on faecal microflora in patients undergoing colonic cancer resection.* Br J Surg 2010 Dec;97(12):1791-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20799286.
38. ↑ 38.0 38.1 38.2 38.3 38.4 38.5 38.6 38.7 38.8 38.9 Zmora O, Mahajna A, Bar-Zakai B, Hershko D, Shabtai M, Krausz MM, et al. *Is mechanical bowel preparation mandatory for left-sided colonic anastomosis? Results of a prospective randomized trial.* Tech Coloproctol 2006 Jul;10(2):131-5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16773286.
39. ↑ Kahokehr A, Robertson P, Sammour T, Soop M, Hill AG. *Perioperative care: a survey of New Zealand and Australian colorectal surgeons.* Colorectal Dis 2011 Nov;13(11):1308-13 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20958906.
40. ↑ Clinicaltrial.gov. *MOBILE Trial. Mechanical and Oral Antibiotic Bowel Preparation Versus no Bowel preparatIon for eLEctive Colectomy - a Multicenter, Prospective, Randomized, Controlled Trial. NCT02652637.* [homepage on the internet] U.S. National Institutes of Health; Available from: https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02652637.

Back to top

## 12.9.7 Appendices

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| View recommendation components | View pending evidence | View body of evidence | View all comments | View literature search |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| View PICO | NHMRC Evidence statement form PRP2-5,7 | Systematic review report PRP2-5,7 |

Back to top

# 13 Elective and emergency surgery for colon and rectal cancer

## Chapter subsections

Please see subsections:

- Optimal approach to elective resection for colon cancers (COL1-2a)
- Optimal approach to elective resection for rectal cancers
  - Optimal approach to elective resection for rectal cancers (COL1-2b)
  - Local versus radical resection for T1-T2 rectal tumours (REC3)
- Emergency management of malignant large bowel obstruction (COLMNG5)
- Peritonectomy with hyperthermic intraperitoneal chemotherapy(COLMNG3)

# 13.1 Optimal approach to elective resection for colon cancers (COL1-2a)

**Contents**

## 13.1.1 Background

The surgical management of adenocarcinoma of the colon is achieved by resection of the primary tumour and anastomosis of the bowel. Until recent decades, this procedure required a laparotomy, usually entailing a long midline abdominal incision. With the advent of laparoscopic surgery in the late 1980s, techniques have been developed that allow a minimally invasive approach to the surgical management of colon cancer. In the last 15 years there have been several large multicentre randomised controlled trials (RCTs), as well as many smaller RCTs and meta-analyses, comparing open and laparoscopic approaches to the elective resection of colon cancer.

## 13.1.2 Systematic review evidence

*In patients diagnosed with colon cancer, what is the optimal resection strategy to achieve the best outcomes in terms of length and quality of life? (COL1-2a)*

A systematic review was undertaken to ascertain the optimal surgical approach for resection of adenocarcinoma of the colon. The review focused on RCTs comparing open and laparoscopic colon resection, with particular reference to the outcomes of colon cancer mortality, disease free survival, colorectal cancer recurrence, lymph node harvest and perioperative mortality and morbidity, as well as surgery-related outcomes including postoperative pain levels, length of hospital stay, return of postoperative bowel function and operative time.

One systematic review and meta-analysis[1] and 17 RCTs reported across 40 articles[2][3][4][5][6][7][8][9][10][11][12][13][14][15][16][17][18][19][20][21][22][23][24][25][26][27][28][29][30][31][32][33][34][35][36][37][38][39][40][41][42] were identified that compared open and laparoscopic approaches to the resection of colon cancer. The systematic review and meta-analysis had a low risk of bias.[1] All the RCTs were considered to be at unclear or high risk of bias.[2][3][4][5][6][7][8][9][10][11][12][13][14][15][16][19][17][18][20][21][22][23][24][25][26][27][28][29][30][31][32][33][34][35][36][37][38][39][40][41][42]

The search strategy, inclusion and exclusion criteria, and quality assessment are described in detail in the Technical report.

Back to top

## 13.1.2.1 Oncological outcomes

### 13.1.2.1.1 Colorectal cancer-specific mortality

Thirteen RCTs reported colorectal cancer mortality rates.[7][10][11][15][21][25][29][31][33][38][39][41][42] The RCT with the longest follow-up reported a nonsignificant difference in cancer-specific mortality between the laparoscopic and open surgery groups at 95 months' follow-up (16% versus 27%; p = 0.07).[21] However, there was an overall cancer-specific survival benefit in favour of the laparoscopic group at 10-year follow up (83% versus 65%; p = 0.02).[21]

### 13.1.2.1.2 Disease-free survival

Six RCTs[7][8][10][17][18][25] reported 3-year, 5-year and/or 10-year disease-free survival outcomes for patients who underwent laparoscopic or open surgery. All trials were consistent in reporting no difference in disease-free survival between the different surgical approaches at any of these follow up intervals.

### 13.1.2.1.3 Colorectal cancer recurrence

Eleven RCTs[5][7][8][10][12][17][21][25][26][31][42] reported either overall, local and/or distant colorectal cancer recurrence outcomes for laparoscopic versus open surgery, with follow up periods ranging from 2 to 10 years. One RCT[21] reported a statistically significant difference in colorectal cancer recurrence favouring the laparoscopic group at 10-year follow up (78% versus 64%; p = 0.05). All other RCTs and one meta-analysis[1] reported no difference in rates of colorectal cancer recurrence between groups who underwent open and laparoscopic colon cancer resection.

### 13.1.2.1.4 Lymph node harvest

The number of lymph nodes removed at colon cancer surgery is considered to be a surrogate marker of the quality of the resection.[43][44] Some authors have reported that removal of fewer than 12 lymph nodes is associated with poor prognosis.

Ten RCTs reported the mean or median number of lymph nodes retrieved.[6][7][8][10][15][25][26][31][41][42] There was no evidence of a significant difference between the two techniques in the number of lymph nodes retrieved.

Back to top

## 13.1.2.2 Perioperative mortality and morbidity

### 13.1.2.2.1 Perioperative mortality

Thirteen RCTs reported either operative mortality, perioperative mortality or postoperative mortality.[7][10][11][15][21][25][29][31][33][38][39][41][42] No differences between open and laparoscopic techniques were reported for these outcomes.

### 13.1.2.2.2 Perioperative morbidity

Five RCTs reported intraoperative complication rates.[11][13][15][29][37] Only one RCT, the Australasian Randomized Clinical Study Comparing Laparoscopic and Conventional Open Surgical Treatments for Colon Cancer (ALCCaS trial),[15] reported that the proportion of patients with one or more intraoperative complication was significantly lower among the open surgery group than the laparoscopic surgery group (3.7% versus 10.5%; p = 0.001). All other RCTs found no statistically significant difference in intraoperative complication rates between the operative techniques.[11][13][29][37]

Ten RCTs reported overall postoperative complication rates.[3][11][13][15][26][29][32][35][37][38] Most found no difference between open and laparoscopic surgery, although two RCTs[11][32] reported that laparoscopic surgery was associated with significantly lower rates of complications in the first 30 days postoperatively, compared with open surgery (15–21.1% versus 30–39.4%; p = 0.01–0.02). In addition, the ALCCaS trial[15] reported that, among patients aged over 70 years, there was a lower rate of postoperative complications (first 59 days) in the laparoscopic group, compared with the open surgery group (37.8% versus 50.7%; p = 0.02).

Back to top

### 13.1.2.2.3 Intraoperative blood loss

Of the 10 RCTs that reported median or mean intraoperative blood loss,[11][15][25][26][31][37][38][39][41][42] six reported significantly reduced blood loss in the laparoscopic surgery group, compared with the open surgery group, with a weighted mean difference of 108.39 mL (98.02 mL versus 206.42 mL) for those that reported mean.[11][26][37][38][41] Each of the two trials that reported median blood loss also observed significantly less blood loss in the laparoscopic group, with differences in medians of 75 mL[38] and 55 mL.[41]

The clinical significance of these differences is unclear. Seven RCTs compared intraoperative, perioperative or postoperative blood transfusion rates between open and laparoscopic colon cancer surgery.[15][25][29][31][39][41][42] No differences were found between the groups in any of these trials.

Back to top

#### 13.1.2.2.4 Injury to other organs

In introducing new techniques to surgery, there is appropriate concern that hitherto-unreported complications may occur. Damage to organs out of the view of the laparoscope during laparoscopic colon cancer surgery is an example of this concern. Four RCTs[13][15][29][41] reported the incidence of intraoperative injury to small bowel, colon, splenic, ureteric, blood vessel and/or bladder in colon cancer surgery. None observed a difference between laparoscopic and open surgery in any of these parameters, with one exception: the ALCCaS trial[15] reported a higher rate of colonic serosal tear in the laparoscopic group, compared with the open surgery group (2.7% versus 0.3%; p = 0.02). This finding is of questionable clinical significance.

#### 13.1.2.2.5 Reoperation

Four RCTs[15][25][38][41] reported reoperation rates in the postoperative period. All of the trials reported trends, with one trial[41] favouring the laparoscopic group and the other three trials favouring the open group. However, none of these differences reached statistical significance (p values ranged from 0.13 to 0.54).

Back to top

#### 13.1.2.2.6 Anastomotic complications

Eleven RCTs[11][13][16][25][26][29][31][32][33][38][39] reported the rate or the cumulative incidence of anastomotic complication rates. None of the studies observed a difference in anastomotic complication rate between laparoscopic and open colon cancer surgery.

#### 13.1.2.2.7 Postoperative small bowel obstruction

Three RCTs reported reoperation rates for bowel obstruction in the early postoperative period.[25][29][34] Two of these trials[25][34] reported no significant difference between open and laparoscopic surgery, whereas one[29] found reported a higher obstruction rate in the laparoscopic group than the open surgery group (2.8% versus 0%; p = 0.02).

Six trials reported rate or cumulative incidence of bowel obstruction up to 5 years after surgery.[29][32][34][36][38][41] None observed a difference in the rate of bowel obstruction between open and laparoscopic surgery, although the CLASSIC trial[36] found a marginally lower rate of bowel obstruction in the 3 years following randomisation in the laparoscopic group than the open surgery group (1.3% versus 4.0%; p value not reported).

#### 13.1.2.2.8 Wound complications

Eight RCTs reported rates of postoperative wound infection[11][13][15][25][26][31][38][41] for laparoscopic versus open surgery. There was no statistically significant difference between the groups in any of these trials.

Several studies reported either postoperative incisional hernia rates or non-infectious wound complication rates. All observed numerical differences favouring the laparoscopic group, but in only one RCT[41] did this difference reach statistical significance (2.1% versus 7.4%; $p < 0.001$).

### 13.1.2.2.9 Respiratory complications

Six RCTs reported postoperative pneumonia rates for open versus laparoscopic colon surgery.[15][16][26][29][31][41] Three trials[15][31][26] observed a non-significant trend in favour of the laparoscopic group (0.47–8.5% versus 2.2–10%; $p = 0.11–0.41$), while the other three trials (LAPKON II 2009, JCOG 2014, COLOR 2007) observed no difference.[16][29][41]

Several studies reported rates of atelectasis or respiratory failure and found there to be no difference between the groups.[11][25][42]

### 13.1.2.2.10 Other surgery-related outcomes

Minimally invasive surgery has been developed to improve surgery related outcomes for the patient in the immediate postoperative period. Expected outcomes include less postoperative pain, more rapid return of postoperative bowel function, and a shortened hospital stay.

It should be noted that many of the RCTs used to analyse these outcomes were from the era prior to the widespread use of enhanced recovery after surgery (ERAS) protocols, which aim to improve postoperative outcomes with a combination of multimodal analgesic options (and minimal narcotic analgesia), early feeding with diet on the first postoperative day, minimal preoperative bowel preparation and early mobilisation.[45][46][47][48] It can only be speculated whether the following findings would be replicated if both open and laparoscopic surgery patients were exposed to such protocols in a RCT, or whether differences between open and laparoscopic surgery would be less apparent

Back to top

### 13.1.2.2.11 Postoperative pain

A decrease in pain levels in the postoperative period is an expected outcome from minimally invasive surgery, including laparoscopic colon cancer surgery. Five RCTs[10][25][38][41][42] reported postoperative analgesic requirement for laparoscopic and open surgery groups and two RCTs[25][26] reported pain on the first postoperative day using a visual analogue pain scale.

Pain after laparoscopic colon surgery was consistently less than after open surgery, whether measured by overall postoperative analgesic requirement, days of postoperative narcotic analgesia use or number of postoperative narcotic injections. For example, in one study the laparoscopic group required fewer median days of narcotic use than open surgery group (3 days versus 4 days; $p < 0.001$),[10] while another reported a lower rate of postoperative narcotic use in the laparoscopic group than the open surgery group (32.8% versus 46%; $p < 0.001$).[41] One study[26] reported that mean visual analogue pain scores on the first postoperative day were lower among the laparoscopic surgery group than the open surgery group (3.5 versus 8.6; $p < 0.001$).

### 13.1.2.2.12 Length of hospital stay

Sixteen RCTs[3][10][11][13][15][19][25][26][29][31][33][37][38][39][41][42] reported the postoperative length of hospital stay for patients undergoing laparoscopic or open resection. Fourteen found that patients having laparoscopic colectomy were discharged earlier,[3][10][11][15][19][25][26][31][33][37][38][39][41][42] with a statistically significant difference in 10 of the RCTs.[3][10][11][19][25][26][31][37][38][41] The ALCCaS trial,[15] which reported findings by age, observed a significantly lower length of stay in the laparoscopic group than the open surgery group in both the under-70 years group (median 7 [range 1–30] versus 8 [range 4–49]; $p = 0.01$) and the over-70 years group (8 [range 2–55] versus 10 [5–59]; $p < 0.001$). The weighted mean difference across nine studies was 1.9 days in favour of laparoscopic surgery (weighted mean 9.7 days versus 11.6 days).

### 13.1.2.2.13 Return of bowel function

Eight RCTs[13][15][19][25][33][38][41][42] reported return of bowel function outcomes for open versus laparoscopic colon resection. Five trials reported time to first flatus[15][19][25][33][41] with three showing a statistically significant shorter period in favour of the laparoscopic group (mean difference 1.8–3.2 days; p values ranged from $< 0.001$ to 0.03).[15][19][41]

Four trials[13][15][33][38] reported time to first bowel action. All of these trials showed a shorter time to bowel action in the laparoscopic group, with two trials reaching statistical significance (mean 3.6 versus 4.4 days; $p < 0.0001$–$0.01$).[15][38]

Several trials reported the time to resuming normal diet, with most showing a shorter time for the laparoscopic group.[13][19][25][42] With most major centres adopting ERAS protocols that include the provision of solid food on the first postoperative day for both open and laparoscopic surgery, the time to resuming diet is no longer a useful outcome in open versus laparoscopic colon resection analysis.

### 13.1.2.2.14 Operative time

Thirteen RCTs reported operative time for open versus laparoscopic colon resection.[10][11][15][19][25][26][29][31][33][37][38][41][42] Nine RCTs reported mean operative time, with open colon cancer surgery being faster than laparoscopic colon cancer surgery by a weighted mean difference of 44.51 minutes (weighted mean 146.61 minutes versus 191.16 minutes).[11][19][25][26][29][31][33][37][42] A further four RCTs used median operative times for their analysis, reporting a similar trend.[10][15][38][41]

Back to top

## 13.1.3 Evidence summary and recommendations

| Evidence Summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| There is no difference in oncological results, as measured by cancer mortality, disease free survival, cancer recurrence and lymph node harvest between open and laparoscopic colon cancer surgery. | II | [5][6][7][8][10][11] [15][17][18][21] [25][26][29][31] [33][38][39][41] [42] |
| Open and laparoscopic colon cancer surgery can be performed with equivalent safety, with no significant difference in perioperative mortality or morbidity between the two techniques. | II | [7][10][11][13][15] [21][25][29][31] [33][37][38][39] [41][42] |
| Laparoscopic colon cancer surgery provides improved short-term postoperative outcomes, compared with open colon cancer surgery, with less postoperative pain, a shortened time to return of bowel function and a shorter hospital stay. | II | [3][10][11][13][15] [19][25][26][31] [33][37][38][39] [41][42] |

Back to top

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| Either an open approach or a laparoscopic approach can be used for the resection of colon cancer. | **D** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| Laparoscopic colectomy should be performed when the surgical expertise and hospital infrastructure are available. | **D** |

**Practice point**

Laparoscopic colectomy requires significant additional skills. Surgeons should ensure that they have mastered the necessary techniques before performing laparoscopic colectomy as an independent operator.

**Practice point**

Laparoscopic colorectal surgery is complex minimally invasive surgery that requires high-resolution video imaging and up-to-date equipment, including instrumentation and energy sources. It should only be undertaken in facilities that provide this infrastructure.

Back to top

## 13.1.3.1 Health system implications

### 13.1.3.1.1 Clinical practice

Surgeons in tertiary hospitals perform both laparoscopic and open colectomy as is appropriate for an individual patients. Smaller hospitals may not have access to the equipment necessary for safe laparoscopic colectomy.

### 13.1.3.1.2 Resourcing

The recommendation to use a laparoscopic approach, where the requisite the surgical expertise and hospital infrastructure are available, is unlikely to have any resource issues for larger hospitals. Smaller hospitals may need resources to properly equip operating theatres for laparoscopic colectomy.

### 13.1.3.1.3 Barriers to implementation

No barriers to the implementation of these recommendations are envisaged.

## 13.1.3.2 Discussion

### 13.1.3.2.1 Unresolved issues

There are no significant unresolved issues.

### 13.1.3.2.2 Studies currently underway

There are no significant ongoing studies.

#### 13.1.3.2.3 Future research priorities

A research focus is techniques for resection in patients with rectal cancer, including total mesocolic excision.

Next section: optimal approach to elective resection for rectal cancers

Back to top

## 13.1.4 References

1. ↑ [1.0] [1.1] [1.2] Di B, Li Y, Wei K, Xiao X, Shi J, Zhang Y, et al. *Laparoscopic versus open surgery for colon cancer: a meta-analysis of 5-year follow-up outcomes.* Surg Oncol 2013 Sep;22(3):e39-43 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23643698.
2. ↑ [2.0] [2.1] COLOR Study Group. *COLOR: a randomized clinical trial comparing laparoscopic and open resection for colon cancer.* Dig Surg 2000;17(6):617-622 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11155008.
3. ↑ [3.0] [3.1] [3.2] [3.3] [3.4] [3.5] [3.6] Allardyce RA, Bagshaw PF, Frampton CM, Frizelle FA, Hewett PJ, Rieger NA, et al. *Australasian Laparoscopic Colon Cancer Study shows that elderly patients may benefit from lower postoperative complication rates following laparoscopic versus open resection.* Br J Surg 2010 Jan;97(1):86-91 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19937975.
4. ↑ [4.0] [4.1] Allardyce RA, Bagshaw PF, Frampton CM, Frizelle FA, Hewett PJ, Rieger NA, et al. *Australian and New Zealand study comparing laparoscopic and open surgeries for colon cancer in adults: organization and conduct.* ANZ J Surg 2008 Oct;78(10):840-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18959634.
5. ↑ [5.0] [5.1] [5.2] [5.3] Bagshaw PF, Allardyce RA, Frampton CM, Frizelle FA, Hewett PJ, McMurrick PJ, et al. *Long-term outcomes of the australasian randomized clinical trial comparing laparoscopic and conventional open surgical treatments for colon cancer: the Australasian Laparoscopic Colon Cancer Study trial.* Ann Surg 2012 Dec;256(6):915-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23154392.
6. ↑ [6.0] [6.1] [6.2] [6.3] Braga M, Frasson M, Vignali A, Zuliani W, Di Carlo V. *Open right colectomy is still effective compared to laparoscopy: results of a randomized trial.* Ann Surg 2007 Dec;246(6):1010-4; discussion 1014-5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18043103.
7. ↑ [7.0] [7.1] [7.2] [7.3] [7.4] [7.5] [7.6] [7.7] [7.8] Braga M, Frasson M, Zuliani W, Vignali A, Pecorelli N, Di Carlo V. *Randomized clinical trial of laparoscopic versus open left colonic resection.* Br J Surg 2010 Aug;97(8):1180-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20602506.
8. ↑ [8.0] [8.1] [8.2] [8.3] [8.4] [8.5] Buunen M, Veldkamp R, Hop WC, Kuhry E, Jeekel J, Haglind E, et al. *Survival after laparoscopic surgery versus open surgery for colon cancer: long-term outcome of a randomised clinical trial.* Lancet Oncol 2009 Jan;10(1):44-52 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19071061.
9. ↑ [9.0] [9.1] Delgado S, Lacy AM, García Valdecasas JC, Balagué C, Pera M, Salvador L, et al. *Could age be an indication for laparoscopic colectomy in colorectal cancer?* Surg Endosc 2000 Jan;14(1):22-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10653230.

10. ↑ 10.00 10.01 10.02 10.03 10.04 10.05 10.06 10.07 10.08 10.09 10.10 10.11 10.12 10.13 10.14 10.15 10.16 Fleshman J, Sargent DJ, Green E, Anvari M, Stryker SJ, Beart RW Jr, et al. *Laparoscopic colectomy for cancer is not inferior to open surgery based on 5-year data from the COST Study Group trial.* Ann Surg 2007 Oct;246(4): 655-62; discussion 662-4 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17893502.
11. ↑ 11.00 11.01 11.02 11.03 11.04 11.05 11.06 11.07 11.08 11.09 11.10 11.11 11.12 11.13 11.14 11.15 11.16 11.17 11.18 11.19 11.20 Fujii S, Ishibe A, Ota M, Yamagishi S, Watanabe K, Watanabe J, et al. *Short-term results of a randomized study between laparoscopic and open surgery in elderly colorectal cancer patients.* Surg Endosc 2014 Feb;28(2):466-76 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24122242.
12. ↑ 12.0 12.1 12.2 Green BL, Marshall HC, Collinson F, Quirke P, Guillou P, Jayne DG, et al. *Long-term follow-up of the Medical Research Council CLASICC trial of conventional versus laparoscopically assisted resection in colorectal cancer.* Br J Surg 2013 Jan;100(1):75-82 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov /pubmed/23132548.
13. ↑ 13.00 13.01 13.02 13.03 13.04 13.05 13.06 13.07 13.08 13.09 13.10 13.11 13.12 13.13 Guillou PJ, Quirke P, Thorpe H, Walker J, Jayne DG, Smith AM, et al. *Short-term endpoints of conventional versus laparoscopic-assisted surgery in patients with colorectal cancer (MRC CLASICC trial): multicentre, randomised controlled trial.* Lancet 2005 May;365(9472):1718-26 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15894098.
14. ↑ 14.0 14.1 Hazebroek EJ, Color Study Group. *COLOR: a randomized clinical trial comparing laparoscopic and open resection for colon cancer.* Surg Endosc 2002 Jun;16(6):949-53 Available from: http://www.ncbi. nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12163961.
15. ↑ 15.00 15.01 15.02 15.03 15.04 15.05 15.06 15.07 15.08 15.09 15.10 15.11 15.12 15.13 15.14 15.15 15.16 15.17 15.18 15.19 15.20 15.21 15.22 15.23 15.24 15.25 15.26 15.27 15.28 15.29 Hewett PJ, Allardyce RA, Bagshaw PF, Frampton CM, Frizelle FA, Rieger NA, et al. *Short-term outcomes of the Australasian randomized clinical study comparing laparoscopic and conventional open surgical treatments for colon cancer: the ALCCaS trial.* Ann Surg 2008 Nov;248(5):728-38 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18948799.
16. ↑ 16.0 16.1 16.2 16.3 16.4 Janson M, Lindholm E, Anderberg B, Haglind E. *Randomized trial of health-related quality of life after open and laparoscopic surgery for colon cancer.* Surg Endosc 2007 May;21(5):747-53 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17342556.
17. ↑ 17.0 17.1 17.2 17.3 17.4 Jayne DG, Guillou PJ, Thorpe H, Quirke P, Copeland J, Smith AM, et al. *Randomized trial of laparoscopic-assisted resection of colorectal carcinoma: 3-year results of the UK MRC CLASICC Trial Group.* J Clin Oncol 2007 Jul 20;25(21):3061-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed /17634484.
18. ↑ 18.0 18.1 18.2 18.3 Jayne DG, Thorpe HC, Copeland J, Quirke P, Brown JM, Guillou PJ. *Five-year follow-up of the Medical Research Council CLASICC trial of laparoscopically assisted versus open surgery for colorectal cancer.* Br J Surg 2010 Nov;97(11):1638-45 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed /20629110.
19. ↑ 19.00 19.01 19.02 19.03 19.04 19.05 19.06 19.07 19.08 19.09 19.10 19.11 Kim JS, Hur H, Min BS, Lee KY, Chung HC, Kim NK. *Inflammatory and tumor stimulating responses after laparoscopic sigmoidectomy.* Yonsei Med J 2011 Jul;52(4):635-42 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21623607.
20. ↑ 20.0 20.1 Kitano S, Inomata M, Sato A, Yoshimura K, Moriya Y, Japan Clinical Oncology Group Study. *Randomized controlled trial to evaluate laparoscopic surgery for colorectal cancer: Japan Clinical Oncology Group Study JCOG 0404.* Jpn J Clin Oncol 2005 Aug;35(8):475-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi. nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16006574.

21. ↑ 21.0 21.1 21.2 21.3 21.4 21.5 21.6 21.7 21.8 21.9 Lacy AM, Delgado S, Castells A, Prins HA, Arroyo V, Ibarzabal A, et al. *The long-term results of a randomized clinical trial of laparoscopy-assisted versus open surgery for colon cancer.* Ann Surg 2008 Jul;248(1):1-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18580199.
22. ↑ 22.0 22.1 Lacy AM, Delgado S, García-Valdecasas JC, Castells A, Piqué JM, Grande L, et al. *Port site metastases and recurrence after laparoscopic colectomy. A randomized trial.* Surg Endosc 1998 Aug;12(8):1039-42 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9685538.
23. ↑ 23.0 23.1 Lacy AM, García-Valdecasas JC, Delgado S, Castells A, Taurá P, Piqué JM, et al. *Laparoscopy-assisted colectomy versus open colectomy for treatment of non-metastatic colon cancer: a randomised trial.* Lancet 2002 Jun 29;359(9325):2224-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12103285.
24. ↑ 24.0 24.1 Lacy AM, García-Valdecasas JC, Piqué JM, Delgado S, Campo E, Bordas JM, et al. *Short-term outcome analysis of a randomized study comparing laparoscopic vs open colectomy for colon cancer.* Surg Endosc 1995 Oct;9(10):1101-5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8553212.
25. ↑ 25.00 25.01 25.02 25.03 25.04 25.05 25.06 25.07 25.08 25.09 25.10 25.11 25.12 25.13 25.14 25.15 25.16 25.17 25.18 25.19 25.20 25.21 25.22 25.23 25.24 25.25 25.26 25.27 Li JC, Leung KL, Ng SS, Liu SY, Lee JF, Hon SS. *Laparoscopic-assisted versus open resection of right-sided colonic cancer--a prospective randomized controlled trial.* Int J Colorectal Dis 2012 Jan;27(1):95-102 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21861071.
26. ↑ 26.00 26.01 26.02 26.03 26.04 26.05 26.06 26.07 26.08 26.09 26.10 26.11 26.12 26.13 26.14 26.15 26.16 26.17 26.18 26.19 Liang JT, Huang KC, Lai HS, Lee PH, Jeng YM. *Oncologic results of laparoscopic versus conventional open surgery for stage II or III left-sided colon cancers: a randomized controlled trial.* Ann Surg Oncol 2007 Jan;14(1):109-17 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17066227.
27. ↑ 27.0 27.1 Clinical Outcomes of Surgical Therapy Study Group. *A comparison of laparoscopically assisted and open colectomy for colon cancer.* N Engl J Med 2004 May 13;350(20):2050-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15141043.
28. ↑ 28.0 28.1 Nelson H, Weeks JC, Wieand HS. *Proposed phase III trial comparing laparoscopic-assisted colectomy versus open colectomy for colon cancer.* J Natl Cancer Inst Monogr 1995;(19):51-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7577206.
29. ↑ 29.00 29.01 29.02 29.03 29.04 29.05 29.06 29.07 29.08 29.09 29.10 29.11 29.12 29.13 29.14 29.15 29.16 29.17 29.18 29.19 Neudecker J, Klein F, Bittner R, Carus T, Stroux A, Schwenk W, et al. *Short-term outcomes from a prospective randomized trial comparing laparoscopic and open surgery for colorectal cancer.* Br J Surg 2009 Dec;96(12):1458-67 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19918852.
30. ↑ 30.0 30.1 Ohtani H, Tamamori Y, Arimoto Y, Nishiguchi Y, Maeda K, Hirakawa K. *A meta-analysis of the short- and long-term results of randomized controlled trials that compared laparoscopy-assisted and open colectomy for colon cancer.* J Cancer 2012;3:49-57 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22315650.
31. ↑ 31.00 31.01 31.02 31.03 31.04 31.05 31.06 31.07 31.08 31.09 31.10 31.11 31.12 31.13 31.14 31.15 31.16 31.17 31.18 31.19 Pascual M, Alonso S, Parés D, Courtier R, Gil MJ, Grande L, et al. *Randomized clinical trial comparing inflammatory and angiogenic response after open versus laparoscopic curative resection for colonic cancer.* Br J Surg 2011 Jan;98(1):50-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20799296.

32. ↑ 32.0 32.1 32.2 32.3 32.4 32.5 Pecorelli N, Amodeo S, Frasson M, Vignali A, Zuliani W, Braga M. *Ten-year outcomes following laparoscopic colorectal resection: results of a randomized controlled trial.* Int J Colorectal Dis 2016 Jul;31(7):1283-90 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27090804.

33. ↑ 33.00 33.01 33.02 33.03 33.04 33.05 33.06 33.07 33.08 33.09 33.10 33.11 33.12 33.13 33.14 Procacciante F, De Luca M, Abilaliaj V, Chiaretti M, Diamantini G. *Post-operative ileus in hemicolectomy for cancer: open versus laparoscopic approach.* Ann Ital Chir 2013 Sep;84(5):557-62 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24140940.

34. ↑ 34.0 34.1 34.2 34.3 34.4 Schölin J, Buunen M, Hop W, Bonjer J, Anderberg B, Cuesta M, et al. *Bowel obstruction after laparoscopic and open colon resection for cancer: results of 5 years of follow-up in a randomized trial.* Surg Endosc 2011 Dec;25(12):3755-60 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21667207.

35. ↑ 35.0 35.1 35.2 Stucky CC, Pockaj BA, Novotny PJ, Sloan JA, Sargent DJ, O'Connell MJ, et al. *Long-term follow-up and individual item analysis of quality of life assessments related to laparoscopic-assisted colectomy in the COST trial 93-46-53 (INT 0146).* Ann Surg Oncol 2011 Sep;18(9):2422-31 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21452066.

36. ↑ 36.0 36.1 36.2 36.3 Taylor GW, Jayne DG, Brown SR, Thorpe H, Brown JM, Dewberry SC, et al. *Adhesions and incisional hernias following laparoscopic versus open surgery for colorectal cancer in the CLASICC trial.* Br J Surg 2010 Jan;97(1):70-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20013936.

37. ↑ 37.00 37.01 37.02 37.03 37.04 37.05 37.06 37.07 37.08 37.09 37.10 37.11 37.12 37.13 Tsimogiannis KE, Telis K, Tselepis A, Pappas-Gogos GK, Tsimoyiannis EC, Basdanis G. *A-defensin expression of inflammatory response in open and laparoscopic colectomy for colorectal cancer.* World J Surg 2011 Aug;35(8):1911-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21567262.

38. ↑ 38.00 38.01 38.02 38.03 38.04 38.05 38.06 38.07 38.08 38.09 38.10 38.11 38.12 38.13 38.14 38.15 38.16 38.17 38.18 38.19 38.20 38.21 38.22 38.23 Veldkamp R, Kuhry E, Hop WC, Jeekel J, Kazemier G, Bonjer HJ, et al. *Laparoscopic surgery versus open surgery for colon cancer: short-term outcomes of a randomised trial.* Lancet Oncol 2005 Jul;6(7):477-84 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15992696.

39. ↑ 39.00 39.01 39.02 39.03 39.04 39.05 39.06 39.07 39.08 39.09 39.10 39.11 Vignali A, Di Palo S, Orsenigo E, Ghirardelli L, Radaelli G, Staudacher C. *Effect of prednisolone on local and systemic response in laparoscopic vs. open colon surgery: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial.* Dis Colon Rectum 2009 Jun;52(6):1080-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19581850.

40. ↑ 40.0 40.1 Weeks JC, Nelson H, Gelber S, Sargent D, Schroeder G, Clinical Outcomes of Surgical Therapy (COST) Study Group. *Short-term quality-of-life outcomes following laparoscopic-assisted colectomy vs open colectomy for colon cancer: a randomized trial.* JAMA 2002 Jan 16;287(3):321-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11790211.

41. ↑ 41.00 41.01 41.02 41.03 41.04 41.05 41.06 41.07 41.08 41.09 41.10 41.11 41.12 41.13 41.14 41.15 41.16 41.17 41.18 41.19 41.20 41.21 41.22 41.23 41.24 41.25 41.26 41.27 41.28 41.29 Yamamoto S, Inomata M, Katayama H, Mizusawa J, Etoh T, Konishi F, et al. *Short-term surgical outcomes from a randomized controlled trial to evaluate laparoscopic and open D3 dissection for stage II/III colon cancer: Japan Clinical Oncology Group Study JCOG 0404.* Ann Surg 2014 Jul;260(1):23-30 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24509190.

42. ↑ 42.00 42.01 42.02 42.03 42.04 42.05 42.06 42.07 42.08 42.09 42.10 42.11 42.12 42.13 42.14 42.15 42.16 42.17 42.18 Kaiser AM, Kang JC, Chan LS, Vukasin P, Beart RW Jr. *Laparoscopic-assisted vs. open colectomy for colon cancer: a prospective randomized trial.* J Laparoendosc Adv Surg Tech A 2004 Dec;14(6):329-34 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15684776.
43. ↑ Nelson H, Petrelli N, Carlin A, Couture J, Fleshman J, Guillem J, et al. *Guidelines 2000 for colon and rectal cancer surgery.* J Natl Cancer Inst 2001 Apr 18;93(8):583-96 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11309435.
44. ↑ Scott KW, Grace RH. *Detection of lymph node metastases in colorectal carcinoma before and after fat clearance.* Br J Surg 1989 Nov;76(11):1165-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/2688803.
45. ↑ Pritts TA, Nussbaum MS, Flesch LV, Fegelman EJ, Parikh AA, Fischer JE. *Implementation of a clinical pathway decreases length of stay and cost for bowel resection.* Ann Surg 1999 Nov;230(5):728-33 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10561099.
46. ↑ Zargar-Shoshtari K, Connolly AB, Israel LH, Hill AG. *Fast-track surgery may reduce complications following major colonic surgery.* Dis Colon Rectum 2008 Nov;51(11):1633-40 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18536962.
47. ↑ Kahokehr A, Sammour T, Zargar-Shoshtari K, Thompson L, Hill AG. *Implementation of ERAS and how to overcome the barriers.* Int J Surg 2009 Feb;7(1):16-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19110478.
48. ↑ Fearon KC, Ljungqvist O, Von Meyenfeldt M, Revhaug A, Dejong CH, Lassen K, et al. *Enhanced recovery after surgery: a consensus review of clinical care for patients undergoing colonic resection.* Clin Nutr 2005 Jun;24(3):466-77 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15896435.

Back to top

## 13.1.5 Appendices

View recommendation components | View pending evidence | View body of evidence | View all comments | View literature search

View PICO | NHMRC Evidence statement form COL1-2a | Systematic review report COL1-2a

Back to top

# 13.2 Optimal approach to elective resection for rectal cancers

## Background

Surgical resection of the tumour remains the primary modality to treat rectal cancer. Technological advances have broadened the range of approaches that can be taken to facilitate curative resection of abdominal tumours, and improved understanding of pelvic anatomy has influenced the extent of resection for rectal cancer. These developments have resulted in a number of randomised controlled trials (RCTs) to determine the optimal approach to the elective resection of rectal cancer.

See the following sections:

- Optimal approach to elective resection for rectal cancers (COL1-2b)
- Local versus radical resection for stage T1-T2 rectal cancer (REC3)

# 13.2.1 Introduction: elective resection for rectal cancers

## Background

Surgical resection of the tumour remains the primary modality to treat rectal cancer. Technological advances have broadened the range of approaches that can be taken to facilitate curative resection of abdominal tumours, and improved understanding of pelvic anatomy has influenced the extent of resection for rectal cancer. These developments have resulted in a number of randomised controlled trials (RCTs) to determine the optimal approach to the elective resection of rectal cancer.

See the following sections:

- Optimal approach to elective resection for rectal cancers (COL1-2b)
- Local versus radical resection for stage T1-T2 rectal cancer (REC3)

# 13.2.2 Optimal approach to elective resection for rectal cancers (COL1-2b)

**Contents**



## 13.2.2.1 Systematic review evidence

*In patients diagnosed with rectal cancer, what is the optimal resection strategy to achieve the best outcomes in terms of length and quality of life? (COL1-2b)*

A systematic review was undertaken to determine the optimal resection strategy for rectal cancer to maximise survival and quality of life. The review identified studies that examined the effect of rectal cancer resection type on cancer-related outcomes including mortality, cancer-specific survival, disease-free survival, local recurrence and metastases, morbidity, complications, and other adverse events including quality of life, pain and sexual dysfunction.

Three meta-analyses comparing laparoscopic with open resection surgery[1][2][3] were identified. All of these studies had a low risk of bias. One pooled analysis of data comparing laparoscopic with open resection surgery, [4] with a moderate risk of bias, was also identified.

Twenty-eight level II RCTs were reported across 36 papers.[4][5][6][7][8][9][10][11][12][13][14][15][16][17][18][19][20][21][22][23][24][25][26][27][28][29][30][31][32][33][34][35][36][37] Of these, 20 trials[4][5][6][7][8][9][10][11][12][13][14][16][17][18][19][20][21][22][23][24][25][26][27][28][29][33] compared laparoscopic with open rectal cancer resection, and seven trials compared the following surgical interventions:

- single-port laparoscopic rectal surgery versus conventional laparoscopic surgery[34]
- endoscopic mucosal resection with circumferential incision (CIEMR) against endoscopic mucosal resection (EMR)[36]
- cylindrical abdominoperineal resection versus conventional abdominoperineal resection[35]
- transanal endoscopic microsurgery versus low anterior resection[30]
- transanal endoscopic microsurgery versus laparoscopic total mesorectal excision[32][33]
- endoluminal locoregional resection versus total mesorectal excision[31]
- laparoscopic anterior resection versus transanal endoscopic microsurgery anterior resection[37]

Of these RCTs, one[15] was assessed as having a low risk of bias. The remainder had an unclear or high overall risk of bias.

The search strategy, inclusion and exclusion criteria, and quality assessment are described in detail in the Technical report.

### 13.2.2.1.1 Survival

Overall survival outcomes, including 15-, 10-, 8-, 5-, 3-, and 1-year survival rates and probability, were reported in 11 RCTs in studies comparing laparoscopic with open rectal cancer resection[5][7][11][12][13][15][16][17][18][28][35] and one meta-analysis of eight studies.[3] Evidence consistently showed no difference between any rectal cancer resection method for these outcomes at any time point.

Three RCTs comparing laparoscopic and open resection reported disease-free survival or recurrence-free survival for stage 1–3 patients.[5][7][15] No statistically significant differences in disease-free survival between open and laparoscopic resection groups were reported.

Back to top

### 13.2.2.1.2 Perioperative/30-day/overall mortality

Differences between laparoscopic and open surgery were non-significant for all reported mortality outcomes, including 30-day mortality, perioperative mortality, and overall (> 30 day) mortality.[4][5][6][8][12][13][14][16][17][23][25][26][28][38]

Four RCTs[31][32][33][34] reported mortality outcomes for other surgical interventions. All differences were not statistically significant.

Back to top

### 13.2.2.1.3 Recurrence and distant metastasis

Nine RCTs compared 3-year, 5-year, and overall local recurrence rates between groups of patients who underwent laparoscopic and open resection.[5][7][13][15][17][18][23][28][38][39]

Only one of these studies showed significant differences between groups:[7]

- In patients with middle rectal cancer (intention-to-treat analysis) 3-year local recurrence was higher for laparoscopic resection than open resection (difference 4.1 percentage points; 90% CI 0.7 to 7.5).
- In patients with lower rectal cancer (as-treated analysis), 3-year local recurrence was lower for laparoscopic resection than open resection (difference 8.9 percentage points; 90% CI –15.6 to –2.2).

However, significance was determined through observation of 90% confidence intervals, and it is questionable whether this difference would be significant at $\alpha = 0.05$.

One study comparing conventional abdominoperineal resection and cylindrical abdominoperineal resection reported no significant difference in local recurrence rates.[35] However, numerically lower local recurrence rates were observed among patients who underwent cylindrical abdominoperineal resection.[35]

Seven RCTs that compared laparoscopic and open resection reported 1-year, 5-year, and overall distant metastases.[4][11][13][17][18][38][39]

Back to top

### 13.2.2.1.4 Complications and morbidity-related outcomes

A wide range of complication and morbidity related outcomes were reported across the studies. Very few significant differences were observed between laparoscopic and open resection patients, and these differences were not consistent overall.

#### 13.2.2.1.4.1 Port site/wound metastases

Seven RCTs[11][13][16][17][18][23][38] that compared laparoscopic and open resection reported wound/port site metastases as an outcome. No significant differences were observed, with five studies reporting 0% recurrence in both groups.[11][13][16][17][38]

#### 13.2.2.1.4.2 Blood loss and transfusion

Twelve RCTs comparing laparoscopic and open surgery reported significantly lower blood loss in the laparoscopic group, with significant differences ranging from 17.5 mL to 220.3 mL ($p < 0.001$ to $p = 0.036$).[6][8][12][13][14][17][24][25][26][27][28][38]

Similarly, the rate of blood transfusions and amount of blood required were lower among patients who underwent laparoscopic resection in studies reporting these outcomes, including one meta-analysis.[1][4][11][14][16][24]

#### 13.2.2.1.4.3 Length of hospital stay

Of the RCTs that compared laparoscopic and open resection, five reported significantly shorter postoperative hospital stay in the laparoscopic group, with differences ranging from 1.6 to 3.4 days ($p < 0.001$ to $p = 0.036$).[11][12][23][28][38] Findings reported by studies that did not report statistical significance were inconsistent, with a trend towards shorter hospital stays in the laparoscopic group in five studies.[8][11][13][14][17][25][26]

#### 13.2.2.1.4.4 Circumferential resection margin positivity

Nine RCTs that compared laparoscopic and open resection reported rates of positive circumferential resection margins.[7][11][12][14][17][25][27][28] Six of these studies observed numerically higher rates of positive circumferential resection margins in groups who underwent open resection,[7][11][14][27][28] while the remaining three studies[12][17][25] observed numerically higher rates in groups who underwent laparoscopic resection. However, none of these differences were statistically significant.

#### 13.2.2.1.4.5 Number of lymph nodes retrieved

Of the 13 RCTs that compared open and laparoscopic resection,[4][7][8][11][12][13][14][16][17][24][25][28][38] only one study[17] found a significant difference in the number of lymph nodes retrieved. The remaining studies showed mixed not statistically significant differences between groups.

Back to top

#### 13.2.2.1.4.6 Sexual function

Sexual function outcomes were reported in three RCTs that compared laparoscopic resection with open resection [9][14][20] and one RCT that compared cylindrical abdominoperineal resection with conventional abdominoperineal resection.[35] Although sexual function was negatively affected by any type of resection procedure, none of these studies observed significant differences between types of resection.

#### 13.2.2.1.4.7 Conversion

Fifteen RCTs that compared laparoscopic resection with open resection reported rates of conversion from laparoscopic to open surgery.[4][5][6][11][12][13][14][16][17][24][25][26][27][28][38] Conversion rates ranged from 0 to 30.3%, with a median rate of 7.9%.

For other interventions, including transanal endoscopic microsurgery, endoluminal locoregional resection and single-port approaches, reported rates of conversion to laparoscopic anterior resection, open total mesorectal excision, and conventional laparoscopic surgery were between 5 and 11.4%.[30][31][32][33][34]

#### 13.2.2.1.4.8 Morbidity/complications

Although a wide array of short-term and long-term complications and morbidities were reported, only two significant differences were observed:

- Open resection was associated with a higher rate of nerve injury than laparoscopic resection[6]
- Higher rates of major postoperative complications were observed among patients undergoing total mesorectal excision, compared with those receiving endoluminal locoregional resection[31]

#### 13.2.2.1.4.9 Postoperative pain

Postoperative pain was reported by only two RCTs: one that compared laparoscopic resection with open resection[14] and one that compared single-port resection with conventional laparoscopic resection.[34]

The second study reported significantly lower pain scores within 3-4 days after surgery among patients who underwent single-port laparoscopic resection than among those who underwent conventional laparoscopic resection.[34]

The search strategy, inclusion and exclusion criteria, and quality assessment are described in detail in the Technical report.

Back to top

## 13.2.2.2 Evidence summary and recommendations

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| **Laparoscopic versus open resection** | | |
| For overall survival and mortality, there was no difference between patients undergoing laparoscopic resection and patients undergoing open resection for rectal cancer. | I, II | [1], [3], [4], [5], [6], [7], [8], [11], [12], [13], [14], [15], [16], [17], [18], [23], [25], [26], [28], [38] |
| There was no statistically significant difference in rates of local recurrence, distant metastases and disease-free survival between patients having an open approach and a laparoscopic approach to rectal cancer surgery. | I, II | [3], [4], [5], [7], [11], [12], [13], [15], [16], [17], [18], [23], [28], [29], [38], [39] |

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| Rates of blood transfusion and the amount of perioperative blood loss were consistently and significantly lower for patients undergoing laparoscopic resection, compared with patients undergoing open rectal cancer resection. | I, II | [1], [4], [6], [8], [11], [12], [13], [14], [16], [17], [23], [24], [25], [26], [27], [28], [38] |
| Length of hospital stay was significantly shorter for laparoscopic patients, compared with open resection patients. | I, II | [1], [4], [11], [12], [13], [14], [17], [23], [24], [28], [38] |
| Rates of positive circumferential resection margins did not differ significantly between patients who underwent laparoscopic resection and those who underwent open resection, and reported differences did not consistently favour either approach.<br><br>Two recent large multicentre RCTs did not demonstrate pathological oncological equivalence of laparoscopic to open rectal resection. However, data on local recurrence and survival is not yet available. | II | [7], [14], [17], [25], [27], [28] |
| Differences in the number of lymph nodes retrieved between patients who underwent laparoscopic resection and those who underwent open resection were mostly not statistically significant. One study observed that significantly more lymph nodes were retrieved among the laparoscopic group. | II | [7], [8], [14], [16], [17], [24], [25], [28] |
| Although sexual function was negatively affected by all surgery, no difference between patients receiving laparoscopic and open rectal cancer resection for colorectal cancer was observed. | II | [9], [10], [14], [20], [35] |
| **Comparisons between other surgical approaches** | | |
| Transanal endoscopic microsurgery was associated with reductions in blood loss and length of hospital stay, compared with laparoscopic total mesorectal excision and low anterior resection.<br><br>No consistent significant differences between groups in were observed for survival or quality-of-life outcomes in RCTs comparing the following:<br><br>■ transanal endoscopic microsurgery versus laparoscopic lower anterior resection | II | [30], [31], [32], [33], [37] |

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| ■ endoluminal locoregional resection versus laparoscopic total mesorectal excision<br>■ transanal endoscopic versus total mesorectal laparoscopic resection. | | |
| **Postoperative pain** | | |
| Of two studies that reported postoperative pain, one found that single-port laparoscopic resection was associated with significantly less pain within 3 days of surgery than conventional laparoscopic resection. | II | [14], [34] |

Back to top

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| Open surgery is appropriate for resection of rectal cancer.<br><br>Laparoscopic surgery for rectal cancer is appropriate in a subset of patients when performed by surgeons with advanced laparoscopic skills. However, it is a technique that has yet to be proven safe and efficacious in all patients for rectal cancer. | **C** |

| Practice point |
|---|
| Regardless of the approach utilised, rectal cancer resection must be undertaken by surgeons who have been appropriately trained in surgical resection of rectal cancer, utilising the principles of total mesorectal resection as proposed by Heald. This should include sharp dissection undertaken along the mesorectal plane. Surgical resection undertaken by inadequately trained surgeons is likely to result in inferior oncological outcomes. |

**Practice point**

Case selection is important, as it is suboptimal to generalise the surgical approach for rectal cancer to all patients. Factors such as patient body mass index, tumour stage, and surgeon experience are important considerations when determining whether a laparoscopic or open approach is optimal for the patient. Long-term local recurrence and survival data are awaited from recent large multicentre randomised controlled trials.

Back to top

## 13.2.2.3 Considerations in making these recommendations

Laparoscopic resection of rectal cancer would be considered preferable in terms of reduced length of stay and blood loss, however case selection is important when considering whether a laparoscopic or open approach is optimal. Overall pathological equivalence has yet to be proven and in the decision over which approach is optimal for a particular case, oncological principles must not be compromised.

Long-term local recurrence and survival data for the recent large randomised control trials for laparoscopic rectal resection are awaited. Whilst laparoscopic resection appears equivalent to open resection, when undertaken by surgeons who have had appropriate training and experience, it is likely that there are some case where a laparoscopic approach is not optimal with due consideration of patient, tumour and surgeon factors.

Back to top

## 13.2.2.4 Health system implications

### 13.2.2.4.1 Clinical practice

This review included RCTs from a wide range of countries, including Australia and New Zealand. Although about half of the studies were conducted in Asian populations, the evidence may be generalisable to an Australian population. However, there may be some important differences in the practice of rectal cancer resection.

Whilst laparoscopic resection of rectal cancer appears to have equivalent oncological outcomes to open surgery and some potential benefits to the patient over open surgery, it is essential that surgeons have been formally trained in laparoscopic rectal resection prior to undertaking this procedure.

### 13.2.2.4.2 Resourcing

There are no resource implications associated with implementing the recommendations.

### 13.2.2.4.3 Barriers to implementation

No barriers to the implementation of these recommendations are envisaged.

Back to top

# 13.2.2.5 Discussion

## 13.2.2.5.1 Unresolved issues

More longer-term evidence is needed from RCTs comparing survival data for laparoscopic versus open resection, especially from recent multicentre RCT trials.

RCT evidence regarding the role of alternative approaches, such robotic resection or transanal total mesorectal excision, is required before conclusions can be made on their role.

## 13.2.2.5.2 Studies currently underway

Results are awaited on the ROLARR trial comparing laparoscopic versus robotic resection of rectal cancer. However no data have yet been published.

COLOR III, a RCT comparing laparoscopic resection versus transanal total mesorectal excision, is currently recruiting.

## 13.2.2.5.3 Future research priorities

Evidence comparing longer-term survival data and alternative approaches would be valuable.

Next section: local versus radical resection for T1-T2 rectal tumours

Back to top

# 13.2.2.6 References

1. ↑ 1.0 1.1 1.2 1.3 1.4 Arezzo A, Passera R, Scozzari G, Verra M, Morino M. *Laparoscopy for rectal cancer reduces short-term mortality and morbidity: results of a systematic review and meta-analysis.* Surg Endosc 2013 May;27(5):1485-502 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23183871.
2. ↑ Vennix S, Pelzers L, Bouvy N, Beets GL, Pierie JP, Wiggers T, et al. *Laparoscopic versus open total mesorectal excision for rectal cancer.* Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2014 Apr 15;(4):CD005200 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24737031.
3. ↑ 3.0 3.1 3.2 3.3 Zhao D, Li Y, Wang S, Huang Z. *Laparoscopic versus open surgery for rectal cancer: a meta-analysis of 3-year follow-up outcomes.* Int J Colorectal Dis 2016 Apr;31(4):805-11 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26847617.
4. ↑ 4.00 4.01 4.02 4.03 4.04 4.05 4.06 4.07 4.08 4.09 4.10 4.11 Ng SS, Lee JF, Yiu RY, Li JC, Hon SS, Mak TW, et al. *Long-term oncologic outcomes of laparoscopic versus open surgery for rectal cancer: a pooled analysis of 3 randomized controlled trials.* Ann Surg 2014 Jan;259(1):139-47 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23598381.

5. ↑ 5.0 5.1 5.2 5.3 5.4 5.5 5.6 5.7 5.8 Braga M, Frasson M, Vignali A, Zuliani W, Capretti G, Di Carlo V. *Laparoscopic resection in rectal cancer patients: outcome and cost-benefit analysis.* Dis Colon Rectum 2007 Apr;50(4):464-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17195085.
6. ↑ 6.0 6.1 6.2 6.3 6.4 6.5 6.6 6.7 van der Pas MH, Haglind E, Cuesta MA, Fürst A, Lacy AM, Hop WC, et al. *Laparoscopic versus open surgery for rectal cancer (COLOR II): short-term outcomes of a randomised, phase 3 trial.* Lancet Oncol 2013 Mar;14(3):210-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23395398.
7. ↑ 7.00 7.01 7.02 7.03 7.04 7.05 7.06 7.07 7.08 7.09 7.10 7.11 7.12 Bonjer HJ, Deijen CL, Haglind E, COLOR II Study Group. *A Randomized Trial of Laparoscopic versus Open Surgery for Rectal Cancer.* N Engl J Med 2015 Jul 9;373(2):194 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26154803.
8. ↑ 8.0 8.1 8.2 8.3 8.4 8.5 8.6 8.7 8.8 Veenhof AA, Sietses C, von Blomberg BM, van Hoogstraten IM, vd Pas MH, Meijerink WJ, et al. *The surgical stress response and postoperative immune function after laparoscopic or conventional total mesorectal excision in rectal cancer: a randomized trial.* Int J Colorectal Dis 2011 Jan;26(1):53-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20922542.
9. ↑ 9.0 9.1 9.2 9.3 Andersson J, Abis G, Gellerstedt M, Angenete E, Angerås U, Cuesta MA, et al. *Patient-reported genitourinary dysfunction after laparoscopic and open rectal cancer surgery in a randomized trial (COLOR II).* Br J Surg 2014 Sep;101(10):1272-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24924798.
10. ↑ 10.0 10.1 10.2 Andersson J, Angenete E, Gellerstedt M, Angerås U, Jess P, Rosenberg J, et al. *Health-related quality of life after laparoscopic and open surgery for rectal cancer in a randomized trial.* Br J Surg 2013 Jun;100(7):941-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23640671.
11. ↑ 11.00 11.01 11.02 11.03 11.04 11.05 11.06 11.07 11.08 11.09 11.10 11.11 11.12 11.13 11.14 11.15 11.16 Ng SS, Lee JF, Yiu RY, Li JC, Hon SS, Mak TW, et al. *Laparoscopic-assisted versus open total mesorectal excision with anal sphincter preservation for mid and low rectal cancer: a prospective, randomized trial.* Surg Endosc 2014 Jan;28(1):297-306 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24013470.
12. ↑ 12.00 12.01 12.02 12.03 12.04 12.05 12.06 12.07 12.08 12.09 12.10 12.11 12.12 12.13 Ng SS, Leung KL, Lee JF, Yiu RY, Li JC, Hon SS. *Long-term morbidity and oncologic outcomes of laparoscopic-assisted anterior resection for upper rectal cancer: ten-year results of a prospective, randomized trial.* Dis Colon Rectum 2009 Apr;52(4):558-66 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19404053.
13. ↑ 13.00 13.01 13.02 13.03 13.04 13.05 13.06 13.07 13.08 13.09 13.10 13.11 13.12 13.13 13.14 13.15 Ng SS, Leung KL, Lee JF, Yiu RY, Li JC, Teoh AY, et al. *Laparoscopic-assisted versus open abdominoperineal resection for low rectal cancer: a prospective randomized trial.* Ann Surg Oncol 2008 Sep;15(9):2418-25 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18392659.
14. ↑ 14.00 14.01 14.02 14.03 14.04 14.05 14.06 14.07 14.08 14.09 14.10 14.11 14.12 14.13 14.14 14.15 14.16 14.17 14.18 Kang SB, Park JW, Jeong SY, Nam BH, Choi HS, Kim DW, et al. *Open versus laparoscopic surgery for mid or low rectal cancer after neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy (COREAN trial): short-term outcomes of an open-label randomised controlled trial.* Lancet Oncol 2010 Jul;11(7):637-45 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20610322.
15. ↑ 15.0 15.1 15.2 15.3 15.4 15.5 15.6 Jeong SY, Park JW, Nam BH, Kim S, Kang SB, Lim SB, et al. *Open versus laparoscopic surgery for mid-rectal or low-rectal cancer after neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy (COREAN trial): survival outcomes of an open-label, non-inferiority, randomised controlled trial.* Lancet Oncol 2014 Jun;15(7):767-74 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24837215.

16. ↑ 16.00 16.01 16.02 16.03 16.04 16.05 16.06 16.07 16.08 16.09 16.10 16.11 16.12 Liang X, Hou S, Liu H, Li Y, Jiang B, Bai W, et al. *Effectiveness and safety of laparoscopic resection versus open surgery in patients with rectal cancer: a randomized, controlled trial from China.* J Laparoendosc Adv Surg Tech A 2011 Jun;21(5): 381-5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21395453.
17. ↑ 17.00 17.01 17.02 17.03 17.04 17.05 17.06 17.07 17.08 17.09 17.10 17.11 17.12 17.13 17.14 17.15 17.16 17.17 17.18 17.19 17.20 Lujan J, Valero G, Hernandez Q, Sanchez A, Frutos MD, Parrilla P. *Randomized clinical trial comparing laparoscopic and open surgery in patients with rectal cancer.* Br J Surg 2009 Sep;96(9):982-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19644973.
18. ↑ 18.0 18.1 18.2 18.3 18.4 18.5 18.6 18.7 Green BL, Marshall HC, Collinson F, Quirke P, Guillou P, Jayne DG, et al. *Long-term follow-up of the Medical Research Council CLASICC trial of conventional versus laparoscopically assisted resection in colorectal cancer.* Br J Surg 2013 Jan;100(1):75-82 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23132548.
19. ↑ 19.0 19.1 Guillou PJ, Quirke P, Thorpe H, Walker J, Jayne DG, Smith AM, et al. *Short-term endpoints of conventional versus laparoscopic-assisted surgery in patients with colorectal cancer (MRC CLASICC trial): multicentre, randomised controlled trial.* Lancet 2005 May;365(9472):1718-26 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15894098.
20. ↑ 20.0 20.1 20.2 20.3 Jayne DG, Brown JM, Thorpe H, Walker J, Quirke P, Guillou PJ. *Bladder and sexual function following resection for rectal cancer in a randomized clinical trial of laparoscopic versus open technique.* Br J Surg 2005 Sep;92(9):1124-32 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15997446.
21. ↑ 21.0 21.1 Jayne DG, Guillou PJ, Thorpe H, Quirke P, Copeland J, Smith AM, et al. *Randomized trial of laparoscopic-assisted resection of colorectal carcinoma: 3-year results of the UK MRC CLASICC Trial Group.* J Clin Oncol 2007 Jul 20;25(21):3061-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17634484.
22. ↑ 22.0 22.1 Taylor GW, Jayne DG, Brown SR, Thorpe H, Brown JM, Dewberry SC, et al. *Adhesions and incisional hernias following laparoscopic versus open surgery for colorectal cancer in the CLASICC trial.* Br J Surg 2010 Jan;97(1):70-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20013936.
23. ↑ 23.0 23.1 23.2 23.3 23.4 23.5 23.6 23.7 23.8 23.9 Zhou ZG, Hu M, Li Y, Lei WZ, Yu YY, Cheng Z, et al. *Laparoscopic versus open total mesorectal excision with anal sphincter preservation for low rectal cancer.* Surg Endosc 2004 Aug;18(8):1211-5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15457380.
24. ↑ 24.0 24.1 24.2 24.3 24.4 24.5 24.6 24.7 24.8 Arteaga González I, Díaz Luis H, Martín Malagón A, López-Tomassetti Fernández EM, Arranz Duran J, Carrillo Pallares A. *A comparative clinical study of short-term results of laparoscopic surgery for rectal cancer during the learning curve.* Int J Colorectal Dis 2006 Sep;21 (6):590-5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16292517.
25. ↑ 25.00 25.01 25.02 25.03 25.04 25.05 25.06 25.07 25.08 25.09 25.10 25.11 25.12 Fleshman J, Branda M, Sargent DJ, Boller AM, George V, Abbas M, et al. *Effect of Laparoscopic-Assisted Resection vs Open Resection of Stage II or III Rectal Cancer on Pathologic Outcomes: The ACOSOG Z6051 Randomized Clinical Trial.* JAMA 2015 Oct 6;314(13):1346-55 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26441179.
26. ↑ 26.0 26.1 26.2 26.3 26.4 26.5 26.6 26.7 Fujii S, Ishibe A, Ota M, Yamagishi S, Watanabe K, Watanabe J, et al. *Short-term results of a randomized study between laparoscopic and open surgery in elderly colorectal cancer patients.* Surg Endosc 2014 Feb;28(2):466-76 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24122242.

27. ↑ 27.0 27.1 27.2 27.3 27.4 27.5 27.6 27.7 Stevenson AR, Solomon MJ, Lumley JW, Hewett P, Clouston AD, Gebski VJ, et al. *Effect of Laparoscopic-Assisted Resection vs Open Resection on Pathological Outcomes in Rectal Cancer: The ALaCaRT Randomized Clinical Trial.* JAMA 2015 Oct 6;314(13):1356-63 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26441180.
28. ↑ 28.00 28.01 28.02 28.03 28.04 28.05 28.06 28.07 28.08 28.09 28.10 28.11 28.12 28.13 28.14 28.15 28.16 Gong J, Shi DB, Li XX, Cai SJ, Guan ZQ, Xu Y. *Short-term outcomes of laparoscopic total mesorectal excision compared to open surgery.* World J Gastroenterol 2012 Dec 28;18(48):7308-13 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23326138.
29. ↑ 29.0 29.1 29.2 Pecorelli N, Amodeo S, Frasson M, Vignali A, Zuliani W, Braga M. *Ten-year outcomes following laparoscopic colorectal resection: results of a randomized controlled trial.* Int J Colorectal Dis 2016 Jul;31(7):1283-90 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27090804.
30. ↑ 30.0 30.1 30.2 30.3 Chen YY, Liu ZH, Zhu K, Shi PD, Yin L. *Transanal endoscopic microsurgery versus laparoscopic lower anterior resection for the treatment of T1-2 rectal cancers.* Hepatogastroenterology 2013 Jun;60(124):727-32 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23159393.
31. ↑ 31.0 31.1 31.2 31.3 31.4 31.5 Lezoche E, Baldarelli M, Lezoche G, Paganini AM, Gesuita R, Guerrieri M. *Randomized clinical trial of endoluminal locoregional resection versus laparoscopic total mesorectal excision for T2 rectal cancer after neoadjuvant therapy.* Br J Surg 2012 Sep;99(9):1211-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22864880.
32. ↑ 32.0 32.1 32.2 32.3 32.4 Lezoche E, Guerrieri M, Paganini AM, D'Ambrosio G, Baldarelli M, Lezoche G, et al. *Transanal endoscopic versus total mesorectal laparoscopic resections of T2-N0 low rectal cancers after neoadjuvant treatment: a prospective randomized trial with a 3-years minimum follow-up period.* Surg Endosc 2005 Jun;19(6):751-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15868260.
33. ↑ 33.0 33.1 33.2 33.3 33.4 33.5 Lezoche G, Baldarelli M, Guerrieri M, Paganini AM, De Sanctis A, Bartolacci S, et al. *A prospective randomized study with a 5-year minimum follow-up evaluation of transanal endoscopic microsurgery versus laparoscopic total mesorectal excision after neoadjuvant therapy.* Surg Endosc 2008 Feb;22(2):352-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17943364.
34. ↑ 34.0 34.1 34.2 34.3 34.4 34.5 34.6 Bulut O, Aslak KK, Levic K, Nielsen CB, Rømer E, Sørensen S, et al. *A randomized pilot study on single-port versus conventional laparoscopic rectal surgery: effects on postoperative pain and the stress response to surgery.* Tech Coloproctol 2015 Jan;19(1):11-22 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25380743.
35. ↑ 35.0 35.1 35.2 35.3 35.4 35.5 35.6 Han JG, Wang ZJ, Wei GH, Gao ZG, Yang Y, Zhao BC. *Randomized clinical trial of conventional versus cylindrical abdominoperineal resection for locally advanced lower rectal cancer.* Am J Surg 2012 Sep;204(3):274-82 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22920402.
36. ↑ 36.0 36.1 Huang J, Lu ZS, Yang YS, Yuan J, Wang XD, Meng JY, et al. *Endoscopic mucosal resection with circumferential incision for treatment of rectal carcinoid tumours.* World J Surg Oncol 2014 Jan 28;12:23 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24472342.
37. ↑ 37.0 37.1 37.2 Chen Y, Guo R, Xie J, Liu Z, Shi P, Ming Q. *Laparoscopy Combined With Transanal Endoscopic Microsurgery for Rectal Cancer: A Prospective, Single-blinded, Randomized Clinical Trial.* Surg Laparosc Endosc Percutan Tech 2015 Oct;25(5):399-402 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26429049.

38. ↑ 38.00 38.01 38.02 38.03 38.04 38.05 38.06 38.07 38.08 38.09 38.10 38.11 38.12 Liu FL, Lin JJ, Ye F, Teng LS. *Hand-assisted laparoscopic surgery versus the open approach in curative resection of rectal cancer.* J Int Med Res 2010 May;38(3):916-22 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20819427.

39. ↑ 39.0 39.1 39.2 Jayne DG, Thorpe HC, Copeland J, Quirke P, Brown JM, Guillou PJ. *Five-year follow-up of the Medical Research Council CLASICC trial of laparoscopically assisted versus open surgery for colorectal cancer.* Br J Surg 2010 Nov;97(11):1638-45 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20629110.

Back to top

## 13.2.2.7 Appendices

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| View recommendation components | View pending evidence | View body of evidence | View all comments | View literature search |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| View PICO | NHMRC Evidence statement form COL1-2b | Systematic review report COL1-2b |

Back to top

# 13.2.3 Local versus radical resection for T1-T2 rectal tumours (REC3)

**Contents**

## 13.2.3.1 Systematic review evidence

*In patients diagnosed with stage I-II rectal cancer, what is the most effective treatment strategy to achieve the best outcomes in terms of length and quality of life? (REC3)*

A systematic review was performed to compare the effects of local resection (with or without radiotherapy or chemotherapy) and radical resection (with or without radiotherapy or chemotherapy) on outcomes including survival, local recurrence rates, quality of life, adverse events and stoma rates.

The search identified two relevant guidelines for which systematic reviews were conducted, published by the Belgian Health Care Knowledge Centre (KCE)[1] and the United Kingdom National Institute for Health and Care Excellence (NICE).[2] A systematic review was performed to update the search results with relevant literature published after the cut-off dates.

The KCE guideline[1] reported systematic reviews and meta-analyses of level III-1 evidence, each with a low risk of bias, examining the effects of local versus radical resections on early stage colorectal cancer related outcomes:[3][4]

- a systematic review and meta-analysis comparing local resection with radical resection for patients with T1N0M0 rectal adenocarcinoma,[3] which included results (n = 2855) from twelve level III 2 observational studies and one level II randomised controlled trial (RCT)
- a systematic review and meta-analysis comparing local excision with radical surgery after neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy for rectal cancer,[4] which included six level III-2 observational studies and one level II RCT.

Both these systematic reviews were reported as having a low risk of bias, with scores of 8,[3] and 9,[4] out of 11 on the AMSTAR risk of bias checklist.

Three level II RCTs[5][6][7] were also included in the KCE guideline review. One of these studies[5] was reported to be at high overall risk of bias. Assessment of bias was not reported for the other two RCTs.

The NICE guideline[2] reported four level III-1 observational studies comparing local versus radical resection strategies.[8][9][10][11] Two of these studies were reported as having a serious risk of bias,[8][9] one had a very serious risk of bias,[11] and one had no serious risk of bias.[10]

The updated systematic review of those undertaken for the KCE and NICE guidelines identified one additional systematic review and meta-analysis,[12] which included one RCT and six observational studies. This review had a low risk of bias.

The search strategy, inclusion and exclusion criteria, and quality assessment are described in detail in the Technical report.

Back to top

## 13.2.3.1.1 Overall survival

Two systematic reviews and meta-analyses included in the KCE guideline[1] reported the effects of resection type on mortality and survival outcomes. A meta-analysis of 12 observational studies (n = 2,855) reported that 5-year overall survival was significantly higher for local resection patients, compared with radical resection patients (relative risk [RR] 1.46; 95% CI 1.19 to 1.77, p = 0.0002), with RRs ranging from 0.11 to 2.87 reported by each included study for the comparison of local vs radical resections.[3]

In an analysis of seven pooled observational studies conducted in T1 patients, transanal endoscopic microsurgery was associated with a nonsignificant reduction in overall survival, compared with total mesorectal excision (odds ratio [OR] 0.87; 95% CI 0.55 to 1.38).[12]

A retrospective observational study in patients with T1 or T2 N0M0 rectal adenocarcinoma (n = 153),[13] reported that 3-year overall survival among T1 patients did not differ between local excision and total mesorectal excision groups (100%). Among T2 patients, there was a nonsignificant increase in 3-year overall survival in the total mesorectal excision group (90%), compared with the local excision group (76.9%).[13]

Overall, evidence showed mixed and mostly nonsignificant differences in survival and mortality rates between local and radical resection patients.

Back to top

## 13.2.3.1.2 Disease-free survival

One meta-analysis study[3] observed the radical resection as group having a significantly higher 5 year disease free survival in comparison to local resection group, (RR 1.54; CI 1.15-2.05, p=0.003). However, this effect may be explained by the increased use of local resection on tumours in the lower third of the rectum, which have poorer prognosis. One retrospective observational study[13] reported that, among T1 patients, local excision was associated with a nonsignificant reduction in 3-year disease-free survival, compared with total mesorectal excision (84.21% versus 94.9%). Among T2 patients, 3-year disease-free survival was significantly lower in the local excision group, compared with the total mesorectal excision group (61.5% versus 87.5%; p = 0.44).[13]

Other studies that reported disease-free survival[4][12] found only negligible differences between local and radical resection groups.

Back to top

### 13.2.3.1.3 Local recurrence

The majority of studies reported higher rates of local recurrence in the local resection group. One systematic review and meta-analysis[3] reported that local resection was associated with significantly higher rates of local recurrence than radical resection (RR 2.36; 95% CI 1.64 to 3.39). Another systematic review and meta-analysis [4] reported that local excision was associated with a nonsignificant increase in local recurrence, compared with radical excision (10.1% versus 8%; OR 1.29; 95% CI 0.72 to 2.31).

A RCT found that 5-year local recurrence rate did not differ significantly between transanal endoscopic microsurgery and total mesorectal excision groups for T1 stage patients (p = 0.94), but local recurrence was significantly higher in the transanal endoscopic microsurgery group than the total mesorectal excision (96.1% versus 94.7%; p = 0.035) for T2 patients.[8]

Both the KCE and NICE guidelines stated that there was no good evidence to suggest that local resection does not harm by leading to increased local recurrence or metastases.[1][2] Across the studies, there was generally no clear difference in recurrence rate between treatment groups, and local recurrence rates were low in both groups. The only exception was a large observational study of data from a cancer registry which reported that, among the subgroup of patients with T2 tumours, transanal endoscopic microsurgery was associated with a higher local recurrence rate than total mesorectal excision.[11]

Back to top

### 13.2.3.1.4 Postoperative complications

The KCE guideline states that major post-operative complications and peri-operative deaths are less frequent following local resection than radical resection.[1] Only one systematic review and one RCT examined postoperative complications as an outcome, revealing two different findings.[3][6] The systematic review and meta-analysis reported that the risk of post-operative complications was significantly lower for the local resection group, compared with the radical resection group, both for the total number of all postoperative complications (RR 0.16; 95% CI 0.08 to 0.30) and for major postoperative complications (RR 0.20; 95% CI 0.10 to 0.41).[3] In contrast, a small (n=35) comparative study observed an equal percentage of minor and major postoperative complications in both endoluminal locoregional resection and total mesorectal excision groups.[6]

### 13.2.3.1.5 Stoma formation and quality of life

The KCE guideline states that the benefits of local resection are less blood loss, a lower rate of permanent stoma, and shorter hospital stay. A systematic review and meta-analysis reported that the rate of lower stoma formation was lower for local resection, compared with radical resection (RR 0.17: 95% CI 0.09 to 0.30).[3]

Back to top

## 13.2.3.2 Evidence summary and recommendations

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| There is limited evidence comparing local versus radical excision for early-stage (T1 to T2) rectal cancer in the Australasian population. | II, III-1 | [3], [4], [5], [7], [8], [10], [11], [12], [13] |
| Evidence for overall survival showed inconsistent and mostly nonsignificant differences in relation to survival and mortality rates between local and radical resection patients. | II, III-1 | [3], [4], [5], [7], [8], [10], [11], [12], [13] |
| There were negligible differences in disease-free survival rates between local and radical resection groups. | II, III-1 | [3], [4], [5], [7], [8], [10], [11], [12], [13] |
| Local recurrence rates were higher for patients undergoing local excision, compared with radical resection, particularly among those with T2 stage tumours.<br>Local recurrence rates did not differ between patients undergoing transanal endoscopic microsurgery and those undergoing transanal local excision. | II, III-1 | [3], [4], [5], [7], [8], [10], [11], [12], [13] |
| The rate of distant metastases was similar between local excision and radical resection. | II, III-1 | [3], [4], [5], [7], [8], [10], [11], [12], [13] |
| Major postoperative complications and peri-operative mortality were less frequent following local resection than radical excision.<br>Operative blood loss, permanent stoma rate and hospital stay were all reduced with local excision, compared with radical resection. | II, III-1 | [3], [4], [5], [7], [8], [10], [11], [12], [13] |

Back to top

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| For patients with stage 1 rectal cancer (T1/2, N0, M0), cases should be discussed by a multidisciplinary team to determine optimal management with respect to risk of local recurrence, avoidance of a permanent stoma, and fitness for surgery. | **C** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| Local excision may be considered for T1 tumours, provided they can be removed with clear margins. However, patients should be counselled that the risk of local recurrence increases as the T1 tumour stage progresses from T1sm1 to T1sm2 to T1sm3, respectively.<br><br>The treating clinician should also explain to the patient that radical resection may be required after histopathological review of the local excision specimen. | **D** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| Radical resection should be recommended for patients with T2 tumours if they are fit for surgery. | **C** |

| Practice point |
|---|
| When determining the optimal management strategy for each patient, the multidisciplinary team, treating clinician and patient should discuss the balance of risks (e.g. local recurrence) and benefits (e.g. avoidance of a permanent stoma), with consideration of the individual's fitness for surgery. The treating clinician should explain to the patient that local excision carries a lower risk of perioperative mortality and a lower permanent stoma rate, but is associated with a higher local recurrence rate, which increases as the depth of tumour invasion increases from T1sm1 to T1sm2 to T1sm3 to T2. |

| Practice point |
|---|
| Radical resection is recommended for patients with T1sm3 tumours, and for those with T2 tumours who are considered fit for radical surgery. |

**Practice point**

The use of transanal endoscopic microsurgery or transanal minimally invasive surgery has not shown any significant advantages over transanal local excision, however it is essential to obtain clear resection margins and the choice of approach to local resection should be determined by the individual surgeon with this factor in mind.

**Practice point**

Application of radiotherapy before or after local excision of rectal cancer may reduce the risk of local recurrence. However, it may have an adverse effect on bowel function.

#### 13.2.3.2.1 Considerations in making these recommendations

For local excision, the rate of local recurrence increases as the depth of tumour invasion increases from T1sm1 to T1sm2 to T1sm3 to T2. T1sm3 tumours are associated with a significant increase in local recurrence, so this tumour stage may be considered the tipping point for radical resection.

Back to top

## 13.2.3.3 Health system implications

#### 13.2.3.3.1 Clinical practice

The guidance will not change the way that care is currently organised.

#### 13.2.3.3.2 Resourcing

Implementation of this recommendation would have no significant resource implications.

#### 13.2.3.3.3 Barriers to implementation

No barriers to the implementation of this recommendation are foreseen.

Back to top

## 13.2.3.4 Discussion

### 13.2.3.4.1 Unresolved issues

The role of neoadjuvant or neoadjuvant radiotherapy, with or without chemotherapy, as an adjunct to local excision of early rectal cancer, remains undetermined.

Determination and individualisation of approach also remains uncertain and there is a lack of evidence to make a definitive decision.

### 13.2.3.4.2 Studies currently underway

No relevant current studies have been identified that would be expected to provide more evidence on this topic.

### 13.2.3.4.3 Future research priorities

Further high-level studies comparing local versus radical excision for early-stage rectal cancer could provide evidence about long-term survival and recurrence.

Next section: emergency management of malignant large bowel obstruction

Back to top

## 13.2.3.5 References

1. ↑ 1.0 1.1 1.2 1.3 1.4 Peeters MVC, E.; Bielen, D. et al.. *Guideline on the management of rectal cancer: update of capita selecta – Part 3: Local vs Radical resection for stage 1 tumours. Good Clinical Practice (GCP). KCE Reports 260. D/2016/10.273/11. Brussels: Belgian Health Care Knowledge Centre (KCE); 2016.* ;.
2. ↑ 2.0 2.1 2.2 National Institute for Health and Care Excellence. *Colorectal cancer: The Diagnosis and Management of colorectal cancer.* United Kingdom: National Institute for Health and Care Excellence; 2014.
3. ↑ 3.00 3.01 3.02 3.03 3.04 3.05 3.06 3.07 3.08 3.09 3.10 3.11 3.12 3.13 3.14 Kidane B, Chadi SA, Kanters S, Colquhoun PH, Ott MC. *Local resection compared with radical resection in the treatment of T1N0M0 rectal adenocarcinoma: a systematic review and meta-analysis.* Dis Colon Rectum 2015 Jan;58(1):122-40 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25489704.
4. ↑ 4.00 4.01 4.02 4.03 4.04 4.05 4.06 4.07 4.08 4.09 4.10 Shaikh I, Askari A, Ourû S, Warusavitarne J, Athanasiou T, Faiz O. *Oncological outcomes of local excision compared with radical surgery after neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy for rectal cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis.* Int J Colorectal Dis 2015 Jan; 30(1):19-29 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25367179.
5. ↑ 5.0 5.1 5.2 5.3 5.4 5.5 5.6 5.7 Chen YY, Liu ZH, Zhu K, Shi PD, Yin L. *Transanal endoscopic microsurgery versus laparoscopic lower anterior resection for the treatment of T1-2 rectal cancers.* Hepatogastroenterology 2013 Jun;60(124):727-32 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23159393.

6. ↑ 6.0 6.1 6.2 Lezoche E, Baldarelli M, Lezoche G, Paganini AM, Gesuita R, Guerrieri M. *Randomized clinical trial of endoluminal locoregional resection versus laparoscopic total mesorectal excision for T2 rectal cancer after neoadjuvant therapy.* Br J Surg 2012 Sep;99(9):1211-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22864880.
7. ↑ 7.0 7.1 7.2 7.3 7.4 7.5 7.6 Winde G, Nottberg H, Keller R, Schmid KW, Bünte H. *Surgical cure for early rectal carcinomas (T1). Transanal endoscopic microsurgery vs. anterior resection.* Dis Colon Rectum 1996 Sep;39 (9):969-76 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8797643.
8. ↑ 8.0 8.1 8.2 8.3 8.4 8.5 8.6 8.7 8.8 Lee W, Lee D, Choi S, Chun H. *Transanal endoscopic microsurgery and radical surgery for T1 and T2 rectal cancer.* Surg Endosc 2003 Aug;17(8):1283-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12739119.
9. ↑ 9.0 9.1 Lezoche E, Paganini AM, Fabiani B, Balla A, Vestri A, Pescatori L, et al. *Quality-of-life impairment after endoluminal locoregional resection and laparoscopic total mesorectal excision.* Surg Endosc 2014 Jan;28(1):227-34 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24002918.
10. ↑ 10.0 10.1 10.2 10.3 10.4 10.5 10.6 10.7 Palma P, Horisberger K, Joos A, Rothenhoefer S, Willeke F, Post S. *Local excision of early rectal cancer: is transanal endoscopic microsurgery an alternative to radical surgery?* Rev Esp Enferm Dig 2009 Mar;101(3):172-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19388797.
11. ↑ 11.0 11.1 11.2 11.3 11.4 11.5 11.6 11.7 11.8 Saraste D, Gunnarsson U, Janson M. *Local excision in early rectal cancer-outcome worse than expected: a population based study.* Eur J Surg Oncol 2013 Jun;39(6):634-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23414776.
12. ↑ 12.0 12.1 12.2 12.3 12.4 12.5 12.6 12.7 12.8 Lu JY, Lin GL, Qiu HZ, Xiao Y, Wu B, Zhou JL. *Comparison of Transanal Endoscopic Microsurgery and Total Mesorectal Excision in the Treatment of T1 Rectal Cancer: A Meta-Analysis.* PLoS One 2015;10(10):e0141427 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26505895.
13. ↑ 13.0 13.1 13.2 13.3 13.4 13.5 13.6 13.7 13.8 13.9 Elmessiry MM, Van Koughnett JA, Maya A, DaSilva G, Wexner SD, Bejarano P, et al. *Local excision of T1 and T2 rectal cancer: proceed with caution.* Colorectal Dis 2014 Sep;16(9):703-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24787457.

Back to top

## 13.2.3.6 Appendices

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| View recommendation components | View pending evidence | View body of evidence | View all comments | View literature search |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| View PICO | NHMRC Evidence statement form REC3 | Systematic review report REC3 |

Back to top

# 13.3 Emergency management of malignant large bowel obstruction (COLMNG5)

**Contents**



Back to top

## 13.3.1 Background

Malignant large bowel obstruction occurs in up to 20% of patients with colorectal cancer.[1] It is a significant cause of mortality among patients with colorectal cancer; up to 25% of all postoperative deaths are associated with malignant bowel obstruction.[2] It is also associated with significant morbidity, including a high probability of receiving a stoma.

Patients with malignant large bowel obstruction may be candidates for curative treatment or palliative treatment. Due to the increased availability of computed tomography (CT), patients' status is often known prior to therapeutic intervention.

Given that this malignant large bowel obstruction is common, patients with this problem can present to any hospital that has emergency admissions. There has been a long debate over the best approach to left-sided malignant large bowel obstruction, predominantly focused on restorative procedures, versus non-restorative procedures which result in an end colostomy. The advent of self-expanding metallic stents (SEMS) has added a further management option to the mix.

Back to top

## 13.3.2 Systematic review evidence

*In patients diagnosed with colorectal cancer and acute obstruction, does stenting or colostomy achieve equivalent or better outcomes, compared to acute resection with primary anastomosis? (COLMNG5)*

A systematic review was undertaken to evaluate outcomes following stenting or colostomy in patients with acute large bowel obstruction, compared with acute resection plus primary anastomosis. Two randomised controlled trials (RCTs) were identified that compared (1) the use of temporary stents, followed by an elective surgery with (2) acute resection with primary anastomosis.[3][4] All participants were patients who presented with left-sided colonic cancer as confirmed by CT. Acute resections consisted of either a colectomy[4] or a left hemicolectomy, sigmoid colectomy or a high anterior resection.[3] The median follow-up period in these RCTs ranged from 18 months[4] to 37.6 months.[3]

Both trials were at high risk of bias, as the blinding processes were not reported.[3][4] The first[3] provided minimal description of the randomisation process, and the trial was terminated early due to a high rate of complications in the comparator group.

The studies are heterogeneous, small in sample size and empirical results vary in significance. Outcomes reported varied between trials. Overall, RCT evidence on which to evaluate the use of stents in curative obstructive colorectal patients is limited.[3][4]

Two RCTs comparing preoperative stenting versus emergency surgery for acute left sided obstruction were prematurely closed because of adverse outcomes in the stenting group, namely tumour perforation, in the stent group.[5][6] These RCTs were therefore excluded from the systematic review.

The search strategy, inclusion and exclusion criteria, and quality assessment are described in detail in the Technical report.

Back to top

### 13.3.2.1 Perioperative morbidity and adverse events

#### 13.3.2.1.1 Overall morbidity

A Spanish RCT (n = 28) reported that stenting was associated with a significant (p=0.042) benefit for overall morbidity.[3]

An Egyptian RCT (n = 60) also reported that stenting was associated with a significant reduction in morbidity. Stenting patients lost less blood (p = 0.010) and required fewer blood transfusions (p = 0.035) and fewer fresh frozen plasma infusions (p = 0.010) intraoperatively.[4] The stenting group also showed significantly fewer median bowel motions per day (p = 0.013) at 3 months' follow-up,[4] but this was no longer significant at 6 months' follow-up.

#### 13.3.2.1.2 Anastomotic leakage

In both studies, patients who received stents did not experience any anastomotic leakage within the trial period.[3][4] In the smaller study, the rate of anastomotic dehiscence was significantly lower (p=0.035) in the stenting group than the emergency primary anastomosis group,[3] but in the larger study there was no statistically significant difference in the rate of anastomotic leakage between groups.[4]

Back to top

#### 13.3.2.1.3 Wound infections

The larger study reported that significantly fewer patients presented with wound infections in the stenting group, compared with the acute resection group (10% versus 30%; p = 0.022).[4] The smaller study reported a numerically lower rate of surgical space infections in the stenting group than the resection and anastomosis group, but the difference was not statistically significant overall.[3] The variation of significance may be due to small sample sizes.

#### 13.3.2.1.4 Other morbidity

Neither study reported stent-related technical complications such as perforation, bleeding or stent migration. The clinical implications of this is unknown, as it was not analysed further in either trial.

The larger study reported that chest infections occurred less frequently in those with stents than those with acute resection and anastomosis, but this difference was not statistically significant (p = 0.098).[4] The smaller study reported a significantly higher rate of reoperations within the overall follow-up period among those who underwent acute resection, compared with those who received stents (approximately 31% versus zero; p = 0.035).[3]

Back to top

#### 13.3.2.1.5 Length of hospital stay

Both trials reported longer hospital stays for those in the stenting group than the acute resection and anastomosis group, although this difference was not statistically significant.[3][4] The smaller study reported that mean postoperative stay was significantly shorter for the stenting group.[3]

#### 13.3.2.1.6 Perioperative mortality

Both trials reported no mortality as a result of the stenting procedure.[3][4] However, the statistical significance of this was either not reported on[4] or found to be not statistically significant.[3]

#### 13.3.2.1.7 Overall survival

The smaller study reported that approximately 58% of patients who received stents, and approximately 70% of those who received acute resections, survived at the end of 59 months of follow up.[3] However, this difference was not statistically significant ($p = 0.843$).

Back to top

## 13.3.3 Evidence summary and recommendations

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| Patients who received stents before an elective surgery showed reduced perioperative morbidity than those who underwent emergency resection and anastomosis. | II | [3], [4] |
| Two RCTs were prematurely closed because of adverse outcomes, namely tumour perforation, in the stent group. | N/A | [5], [6] |
| The benefits of stenting on perioperative mortality rates and length of hospital stays were inconclusive. | II | [3], [4] |
| There is weak evidence that the use of stents may reduce the risk of adverse events in colorectal cancer patients with cases of curative obstruction. | II | [3], [4] |
| The trials did not report complications of stent migration, perforation or bleeding. | N/A | [3], [4] |
| The studies did not report 5-year survival, cancer-specific survival, stoma rate or quality of life as outcomes. | N/A | [3], [4] |

Back to top

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| In patients with acute obstruction due to left-sided colorectal cancer who are potentially curative, the use of stenting as a bridge to surgery is not recommended as standard treatment, due to the potential risk of tumour perforation and conversion of a curative case to a palliative case. | **D** |

| Consensus-based recommendation |
|---|
| The insertion of an intraluminal colonic stent can be considered in large bowel obstruction secondary to colorectal cancer as palliation to relieve large bowel obstruction in patients with incurable metastatic colorectal cancer. |

| Consensus-based recommendation |
|---|
| For patients with potentially curable left-sided obstructing colonic cancer who are considered to be at increased risk of post-operative mortality, stent placement may be considered as an alternative to emergency surgery. |

| Consensus-based recommendation |
|---|
| If stenting is considered, it should be discussed by the multidisciplinary team and implications for anti-VEGF systemic therapy should be assessed. |

Back to top

## 13.3.4 Considerations in making these recommendations

Randomised controlled trials demonstrate no specific benefit from stenting as compared to primary surgery. There is a recognised incidence of local tumour perforation from stenting, which may convert a curative case to a potentially palliative case. Whilst this has not demonstrated reduced long-term survival, two large randomised controlled trials were closed early as a result of this.[5][6] Hence, insertion of a stent as a bridge to surgery cannot be recommended in curative cases unless the patient is considered unfit for major surgery.

There does appear to be a role for insertion of a stent to relieve obstruction as a palliative procedure, if the technical skill is available. This approach might reduce the incidence of stoma formation and avoid the requirement of surgery in a proportion of cases in which metastatic colorectal cancer is incurable or where patients considered unfit for major surgery. However, the use of anti-VEGF systemic therapy may be contraindicated in the presence of a stent, as there is evidence that the risk of perforation is increased.[7][8] Balancing the potential long term benefits on survival of anti-VEGF agents versus stenting or surgery, the later removing the risk of perforation and allowing anti-VEGF therapy to subsequently proceed, should therefore be discussed in this situation.

Back to top

## 13.3.5 Health system implications

### 13.3.5.1 Clinical practice

These recommendations would potentially necessitate the increased availability of the expertise to insert SEMS. However, this expertise is already established in clinical practice, so the recommendation would not require a change to the way that care is currently organised.

### 13.3.5.2 Resourcing

Increased application of stenting will require increased availability of personnel with the technical ability to insert a colonic stent, particularly if it is to be used out of routine hours. This could be colorectal surgeons or gastroenterologists. However, it may be challenging in smaller centres.

### 13.3.5.3 Barriers to implementation

No barriers to the implementation of these recommendations are envisaged.

Back to top

## 13.3.6 Discussion

### 13.3.6.1 Unresolved issues

Currently, there are no RCTs comparing outcomes of colostomies or Hartmann's Procedure with those of resections, or comparing colectomies with anastomosis.

In patients with curative obstructive colorectal cancer, the use of stents as an alternative to primary resection remains undecided. More evidence is required to demonstrate a concrete benefit over acute resection with primary anastomosis.

### 13.3.6.2 Studies currently underway

No relevant major RCTs are awaited. Publication of findings from the CReST study,[9] the largest multicentre cohort study yet completed, may address endpoints other than survival, such as avoidance of a permanent stoma.

### 13.3.6.3 Future research priorities

Further evidence is required to determine the role of stenting in palliative cases.

Next section: peritonectomy with hyperthermic intraperitoneal chemotherapy

Back to top

## 13.3.7 References

1. ↑ Irvin TT, Greaney MG. *The treatment of colonic cancer presenting with intestinal obstruction.* Br J Surg 1977 Oct;64(10):741-4 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/922296.
2. ↑ Mella J, Biffin A, Radcliffe AG, Stamatakis JD, Steele RJ. *Population-based audit of colorectal cancer management in two UK health regions. Colorectal Cancer Working Group, Royal College of Surgeons of England Clinical Epidemiology and Audit Unit.* Br J Surg 1997 Dec;84(12):1731-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9448628.
3. ↑ 3.00 3.01 3.02 3.03 3.04 3.05 3.06 3.07 3.08 3.09 3.10 3.11 3.12 3.13 3.14 3.15 3.16 3.17 3.18 3.19 3.20 Alcántara M, Serra-Aracil X, Falcó J, Mora L, Bombardó J, Navarro S. *Prospective, controlled, randomized study of intraoperative colonic lavage versus stent placement in obstructive left-sided colonic cancer.* World J Surg 2011 Aug;35(8):1904-10 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21559998.
4. ↑ 4.00 4.01 4.02 4.03 4.04 4.05 4.06 4.07 4.08 4.09 4.10 4.11 4.12 4.13 4.14 4.15 4.16 4.17 4.18 Ghazal AH, El-Shazly WG, Bessa SS, El-Riwini MT, Hussein AM. *Colonic endolumenal stenting devices and elective surgery versus emergency subtotal/total colectomy in the management of malignant obstructed left colon carcinoma.* J Gastrointest Surg 2013 Jun;17(6):1123-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23358847.

5. ↑ 5.0 5.1 5.2 Pirlet IA, Slim K, Kwiatkowski F, Michot F, Millat BL. *Emergency preoperative stenting versus surgery for acute left-sided malignant colonic obstruction: a multicenter randomized controlled trial.* Surg Endosc 2011 Jun;25(6):1814-21 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21170659.
6. ↑ 6.0 6.1 6.2 van Hooft JE, Bemelman WA, Oldenburg B, Marinelli AW, Lutke Holzik MF, Grubben MJ, et al. *Colonic stenting versus emergency surgery for acute left-sided malignant colonic obstruction: a multicentre randomised trial.* Lancet Oncol 2011 Apr;12(4):344-52 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21398178.
7. ↑ van Halsema EE, van Hooft JE, Small AJ, Baron TH, García-Cano J, Cheon JH, et al. *Perforation in colorectal stenting: a meta-analysis and a search for risk factors.* Gastrointest Endosc 2014 Jun;79(6):970-82.e7; quiz 983.e2, 983.e5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24650852.
8. ↑ Imbulgoda A, MacLean A, Heine J, Drolet S, Vickers MM. *Colonic perforation with intraluminal stents and bevacizumab in advanced colorectal cancer: retrospective case series and literature review.* Can J Surg 2015 Jun;58(3):167-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25799132.
9. ↑ Hill J KC, Morton D, Magill L, Handley K, Gray RG, et al. *CREST: Randomised phase III study of stenting as a bridge to surgery in obstructing colorectal cancer—Results of the UK ColoRectal Endoscopic Stenting Trial (CREST). Proceedings of the American Society of Clinical Oncology Annual Meeting; 2016 Jun 3-7. Chicago (IL).*;.

Back to top

## 13.3.8 Appendices

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| View recommendation components | View pending evidence | View body of evidence | View all comments | View literature search |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| View PICO | NHMRC Evidence statement form COLMNG5 | Systematic review report COLMNG5 |

Back to top

# 13.4 Peritonectomy with hyperthermic intraperitoneal chemotherapy (COLMNG3)

**Contents**



## 13.4.1 Background

Peritoneal metastases are present synchronously in 5–10% of patients at the time of diagnosis of primary colorectal cancer. They may also occur metachronously following treatment of the primary colorectal cancer. Because peritoneal carcinomatosis is associated with a poor prognosis, a conservative surgical approach has traditionally been adopted, consisting of limited resection (with or without the formation of a defunctioning stoma) followed by palliative chemotherapy.

In recent years, there has been emerging evidence that cytoreductive surgery followed by intraperitoneal chemotherapy may improve survival. However, cytoreductive surgery and intraperitoneal chemotherapy can be associated with considerable perioperative mortality and morbidity, and are highly specialised procedures that are currently only available at selected centres with the requisite expertise.

Back to top

## 13.4.2 Systematic review evidence

*For patients diagnosed with colorectal cancer and peritoneal involvement or isolated peritoneal recurrence of colorectal cancer, does peritonectomy, with or without perioperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy (PIC), achieve better outcomes in terms of length and quality of life than usual care? (COLMNG3)*

A systematic review was undertaken to determine the role of cytoreductive surgery, with or without perioperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy, by comparing it with usual care (limited resection or no resection with or without stoma and/or palliative chemotherapy) in patients with synchronous or metachronous peritoneal metastases from primary colorectal cancer.

The systematic review identified four studies comparing the combination of cytoreductive surgery and perioperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy with usual care.[1][2][3][4] All patients had histologically proven peritoneal carcinomatosis from a primary colorectal cancer. All studies included both patients with primary peritoneal carcinomatosis and patients with metachronous peritoneal carcinomatosis. Two of the four studies[2][4] also included patients with adenocarcinoma of the appendix, for which the role of cytoreductive surgery and perioperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy is well established. However, appendiceal cancers comprised only 15% and 17.5% of these study cohorts[2][4] and inclusion of these studies did not alter the outcomes of the systematic review.

All studies were at high risk of bias.[1][2][3][4] All studies were also heterogeneous with a variable number of patients with synchronous and metachronous peritoneal metastases. Different disease staging systems were used across the studies, which made comparisons of outcomes across studies more difficult.[1][2][3][4] Intraperitoneal chemotherapy regimens vary considerably in their timing and the chemotherapy agents used. Variations in regimens both within and between studies further complicated comparisons of outcomes between studies. Median follow up ranged from 17 months to 94 months.

Two randomised controlled trials (RCTs) were identified:

- The Swedish peritoneal study[2] (n = 48) compared cytoreduction plus sequential postoperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy (n = 24) with systemic chemotherapy (n = 24). In the cytoreduction group, 21 patients also received intraperitoneal chemotherapy, while the other three patients only underwent cytoreductive surgery. Complete cytoreduction was achieved in 14 (58%) of patients. Five patients (21%) had no residual nodules greater than 2.5 mm (completeness of cytoreduction [CCR] score of 1), two patients (8%) had residual disease with nodules less than 25 mm (CCR2), and three patients (13%) had residual disease with nodules greater than 25 mm (CCR3). Patients in the chemotherapy arm received 5-FU, leucovorin and oxaliplatin. Although the authors had planned for a sample size of 100, the study was terminated prematurely after 7 years because of slow accrual.

- A Dutch RCT[4] (n = 105) compared the combination of cytoreduction surgery, HIPEC and postoperative adjuvant chemotherapy (n = 54) with systemic chemotherapy using 5-FU and leucovorin (n = 51). Of the cytoreduction group, 41% achieved complete cytoreduction but 41% and 18% respectively had what the authors described as R2-a and R2-b resection (macroscopic residual disease).

Two cohort studies were identified:

- A multicentre retrospective cohort study[3] (n = 294) compared cytoreductive surgery plus perioperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy with limited resection (with or without palliative chemotherapy). The sample included 18 patients (6.1%) with stage I disease, 111 (37.8%) with stage II disease, 46 (15.6%) with stage III disease, and 119 (40.5%) with stage IV disease, graded according to peritoneal surface disease severity score. Complete cytoreduction was achieved in 65% of patients, while 25% of patients had CCR1 and 10% had CCR2 or CCR3. Of the 110 patients in the cytoreduction group, 55 (45%) received HIPEC, 19 (17%) received early postoperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy, and 36 (33%) received both HIPEC and early post-operative chemotherapy (5-fluorouracil 650–800 mg/m2).

- A retrospective cohort study[1] (n = 151) compared patients who underwent cytoreductive surgery (with or without intraperitoneal chemotherapy) with patients who underwent only an 'open-and-close' procedure. The sample included 49 patients (32.7%) with a peritoneal carcinomatosis index score (PCI) of 1–10, 45 (30%) with a PCI of 11–20 and 56 (37.3%) with a PCI of 21–39. Of the 128 patients in the cytoreduction group, 57 (44.5%) received sequential postoperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy, 69 (53.9%) received HIPEC and two patients (1.5%) underwent cytoreductive surgery alone. Complete cytoreduction was achieved in 97 (64.7%) of patients. Chemotherapy regimens used for the HIPEC included mitomycin C (n = 2), oxaliplatin in combination with 5-FU and folinic acid (n = 44) and the combination of oxaliplatin, irinotecan, 5-FU and folinic acid (n = 23). Forty-seven patients (37.3%) received neoadjuvant chemotherapy and 27 (21.4%) also received adjuvant systemic chemotherapy.

Back to top

### 13.4.2.1 Perioperative mortality, morbidity and adverse events

Three studies reported treatment-related mortality.[1][2][4] One retrospective cohort study[1] reported five deaths among 126 patients (8%) in the cytoreduction group within 90 days of treatment. The Dutch RCT reported seven deaths among 105 patients (6.7%) in the cytoreduction group.[4] The Swedish peritoneal study reported no 30-day surgical mortality or treatment-related mortality from grade III or IV toxicity.[2]

High rates of treatment-related morbidity were reported. One retrospective cohort study reported an overall 90-day grade III or IV morbidity rate of 71%.[1] In a subsequent RCT, 30-day morbidity rate was 33% in patients who underwent cytoreduction.[2] The same RCT also reported that 6-month treatment-related grade III or IV morbidity was comparable between patients undergoing cytoreduction and intraperitoneal cavity chemotherapy and patients receiving systemic adjuvant therapy (42% versus 50%, p value not reported).[2] In addition to these complications, seven (29%) of the surgical patients also required an unplanned re-operation for major intra-abdominal complications.[2]

The other RCT[4] only briefly reported early surgical and postoperative complications because this was a follow-up study that focused on longer-term outcomes. The investigators reported a mortality rate of 8% (four patients in each of the cytoreduction surgery and intraperitoneal chemotherapy groups). Morbidity rates were not reported quantitatively but the authors stated that treatment related toxicities were high. The initial 2003 publication of this study reported that the most significant complications were small bowel leakage (15%) and post-operative intraabdominal sepsis.[5] Grade III and IV bone marrow toxicity as a result of mitomycin C within intraperitoneal chemotherapy was noted in 14% and 5% of patients, respectively.

Treatment termination because of disease progression was also reported in the two RCTs.[2][4] In both studies, this was less likely in the cytoreduction and intraperitoneal chemotherapy group (21% versus 50% in the Swedish peritoneal study,[2] and 25% versus 86% in the Dutch study).[4]

Back to top

### 13.4.2.2 Survival outcomes

In all four studies, the patients who received cytoreduction with or without intra-peritoneal chemotherapy group showed improved survival, compared with the palliative group.[1][2][3][4] Of the four studies, one reported overall median survival,[3] one reported overall survival, median survival and disease free survival,[1] one reported overall survival,[2] and one reported disease-specific survival.[4]

In the Swedish peritoneal study[2] 5-year overall survival was significantly higher for patients who underwent cytoreduction and intraperitoneal cavity chemotherapy, compared with those who only received systemic adjuvant therapy (33% versus 4%; $p = 0.02$). The Dutch RCT[4] reported disease-specific survival of 22.2 months for patients who underwent cytoreduction, compared with 12.6 months for patients who received systemic chemotherapy ($p = 0.028$). Among patients who had complete cytoreduction ($n = 21$), median survival was 48 months and 5-year overall survival was 45%.[4]

In the multicentre retrospective cohort study[3] the overall median survival for the palliative surgery group was 9 months, compared with 36 months for cytoreduction and HIPEC, 38 months for cytoreduction and early postoperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy, and 43 months for the combination of cytoreduction, HIPEC and early postoperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy after 17 months median follow up ($p < 0.001$). The other retrospective cohort study[1] reported that overall median survival was 6.5 months for patients who underwent an ‘open-and-close’ procedure only, compared with 25–34 months for those who underwent cytoreduction and intraperitoneal chemotherapy.[1] This study also reported overall survival rates of 40% for the cytoreduction and HIPEC group, 18% for the cytoreduction and sequential postoperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy group and 0% for the ‘open-and-close’ group after 49 months median follow up ($p < 0.001$).[1] The same study also reported a 5-year disease-free survival rate of 32% for patients who underwent cytoreduction and HIPEC.[1]

Overall, there is some limited evidence that cytoreductive surgery and intraperitoneal chemotherapy improves survival, but this must be balanced against perioperative mortality and morbidity.

### 13.4.2.3 Quality-of-life outcomes

Quality-of-life outcomes were not reported in any of the studies included in the systematic review. There is no evidence to determine differences in quality of life outcomes.

Back to top

## 13.4.3 Evidence summary and recommendations

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| In patients with peritoneal metastases from colorectal cancer (synchronous or metachronous), cytoreduction surgery with intraperitoneal chemotherapy is associated with improved survival, compared with palliative surgery and systemic chemotherapy. | II, III-1 | [1], [2], [3], [4] |
| Cytoreduction surgery with perioperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy is associated with significant treatment morbidity. | II, III-1 | [2], [3], [4] |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| Cytoreduction with perioperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy should be considered for patients with colorectal peritoneal metastases (either synchronous or metachronous to the primary). Where this procedure is suitable, the patient should be offered referral to a centre with the necessary expertise and infrastructure to perform this procedure. | **D** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| Cytoreduction surgery and perioperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy should only be offered after due consideration of, and discussion with the patient about, the potential treatment-related mortality and morbidity. | **D** |

**Practice point**

Patients with peritoneal carcinomatosis should be referred to a centre with expertise in the management of peritoneal surface malignancies and should be offered enrolment in a prospective trial, so as to allow further evaluation of cytoreduction and intraperitoneal chemotherapy.

**Practice point**

Prior to referral, treating clinicians should have an in-depth discussion with every patient about the potential survival advantage and potential treatment-related mortality or morbidity.

**Practice point**

All patients' cases should be discussed at a multidisciplinary team meeting with clinicians who have expertise in the management of peritoneal metastases, to review the relevant clinical information, previous histology (if applicable) and relevant imaging prior to offering patients cytoreductive surgery and intraperitoneal chemotherapy.

**Practice point**

All patients offered this procedure in established cytoreduction centres should be asked to give their consent for their patient records to be available for ongoing auditing of clinical outcomes. Patients should also be invited and encouraged to participate in research to enable collection of prospective longitudinal data for clinical and quality-of-life outcomes.

Back to top

### 13.4.3.1 Considerations in making these recommendations

Although available evidence is encouraging, there is currently insufficient evidence to recommend the widespread adoption of cytoreduction surgery and intraperitoneal chemotherapy for patients with colorectal peritoneal metastases. Further studies, with appropriate patient selection and outcomes, are needed before cytoreduction and intraperitoneal chemotherapy can be recommended.

Back to top

### 13.4.3.2 Health system implications

#### 13.4.3.2.1 Clinical practice

Cytoreduction surgery with perioperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy is a highly specialised treatment that is currently only offered at highly selected centres with the requisite expertise. The management of patients with peritoneal metastases requires a multidisciplinary team approach where the expertise is not restricted to surgical and medical oncology expertise alone.

With increasing evidence for the potential survival benefit of cytoreduction surgery and perioperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy, referrals to centres with the necessary expertise may increase.

Back to top

#### 13.4.3.2.2 Resourcing

The present recommendations would have only a minor effect on resourcing, because they would affect only referral centres with the necessary expertise and infrastructure to perform this procedure.

It is possible that there may be increased demand for cytoreduction surgery and perioperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy in the future, which may necessitate the development and establishment of more expert centres. The development and establishment of more expert centres should be undertaken in a consultative manner, taking into consideration the expertise and infrastructure available as well as commitment to ongoing audit and research. However, it is still envisaged that these expert centres are likely to be located in large tertiary referral centres, which would require patients from rural and regional areas of Australia to travel large distances for treatment.

#### 13.4.3.2.3 Barriers to implementation

No barriers to the implementation of these recommendations are envisaged.

Back to top

## 13.4.4 Discussion

### 13.4.4.1 Unresolved issues

Prognosis for patients with peritoneal carcinomatosis is poor. There is some suggestion that an elective relook may allow early diagnosis of peritoneal carcinomatosis, resulting in earlier treatment, and therefore lead to improved survival. However, it is unclear whether this is simply the result of lead time bias or whether this represents more effective treatment early in the diagnosis of peritoneal carcinomatosis. Data from long-term prospective RCTs are not currently available.

Cytoreduction surgery, with or without intraperitoneal chemotherapy, requires further prospective evaluation. At present, it is not clear if intraperitoneal chemotherapy is a necessary part of treatment in addition to cytoreduction. Furthermore, even if intraperitoneal chemotherapy is a necessary component of treatment, there is insufficient evidence to conclude which intraperitoneal chemotherapy regimen is most effective in terms of timing and mode of delivery as well as the chemotherapy agent used.

Quality-of-life outcomes have not been included in studies reporting outcomes in patients undergoing cytoreduction with or without intraperitoneal chemotherapy. These need to be evaluated as part of a prospective study.

Back to top

### 13.4.4.2 Studies currently underway

No large multicentre randomised trials are currently underway comparing cytoreduction and perioperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy with standard care. However, results are awaited from a RCT recently completed in France, which evaluated the role of HIPEC after cytoreduction surgery.[6]

Further large RCTs investigating the role of cytoreduction surgery and perioperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy are unlikely. This is partly because variations in practice between expert centres prevent investigators easily reaching consensus on the protocol for a multicentre trial.

Several randomised trials are currently ongoing evaluating the merit of elective relook in patients at high risk of developing peritoneal disease. These may inform the benefit of early treatment of peritoneal metastases.

Back to top

### 13.4.4.3 Future research priorities

The role of cytoreduction surgery and intra-peritoneal chemotherapy requires further evaluation. Future prospective trials should be sufficiently powered to assess the trade-off between increased survival with cytoreductive surgery and perioperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy and the treatment related mortality and morbidity.

These studies should include quality-of-life outcomes and cost-effectiveness outcomes. Reporting of outcomes should be standardised to enable results to be compared between studies.

Back to top

## 13.4.5 References

1. ↑ 1.00 1.01 1.02 1.03 1.04 1.05 1.06 1.07 1.08 1.09 1.10 1.11 1.12 1.13 Cashin PH, Graf W, Nygren P, Mahteme H. *Cytoreductive surgery and intraperitoneal chemotherapy for colorectal peritoneal carcinomatosis: prognosis and treatment of recurrences in a cohort study.* Eur J Surg Oncol 2012 Jun;38(6):509-15 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22475555.

2. ↑ 2.00 2.01 2.02 2.03 2.04 2.05 2.06 2.07 2.08 2.09 2.10 2.11 2.12 2.13 2.14 2.15 2.16 2.17 Cashin PH, Mahteme H, Spång N, Syk I, Frödin JE, Torkzad M, et al. *Cytoreductive surgery and intraperitoneal chemotherapy versus systemic chemotherapy for colorectal peritoneal metastases: A randomised trial.* Eur J Cancer 2016 Jan;53:155-62 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26751236.
3. ↑ 3.0 3.1 3.2 3.3 3.4 3.5 3.6 3.7 3.8 Chua TC, Morris DL, Saxena A, Esquivel J, Liauw W, Doerfer J, et al. *Influence of modern systemic therapies as adjunct to cytoreduction and perioperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy for patients with colorectal peritoneal carcinomatosis: a multicenter study.* Ann Surg Oncol 2011 Jun;18(6):1560-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21203904.
4. ↑ 4.00 4.01 4.02 4.03 4.04 4.05 4.06 4.07 4.08 4.09 4.10 4.11 4.12 4.13 4.14 4.15 4.16 Verwaal VJ, Bruin S, Boot H, van Slooten G, van Tinteren H. *8-year follow-up of randomized trial: cytoreduction and hyperthermic intraperitoneal chemotherapy versus systemic chemotherapy in patients with peritoneal carcinomatosis of colorectal cancer.* Ann Surg Oncol 2008 Sep;15(9):2426-32 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18521686.
5. ↑ Verwaal VJ, van Ruth S, de Bree E, van Sloothen GW, van Tinteren H, Boot H, et al. *Randomized trial of cytoreduction and hyperthermic intraperitoneal chemotherapy versus systemic chemotherapy and palliative surgery in patients with peritoneal carcinomatosis of colorectal cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2003 Oct 15;21(20):3737-43 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14551293.
6. ↑ U.S. National Institutes of Health. *Clinical trial: Systemic chemotherapy with or without intraperitoneal chemohyperthermia in treating patients undergoing surgery for peritoneal carcinomatosis from colorectal cancer. Accessed from: https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT00769405. August 2016.*;.

Back to top

## 13.4.6 Appendices

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| View recommendation components | View pending evidence | View body of evidence | View all comments | View literature search |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| View PICO | NHMRC Evidence statement form COLMNG3 | Systematic review report COLMNG3 |

Back to top

# 14 Adjuvant therapy for colon cancer

Approximately 70–80% of patients with newly diagnosed cases of colorectal cancer undergo curative resection. However 40% of these develop incurable recurrent disease due to undetected micrometastases.[1]

In particular, patients with stage III (T1 to T4, N1-2) or Dukes C colon cancer have a 5-year survival rate of 42–92%, varying substantially depending on the T and N stage.[2] Patients with stage II (T3 or T4, N0) or Dukes B colon cancer have a 5-year survival rate of 62–88%.[2] The poorest outcomes are seen in those with high risk clinicopathological features.[3]

The inability to cure all such patients is a direct consequence of residual disease left behind after surgery. Over the last two decades, adjuvant chemotherapy has been offered to such high-risk patients with the aim to decrease relapse and improve overall survival, by attempting to eliminate this microscopic residual disease.

As the median age of diagnosis for colon cancer is just over 70 years, older patients constitute a large proportion of the stage II and III population.

## 14.1 Definitions

Adjuvant therapy is any treatment that is given in addition to a standard curative cancer treatment such as surgery. By convention, the term ‘adjuvant’ is reserved for postoperative treatment, while ‘neoadjuvant’ refers to treatment given prior to the definitive surgery.

Chemotherapy is cytotoxic drug treatment. Systemic chemotherapy affects the entire body, and is given with the intent of killing residual cancer cells that may lodge and grow in distant organs such as the liver and lungs.

Back to top

### 14.1.1 Chapter subsections

Subsections:

- Adjuvant therapy for stage III colon cancer
  - What is the efficacy of adjuvant therapy in elderly CRC patients? (ADJ1)
- Adjuvant therapy for stage II colon cancer
- Irinotecan and targeted (biological) agents in adjuvant therapy for Stage II and Stage III colon cancer
- Discussion: adjuvant therapy for colon cancer

Back to top

## 14.2 References

1. ↑ Lombardi L, Gebbia V, Silvestris N, Testa A, Colucci G, Maiello E. *Adjuvant therapy in colon cancer.* Oncology 2009;77 Suppl 1:50-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20130432.
2. ↑ [2.0] [2.1] Zhang ZY, Luo QF, Yin XW, Dai ZL, Basnet S, Ge HY. *Nomograms to predict survival after colorectal cancer resection without preoperative therapy.* BMC Cancer 2016 Aug 19;16(1):658 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27553083.
3. ↑ Böckelman C, Engelmann BE, Kaprio T, Hansen TF, Glimelius B. *Risk of recurrence in patients with colon cancer stage II and III: a systematic review and meta-analysis of recent literature.* Acta Oncol 2015 Jan;54 (1):5-16 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25430983.

Back to top

# 14.1 Introduction: adjuvant therapy for colon cancer

Approximately 70–80% of patients with newly diagnosed cases of colorectal cancer undergo curative resection. However 40% of these develop incurable recurrent disease due to undetected micrometastases.[1]

In particular, patients with stage III (T1 to T4, N1-2) or Dukes C colon cancer have a 5-year survival rate of 42–92%, varying substantially depending on the T and N stage.[2] Patients with stage II (T3 or T4, N0) or Dukes B colon cancer have a 5-year survival rate of 62–88%.[2] The poorest outcomes are seen in those with high risk clinicopathological features.[3]

The inability to cure all such patients is a direct consequence of residual disease left behind after surgery. Over the last two decades, adjuvant chemotherapy has been offered to such high-risk patients with the aim to decrease relapse and improve overall survival, by attempting to eliminate this microscopic residual disease.

As the median age of diagnosis for colon cancer is just over 70 years, older patients constitute a large proportion of the stage II and III population.

## 14.1.1 Definitions

Adjuvant therapy is any treatment that is given in addition to a standard curative cancer treatment such as surgery. By convention, the term ‘adjuvant’ is reserved for postoperative treatment, while ‘neoadjuvant’ refers to treatment given prior to the definitive surgery.

Chemotherapy is cytotoxic drug treatment. Systemic chemotherapy affects the entire body, and is given with the intent of killing residual cancer cells that may lodge and grow in distant organs such as the liver and lungs.

Back to top

#### 14.1.1.1 Chapter subsections

Subsections:

- Adjuvant therapy for stage III colon cancer
  - What is the efficacy of adjuvant therapy in elderly CRC patients? (ADJ1)
- Adjuvant therapy for stage II colon cancer
- Irinotecan and targeted (biological) agents in adjuvant therapy for Stage II and Stage III colon cancer
- Discussion: adjuvant therapy for colon cancer

Back to top

## 14.1.2 References

1. ↑ Lombardi L, Gebbia V, Silvestris N, Testa A, Colucci G, Maiello E. *Adjuvant therapy in colon cancer.* Oncology 2009;77 Suppl 1:50-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20130432.
2. ↑ [2.0] [2.1] Zhang ZY, Luo QF, Yin XW, Dai ZL, Basnet S, Ge HY. *Nomograms to predict survival after colorectal cancer resection without preoperative therapy.* BMC Cancer 2016 Aug 19;16(1):658 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27553083.
3. ↑ Böckelman C, Engelmann BE, Kaprio T, Hansen TF, Glimelius B. *Risk of recurrence in patients with colon cancer stage II and III: a systematic review and meta-analysis of recent literature.* Acta Oncol 2015 Jan;54 (1):5-16 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25430983.

Back to top

# 14.2 Adjuvant therapy for stage III colon

**Contents**

## 14.2.1 Background

Patients with stage III (T1 to T4, N1-2) or Dukes C colon cancer have 5-year disease-free survival of around 49%, improving to 64% with the addition of adjuvant chemotherapy.[1] The benefit of adjuvant treatment has been demonstrated,[2] meaning 6 months of adjuvant chemotherapy should be offered to patients with stage III colon cancer, unless medically unfit, with the aim of improving relapse free and overall survival.[3]

Back to top

## 14.2.2 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews were undertaken for this topic. Practice points were based on selected published evidence. See Guidelines development process.

### 14.2.2.1 Addition of oxaliplatin to 5FU-based regimens

The efficacy of oxaliplatin plus 5-fluorouracil (5FU) as adjuvant therapy for stage III disease was demonstrated in two pivotal randomised controlled trials (RCTs): the MOSAIC study[4] and the NSABP C07 study.[5] Both studies included stage II and III patients.

In the MOSAIC trial,[4] 2246 patients were randomised to receive a combined bolus/infusional leucovorin (LV) plus 5FU regimen (LV5FU2) alone, or with oxaliplatin (FOLFOX4), for 6 months. On final analysis, the 10-year overall survival rates for patients with stage III disease were 59.0% and 67.1%, respectively (hazard ratio [HR] 0.80; p = .016).[4]

The NSABP C07 trial[5] randomised 2492 patients to either 5FU 500 mg/m$^2$, plus LV 500 mg/m2 both IV weekly for 6 weeks during each 8-week cycle (Roswell Park regimen) for three cycles, or the same 5FU-LV regimen with oxaliplatin 85 mg/m2 IV administered on weeks one, three and five of each 8-week cycle for three cycles. This study confirmed the additional disease-free survival benefit provided by oxaliplatin, as observed in the MOSAIC trial.[5] No benefit for overall survival was found.

Back to top

### 14.2.2.2 Addition of oxaliplatin to capecitabine (XELOX)

A subsequent RCT, the NO1968 study, compared capecitabine plus oxaliplatin (XELOX; oxaliplatin 130 mg/m$^2$ on day one plus capecitabine 1000 mg/m$^2$ b.i.d on days one to 14, every 3 weeks for 24 weeks) with a control arm of bolus 5FU-LV (Mayo Clinic for 24 weeks or Roswell Park for 32 weeks) in patients with stage III colon cancer.[6] The 3-year disease-free survival rate was 70.9% with XELOX and 66.5% with 5FU-LV (HR 0.80, p < 0.005).[6] XELOX is thus considered an additional adjuvant treatment option for patients with stage III colon cancer.

**Practice point**

Oxaliplatin in combination with a fluoropyrimidine is standard therapy for young patients (< 70 years) with stage III colon cancer.

**Practice point**

Capecitabine plus oxaliplatin (XELOX) can be considered as an alternative to FOLFOX for adjuvant treatment for patients with stage III colon cancer.

Next section: adjuvant therapy elderly stage III CRC

Back to top

## 14.2.3 References

1. ↑ Böckelman C, Engelmann BE, Kaprio T, Hansen TF, Glimelius B. *Risk of recurrence in patients with colon cancer stage II and III: a systematic review and meta-analysis of recent literature.* Acta Oncol 2015 Jan;54 (1):5-16 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25430983.
2. ↑ Lombardi L, Gebbia V, Silvestris N, Testa A, Colucci G, Maiello E. *Adjuvant therapy in colon cancer.* Oncology 2009;77 Suppl 1:50-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20130432.
3. ↑ National Comprehensive Cancer Network. *NCCN Guidelines: Colon Cancer.* National Comprehensive Cancer Network; 2016.
4. ↑ [4.0] [4.1] [4.2] André T, de Gramont A, Vernerey D, Chibaudel B, Bonnetain F, Tijeras-Raballand A, et al. *Adjuvant Fluorouracil, Leucovorin, and Oxaliplatin in Stage II to III Colon Cancer: Updated 10-Year Survival and Outcomes According to BRAF Mutation and Mismatch Repair Status of the MOSAIC Study.* J Clin Oncol 2015 Dec 10;33(35):4176-87 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26527776.
5. ↑ [5.0] [5.1] [5.2] Yothers G, O'Connell MJ, Allegra CJ, Kuebler JP, Colangelo LH, Petrelli NJ, et al. *Oxaliplatin as adjuvant therapy for colon cancer: updated results of NSABP C-07 trial, including survival and subset analyses.* J Clin Oncol 2011 Oct 1;29(28):3768-74 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed /21859995.
6. ↑ [6.0] [6.1] Haller DG, Tabernero J, Maroun J, de Braud F, Price T, Van Cutsem E, et al. *Capecitabine plus oxaliplatin compared with fluorouracil and folinic acid as adjuvant therapy for stage III colon cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2011 Apr 10;29(11):1465-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21383294.

Back to top

# 14.2.1 Adjuvant therapy for stage III colon

**Contents**



## 14.2.1.1 Background

Patients with stage III (T1 to T4, N1-2) or Dukes C colon cancer have 5-year disease-free survival of around 49%, improving to 64% with the addition of adjuvant chemotherapy.[1] The benefit of adjuvant treatment has been demonstrated,[2] meaning 6 months of adjuvant chemotherapy should be offered to patients with stage III colon cancer, unless medically unfit, with the aim of improving relapse free and overall survival.[3]

Back to top

## 14.2.1.2 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews were undertaken for this topic. Practice points were based on selected published evidence. See Guidelines development process.

### 14.2.1.2.1 Addition of oxaliplatin to 5FU-based regimens

The efficacy of oxaliplatin plus 5-fluorouracil (5FU) as adjuvant therapy for stage III disease was demonstrated in two pivotal randomised controlled trials (RCTs): the MOSAIC study[4] and the NSABP C07 study.[5] Both studies included stage II and III patients.

In the MOSAIC trial,[4] 2246 patients were randomised to receive a combined bolus/infusional leucovorin (LV) plus 5FU regimen (LV5FU2) alone, or with oxaliplatin (FOLFOX4), for 6 months. On final analysis, the 10-year overall survival rates for patients with stage III disease were 59.0% and 67.1%, respectively (hazard ratio [HR] 0.80; p = .016).[4]

The NSABP C07 trial[5] randomised 2492 patients to either 5FU 500 mg/m$^2$, plus LV 500 mg/m2 both IV weekly for 6 weeks during each 8-week cycle (Roswell Park regimen) for three cycles, or the same 5FU-LV regimen with oxaliplatin 85 mg/m2 IV administered on weeks one, three and five of each 8-week cycle for three cycles. This study confirmed the additional disease-free survival benefit provided by oxaliplatin, as observed in the MOSAIC trial.[5] No benefit for overall survival was found.

Back to top

### 14.2.1.2.2 Addition of oxaliplatin to capecitabine (XELOX)

A subsequent RCT, the NO1968 study, compared capecitabine plus oxaliplatin (XELOX; oxaliplatin 130 mg/m$^2$ on day one plus capecitabine 1000 mg/m$^2$ b.i.d on days one to 14, every 3 weeks for 24 weeks) with a control arm of bolus 5FU-LV (Mayo Clinic for 24 weeks or Roswell Park for 32 weeks) in patients with stage III colon cancer.[6] The 3-year disease-free survival rate was 70.9% with XELOX and 66.5% with 5FU-LV (HR 0.80, p < 0.005).[6] XELOX is thus considered an additional adjuvant treatment option for patients with stage III colon cancer.

**Practice point**

Oxaliplatin in combination with a fluoropyrimidine is standard therapy for young patients (< 70 years) with stage III colon cancer.

**Practice point**

Capecitabine plus oxaliplatin (XELOX) can be considered as an alternative to FOLFOX for adjuvant treatment for patients with stage III colon cancer.

Next section: adjuvant therapy elderly stage III CRC

Back to top

## 14.2.1.3 References

1. ↑ Böckelman C, Engelmann BE, Kaprio T, Hansen TF, Glimelius B. *Risk of recurrence in patients with colon cancer stage II and III: a systematic review and meta-analysis of recent literature.* Acta Oncol 2015 Jan;54 (1):5-16 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25430983.

2. ↑ Lombardi L, Gebbia V, Silvestris N, Testa A, Colucci G, Maiello E. *Adjuvant therapy in colon cancer.* Oncology 2009;77 Suppl 1:50-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20130432.
3. ↑ National Comprehensive Cancer Network. *NCCN Guidelines: Colon Cancer.* National Comprehensive Cancer Network; 2016.
4. ↑ [4.0] [4.1] [4.2] André T, de Gramont A, Vernerey D, Chibaudel B, Bonnetain F, Tijeras-Raballand A, et al. *Adjuvant Fluorouracil, Leucovorin, and Oxaliplatin in Stage II to III Colon Cancer: Updated 10-Year Survival and Outcomes According to BRAF Mutation and Mismatch Repair Status of the MOSAIC Study.* J Clin Oncol 2015 Dec 10;33(35):4176-87 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26527776.
5. ↑ [5.0] [5.1] [5.2] Yothers G, O'Connell MJ, Allegra CJ, Kuebler JP, Colangelo LH, Petrelli NJ, et al. *Oxaliplatin as adjuvant therapy for colon cancer: updated results of NSABP C-07 trial, including survival and subset analyses.* J Clin Oncol 2011 Oct 1;29(28):3768-74 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21859995.
6. ↑ [6.0] [6.1] Haller DG, Tabernero J, Maroun J, de Braud F, Price T, Van Cutsem E, et al. *Capecitabine plus oxaliplatin compared with fluorouracil and folinic acid as adjuvant therapy for stage III colon cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2011 Apr 10;29(11):1465-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21383294.

Back to top

# 14.2.2 Adjuvant therapy for elderly stage III CRC (ADJ1)

**Contents**



## 14.2.2.1 Background

Adjuvant chemotherapy is standard treatment for elderly patients with stage III colon cancer.

The use of single-agent fluoropyrimidines is supported by a pooled analysis[1] of individual patient data from seven phase III randomised controlled trials (RCTs) involving a total of 3351 patients. Included were studies comparing postoperative fluorouracil plus leucovorin (five trials) or fluorouracil plus levamisole (two trials) with surgery alone in patients with stage II or III colon cancer.[1] The study reported a significant positive effect on both overall survival (hazard ratio [HR] 0.76, $p < 0.001$) and time to tumour recurrence (HR 0.68, $p < 0.001$), with no significant interaction observed between age and the efficacy of treatment. The incidence of toxic effects was not increased among patients aged over 70 years, except for leukopenia in one study.[1]

The roles of additional agents in adjuvant therapy in the elderly have not been well defined.

Back to top

## 14.2.2.2 Systematic review evidence

*In elderly patients (≥70 years) diagnosed with colon cancer, what is the efficacy of surgery and adjuvant combination chemotherapy (involving either 5-fluorouracil or capecitabine combined with oxaliplatin), compared to surgery with a single chemotherapeutic agent (fluoropyrimidine), in achieving the best outcomes in terms of colorectal cancer mortality, recurrence, quality of life and adverse effects? (ADJ1)*

A systematic review was undertaken to evaluate outcomes (cancer-related outcomes, quality of life outcomes and adverse events) for patients with colorectal cancer aged 70 years and over undergoing surgery in combination with either single-agent chemotherapy or combination chemotherapy (oxaliplatin plus either 5-fluoruracil [5FU] or capecitabine).

Three randomised controlled trials (RCTs) were identified that compared adjuvant combination chemotherapy with single chemotherapy in the treatment of Stage II or Stage III colorectal cancer and included elderly patients:

- The XELOXA study[2][3] compared the combination of oxaliplatin and capecitabine (XELOX) with the combination of leucovorin fluorouracil (FULV) given as either of two regimens. Sub-group analysis was performed for Stage III patients aged 70 years and older (n = 409).[3]
- The MOSAIC study[4][5][6][7][8] compared the combination of FULV plus oxaliplatin (FOLFOX4) with FULV. Sub-group analysis was performed for Stage II or Stage III patients aged 70 years and older (n = 315).[4][8]
- The US National Surgical Adjuvant Breast and Bowel Project (NSABP) C-07 study4,10,12,13 compared the combination of FULV plus oxaliplatin (FLOX) with FULV. It included sub-group analysis for Stage II or Stage III patients aged 70 years and older (n = 299).[9][7][10]

The search strategy, inclusion and exclusion criteria, and quality assessment are described in detail in the Technical report.

Back to top

### 14.2.2.2.1 Addition of oxaliplatin to 5FU-based regimens

In contrast with the efficacy of single-agent fluoropyrimidines as adjuvant treatment in older patients, subset analyses of all three studies combining oxaliplatin with a fluoropyrimidine have not demonstrated any survival advantage from adding oxaliplatin in older patients:

- In an analysis of 396 patients aged ≥70 enrolled in the NSABP CO7 study[9] there was no advantage from the addition of oxaliplatin for disease free survival at median follow-up of 96 months: HR 1.03 (95% CI 0.77 to 1.36). Similarly, overall survival was not improved: HR 1.18 (95% CI 0.68 to 1.62).
- The latest analysis of data from 315 patients aged 70 and older from the MOSAIC study[4] show that the addition of oxaliplatin did not improve overall survival at median follow-up of 9.46 years: HR 1.19 (95% CI 0.83 to 1.7).
- In an analysis of data for 409 patients aged 70 years and older from the XELOXA study,[3] there was no improvement in disease free survival (HR 0.86, 95% CI 0.64 to 1.16) or overall survival (HR 0.98, 95% CI 0.62 to 1.56) at a median follow-up of 74 months.

In a pooled analysis of all three studies[7] (n = 1119) there was no improvement in disease free survival (HR 0.94, 95% CI 0.78 to 1.12) or overall survival (HR 1.04, 95% CI 0.85 to 1.27) in the elderly patients receiving oxaliplatin.

Back to top

### 14.2.2.2.2 Understanding the lack of benefit from the addition of oxaliplatin in stage III colon cancer

Oxaliplatin, fluorouracil, and leucovorin are commonly used to treat patients with advanced colorectal cancer. An analysis of the safety and efficacy of oxaliplatin plus fluorouracil/leucovorin administered bimonthly (FOLFOX4) in patients age younger than and at least 70 years[11] reported no impact of age on oxaliplatin benefit. This retrospective analysis of 3742 colorectal cancer patients from four clinical trials, 614 of whom were aged ≥ 70 years, found the relative benefit of FOLFOX4 versus control did not differ by age for response rate, progression free-survival or overall survival.

The discordance between the outcome data for the addition of oxaliplatin for the treatment of elderly patients in the adjuvant setting, versus the metastatic setting, remains largely unexplained. In the MOSAIC trial, the incidence of second cancers was significantly different between the elderly and the younger patients (11.0% versus 4.0%; p = 0.001) but not in the 5FU-alone arm (6.3% versus 5.3%; p = 0.16).[8] In elderly patients treated with FOLFOX4, the median overall survival after recurrence was 3.6 months, compared with 13.7 months in patients treated with 5FU. However, no excess of second cancers or shorter post recurrence survival was reported in the other studies, and the observations from the MOSAIC trial could not fully explain a failure of oxaliplatin to improve outcomes in older patients.

Back to top

## 14.2.2.3 Evidence summary and recommendations

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| In elderly patients (≥ 70 years) following surgery for stage III colon cancer, subset analyses of three randomised controlled trials found no survival benefit from the addition of oxaliplatin to a fluoropyrimidine containing adjuvant chemotherapy (involving either 5-fluorouracil or capecitabine), compared to adjuvant chemotherapy with a fluoropyrimidine alone. | I, II | [7], [9], [2], [4] |

**Consensus-based recommendation**

Elderly patients (≥ 70 years) with stage III colon cancer who are fit for adjuvant chemotherapy should receive 6 months of a single-agent fluoropyrimidine (either 5FU or capecitabine).

**Practice point**

The addition of oxaliplatin to adjuvant fluoropyrimidine-based therapy in elderly patients (≥ 70 years) with stage III colon cancer did not improve survival outcomes.

**Practice point**

The combination of oxaliplatin and fluoropyrimidine-based therapy in the metastatic setting provides a similar benefit in elderly patients and younger patients. The discordance between the adjuvant and metastatic setting remain unexplained.

Back to top

### 14.2.2.3.1 Considerations in making these recommendations

While oxaliplatin-based treatment provides a similar advantage for older and younger patients with metastatic disease, the data do not support this approach in older patients in the adjuvant setting. Therefore, oxaliplatin-based therapy cannot be recommended for older patients.

Back to top

### 14.2.2.3.2 Health system implications

#### 14.2.2.3.2.1 Clinical practice

The recommendation would not change current practice.

#### 14.2.2.3.2.2 Resourcing

The recommendation has no implications for resourcing.

#### 14.2.2.3.2.3 Barriers to implementation

No barriers to the implementation of this recommendation are envisaged.

Next section: adjuvant therapy for stage II colon cancer

Back to top

## 14.2.2.4 References

1. ↑ [1.0] [1.1] [1.2] Sargent DJ, Goldberg RM, Jacobson SD, Macdonald JS, Labianca R, Haller DG, et al. *A pooled analysis of adjuvant chemotherapy for resected colon cancer in elderly patients.* N Engl J Med 2001 Oct 11;345(15):1091-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11596588.
2. ↑ [2.0] [2.1] Haller DG, Tabernero J, Maroun J, de Braud F, Price T, Van Cutsem E, et al. *Capecitabine plus oxaliplatin compared with fluorouracil and folinic acid as adjuvant therapy for stage III colon cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2011 Apr 10;29(11):1465-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21383294.
3. ↑ [3.0] [3.1] [3.2] Schmoll HJ, Tabernero J, Maroun J, de Braud F, Price T, Van Cutsem E, et al. *Capecitabine Plus Oxaliplatin Compared With Fluorouracil/Folinic Acid As Adjuvant Therapy for Stage III Colon Cancer: Final Results of the NO16968 Randomized Controlled Phase III Trial.* J Clin Oncol 2015 Nov 10;33(32):3733-40 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26324362.
4. ↑ [4.0] [4.1] [4.2] [4.3] André T, de Gramont A, Vernerey D, Chibaudel B, Bonnetain F, Tijeras-Raballand A, et al. *Adjuvant Fluorouracil, Leucovorin, and Oxaliplatin in Stage II to III Colon Cancer: Updated 10-Year Survival and Outcomes According to BRAF Mutation and Mismatch Repair Status of the MOSAIC Study.* J Clin Oncol 2015 Dec 10;33(35):4176-87 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26527776.
5. ↑ André T, Boni C, Mounedji-Boudiaf L, Navarro M, Tabernero J, Hickish T, et al. *Oxaliplatin, fluorouracil, and leucovorin as adjuvant treatment for colon cancer.* N Engl J Med 2004 Jun 3;350(23):2343-51 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15175436.
6. ↑ André T, Boni C, Navarro M, Tabernero J, Hickish T, Topham C, et al. *Improved overall survival with oxaliplatin, fluorouracil, and leucovorin as adjuvant treatment in stage II or III colon cancer in the MOSAIC trial.* J Clin Oncol 2009 Jul 1;27(19):3109-16 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19451431.

7. ↑ 7.0 7.1 7.2 7.3 McCleary NJ, Meyerhardt JA, Green E, Yothers G, de Gramont A, Van Cutsem E, et al. *Impact of age on the efficacy of newer adjuvant therapies in patients with stage II/III colon cancer: findings from the ACCENT database.* J Clin Oncol 2013 Jul 10;31(20):2600-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23733765.
8. ↑ 8.0 8.1 8.2 Tournigand C, André T, Bonnetain F, Chibaudel B, Lledo G, Hickish T, et al. *Adjuvant therapy with fluorouracil and oxaliplatin in stage II and elderly patients (between ages 70 and 75 years) with colon cancer: subgroup analyses of the Multicenter International Study of Oxaliplatin, Fluorouracil, and Leucovorin in the Adjuvant Treatment of Colon Cancer trial.* J Clin Oncol 2012 Sep 20;30(27):3353-60 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22915656.
9. ↑ 9.0 9.1 9.2 Yothers G, O'Connell MJ, Allegra CJ, Kuebler JP, Colangelo LH, Petrelli NJ, et al. *Oxaliplatin as adjuvant therapy for colon cancer: updated results of NSABP C-07 trial, including survival and subset analyses.* J Clin Oncol 2011 Oct 1;29(28):3768-74 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21859995.
10. ↑ Kuebler JP, Colangelo L, O'Connell MJ, Smith RE, Yothers G, Begovic M, et al. *Severe enteropathy among patients with stage II/III colon cancer treated on a randomized trial of bolus 5-fluorouracil/leucovorin plus or minus oxaliplatin: a prospective analysis.* Cancer 2007 Nov 1;110(9):1945-50 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17853393.
11. ↑ Goldberg RM, Tabah-Fisch I, Bleiberg H, de Gramont A, Tournigand C, Andre T, et al. *Pooled analysis of safety and efficacy of oxaliplatin plus fluorouracil/leucovorin administered bimonthly in elderly patients with colorectal cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2006 Sep 1;24(25):4085-91 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16943526.

Back to top

## 14.2.2.5 Appendices

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| View recommendation components | View pending evidence | View body of evidence | View all comments | View literature search |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| View PICO | NHMRC Evidence statement form ADJ1 | Systematic review report ADJ1 |

Back to top

# 14.3 Adjuvant therapy for stage II colon

## 14.3.1 Background

Patients with stage II (T3 or T4, N0) or Dukes B colon cancer have a 5-year disease free survival rate of around 80% when all groups are combined, with minimal or no impact from adjuvant chemotherapy.[1]

## 14.3.2 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews were undertaken for this topic. Practice points were based on selected published evidence. See Guidelines development process.

Controversy still exists regarding the role of standard adjuvant therapy for Stage II disease. The addition of oxaliplatin to fluorouracil does not appear to offer benefit in patients with stage II colon cancer.[2][3]

Furthermore, the prognosis is often underestimated, with 5-year overall survivals of 87–90% for 'high risk' disease and 89–91% for 'low/medium risk' disease being reported in a recent clinical trial.[2] Multiple clinical and pathologic factors define a subset of patients at increased risk of recurrence (including T4, perforation at presentation and inadequate node sampling)[1] but whether these 'high-risk' patients benefit more from chemotherapy remains to be conclusively demonstrated.

Adjuvant chemotherapy for stage II cancers can be considered on a case-by-case basis but cannot be considered a standard of care.

| **Practice point** |
| --- |
| The optimal approach to adjuvant therapy in stage II colon cancer remains uncertain. Adjuvant therapy can be considered in high-risk patients on a case-by-case basis. |

Next section: Irinotecan and targeted agents (stage II-III colon)

Back to top

## 14.3.3 References

1. ↑ [1.0] [1.1] Böckelman C, Engelmann BE, Kaprio T, Hansen TF, Glimelius B. *Risk of recurrence in patients with colon cancer stage II and III: a systematic review and meta-analysis of recent literature.* Acta Oncol 2015 Jan;54(1):5-16 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25430983.

2. ↑ 2.0 2.1 Yothers G, O'Connell MJ, Allegra CJ, Kuebler JP, Colangelo LH, Petrelli NJ, et al. *Oxaliplatin as adjuvant therapy for colon cancer: updated results of NSABP C-07 trial, including survival and subset analyses.* J Clin Oncol 2011 Oct 1;29(28):3768-74 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21859995.
3. ↑ Haller DG, Tabernero J, Maroun J, de Braud F, Price T, Van Cutsem E, et al. *Capecitabine plus oxaliplatin compared with fluorouracil and folinic acid as adjuvant therapy for stage III colon cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2011 Apr 10;29(11):1465-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21383294.

Back to top

# 14.3.1 Adjuvant therapy for stage II colon

## 14.3.1.1 Background

Patients with stage II (T3 or T4, N0) or Dukes B colon cancer have a 5-year disease free survival rate of around 80% when all groups are combined, with minimal or no impact from adjuvant chemotherapy.[1]

## 14.3.1.2 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews were undertaken for this topic. Practice points were based on selected published evidence. See Guidelines development process.

Controversy still exists regarding the role of standard adjuvant therapy for Stage II disease. The addition of oxaliplatin to fluorouracil does not appear to offer benefit in patients with stage II colon cancer.[2][3]

Furthermore, the prognosis is often underestimated, with 5-year overall survivals of 87–90% for ‘high risk’ disease and 89–91% for ‘low/medium risk’ disease being reported in a recent clinical trial.[2] Multiple clinical and pathologic factors define a subset of patients at increased risk of recurrence (including T4, perforation at presentation and inadequate node sampling)[1] but whether these ‘high-risk’ patients benefit more from chemotherapy remains to be conclusively demonstrated.

Adjuvant chemotherapy for stage II cancers can be considered on a case-by-case basis but cannot be considered a standard of care.

**Practice point**

The optimal approach to adjuvant therapy in stage II colon cancer remains uncertain. Adjuvant therapy can be considered in high-risk patients on a case-by-case basis.

Next section: Irinotecan and targeted agents (stage II-III colon)

Back to top

## 14.3.1.3 References

1. ↑ [1.0] [1.1] Böckelman C, Engelmann BE, Kaprio T, Hansen TF, Glimelius B. *Risk of recurrence in patients with colon cancer stage II and III: a systematic review and meta-analysis of recent literature.* Acta Oncol 2015 Jan;54(1):5-16 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25430983.
2. ↑ [2.0] [2.1] Yothers G, O'Connell MJ, Allegra CJ, Kuebler JP, Colangelo LH, Petrelli NJ, et al. *Oxaliplatin as adjuvant therapy for colon cancer: updated results of NSABP C-07 trial, including survival and subset analyses.* J Clin Oncol 2011 Oct 1;29(28):3768-74 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21859995.
3. ↑ Haller DG, Tabernero J, Maroun J, de Braud F, Price T, Van Cutsem E, et al. *Capecitabine plus oxaliplatin compared with fluorouracil and folinic acid as adjuvant therapy for stage III colon cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2011 Apr 10;29(11):1465-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21383294.

Back to top

# 14.4 Irinotecan and targeted agents (Stage II-III colon)

**Contents**

# 14.4.1 Background

## 14.4.1.1 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews were undertaken for this topic. Practice points were based on selected published evidence. See Guidelines development process.

### 14.4.1.1.1 Irinotecan

Three prospective randomised trials[1][2][3] failed to demonstrate a benefit from the addition of irinotecan to fluorouracil in patients with stage II or III colon cancer.

### 14.4.1.1.2 Targeted (biological) therapies

The addition of biologic agents to conventional adjuvant therapy has not led to any patient benefit.

The addition of the anti-angiogenic targeted therapy bevacizumab to FOLFOX failed to benefit patients with stage II or III colon cancer in two large phase III trials[4][5] and a similar lack of benefit was seen with the addition of bevacizumab to capecitabine[6]. These findings prompted the early closure of the Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group (ECOG) E5202 trial of adjuvant FOLFOX with and without bevacizumab in high-risk Stage II patients. No data from this study has been presented or published.

The pivotal phase III trial of adjuvant chemotherapy incorporating the anti-EGFR targeted therapy cetuximab (NCCTG-NO147) was also negative.[7] The trial had been modified to include patients with wild-type KRAS only when data regarding the predictive value of KRAS testing for response to the anti-EGFR antibodies became available, however in the wild-type KRAS subgroup the addition of cetuximab in the adjuvant setting did not confer benefit and analysis of the mutant KRAS population (enrolled prior to the amendment) showed a detrimental effect for the addition of cetuximab. The Pan-European PETACC-8 study with a similar randomisation to FOLFOX with or without cetuximab[8] has completed recruitment and again saw no impact on progression free survival in patients with wild-type *KRAS*.

| **Practice point** |
| --- |
| Neither Irinotecan nor a biological agent (either bevacizumab or cetuximab) should be used as adjuvant therapy for patients with stage II or III colon cancer. |

Next section: discussion

Back to top

## 14.4.2 References

1. ↑ Saltz LB, Niedzwiecki D, Hollis D, Goldberg RM, Hantel A, Thomas JP, et al. *Irinotecan fluorouracil plus leucovorin is not superior to fluorouracil plus leucovorin alone as adjuvant treatment for stage III colon cancer: results of CALGB 89803.* J Clin Oncol 2007 Aug 10;25(23):3456-61 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17687149.
2. ↑ Van Cutsem E, Labianca R, Bodoky G, Barone C, Aranda E, Nordlinger B, et al. *Randomized phase III trial comparing biweekly infusional fluorouracil/leucovorin alone or with irinotecan in the adjuvant treatment of stage III colon cancer: PETACC-3.* J Clin Oncol 2009 Jul 1;27(19):3117-25 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19451425.
3. ↑ Ychou M, Raoul JL, Douillard JY, Gourgou-Bourgade S, Bugat R, Mineur L, et al. *A phase III randomised trial of LV5FU2 + irinotecan versus LV5FU2 alone in adjuvant high-risk colon cancer (FNCLCC Accord02 /FFCD9802).* Ann Oncol 2009 Apr;20(4):674-80 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19179549.
4. ↑ Allegra CJ, Yothers G, O'Connell MJ, Sharif S, Petrelli NJ, Lopa SH, et al. *Bevacizumab in stage II-III colon cancer: 5-year update of the National Surgical Adjuvant Breast and Bowel Project C-08 trial.* J Clin Oncol 2013 Jan 20;31(3):359-64 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23233715.
5. ↑ de Gramont A, Van Cutsem E, Schmoll HJ, Tabernero J, Clarke S, Moore MJ, et al. *Bevacizumab plus oxaliplatin-based chemotherapy as adjuvant treatment for colon cancer (AVANT): a phase 3 randomised controlled trial.* Lancet Oncol 2012 Dec;13(12):1225-33 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23168362.
6. ↑ Kerr RS, Love S, Segelov E, Johnstone E, Falcon B, Hewett P, et al. *Adjuvant capecitabine plus bevacizumab versus capecitabine alone in patients with colorectal cancer (QUASAR 2): an open-label, randomised phase 3 trial.* Lancet Oncol 2016 Nov;17(11):1543-1557 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27660192.
7. ↑ Alberts SR, Sargent DJ, Nair S, Mahoney MR, Mooney M, Thibodeau SN, et al. *Effect of oxaliplatin, fluorouracil, and leucovorin with or without cetuximab on survival among patients with resected stage III colon cancer: a randomized trial.* JAMA 2012 Apr 4;307(13):1383-93 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22474202.
8. ↑ Taieb J, Tabernero J, Mini E, Subtil F, Folprecht G, Van Laethem JL, et al. *Oxaliplatin, fluorouracil, and leucovorin with or without cetuximab in patients with resected stage III colon cancer (PETACC-8): an open-label, randomised phase 3 trial.* Lancet Oncol 2014 Jul;15(8):862-73 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24928083.

Back to top

## 14.5 Discussion

### 14.5.1 Unresolved issues

The failure of oxaliplatin to show a benefit in adjuvant therapy for elderly patients is not well understood. The discordance between clinical trial outcomes for oxaliplatin treatment in elderly patients when given in adjuvant therapy, and when given in the treatment of metastatic disease, cannot be explained based on current data.

The role of adjuvant therapy for patients with stage II colon cancer has not been well defined.

### 14.5.2 Studies currently underway

ECOG E5202, comparing adjuvant FOLFOX alone with FOLFOX plus bevacizumab in patients with high-risk Stage II colon cancer, was closed prematurely due to the lack of benefit from the addition of oxaliplatin in other studies. No outcome data has yet been reported.

### 14.5.3 Future research priorities

Future research priorities include:

- improved risk stratification for patients based on existing and emerging tumour tissue and blood prognostic markers
- real-time markers of adjuvant therapy benefit.

Back to top

## 15 Neoadjuvant & adjuvant therapy for rectal cancer

The aim of neoadjuvant and adjuvant therapy for rectal cancer is to reduce the risk of local and distant recurrence (metastatic disease). Locally recurrent rectal cancer is often incurable and is associated with high morbidity and deterioration in quality of life. Distant recurrence, if unresectable, is virtually always fatal.

Adjuvant therapy is any treatment that is given in addition to a standard curative cancer treatment such as surgery. By convention, the term ‘adjuvant’ is reserved for postoperative treatment, while ‘neoadjuvant’ refers to treatment given prior to the definitive treatment.

**Contents**

## 15.1 Radiation treatment

Radiation treatment uses ionising radiation to kill cancer cells. Only tissues within the treatment portals are affected. Radiation treatment prevents or reduces the incidence of recurrent rectal cancer within the pelvis.[1]

The value of radiation treatment (preferably given preoperatively) in the management of rectal cancer is well established. Several meta-analyses that included multiple trials have demonstrated a significant improvement in local disease control.[2]

## 15.2 Chemotherapy

Chemotherapy is cytotoxic drug treatment. Systemic chemotherapy affects the entire body, and is given with the intent of killing circulating cancer cells that may lodge and grow in distant organs such as the liver and lungs.[3]

The addition of fluoropyrimidine-based chemotherapy to radiation treatment in the treatment of rectal cancer is primarily for its effect as a radiosensitiser, enhancing the effect of radiation. Adjuvant chemotherapy cycles are given with the aim of eradicating systemic micro-metastatic disease.

### 15.2.1 Chapter subsections

Sections:

- Neoadjuvant therapy for rectal cancer
  - Short course radiation treatment
  - Neoadjuvant long-course chemoradiation (NEO1b)
- 'Watch and wait' approach after clinical complete response to neoadjuvant chemoradiation (NEO1a)
- Neoadjuvant chemotherapy regimen
- Optimal timing surgery after neoadjuvant therapy
- Adjuvant therapy for rectal cancer
  - Postoperative chemotherapy
  - Postoperative radiation treatment|
  - Discussion

## 15.3 References

1. ↑ Barton, M. *Oncology for Medical Students: Principles of radiotherapy.* [homepage on the internet] Cancer Council Australia 2014; [cited 2016 Dec 28]. Available from: http://wiki.cancer.org.au /oncologyformedicalstudents_mw/index.php?oldid=1680.
2. ↑ Colorectal Cancer Collaborative Group.. *Adjuvant radiotherapy for rectal cancer: a systematic overview of 8,507 patients from 22 randomised trials.* Lancet 2001 Oct 20;358(9290):1291-304 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11684209.
3. ↑ George, M; Schwarz, M; McKinnon, R. *Clinical Oncology for Medical Students: Principles of medical therapy.* [homepage on the internet] Cancer Council Australia 2014; [cited 2016 Dec 26]. Available from: http://wiki.cancer.org.au/oncologyformedicalstudents_mw/index.php?oldid=1683.

# 15.1 Introduction: neoadjuvant & adjuvant therapy for rectal cancer

The aim of neoadjuvant and adjuvant therapy for rectal cancer is to reduce the risk of local and distant recurrence (metastatic disease). Locally recurrent rectal cancer is often incurable and is associated with high morbidity and deterioration in quality of life. Distant recurrence, if unresectable, is virtually always fatal.

Adjuvant therapy is any treatment that is given in addition to a standard curative cancer treatment such as surgery. By convention, the term ‘adjuvant’ is reserved for postoperative treatment, while ‘neoadjuvant’ refers to treatment given prior to the definitive treatment.

**Contents**



## 15.1.1 Radiation treatment

Radiation treatment uses ionising radiation to kill cancer cells. Only tissues within the treatment portals are affected. Radiation treatment prevents or reduces the incidence of recurrent rectal cancer within the pelvis.[1]

The value of radiation treatment (preferably given preoperatively) in the management of rectal cancer is well established. Several meta-analyses that included multiple trials have demonstrated a significant improvement in local disease control.[2]

## 15.1.2 Chemotherapy

Chemotherapy is cytotoxic drug treatment. Systemic chemotherapy affects the entire body, and is given with the intent of killing circulating cancer cells that may lodge and grow in distant organs such as the liver and lungs.[3]

The addition of fluoropyrimidine-based chemotherapy to radiation treatment in the treatment of rectal cancer is primarily for its effect as a radiosensitiser, enhancing the effect of radiation. Adjuvant chemotherapy cycles are given with the aim of eradicating systemic micro-metastatic disease.

### 15.1.2.1 Chapter subsections

Sections:

- Neoadjuvant therapy for rectal cancer
  - Short course radiation treatment
  - Neoadjuvant long-course chemoradiation (NEO1b)
- 'Watch and wait' approach after clinical complete response to neoadjuvant chemoradiation (NEO1a)
- Neoadjuvant chemotherapy regimen
- Optimal timing surgery after neoadjuvant therapy
- Adjuvant therapy for rectal cancer
  - Postoperative chemotherapy
  - Postoperative radiation treatment|
  - Discussion

## 15.1.3 References

1. ↑ Barton, M. *Oncology for Medical Students: Principles of radiotherapy.* [homepage on the internet] Cancer Council Australia 2014; [cited 2016 Dec 28]. Available from: http://wiki.cancer.org.au /oncologyformedicalstudents_mw/index.php?oldid=1680.
2. ↑ Colorectal Cancer Collaborative Group.. *Adjuvant radiotherapy for rectal cancer: a systematic overview of 8,507 patients from 22 randomised trials.* Lancet 2001 Oct 20;358(9290):1291-304 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11684209.
3. ↑ George, M; Schwarz, M; McKinnon, R. *Clinical Oncology for Medical Students: Principles of medical therapy.* [homepage on the internet] Cancer Council Australia 2014; [cited 2016 Dec 26]. Available from: http://wiki.cancer.org.au/oncologyformedicalstudents_mw/index.php?oldid=1683.

# 15.2 Neoadjuvant therapy for rectal cancer

**Contents**



## 15.2.1 Background

Neoadjuvant treatment with radiation (with or without chemotherapy), followed by surgery, is current practice for managing most mid-low rectal cancers that are staged preoperatively as at least T3 and/or at least N1 (i.e. Stage II or III), in individuals well enough to tolerate it.

The timing of treatment preoperatively rather than postoperatively is based on the results of the CAO/ARO/AIO-94 study, a seminal 2004 phase III randomised controlled trial (RCT) comparing preoperative (neoadjuvant) with postoperative (adjuvant) chemoradiation, which reported a significant improvement in local control in favour of neoadjuvant chemoradiation.[1] This finding changed practice at the time.[1]

Both neoadjuvant long-course chemoradiation and short-course radiation treatment alone are delivered with the primary aim of reducing the risk of local recurrence. Neoadjuvant therapy can also achieve downsizing of the tumour, attain pathological complete response, and enable sphincter preservation surgery. However, there is not enough time for tumour downsizing with short-course radiation treatment followed by immediate surgery.

Both short-course radiation treatment and long-course chemoradiation emerged as recommended management options following trials investigating either strategy that recruited simultaneously and were conducted in parallel over several years during the 1980s and 1990s. Geographic preferences have emerged: for chemoradiation in the USA and Mediterranean Europe, and for radiation treatment in Scandinavia and Northern Europe. Recent RCTs comparing chemoradiation and radiation treatment have not shown any clear advantage for one strategy over the other.

## 15.2.2 Determining suitability for neoadjuvant therapy

It is important to make the distinction between upper (high) rectal cancers and/or rectosigmoid cancers, and the mid–low cancers that lie within the true pelvis. This is crucial as upper cancers do not require treatment with neoadjuvant therapy, and overall management (including adjuvant therapy) should follow that of colon cancers. The somewhat common approximation of upper versus lower rectal cancer being situated above or below the peritoneal reflection is not accurate for each and every patient, and should not be used alone to distinguish between upper and lower rectal cancers for the purposes of deciding management.[2] The key neoadjuvant

rectal cancer trials defined rectal cancer by the number of centimetres from the anal verge; but the studies included a variety of upper limits, usually ranging between 15-16cm; and most participants' tumours were in fact situated <10cm from the anal verge.[3][4] The decision regarding whether a rectal cancer – based on its location – requires neoadjuvant treatment relies on expert and accurate multidisciplinary input in particular from the radiologist and surgical endoscopist.

It is also important to acknowledge the heterogeneity in rectal cancers staged as Stage II (T3-4 N0). Patients with T4 tumours (AJCC/UICC stage IIB and IIC disease) should always undergo neoadjuvant treatment where feasible. Within the Stage IIA (T3N0) T3 MRI staging, a tumour may be considered 'early T3' or 'late T3', or somewhere in between, depending on the distance of extension in millimetres in the axial plane beyond the muscularis propria.[5][6] On this basis, T3 disease has been subdivided into T3a-d disease in some literature, T3a being <1mm, T3b 1-5mm, T3c 5-15mm and T3d >15mm extension.[5] A simpler subdivision has used T3a as ≤5mm and T3b as >5mm extension.[6] Notably, although the depth of T3 extension has been shown to be a prognostic factor for recurrence,[6][5] the current American Joint Committee on Cancer (AJCC) 8th Edition TNM staging system[7] does not include subdivisions of T3 disease. The Royal College of Pathologists of Australasia Structured Pathology Reporting of Colorectal Cancer Protocol[8] notes that in lieu of providing a formal T3a-d classification, the distance of invasion in millimetres may be provided in the pathology report as an alternative; although this is not prescriptive.

Within radiological (MRI) reporting, considerable variability has been documented as to whether T3 distance in millimetres is routinely formally reported.[9] Accurate MRI staging is critical determining T2 versus T3 disease, and depth of extension through muscularis propria for T3 disease. It is acknowledged that accuracy, especially when distinguishing between T2 and early T3 disease, is challenging.[10]

European ESMO guidelines note that 'early cT3' (<1mm extension) rectal cancers could be appropriate for primary TME surgery without neoadjuvant therapy.[11] The St Gallen EORTC conference consensus recommendations in 2016 also indicated primary TME surgery without neoadjuvant therapy as an option for early low-risk rectal cancers, including cT3a (<1mm extension) disease.[12] However, the US NCCN guidelines do not distinguish between T3 tumours and recommend neoadjuvant therapy for all T3 disease.[13] Ultimately a high level of confidence in the MRI staging is crucial as this directly influences management strategy. As millimetres can mean the difference between primary surgery or neoadjuvant therapy, careful multidisciplinary review and discussion is essential.

For clinical stage I (cT1-2, N0, M0) rectal cancer, if there is a high level of confidence in the preoperative staging evaluation of node negative disease, surgery alone without neoadjuvant treatment is the preferred approach. If subsequent histopathological evaluation unexpectedly results in upstaging (pT3 or N1-2 disease) or there are several high-risk features (such as positive margins or lymphovascular invasion), then adjuvant therapy should be considered on an individual case-by-case basis. An ASTRO 2016 Clinical Practice Statement utilised a systematic review and expert opinion to formulate recommendations for appropriate customisation of radiation treatment for stage II and III rectal cancer. It noted several acceptable options for medically inoperable patients or those who refused surgery, including definitive radiation treatment or chemoradiation.[14] This guidance could be extended to patients with stage I disease.

In patients who refuse or who are unable to tolerate surgery, definitive radiation treatment with or without chemotherapy may be considered as a potentially curative approach. There are no randomised controlled trial data to support this. See 'Watch and wait' approach after clinical complete response to neoadjuvant chemoradiation.

**Practice point**

Accurate determination of suitability for neoadjuvant therapy is based on careful preoperative location and staging assessments, and requires optimal quality of care from each aspect of the multidisciplinary team's assessment.

**Practice point**

'Early' cT3N0 rectal cancer (<1mm extension) is considered potentially suitable for surgery without neoadjuvant treatment in some international guidelines; but requires a high level of confidence in staging investigations and interpretation.

### 15.2.2.1 Chapter subsections

Please see sections:

- Short course radiation treatment
- Neoadjuvant long-course chemoradiation(NEO1b)

## 15.2.3 References

1. ↑ [1.0] [1.1] Sauer R, Becker H, Hohenberger W, Rödel C, Wittekind C, Fietkau R, et al. *Preoperative versus postoperative chemoradiotherapy for rectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 2004 Oct 21;351(17):1731-40 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15496622.
2. ↑ Salerno G, Sinnatamby C, Branagan G, Daniels IR, Heald RJ, Moran BJ. *Defining the rectum: surgically, radiologically and anatomically.* Colorectal Dis 2006 Sep;8 Suppl 3:5-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16813584.
3. ↑ Mulcahy, MF. *Radiotherapy for Cancer of the Rectum: Which Patients Stand to Benefit?* Gastrointestinal Cancer Research. 3(2):81-83. ;2009;3(2):81-83 Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC2684722/.

4. ↑ Joshi, N; Woody, NM; Abdel-Wahab M. *Pre-operative chemoradiation for rectosigmoid cancers: Where do we draw the line?* Appl Rad Oncol 2014 Sep Available from: http://cdn.agilitycms.com/applied-radiation-oncology/ARO_09-14_JoshiROC.pdf.
5. ↑ 5.0 5.1 5.2 Shin R, Jeong SY, Yoo HY, Park KJ, Heo SC, Kang GH, et al. *Depth of mesorectal extension has prognostic significance in patients with T3 rectal cancer.* Dis Colon Rectum 2012 Dec;55(12):1220-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23135579.
6. ↑ 6.0 6.1 6.2 Merkel S, Mansmann U, Siassi M, Papadopoulos T, Hohenberger W, Hermanek P. *The prognostic inhomogeneity in pT3 rectal carcinomas.* Int J Colorectal Dis 2001 Sep;16(5):298-304 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11686527.
7. ↑ Amin MB, Edge S, Greene F, Byrd DR, Brookland RK, Washington MK, Gershenwald JE, Compton CC, Hess KR, et al. (Eds.). *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual (8th edition).* Springer International Publishing: American Joint Commission on Cancer; 2017 [cited 2016 Dec 28].
8. ↑ Royal College of Pathologists of Australasia. *Colorectal Cancer Structured Reporting Protocol (3rd edition).* Royal College of Pathologists of Australasia; 2016 Available from: https://www.rcpa.edu.au/Library/Practising-Pathology/Structured-Pathology-Reporting-of-Cancer/Cancer-Protocols/Gastrointestinal/Protocol-colorectal-cancer.
9. ↑ Gormly K; Coscia C; Wells T, et al. *MRI rectal cancer in Australia and New Zealand: an audit from the PETACC-6 trial. Cancer Imaging. 2015;15(Suppl 1):P44. doi:10.1186/1470-7330-15-S1-P44.*; Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC4601852/.
10. ↑ Beets-Tan RG, Beets GL, Vliegen RF, Kessels AG, Van Boven H, De Bruine A, et al. *Accuracy of magnetic resonance imaging in prediction of tumour-free resection margin in rectal cancer surgery.* Lancet 2001 Feb 17;357(9255):497-504 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11229667.
11. ↑ Glimelius B, Tiret E, Cervantes A, Arnold D, ESMO Guidelines Working Group.. *Rectal cancer: ESMO Clinical Practice Guidelines for diagnosis, treatment and follow-up.* Ann Oncol 2013 Oct;24 Suppl 6:vi81-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24078665.
12. ↑ Lutz MP, Zalcberg JR, Glynne-Jones R, Ruers T, Ducreux M, Arnold D, et al. *Second St. Gallen European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer Gastrointestinal Cancer Conference: consensus recommendations on controversial issues in the primary treatment of rectal cancer.* Eur J Cancer 2016 May 30;63:11-24 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27254838.
13. ↑ National Comprehensive Cancer Network. *NCCN Guidelines for Rectal Cancer Version 2.*; 2016 Available from: https://www.tri-kobe.org/nccn/guideline/colorectal/english/rectal.pdf.
14. ↑ Goodman KA, Patton CE, Fisher GA, Hoffe SE, Haddock MG, Parikh PJ, et al. *Appropriate customization of radiation therapy for stage II and III rectal cancer: Executive summary of an ASTRO Clinical Practice Statement using the RAND/UCLA Appropriateness Method.* Pract Radiat Oncol 2015 Nov 24 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26922700.

Back to top

## 15.2.1 Neoadjuvant therapy for rectal cancer

**Contents**



## 15.2.1.1 Background

Neoadjuvant treatment with radiation (with or without chemotherapy), followed by surgery, is current practice for managing most mid-low rectal cancers that are staged preoperatively as at least T3 and/or at least N1 (i.e. Stage II or III), in individuals well enough to tolerate it.

The timing of treatment preoperatively rather than postoperatively is based on the results of the CAO/ARO/AIO-94 study, a seminal 2004 phase III randomised controlled trial (RCT) comparing preoperative (neoadjuvant) with postoperative (adjuvant) chemoradiation, which reported a significant improvement in local control in favour of neoadjuvant chemoradiation.[1] This finding changed practice at the time.[1]

Both neoadjuvant long-course chemoradiation and short-course radiation treatment alone are delivered with the primary aim of reducing the risk of local recurrence. Neoadjuvant therapy can also achieve downsizing of the tumour, attain pathological complete response, and enable sphincter preservation surgery. However, there is not enough time for tumour downsizing with short-course radiation treatment followed by immediate surgery.

Both short-course radiation treatment and long-course chemoradiation emerged as recommended management options following trials investigating either strategy that recruited simultaneously and were conducted in parallel over several years during the 1980s and 1990s. Geographic preferences have emerged: for chemoradiation in the USA and Mediterranean Europe, and for radiation treatment in Scandinavia and Northern Europe. Recent RCTs comparing chemoradiation and radiation treatment have not shown any clear advantage for one strategy over the other.

## 15.2.1.2 Determining suitability for neoadjuvant therapy

It is important to make the distinction between upper (high) rectal cancers and/or rectosigmoid cancers, and the mid–low cancers that lie within the true pelvis. This is crucial as upper cancers do not require treatment with neoadjuvant therapy, and overall management (including adjuvant therapy) should follow that of colon cancers. The somewhat common approximation of upper versus lower rectal cancer being situated above or below the peritoneal reflection is not accurate for each and every patient, and should not be used alone to distinguish between upper and lower rectal cancers for the purposes of deciding management.[2] The key neoadjuvant rectal cancer trials defined rectal cancer by the number of centimetres from the anal verge; but the studies included a variety of upper limits, usually ranging between 15-16cm; and most participants' tumours were in fact situated <10cm from the anal verge.[3][4] The decision regarding whether a rectal cancer – based on its location – requires neoadjuvant treatment relies on expert and accurate multidisciplinary input in particular from the radiologist and surgical endoscopist.

It is also important to acknowledge the heterogeneity in rectal cancers staged as Stage II (T3-4 N0). Patients with T4 tumours (AJCC/UICC stage IIB and IIC disease) should always undergo neoadjuvant treatment where feasible. Within the Stage IIA (T3N0) T3 MRI staging, a tumour may be considered 'early T3' or 'late T3', or somewhere in between, depending on the distance of extension in millimetres in the axial plane beyond the muscularis propria.[5][6] On this basis, T3 disease has been subdivided into T3a-d disease in some literature, T3a being <1mm, T3b 1-5mm, T3c 5-15mm and T3d >15mm extension.[5] A simpler subdivision has used T3a as ≤5mm and T3b as >5mm extension.[6] Notably, although the depth of T3 extension has been shown to be a prognostic factor for recurrence,[6][5] the current American Joint Committee on Cancer (AJCC) 8th Edition TNM staging system[7] does not include subdivisions of T3 disease. The Royal College of Pathologists of Australasia Structured Pathology Reporting of Colorectal Cancer Protocol[8] notes that in lieu of providing a formal T3a-d classification, the distance of invasion in millimetres may be provided in the pathology report as an alternative; although this is not prescriptive.

Within radiological (MRI) reporting, considerable variability has been documented as to whether T3 distance in millimetres is routinely formally reported.[9] Accurate MRI staging is critical determining T2 versus T3 disease, and depth of extension through muscularis propria for T3 disease. It is acknowledged that accuracy, especially when distinguishing between T2 and early T3 disease, is challenging.[10]

European ESMO guidelines note that 'early cT3' (<1mm extension) rectal cancers could be appropriate for primary TME surgery without neoadjuvant therapy.[11] The St Gallen EORTC conference consensus recommendations in 2016 also indicated primary TME surgery without neoadjuvant therapy as an option for early low-risk rectal cancers, including cT3a (<1mm extension) disease.[12] However, the US NCCN guidelines do not distinguish between T3 tumours and recommend neoadjuvant therapy for all T3 disease.[13] Ultimately a high level of confidence in the MRI staging is crucial as this directly influences management strategy. As millimetres can mean the difference between primary surgery or neoadjuvant therapy, careful multidisciplinary review and discussion is essential.

For clinical stage I (cT1-2, N0, M0) rectal cancer, if there is a high level of confidence in the preoperative staging evaluation of node negative disease, surgery alone without neoadjuvant treatment is the preferred approach. If subsequent histopathological evaluation unexpectedly results in upstaging (pT3 or N1-2 disease) or there are several high-risk features (such as positive margins or lymphovascular invasion), then adjuvant therapy should be considered on an individual case-by-case basis. An ASTRO 2016 Clinical Practice Statement utilised a systematic review and expert opinion to formulate recommendations for appropriate customisation of radiation treatment for stage II and III rectal cancer. It noted several acceptable options for medically inoperable patients or those who refused surgery, including definitive radiation treatment or chemoradiation.[14] This guidance could be extended to patients with stage I disease.

In patients who refuse or who are unable to tolerate surgery, definitive radiation treatment with or without chemotherapy may be considered as a potentially curative approach. There are no randomised controlled trial data to support this. See 'Watch and wait' approach after clinical complete response to neoadjuvant chemoradiation.

**Practice point**

Accurate determination of suitability for neoadjuvant therapy is based on careful preoperative location and staging assessments, and requires optimal quality of care from each aspect of the multidisciplinary team's assessment.

**Practice point**

'Early' cT3N0 rectal cancer (<1mm extension) is considered potentially suitable for surgery without neoadjuvant treatment in some international guidelines; but requires a high level of confidence in staging investigations and interpretation.

### 15.2.1.2.1 Chapter subsections

Please see sections:

- Short course radiation treatment
- Neoadjuvant long-course chemoradiation(NEO1b)

## 15.2.1.3 References

1. ↑ [1.0] [1.1] Sauer R, Becker H, Hohenberger W, Rödel C, Wittekind C, Fietkau R, et al. *Preoperative versus postoperative chemoradiotherapy for rectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 2004 Oct 21;351(17):1731-40 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15496622.
2. ↑ Salerno G, Sinnatamby C, Branagan G, Daniels IR, Heald RJ, Moran BJ. *Defining the rectum: surgically, radiologically and anatomically.* Colorectal Dis 2006 Sep;8 Suppl 3:5-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16813584.
3. ↑ Mulcahy, MF. *Radiotherapy for Cancer of the Rectum: Which Patients Stand to Benefit?* Gastrointestinal Cancer Research. 3(2):81-83. ;2009;3(2):81-83 Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC2684722/.
4. ↑ Joshi, N; Woody, NM; Abdel-Wahab M. *Pre-operative chemoradiation for rectosigmoid cancers: Where do we draw the line?* Appl Rad Oncol 2014 Sep Available from: http://cdn.agilitycms.com/applied-radiation-oncology/ARO_09-14_JoshiROC.pdf.
5. ↑ [5.0] [5.1] [5.2] Shin R, Jeong SY, Yoo HY, Park KJ, Heo SC, Kang GH, et al. *Depth of mesorectal extension has prognostic significance in patients with T3 rectal cancer.* Dis Colon Rectum 2012 Dec;55(12):1220-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23135579.

6. ↑ 6.0 6.1 6.2 Merkel S, Mansmann U, Siassi M, Papadopoulos T, Hohenberger W, Hermanek P. *The prognostic inhomogeneity in pT3 rectal carcinomas.* Int J Colorectal Dis 2001 Sep;16(5):298-304 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11686527.
7. ↑ Amin MB, Edge S, Greene F, Byrd DR, Brookland RK, Washington MK, Gershenwald JE, Compton CC, Hess KR, et al. (Eds.). *AJCC Cancer Staging Manual (8th edition).* Springer International Publishing: American Joint Commission on Cancer; 2017 [cited 2016 Dec 28].
8. ↑ Royal College of Pathologists of Australasia. *Colorectal Cancer Structured Reporting Protocol (3rd edition).* Royal College of Pathologists of Australasia; 2016 Available from: https://www.rcpa.edu.au/Library/Practising-Pathology/Structured-Pathology-Reporting-of-Cancer/Cancer-Protocols/Gastrointestinal/Protocol-colorectal-cancer.
9. ↑ Gormly K; Coscia C; Wells T, et al. *MRI rectal cancer in Australia and New Zealand: an audit from the PETACC-6 trial. Cancer Imaging. 2015;15(Suppl 1):P44. doi:10.1186/1470-7330-15-S1-P44.*; Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC4601852/.
10. ↑ Beets-Tan RG, Beets GL, Vliegen RF, Kessels AG, Van Boven H, De Bruine A, et al. *Accuracy of magnetic resonance imaging in prediction of tumour-free resection margin in rectal cancer surgery.* Lancet 2001 Feb 17;357(9255):497-504 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11229667.
11. ↑ Glimelius B, Tiret E, Cervantes A, Arnold D, ESMO Guidelines Working Group.. *Rectal cancer: ESMO Clinical Practice Guidelines for diagnosis, treatment and follow-up.* Ann Oncol 2013 Oct;24 Suppl 6:vi81-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24078665.
12. ↑ Lutz MP, Zalcberg JR, Glynne-Jones R, Ruers T, Ducreux M, Arnold D, et al. *Second St. Gallen European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer Gastrointestinal Cancer Conference: consensus recommendations on controversial issues in the primary treatment of rectal cancer.* Eur J Cancer 2016 May 30;63:11-24 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27254838.
13. ↑ National Comprehensive Cancer Network. *NCCN Guidelines for Rectal Cancer Version 2.*; 2016 Available from: https://www.tri-kobe.org/nccn/guideline/colorectal/english/rectal.pdf.
14. ↑ Goodman KA, Patton CE, Fisher GA, Hoffe SE, Haddock MG, Parikh PJ, et al. *Appropriate customization of radiation therapy for stage II and III rectal cancer: Executive summary of an ASTRO Clinical Practice Statement using the RAND/UCLA Appropriateness Method.* Pract Radiat Oncol 2015 Nov 24 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26922700.

Back to top

# 15.2.2 Short course radiation treatment

**Contents**

3 References

## 15.2.2.1 Background

Short-course radiation treatment (usually as 5 Gy delivered in five daily fractions over 5 days) has been the subject of multiple randomised controlled trials (RCTs), either compared with long-course chemoradiation, or with surgery alone (with or without adjuvant chemotherapy).

A 2015 systematic review and meta-analysis, which included eight RCTs, reported:

- a reduction in the risk of local recurrence with short-course radiation treatment, compared with surgery alone or postoperative therapy
- borderline improvement in overall survival with radiation treatment, compared with surgery alone
- no statistically significant differences in local recurrence or overall survival rates when comparing short-course radiation treatment with conventional long-course chemoradiation.

## 15.2.2.2 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews were undertaken for this topic. Practice points to were based on the findings of major RCTs and consideration of international guidelines. See Guidelines development process.

Back to top

### 15.2.2.2.1 Short-course radiation treatment versus surgery alone

Several phase III RCTs, including three large well-designed international RCTs[1][2][3][4] have reported that short-course neoadjuvant radiation treatment improves local control, compared with surgery alone, in patients with resectable rectal cancer:

- The Swedish Rectal Cancer Trial compared 25 Gy in five fractions preoperatively, or surgery alone, in 1168 patients. The intervention group showed statistically significantly improved local control (89% versus 73%, p<0.001) and overall 5-year survival (58% versus 48%, p=0.004), compared with the control arm.[1] Increased hospitalisations for complications, mainly gastrointestinal, were noted during the first 6 months among patients randomised to radiation treatment.[5] This trial, which recruited patients between 1987 and 1990, predated total mesorectal excision surgery (see Optimal approach to elective resection for rectal cancers). The fact that surgery was not standardised to include total mesorectal excision (TME), where possible, resulted in a control arm that is difficult to compare with more modern practice.

- The Dutch TME Trial compared quality-controlled total mesorectal excision plus short-course radiation treatment with total mesorectal excision alone in 1861 patients.[4] The short-course radiation treatment group showed lower 5-year local recurrence rates than the surgery group (5.6% versus 10.9%), but there was no difference between groups in 5-year overall survival (64%).4,5 Patients with TNM Stage III cancer and negative circumferential resection margin had improved overall survival. Ten-year survival rates for the irradiated group and non-irradiated group were 50% and 40%, respectively (p = 0·032).[6] There was a

significantly higher rate of perineal wound problems after abdominoperineal resection among those who received radiation treatment than those who did not (29% versus 18%).[7] A higher incidence of longer-term toxicities, such as faecal incontinence, dissatisfaction with bowel function and sexual dysfunction, was noted in patients from the radiation treatment arm. However, over time there were no significant differences in reported quality of life.[2][8]

- A multicentre RCT (the MRC CR07 and NCIC-CTG CO16 study) compared preoperative short-course radiation treatment with selective (based on pathological findings) postoperative chemoradiation in 1350 patients.[2] Neoadjuvant short-course radiation treatment decreased local recurrence, compared with selective chemoradiation (hazard ratio [HR] 0.39; 95% confidence interval [CI] 0.27 to 0.58, $p < 0.0001$), corresponding to an absolute difference at 3 years of 6.2%). Three-year disease-free survival was improved in the neoadjuvant group (HR 0.76, $p = 0.013$), but there was no difference between groups in overall survival. Quality-of-life data showed no differences between arms for general health, but a higher risk of male sexual dysfunction and faecal incontinence in the neoadjuvant group.[2]

All three of these studies included patients with stage I rectal cancer, who would currently be managed with surgery alone.

Back to top

### 15.2.2.2.2 Short-course radiation treatment versus long-course chemoradiation

Two phase III RCTs have compared short-course RT (5 x 5 Gy daily fractions) with C-RT (50.4 Gy RT over 5.5 weeks):

- A 2006 Polish RCT compared short-course RT (5 Gy in 5 fractions) with conventional fractionated radiation treatment (2 Gy over 25 or 30 fractions) plus bolus fluoropyrimidine chemotherapy in 316 patients with stage T3-4 rectal cancer within reach of digital examination without infiltration of the anal sphincter.[9] The primary aim of the trial was to verify whether long course preoperative chemoradiotherapy had an advantage in sphincter preservation, in comparison with short-course preoperative radiotherapy. Local staging included endorectal ultrasound or pelvic CT in patients with freely movable tumours not involving the entire circumference of the bowel rectal wall. Despite a higher pathological complete response in the conventional arm (16% versus 1%), there were no differences between groups for sphincter preservation, local recurrence rate or disease-free survival. There were no statistically significant differences in the rate of postoperative complications or late toxicities.[10] In interpreting these findings it must be noted that bolus fluoropyrimidine would not be considered standard today, and that adjuvant chemotherapy was optional in this trial.

- A 2012 phase III RCT conducted in Australia and New Zealand (the TROG 01.04 study) compared short-course RT (5 x 5 Gy fractions) with conventional C RT using infusional fluorouracil (5-FU) in 326 patients with ultrasound-staged or MRI-staged (42%) T3 localised rectal cancer.[11] It was designed to have 80% power to detect a difference in local recurrence rate at 3 years, of 15% (short-course) versus 5% (conventional chemoradiation).[11] Postsurgical treatment differed according to treatment arm; the short-course arm received six cycles of adjuvant fluoropyrimidine chemotherapy whereas the chemoradiation arm received four. The pathological complete response was superior in the conventional chemoradiation arm (15% versus

1%). There was a non-statistically significant reduction in 3-year local recurrence rates favouring conventional chemoradiation over short-course radiation treatment (4.4% versus 7.5% , p = 0.24), but no differences in distant recurrence, relapse-free or overall survival. There were no statistically significant differences in early toxicity[12], late toxicities, or first year quality of life[13]. Subgroup analysis of 79 patients with distal tumours (< 5cm from anal verge) showed a large observed, but not statistically significant, difference favouring chemoradiation for reduction in local recurrence (1 of 31 patients who received conventional C-RT versus 6 of 48 patients who received short course , HR 0.26; 95% CI 0.06 to 1.20; p = 0.26).

Based on these two RCTs, both regimens seem to be equally effective for T3 rectal cancer. The relative merits of either approach for early or late T3 tumours cannot be assessed due to the lack of MRI data and circumferential resection margin data.

A third, smaller RCT in 83 patients with stage II and III disease, published in 2012, similarly reported higher rates of pathological complete response, but no differences in rates of R0 resection[14].

A 2016 Polish phase III RCT compared neoadjuvant short-course RT plus adjuvant FOLFOX4 chemotherapy with or long-course C-RT (50.4 Gy in 28 daily fractions) plus bolus 5FU and weekly oxaliplatin in 515 evaluable patients.[15] The study reported equivalent rates for R0 resection, pathological complete response and disease-free survival, but an improved overall survival rate favouring the short-course arm (73% versus 65%, p = 0.046). The rate of acute toxicity was also lower in the short-course arm, although rates of postoperative and late toxicities were equivalent.[15] It is difficult to interpret the results of this study, given the different chemotherapy regimen used in each arm.

Overall, there are no clear survival (recurrence-free survival or overall survival) benefits when comparing short-course RT and long-course chemoradiation for T3 rectal cancer. Although there is no definitive evidence favouring long-course chemoradiation over short-course radiation treatment, concern over the risk of local recurrence with its high morbidity means that long-course chemoradiation is often favoured over the short-course radiation treatment approach, especially for patients with locally advanced or T4 disease, or when the total mesorectal excision plane is threatened. However, there are regional and international variations in practice.

Internationally, guidelines permit either approach:

- The US National Comprehensive Cancer Network (NCCN) guidelines[16] include both approaches, but recommend long-course chemoradiation for T4 disease.
- The European Society for Medical Oncology (ESMO) Clinical Practice Guidelines[17] also acknowledge that either approach is appropriate.
- The St Gallen European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer (EORTC) rectal guidelines consensus panel[18] recommend long-course chemoradiation over short-course radiation treatment for most clinical situations for stage II and III rectal cancer, but concluded that either modality was appropriate for early T3N0 tumours with clear mesorectal fascia.

Short-course radiation treatment is clearly more convenient for patients. It may have a valuable role in the treatment of selected patients assessed as too frail to undergo long-course chemoradiation, those who have relative contraindications to chemotherapy, or those for whom long travelling distances to a treatment centre would be a barrier to short-course treatment. Such issues should be discussed in a multidisciplinary setting in order to determine the most appropriate individualised therapeutic strategy.

Back to top

**Practice point**

Preoperative (neoadjuvant) radiation treatment (either short-course radiation treatment alone or long-course chemoradiation) is recommended for most patients with stage II and III rectal cancers, to reduce risk of local recurrence.

**Practice point**

Short-course radiation treatment should be considered if there are clear concerns regarding a patient's physical or psychosocial ability to tolerate long-course chemoradiation.

**Practice point**

MRI imaging, patient and clinical factors including comorbidity status should be carefully reviewed by the multidisciplinary team. If clinical T4 primary or nodal disease is seen, or tumour extends close to the mesorectal fascia, then long-course chemoradiation is preferable where possible.

Next section: neoadjuvant long-course chemoradiation

Back to top

## 15.2.2.3 References

1. ↑ [1.0] [1.1] Påhlman L, Swedish Rectal Cancer Trial Writing Committee. *Improved Survival with Preoperative Radiotherapy in Resectable Rectal Cancer.* N Engl J Med 1997;336: p. 980-87.

2. ↑ [2.0] [2.1] [2.2] [2.3] Peeters, KC, van de Velde CJ, Leer JW, Martijn H, Junggeburt JM, Kranenbarg EK, Steup WH, Wiggers T, Rutten HJ, Marijnen CA.. *Late side effects of short-course preoperative radiotherapy combined with total mesorectal excision for rectal cancer: increased bowel dysfunction in irradiated patients--a Dutch colorectal cancer group study.* Journal of clinical oncology : official journal of the American Society of Clinical Oncology [cited 2005];23, p. 6199-206.
3. ↑ Kapiteijn E, Marijnen CA, Nagtegaal ID, Putter H, Steup WH, Wiggers T, et al. *Preoperative radiotherapy combined with total mesorectal excision for resectable rectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 2001 Aug 30;345(9): 638-46 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11547717.
4. ↑ [4.0] [4.1] Peeters KC, Marijnen CA, Nagtegaal ID, Kranenbarg EK, Putter H, Wiggers T, et al. *The TME trial after a median follow-up of 6 years: increased local control but no survival benefit in irradiated patients with resectable rectal carcinoma.* Ann Surg 2007 Nov;246(5):693-701 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17968156.
5. ↑ Birgisson H, Påhlman L, Gunnarsson U, Glimelius B, Swedish Rectal Cancer Trial Group.. *Adverse effects of preoperative radiation therapy for rectal cancer: long-term follow-up of the Swedish Rectal Cancer Trial.* J Clin Oncol 2005 Dec 1;23(34):8697-705 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16314629.
6. ↑ van Gijn W, Marijnen CA, Nagtegaal ID, Kranenbarg EM, Putter H, Wiggers T, et al. *Preoperative radiotherapy combined with total mesorectal excision for resectable rectal cancer: 12-year follow-up of the multicentre, randomised controlled TME trial.* Lancet Oncol 2011 Jun;12(6):575-82 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21596621.
7. ↑ Marijnen CA, Kapiteijn E, van de Velde CJ, Martijn H, Steup WH, Wiggers T, et al. *Acute side effects and complications after short-term preoperative radiotherapy combined with total mesorectal excision in primary rectal cancer: report of a multicenter randomized trial.* J Clin Oncol 2002 Feb 1;20(3):817-25 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11821466.
8. ↑ Marijnen CA, van de Velde CJ, Putter H, van den Brink M, Maas CP, Martijn H, et al. *Impact of short-term preoperative radiotherapy on health-related quality of life and sexual functioning in primary rectal cancer: report of a multicenter randomized trial.* J Clin Oncol 2005 Mar 20;23(9):1847-58 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15774778.
9. ↑ Bujko K, Nowacki MP, Nasierowska-Guttmejer A, Michalski W, Bebenek M, Kryj M. *Long-term results of a randomized trial comparing preoperative short-course radiotherapy with preoperative conventionally fractionated chemoradiation for rectal cancer.* Br J Surg 2006 Oct;93(10):1215-23 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16983741.
10. ↑ Bujko K, Nowacki MP, Kepka L, Oledzki J, Bebenek M, Kryj M, et al. *Postoperative complications in patients irradiated pre-operatively for rectal cancer: report of a randomised trial comparing short-term radiotherapy vs chemoradiation.* Colorectal Dis 2005 Jul;7(4):410-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15932569.
11. ↑ [11.0] [11.1] Ngan SY, Burmeister B, Fisher RJ, Solomon M, Goldstein D, Joseph D, et al. *Randomized trial of short-course radiotherapy versus long-course chemoradiation comparing rates of local recurrence in patients with T3 rectal cancer: Trans-Tasman Radiation Oncology Group trial 01.04.* J Clin Oncol 2012 Nov 1;30(31):3827-33 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23008301.
12. ↑ Ansari N, Solomon MJ, Fisher RJ, Mackay J, Burmeister B, Ackland S, et al. *Acute Adverse Events and Postoperative Complications in a Randomized Trial of Preoperative Short-course Radiotherapy Versus Long-course Chemoradiotherapy for T3 Adenocarcinoma of the Rectum: Trans-Tasman Radiation Oncology Group Trial (TROG 01.04).* Ann Surg 2016 Sep 14 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27631775.

13. ↑ McLachlan SA, Fisher RJ, Zalcberg J, Solomon M, Burmeister B, Goldstein D, et al. *The impact on health-related quality of life in the first 12 months: A randomised comparison of preoperative short-course radiation versus long-course chemoradiation for T3 rectal cancer (Trans-Tasman Radiation Oncology Group Trial 01.04).* Eur J Cancer 2016 Mar;55:15-26 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26771873.
14. ↑ Latkauskas T, Pauzas H, Gineikiene I, Janciauskiene R, Juozaityte E, Saladzinskas Z, et al. *Initial results of a randomized controlled trial comparing clinical and pathological downstaging of rectal cancer after preoperative short-course radiotherapy or long-term chemoradiotherapy, both with delayed surgery.* Colorectal Dis 2012 Mar;14(3):294-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21899712.
15. ↑ [15.0] [15.1] Bujko K, Wyrwicz L, Rutkowski A, Malinowska M, Pietrzak L, Kryński J, et al. *Long-course oxaliplatin-based preoperative chemoradiation versus 5 × 5 Gy and consolidation chemotherapy for cT4 or fixed cT3 rectal cancer: results of a randomized phase III study.* Ann Oncol 2016 May;27(5):834-42 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26884592.
16. ↑ National Comprehensive Cancer Network. *NCCN Guidelines for Rectal Cancer Version 2.*; 2016 Available from: https://www.tri-kobe.org/nccn/guideline/colorectal/english/rectal.pdf.
17. ↑ Glimelius B, Tiret E, Cervantes A, Arnold D, ESMO Guidelines Working Group.. *Rectal cancer: ESMO Clinical Practice Guidelines for diagnosis, treatment and follow-up.* Ann Oncol 2013 Oct;24 Suppl 6:vi81-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24078665.
18. ↑ Lutz MP, Zalcberg JR, Glynne-Jones R, Ruers T, Ducreux M, Arnold D, et al. *Second St. Gallen European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer Gastrointestinal Cancer Conference: consensus recommendations on controversial issues in the primary treatment of rectal cancer.* Eur J Cancer 2016 May 30;63:11-24 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27254838.

Back to top

# 15.2.3 Neoadjuvant long-course chemoradiation

**Contents**

## 15.2.3.1 Background

Chemotherapy is routinely added to long-course radiation treatment. A 2012 Cochrane systematic review and meta-analysis of six relevant randomised controlled trials (RCTs) in stage III (node positive) rectal cancer found that chemoradiation was associated with a lower risk of local recurrence and improved disease-free survival, compared with radiation treatment alone.[1] However, no differences in sphincter preservation or overall survival were observed. A similar 2013 Cochrane meta-analysis of five trials (all of which were also included in the 2012 meta-analysis), including both stage II and III rectal cancer, made similar findings of improved pathological complete response rates and lower rates of local recurrence, with no difference in treatment for rates of sphincter preservation or overall survival.[2]

Neoadjuvant therapy is regarded as standard treatment for most stage II and III rectal cancers. The key demonstrated benefits of neoadjuvant therapy are reductions in the risk of local recurrence and its significant associated morbidity and of short-term and long-term toxicities. It has not been shown to improve disease-free survival or overall survival.

Neoadjuvant therapy, rather than surgery followed by adjuvant therapy, has been the preferred approach world-wide since the 2004 publication of the seminal German CAO/ARO/AIO-94 study, which compared preoperative with postoperative chemoradiation in 823 patients.[3] At 5-year follow-up, the study reported equivalent disease-free and overall survival in both treatment groups, but more than halving of the rate of local relapse in the preoperative group (6% versus 13%, p = 0.006), corresponding to a relative risk of recurrence of 0.46 favouring preoperative therapy. The preoperative treatment group also showed a lower risk of grade 3–4 acute toxicity (27% versus 40%, p = 0.001) and grade 3–4 long-term toxicity (14% versus 24%, p = 0.01).[3] There were no differences between groups in the rates of postoperative complications.[3]

Back to top

## 15.2.3.2 Systematic review evidence

*For patients diagnosed with stage II-III rectal cancer, for which patients does neoadjuvant chemoradiation with surgery achieve equivalent or better outcomes than surgery alone? (NEO1b)*

A systematic review was undertaken to evaluate three strategies for managing rectal cancer:

- neoadjuvant chemoradiation followed by resection
- resection followed by postoperative chemoradiation
- resection alone (no chemoradiation).

Four level II RCTs were identified that recruited patients with stage II and III rectal cancer:

- The CAO/ARO/AIO-94 study[3] conducted in Germany compared preoperative with postoperative chemoradiation in 823 patients with clinical stage T3 or T4 or node-positive disease. Five-year[3] and 10-year follow-up data[4] have been published.
- The US National Surgical Adjuvant Breast and Bowel Project R-03 (NSABP R-03) study[5] compared preoperative or postoperative chemoradiotherapy in 267 patients with clinical T3 or T4 or node-positive rectal cancer.
- A single-institution trial conducted in Korea randomised 240 patients to chemoradiation (50Gy in 25 daily fractions with concurrent capecitabine) given preoperatively or postoperatively.[6] Adjuvant therapy in both arms was either capecitabine or bolus 5FU (driven by availability).
- A single-institution trial conducted in China randomised patients to either total mesorectal excision surgery alone, or total mesorectal excision preceded by chemoradiation (with capecitabine and oxaliplatin which is not regarded as standard).[7] Both arms received postoperative adjuvant chemotherapy. Interim findings from only 184 randomised patients have been published.

Three of these four studies were underpowered, with patient recruitment substantially lower than anticipated. The NSABP R-03 study[5] accrued only 267 of a planned 900 patients. The Chinese study is an interim analysis of 184 of a planned 500 patients; this trial used a non-inferiority study design.[7] The Korean study did not reach accrual target.[6] Of a planned 432 patients, 240 were enrolled and their data analysed. Only the CAO/ARO/AIO-94 study accrued to target (planned 680, enrolled 823 patients anticipating 15% dropout).[3][4] Therefore, we accorded more weight to the data from this study.

Outcomes reported by these RCTs included local recurrence, disease-free survival, overall survival, distant metastases, and complications including perioperative and postoperative mortality. All of these studies all had an unclear (high) risk of bias, as outcome assessors were not blinded to intervention type and outcomes were not always clearly described in the study protocol.[5][7][4][6]

The search strategy, inclusion and exclusion criteria, and quality assessment are described in detail in the Technical report.

Back to top

## 15.2.3.2.1 Local recurrence

Local recurrence was reported in all RCTs as 3-, 5- or 10-year local recurrence rates.

In the CAO/ARO/AIO-94 study[4], the preoperative chemoradiation group showed significantly lower 5-year and 10-year local recurrence, compared with the postoperative chemoradiation group: 5% versus 9.7% at 5 years and 7.1% versus 10.1% at 10 years (hazard ratio [HR] 0.6%, p = 0.048) on intention-to-treat analysis. The benefit of preoperative treatment over postoperative treatment was accentuated when comparing those who actually received their assigned treatments (6.8% versus 10.5%; HR 0.54, p = 0.02).[4]

The other studies reported no significant difference in local recurrence rates:

- The NSABP R-03 study[5] reported similar local-regional recurrence risk (5-year cumulative incidence 10.7%) in the preoperative and postoperative chemoradiation groups (HR 0.86; 95% confidence interval [CI] 0.41 to 1.81, p = 0.693).
- The Korean study[6] reported no significant differences in 5-year local recurrence between the preoperative and postoperative chemoradiation treatment groups (absolute difference 1%, p = 0.393).
- The Chinese study[7] reported no difference in 3-year local recurrence between groups who received preoperative chemoradiation group and surgery alone (absolute difference 0.1%, p = 0.776).

### 15.2.3.2.2 Disease-free survival

Disease-free survival was reported in all four RCTs.[5][4][6][7]

The NSABP R-03 study[5] reported a higher 5-year disease-free survival rate in the preoperative chemoradiation group, compared with the postoperative chemoradiation group (64.7% versus 53.4%; HR 0.63 (95% CI 0.44 to 0.90, p = 0.011).

The other three studies[3][6][7] reported marginal, but not statistically significant increases in disease-free survival among the preoperative chemoradiation group compared with the postoperative chemoradiation or no chemoradiation (surgery only) group:

- The CAO/ARO/AIO-94 study[4] reported no difference in disease-free survival for preoperative chemoradiation versus postoperative radiation at 10-year follow-up (p = 0.540).
- The Korean study[6] reported no difference in disease-free survival for preoperative chemoradiation versus postoperative radiation at 5-year follow-up (p=0.866).
- The Chinese study[7] reported no difference in disease-free survival for preoperative chemoradiation versus surgery alone (p=0.766).

Back to top

### 15.2.3.2.3 Overall survival

Overall survival was reported in all four RCTs.[4][5][6][7] None of the RCTs reported a statistically significant difference between groups in overall survival. The NSABP R-03 study[5] reported a nonsignificant overall survival benefit at 5-year follow-up favouring preoperative therapy (74.5% versus 65.5%; HR 0.693, 95% CI 0.468 to 1.026, p = 0.065).

### 15.2.3.2.4 Distant metastasis

Distant metastases were reported in all RCTs[4][5][6][7], with no significant differences observed.

### 15.2.3.2.5 Complications

Perioperative and postoperative complications reported in the RCTs included rates of perioperative mortality, anastomotic leakage, obstruction, wound infection, and fistula.

Perioperative mortality rates were reported in two RCTs. The CAO/ARO/AIO-94 study[3] reported in-hospital mortality rates of 0.7% in the preoperative chemoradiation group and 1.3% in the postoperative chemoradiation group ($p = 0.41$). The Chinese study[7] reported no perioperative mortality in either group.

The CAO/ARO/AIO-94 study 5-year follow-up data[3] showed significantly lower rates of perioperative and postoperative toxicity in the preoperative chemoradiation group, compared with the postoperative chemoradiation group: acute grade 3–4 toxicity 27% versus 40% ($p = 0.001$) and long-term toxicity 14% versus 24% ($p = 0.01$). Rates of postoperative complications were similar between groups (36% versus 34%, $p = 0.68$). There were no differences in rates of delayed wound healing, postoperative bleeding, ileus, or anastomotic leakage.

The other three RCTs reported no significant differences in complication rates between treatment groups. The NSABP R-03 study[5] reported similar rates of postoperative complications in the preoperative and postoperative chemoradiation groups (25% versus 22.6%). Neither the Korean[6] nor the Chinese[7] studies reported significant differences in complication rates, with low rates observed in each group.

Back to top

## 15.2.3.3 Evidence summary and recommendations

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| Patients with Stage II–III rectal cancer undergoing neoadjuvant chemoradiation have a reduced risk of local recurrence compared with those underdoing postoperative chemoradiation (evidence from one study). | II | [4], [5], [6], [7] |
| Preoperative chemoradiation has not been clearly demonstrated to improve disease-free survival, compared with postoperative chemoradiation or with surgery alone, in patients with Stage II–III rectal cancer. A significant improvement in disease-free survival favouring was reported in one study that was underpowered for this outcome. | II | [4], [5], [6], [7] |
| Preoperative chemoradiation does not reduce the risk of distant metastases, compared with postoperative chemoradiation or with surgery alone, in patients with Stage II–III rectal cancer. | II | [4], [6], [7] |
| Patients receiving preoperative chemoradiation may have a lower incidence of perioperative and postoperative complications, compared with those receiving postoperative chemoradiation (evidence from one study). | II | [3] |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| Where possible, neoadjuvant chemoradiation should be recommended to most patients with stage II-III rectal cancer. | C |

| Practice point |
|---|
| The current standard dose of neoadjuvant chemoradiation is 50–50.4 Gy (boost volume after 45 Gy) with either continuous infusional 5FU or capecitabine. |

| Practice point |
|---|
| 'Early' cT3N0 rectal cancer (<1mm extension) is considered potentially suitable for surgery without neoadjuvant treatment in some international guidelines; but requires a high level of confidence in staging investigations and interpretation. |

Back to top

## 15.2.3.4 Considerations in making these recommendations

Neoadjuvant chemoradiation can be recommended for most patients with stage II–III rectal cancer with the aims of reducing the risk of local recurrence and for reducing rates of perioperative and postoperative complications, on the basis of limited evidence from one study.[3][4] However, it has not been shown to improve disease-free survival or overall survival rates.

Some international guidelines suggest that for 'early' T3 (stage II) rectal cancer (<1mm extension beyond muscularis propria) then surgery without neoadjuvant therapy is acceptable. This would need to be agreed upon in multidisciplinary team discussion, with a high level of confidence in MRI staging.

The absolute benefit of neoadjuvant chemoradiation in reducing risk of recurrence is small, compared with adjuvant chemoradiation (3% at 10 year follow up in the CAO/ARO/AIO-94 study[4]). Nevertheless, due to the significant morbidity associated with local recurrence, any modality that can reduce this risk is preferred as long as toxicities are acceptable.

Available evidence suggests that toxicity rates are reduced when using neoadjuvant chemoradiation rather than adjuvant chemoradiation.

## 15.2.3.5 Health system implications

### 15.2.3.5.1 Clinical practice

Neoadjuvant chemoradiation is currently standard practice in Australia, so the recommendation does not represent any change to current clinical practice.

### 15.2.3.5.2 Resourcing

No additional resourcing would be required to implement the recommendation, as neoadjuvant chemoradiation is currently regarded as standard practice in Australia.

### 15.2.3.5.3 Barriers to implementation

No barriers to implementation are anticipated, as neoadjuvant chemoradiation is currently regarded as standard practice in Australia.

Next section: 'watch and wait' approach after clinical complete response to neoadjuvant chemoradiation

Back to top

## 15.2.3.6 References

1. ↑ McCarthy K, Pearson K, Fulton R, Hewitt J. *Pre-operative chemoradiation for non-metastatic locally advanced rectal cancer.* Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2012 Dec 12;12:CD008368 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23235660.
2. ↑ De Caluwé L, Van Nieuwenhove Y, Ceelen WP. *Preoperative chemoradiation versus radiation alone for stage II and III resectable rectal cancer.* Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2013 Feb 28;(2):CD006041 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23450565.
3. ↑ 3.00 3.01 3.02 3.03 3.04 3.05 3.06 3.07 3.08 3.09 3.10 Sauer R, Becker H, Hohenberger W, Rödel C, Wittekind C, Fietkau R, et al. *Preoperative versus postoperative chemoradiotherapy for rectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 2004 Oct 21;351(17):1731-40 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15496622.
4. ↑ 4.00 4.01 4.02 4.03 4.04 4.05 4.06 4.07 4.08 4.09 4.10 4.11 4.12 4.13 Sauer R, Liersch T, Merkel S, Fietkau R, Hohenberger W, Hess C, et al. *Preoperative versus postoperative chemoradiotherapy for locally advanced rectal cancer: results of the German CAO/ARO/AIO-94 randomized phase III trial after a median follow-up of 11 years.* J Clin Oncol 2012 Jun 1;30(16):1926-33 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22529255.
5. ↑ 5.00 5.01 5.02 5.03 5.04 5.05 5.06 5.07 5.08 5.09 5.10 5.11 Roh MS, Colangelo LH, O'Connell MJ, Yothers G, Deutsch M, Allegra CJ, et al. *Preoperative multimodality therapy improves disease-free survival in patients with carcinoma of the rectum: NSABP R-03.* J Clin Oncol 2009 Nov 1;27(31):5124-30 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19770376.

6. ↑ 6.00 6.01 6.02 6.03 6.04 6.05 6.06 6.07 6.08 6.09 6.10 6.11 6.12 Park JH, Yoon SM, Yu CS, Kim JH, Kim TW, Kim JC. *Randomized phase 3 trial comparing preoperative and postoperative chemoradiotherapy with capecitabine for locally advanced rectal cancer.* Cancer 2011 Aug 15;117(16):3703-12 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21328328.
7. ↑ 7.00 7.01 7.02 7.03 7.04 7.05 7.06 7.07 7.08 7.09 7.10 7.11 7.12 7.13 Fan WH, Wang FL, Lu ZH, Pan ZZ, Li LR, Gao YH, et al. *Surgery with versus without preoperative concurrent chemoradiotherapy for mid/low rectal cancer: an interim analysis of a prospective, randomized trial.* Chin J Cancer 2015 Jun 10;34(9):394-403 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26111932.

Back to top

## 15.2.3.7 Appendices

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| View recommendation components | View pending evidence | View body of evidence | View all comments | View literature search |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| View PICO | NHMRC Evidence statement form NEO1b | Systematic review report NEO1b |

Back to top

# 15.3 'Watch and wait' approach after clinical complete response to neoadjuvant chemoradiation

**Contents**

## 15.3.1 Background

Rectal cancer surgery is associated with risks of significant morbidity, poor functional outcomes and permanent stomas. Patients who have a pathological remission and confirmed by surgery have an excellent oncological outcome. Therefore, a 'watch and wait' alternative has been proposed for patients who achieve a complete response to nonsurgical treatment with chemoradiation. As this approach is still investigational, it should ideally be subject to clearly defined protocols and managed by a multidisciplinary team, rather than applied ad hoc.

Note that this is not the same as non-operative management for other reasons after neoadjuvant CRT (e.g. patient refusal of surgery). The 'watch and wait' approach as described here only applies to patients who achieve a clinical complete response as determined by the treating team.

Approximately 10–20% of patients who receive neoadjuvant chemoradiation have a pathological complete response at the time of surgery.[1] These patients are expected to have an excellent prognosis. However, the critical issue is whether a clinical complete response after neoadjuvant treatment correlates well with a pathological complete response.

Traditionally, determination of response has relied on clinical and endoscopic examination by the surgeon. However, a mucosal clinical complete response may not correlate well with a pathological complete response at the primary site. Regional node status can only be monitored by radiological imaging, which is also imperfect in assessing a complete response in patients with nodal disease.[2]

MRI is not funded in Australia for this indication. Furthermore, even on MRI it may be difficult to distinguish between fibrosis and residual tumour plus micro-metastases may be missed at the nodal level.[3]

A high level of confidence in postoperative staging would be required in order to be confident not to proceed with surgery. Furthermore, careful surveillance would then be required in order to detect early recurrence. See Optimal approach to elective resection for rectal cancers for discussion of alternative, minimally invasive, surgical options for tumours with an excellent clinical response to neoadjuvant therapy.

Back to top

## 15.3.2 Systematic review evidence

*For patients diagnosed with stage II-III rectal cancer, for which patients does neoadjuvant chemoradiation with surgery achieve equivalent or better outcomes than neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy alone? (NEO1a)*

A systematic review was undertaken to evaluate the benefits of definitive chemoradiation (clinical complete response) not followed by resection.

One systematic review and meta-analysis[4] and 12 cohort studies[5][6][7][8][9][10][11][12][13][14][15][16] were identified that compared outcomes for patients who underwent either surgery or observation after neoadjuvant chemoradiation.

The meta-analysis[4] included pooled data from nine of the cohort studies comparing patients with clinical complete response followed by a 'watch and wait' approach (n = 251), with those who had surgery (n = 334). This meta-analysis had a moderate risk of bias.

There was significant heterogeneity among the comparator characteristics of the cohort studies. Six[8][10][11][12][13][14] of the 12 studies compared patients who had a clinical complete response to neoadjuvant therapy who were then placed into a ‘watch and wait’ follow-up protocol to those that had incomplete clinical response to neoadjuvant treatment and then proceeded to surgery. One study[6] compared patients with a radiologic complete response across three treatment groups: radical surgery, local excision, or wait-and see and another study[15] compared patients who had a complete clinical response and underwent either radical resection or watch’-and-wait’ treatment. For the remainder of the studies, the comparison arm consisted of patients who had a pathological complete response to neoadjuvant treatment and proceeded to surgery[5][6][7][9]. There was variability between studies as to the timing of, and method/s by which cCR was determined, including several combinations of examination, endoscopic, CEA, MRI, CT and PET studies. This heterogeneity limits interpretation of results and does not permit easy comparisons between studies.

Seven of the cohort studies[5][6][7][8][9][10][16] had a high risk of bias, one study had a moderate risk of bias,[11] and four studies had a low risk of bias.[12][13][14][15]

Outcomes reported in observational studies included local recurrence, disease-free survival, overall survival, distant metastases, and perioperative complications including colostomy-free survival and incontinence.

The search strategy, inclusion and exclusion criteria, and quality assessment are described in detail in the Technical report.

Back to top

## 15.3.2.1 Local recurrence

The meta-analysis[4] reported that local recurrence risk was significantly higher at 1, 2, 3, and 5 years among patients with clinical complete response to neoadjuvant therapy who underwent ‘watch and wait’ than those who underwent surgery: relative risk (RR) at 5-year follow-up 5.69 (95% confidence interval [CI] 1.99 to 16.25, p = 0.001). Although most of the included individual studies reported non- significant differences in local recurrence favouring the surgical arm, pooled analysis showed a statistically significant difference at all time points analysed.[4]

Three cohort studies that were not included in the meta-analysis[10][8][15] reported local recurrence rates in patients who received chemoradiation with and without surgery.

A Danish prospective observational study compared watch-and-wait with surgical resection in patients with resectable, T2 or T3, N0-N1 rectal adenocarcinoma who underwent high-dose chemoradiation.[10] It reported local recurrence in 9 of 40 patients from the watch and wait (local recurrence risk of 26%) at a median follow-up of 2 years.[10]

A UK study (the OnCoRe project)[8] performed propensity-score matched cohort analysis for patients with rectal adenocarcinoma who received preoperative chemoradiotherapy (45 Gy in 25 daily fractions with concurrent fluoropyrimidine-based chemotherapy). Patients who had a clinical complete response were offered a watch-and-wait approach, while those who did not have a clinical complete response were offered surgical resection if eligible. The study reported a local recurrence rate of 38% in the watch-and-wait arm at 3 years.[8]

A Taiwanese retrospective cohort study of 44 patients with cCR, 18 of whom opted for watch-and-wait, with a mean follow-up time of approximately 4 years, reported two local recurrence in the watch-and-wait group; and none in the surgery group.[15]

Back to top

### 15.3.2.2 Disease-free survival

The systematic review and meta-analysis[4] reported that there was no significant difference in disease-free survival at 1, 2, 3 and 5 years between patients who underwent watch-and-wait and those who underwent surgery: RR at 5-year follow-up 0.96 (95% CI 0.85 to 1.08).

Only one study[5] included in this systematic review and meta-analysis observed a significantly lower 5-year disease-free survival rate among patients with clinical complete response to neoadjuvant chemoradiation who underwent watch-and-wait than among those who underwent surgery (60.9% versus 82.8%; RR 0.79; 95% CI 0.65 to 0.98, p=0.011). All other cohort studies included in the systematic review and meta-analysis observed non-significant differences rates between groups in disease-free survival ranging from 0.2% to 12.5%.[4]

Of the three cohort studies that were not included in the meta-analysis,[10][8][15] the OnCoRe project}}[8] observed no difference in 3-year non-regrowth disease-free survival, and the Taiwanese retrospective study reported disease-free survival of 69.8 months ('watch and wait') and 89 months (surgery) (p=0.354)[15]. The Danish prospective observational study[10] did not formally report disease-free survival.

Back to top

### 15.3.2.3 Overall survival

The meta-analysis reported no significant difference in overall survival at 1, 2, 3 and 5 years between patients who underwent watch-and-wait and those who underwent surgery: RR at 5-year follow-up1.01; 95% CI 0.92 to 1.11).[4]

Of the three studies that were not included in the meta-analysis, none reported statistically significant between-group differences in overall survival.[10][8][15]

Back to top

### 15.3.2.4 Distant metastasis

The meta-analysis reported no significant difference in the rate of distant metastases at 1, 2, 3 or 5 year: RR at 5-year follow-up 0.95; 95% CI 0.47 to 1.91, p=0.88).[4] Included individual studies mostly observed no significant differences between groups.[4]

Of the three studies not included in the meta-analysis,[10][8][15] the Danish prospective observational study[10] reported higher distant metastases rates in the surgery group (18.2%) compared with the definitive chemoradiation group (7.5%) at a median follow-up of 26.7 months. However, no statistical comparison was provided and samples sizes were small (n = 11 for chemoradiation followed by surgery and n = 40 for chemoradiation followed by observation). The surgery group consisted of all patients who did not have clinical complete response, so their results are not directly comparable with the group who did achieve clinical complete response to neoadjuvant treatment. The Taiwanese retrospective cohort study reported one distant metastasis in the surgery group and none in the watch-and-wait group at a mean follow-up of approximately 4 years.[15]

Back to top

## 15.3.3 Evidence summary and recommendations

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| Among patients with rectal cancer who have undergone chemoradiation, there is a higher risk of local recurrence with a ‘watch and wait’ approach compared with patients who have surgery, as evidenced by a meta-analysis observational of cohort studies. However, there was heterogeneity in the design of individual cohort studies. | III-2 | [4], [10], [5], [12], [13], [6], [14], [7], [11], [9], [17], [15] |
| Observed disease-free survival rates among patients with rectal cancer did not consistently differ between those who received chemoradiation alone and those who received chemoradiation followed by surgery, despite a higher risk of local recurrence when the ‘watch and wait’ strategy was used. | III-2 | [4], [5], [6], [7], [8], [9], [11], [12], [14], [15], [16], [18] |
| No significant differences in distant metastases or overall survival among patients with rectal cancer were observed between those who received chemoradiation alone and those who received chemoradiation followed by surgery. | III-2 | [10], [5], [12], [13], [6], [14], [4], [7], [8], [11], [9], [15], [16] |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| If a patient with rectal cancer has a clinical complete response to neoadjuvant chemoradiation, and planned resection according to the standard recommendation is either not possible or the patient declines it, a 'watch and wait' approach could be undertaken:<br>■ 'Watch and wait' should only be undertaken after the risks and benefits have been discussed with the multidisciplinary team and the patient.<br>■ Patients who have chosen to undergo 'watch and wait' management must be monitored closely for local recurrence.<br>■ If local recurrence is detected, the patient must be offered an appropriate surgical resection procedure. | **D** |

| Practice point |
|---|
| A 'watch and wait' approach for patients with clinical complete response following chemoradiation is not considered standard practice. Clinicians and patients who select this option must be aware of increased risk of recurrence necessitating surgical intervention, and the importance of close follow-up. |

| Practice point |
|---|
| Follow-up and surveillance guidelines for a 'watch and wait' approach, in particular the frequency of follow-up tests, are not established. Testing may include serial CEA measurements, clinical examination, radiological surveillance, and sigmoidoscopy/colonoscopy. |

Back to top

### 15.3.3.1 Considerations in making these recommendations

RCTs have not evaluated chemoradiation alone, compared with neoadjuvant chemoradiation followed by surgery, in patients with rectal cancer. Available evidence is from retrospective or prospective cohort studies in which patients with a clinical complete response underwent a watch-and-wait approach. These observational studies are challenging to interpret, as those patients who have a clinical complete response to chemoradiation may have an improved prognosis, whether or not they subsequently have surgery.

There is a higher risk of local recurrence with a watch-and-wait strategy. However, salvage surgery is appropriate and, based on available evidence, appears to achieve similar rates of disease-free survival and overall survival as immediate surgery.

Back to top

### 15.3.3.2 Health system implications

#### 15.3.3.2.1 Clinical practice

Choosing observation alone, without surgery, in patients with clinical complete response after chemoradiation is not currently considered standard practice.

If observation without surgery is undertaken, the patient needs to understand this is not conventional treatment and compliance with close and strict surveillance is mandatory.

#### 15.3.3.2.2 Resourcing

Strict surveillance would require resourcing for timely clinical review, imaging and examination ideally under anaesthetic.

Avoidance of surgery could result in lower costs, but these may be negated by intensive surveillance protocols.

Patients who are being followed with “watch and wait” should ideally be done so with a protocolised regimen of follow-up with prospective data collection.

#### 15.3.3.2.3 Barriers to implementation

Lack of robust evidence may preclude uptake of this strategy.

Concern that patients may not adhere to strict follow up and surveillance, thus potentially rendering a curable early recurrence incurable if detected late.

No definitive recommendations available for optimum follow up strategy in this context.

Next section: neoadjuvant chemotherapy regimen

Back to top

## 15.3.4 References


1. ↑ Maas M, Nelemans PJ, Valentini V, Das P, Rödel C, Kuo LJ, et al. *Long-term outcome in patients with a pathological complete response after chemoradiation for rectal cancer: a pooled analysis of individual patient data.* Lancet Oncol 2010 Sep;11(9):835-44 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20692872.
2. ↑ Smith FM, Wiland H, Mace A, Pai RK, Kalady MF. *Clinical criteria underestimate complete pathological response in rectal cancer treated with neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy.* Dis Colon Rectum 2014 Mar;57(3):311-5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24509452.
3. ↑ Hanly AM, Ryan EM, Rogers AC, McNamara DA, Madoff RD, Winter DC, et al. *Multicenter Evaluation of Rectal cancer ReImaging pOst Neoadjuvant (MERRION) Therapy.* Ann Surg 2014 Apr;259(4):723-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23744576.
4. ↑ 4.00 4.01 4.02 4.03 4.04 4.05 4.06 4.07 4.08 4.09 4.10 4.11 Li J, Li L, Yang L, Yuan J, Lv B, Yao Y, et al. *Wait-and-see treatment strategies for rectal cancer patients with clinical complete response after neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy: a systematic review and meta-analysis.* Oncotarget 2016 Apr 6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27070085.
5. ↑ 5.0 5.1 5.2 5.3 5.4 5.5 5.6 Araujo RO, Valadão M, Borges D, Linhares E, de Jesus JP, Ferreira CG, et al. *Nonoperative management of rectal cancer after chemoradiation opposed to resection after complete clinical response. A comparative study.* Eur J Surg Oncol 2015 Nov;41(11):1456-63 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26362228.
6. ↑ 6.0 6.1 6.2 6.3 6.4 6.5 6.6 Lee SY, Kim CH, Kim YJ, Kim HR. *Oncologic Outcomes according to the Treatment Strategy in Radiologic Complete Responders after Neoadjuvant Chemoradiation for Rectal Cancer.* Oncology 2015;89(6):311-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26426305.
7. ↑ 7.0 7.1 7.2 7.3 7.4 7.5 Maas M, Beets-Tan RG, Lambregts DM, Lammering G, Nelemans PJ, Engelen SM, et al. *Wait-and-see policy for clinical complete responders after chemoradiation for rectal cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2011 Dec 10;29(35):4633-40 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22067400.
8. ↑ 8.00 8.01 8.02 8.03 8.04 8.05 8.06 8.07 8.08 8.09 8.10 8.11 Renehan AG, Malcomson L, Emsley R, Gollins S, Maw A, Myint AS, et al. *Watch-and-wait approach versus surgical resection after chemoradiotherapy for patients with rectal cancer (the OnCoRe project): a propensity-score matched cohort analysis.* Lancet Oncol 2016 Feb;17(2):174-83 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26705854.
9. ↑ 9.0 9.1 9.2 9.3 9.4 9.5 Smith JD, Ruby JA, Goodman KA, Saltz LB, Guillem JG, Weiser MR, et al. *Nonoperative management of rectal cancer with complete clinical response after neoadjuvant therapy.* Ann Surg 2012 Dec;256(6):965-72 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23154394.
10. ↑ 10.00 10.01 10.02 10.03 10.04 10.05 10.06 10.07 10.08 10.09 10.10 10.11 10.12 Appelt AL, Pløen J, Harling H, Jensen FS, Jensen LH, Jørgensen JC, et al. *High-dose chemoradiotherapy and watchful waiting for distal rectal cancer: a prospective observational study.* Lancet Oncol 2015 Aug;16(8):919-27 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26156652.
11. ↑ 11.0 11.1 11.2 11.3 11.4 11.5 Ayloor Seshadri R, Kondaveeti SS, Jayanand SB, John A, Rajendranath R, Arumugam V, et al. *Complete clinical response to neoadjuvant chemoradiation in rectal cancers: can surgery be avoided?* Hepatogastroenterology 2013 May;60(123):410-4 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23635444.

12. ↑ 12.0 12.1 12.2 12.3 12.4 12.5 Dalton RS, Velineni R, Osborne ME, Thomas R, Harries S, Gee AS, et al. *A single-centre experience of chemoradiotherapy for rectal cancer: is there potential for nonoperative management?* Colorectal Dis 2012 May;14(5):567-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21831177.
13. ↑ 13.0 13.1 13.2 13.3 13.4 Habr-Gama A, Perez RO. *The surgical significance of residual mucosal abnormalities in rectal cancer following neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy (Br J Surg 2012; 99: 993-1001).* Br J Surg 2012 Nov;99(11):1601; author reply 1601-2 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23027080.
14. ↑ 14.0 14.1 14.2 14.3 14.4 14.5 Li J, Liu H, Yin J, Liu S, Hu J, Du F, et al. *Wait-and-see or radical surgery for rectal cancer patients with a clinical complete response after neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy: a cohort study.* Oncotarget 2015 Dec 8;6(39):42354-61 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26472284.
15. ↑ 15.00 15.01 15.02 15.03 15.04 15.05 15.06 15.07 15.08 15.09 15.10 15.11 15.12 Lai CL, Lai MJ, Wu CC, Jao SW, Hsiao CW. *Rectal cancer with complete clinical response after neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy, surgery, or "watch and wait".* Int J Colorectal Dis 2016 Feb;31(2):413-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26607907.
16. ↑ 16.0 16.1 16.2 16.3 Smith RK, Fry RD, Mahmoud NN, Paulson EC. *Surveillance after neoadjuvant therapy in advanced rectal cancer with complete clinical response can have comparable outcomes to total mesorectal excision.* Int J Colorectal Dis 2015 Jun;30(6):769-74 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25787162.
17. ↑ Smith RK, Fry RD, Mahmoud NN, Paulson EC. *Surveillance after neoadjuvant therapy in advanced rectal cancer with complete clinical response can have comparable outcomes to total mesorectal excision.* Int J Colorectal Dis 2015 Jun;30(6):769-74 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25787162.
18. ↑ Habr-Gama A, Perez RO, Nadalin W, Sabbaga J, Ribeiro U Jr, Silva e Sousa AH Jr, et al. *Operative versus nonoperative treatment for stage 0 distal rectal cancer following chemoradiation therapy: long-term results.* Ann Surg 2004 Oct;240(4):711-7; discussion 717-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15383798.

Back to top

## 15.3.5 Appendices

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| View recommendation components | View pending evidence | View body of evidence | View all comments | View literature search |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| View PICO | NHMRC Evidence statement form NEO1a | Systematic review report NEO1a |

Back to top

# 15.4 Neoadjuvant chemotherapy regimen

**Contents**



## 15.4.1 Background

Fluoropyrimidine-based chemotherapy is the standard choice of radiation sensitiser for use in combination with radiation treatment. Intravenous and oral routes of administration are used.

Other approaches that are not currently standard treatment for rectal cancer, but are either under investigation or have been proposed for evaluation, include:

- the addition of oxaliplatin
- neoadjuvant systemic chemotherapy cycles given without radiation
- targeted therapies such as bevacizumab, panitumumab and cetuximab.

Back to top

## 15.4.2 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews were undertaken for this topic. Practice points were based on selected published evidence. See Guidelines development process.

### 15.4.2.1 Intravenous or oral fluoropyrimidine

Continuous infusional therapy is preferred over bolus injection for fluoropyrimidine-based chemotherapy, based on a 1994 study investigating bolus versus infusional adjuvant chemoradiation in 644 patients with rectal cancer, which reported that infusional 5-fluorouracil (5-FU) increased time to relapse and improved overall survival.[1]

5FU has been the standard backbone of chemotherapy in the management of both colon and rectal cancer. Capecitabine, an oral 5FU analogue, is a prodrug that is converted systemically by the enzyme thymidine phosphorylase to 5FU. Compared with infusional 5FU, it is associated with a higher risk of hand-foot syndrome, but a lower risk of neutropenia.[2]

Two randomised controlled trials (RCTs)[2][3] have shown similar outcomes for capecitabine compared with infusional 5FU when combined with radiation treatment for rectal cancer:

- A 2012 German study in 392 evaluable patients compared capecitabine or infusional 5FU with radiation treatment in the neoadjuvant setting. This was a non-inferiority study and capecitabine was found to be non-inferior for overall survival at 5 years (76% versus 67%, non-inferiority p = 0.0004).)[2]
- The larger US National Surgical Adjuvant Breast and Bowel Project (NSABP) R-04 study randomised 1608 patients to one of four arms: infusional 5FU with or without oxaliplatin, or capecitabine with or without oxaliplatin. Comparing groups receiving the 5FU- and capecitabine-based regimens, there were no statistically significantly differences in rates of sphincter preservation, pathological complete response, locoregional control or 5-year overall survival.[3][4]

Because of the risk of toxicity, and given that capecitabine is an oral cytotoxic agent self-administered at home, patients should be carefully selected, where possible, to ensure appropriate compliance with the drug in order to avoid serious toxicity from inadvertent dosing errors.

**Practice point**

Infusional fluoropyrimidine is preferable to bolus fluoropyrimidine for use in combination with radiation treatment for rectal cancer.

**Practice point**

Oral capecitabine or intravenous infusional 5FU are both acceptable agents to combine with radiation treatment for rectal cancer.

**Practice point**

If capecitabine is considered, patients should be carefully selected to minimise risk of non-compliance or overdosing.

Back to top

## 15.4.2.2 Neoadjuvant oxaliplatin

Oxaliplatin is a platinum analogue commonly used in metastatic colorectal cancer. Multiple trials have investigated its use combined with neoadjuvant radiation treatment and fluoropyrimidine in rectal cancer. Several large-scale phase III RCTs have produced somewhat conflicting results with respect to efficacy These studies have also demonstrated greater toxicity when adding oxaliplatin to fluoropyrimidine. Oxaliplatin is commonly associated with myelosuppression and peripheral neuropathy.

There have been several negative studies:

- The STAR-01 trial from Italy randomised 747 patients to standard chemoradiation with or without weekly oxaliplatin. Pathological complete response, sphincter preservation, and overall survival were not significantly different between treatment arms.[5][6]
- The ACCORD 12/0405 PRODIGE 2 trial (n=598) compared capecitabine with and without oxaliplatin in combination with radiation treatment. It reported no significant differences in rates of pathological complete response, sphincter preservation, local control or overall survival.[7][8]
- The PETACC-6 trial (n=1094) compared capecitabine with and without oxaliplatin, both before and after surgery. It reported no difference in rates of disease-free survival and overall survival with or without oxaliplatin.[9][10]
- The four-arm NSABP R-04 compared infusional 5FU alone, 5FU with oxaliplatin, capecitabine alone and capecitabine with oxaliplatin. The addition of oxaliplatin was not associated with any differences in rates of locoregional control, disease-free survival or overall survival.[4]
- A Chinese study (n=206) randomised patients to receive preoperative radiotherapy with either capecitabine or capecitabine and oxaliplatin with all patients receiving post-operative adjuvant mFOLFOX. This study found no difference in pathological complete remission, local recurrence, disease free survival and overall survival. Three year distant metastatic rate was improved with the experimental arm (16.5% vs 28.2%, p=0.045).[11]

Other large studies have yielded positive results for the role of oxaliplatin:

- The German CAO/ARO/AIO-04 trial (n=1236 assessable patients)[12] used a non-standard schedule of neoadjuvant infusional 5FU in both arm and gave oxaliplatin both before and after surgery in the experimental arm. The oxaliplatin group showed improved rates of pathological complete response and 3-year disease-free survival (75.9% versus 71.2%, p=0.03), representing an absolute 4.7% gain. It is not known whether this benefit is due to the neoadjuvant, or adjuvant oxaliplatin, or both.
- A three-arm Chinese trial (FOWARC) randomised 495 patients (475 evaluable) to radiotherapy with either infusional 5FU or mFOLFOX6, or to mFOLFOX6 without radiation treatment.[13] All arms received postoperative chemotherapy. The neoadjuvant mFOLFOX6 group showed a higher rates of pathological complete response (27.5% versus 14% for 5FU plus radiation treatment and 6% for chemotherapy alone) and a higher rate of tumour downstaging, but a similar sphincter preservation rate.[13] Survival data are not yet available.

A 2013 meta-analysis assessing short-term outcomes, which included four RCTs, similarly found that the addition of oxaliplatin improved pathological complete response rate and reduced the rate of perioperative metastases, but increased toxicity, with no differences in the rates of R0 resection, sphincter preservation or surgical complications.[14] A subsequent meta-analysis (currently only available in abstract form), which included the same studies and an additional RCT, reported similarly that the addition of oxaliplatin increased the proportion of patients who achieved pathological complete response after neoadjuvant treatment, but was again associated with higher toxicity.[15]

**Practice point**

Neoadjuvant oxaliplatin with radiation treatment for rectal cancer is not currently regarded as standard therapy. Data for local control or survival benefit are mixed and oxaliplatin is associated with higher toxicity than fluoropyrimidine alone.

Back to top

## 15.4.2.3 Neoadjuvant systemic chemotherapy

One management strategy currently under investigation is the use of initial systemic chemotherapy in the neoadjuvant setting. This approach facilitates the early delivery of systemic doses of chemotherapy, and may treat potential micrometastatic disease early rather than after radiation treatment and surgery.

Additionally, the role of chemotherapy alone, without radiation treatment, is under question – ideally avoiding short-term and late toxicities related to radiotherapy. A small number of prospective studies have investigated this approach: either neoadjuvant chemotherapy without radiation treatment, or combined with radiation

treatment in various sequences. Most are small single-arm studies combining capecitabine or 5FU with oxaliplatin; several of the chemotherapy-alone studies also include bevacizumab (see *Targeted therapies*, below). A retrospective analysis of the US National Cancer Database, which compared patients with stage II/II rectal cancer reported that patients who received neoadjuvant multiagent chemotherapy had an inferior overall survival than those who received neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy.[16] This strategy cannot be recommended outside of a clinical trial.

**Practice point**

The role of neoadjuvant systemic chemotherapy is still under investigation and is not regarded as routine.

Back to top

### 15.4.2.4 Targeted therapies

The use of targeted therapies such as bevacizumab, panitumumab and cetuximab as neoadjuvant therapy in the management of rectal cancer has not been investigated in phase III RCTs.

Bevacizumab is a humanised monoclonal antibody targeting vascular endothelial growth factor. It is routinely used in the treatment of metastatic colorectal cancer. Multiple studies, mostly small single-arm phase II trials have investigated its use in the neoadjuvant setting for rectal cancer. A 2011 systematic review[17] reported good pathological complete response rates with the use of neoadjuvant bevacizumab, but also some concerns regarding perioperative morbidity. Currently bevacizumab is not recommended in the neoadjuvant or adjuvant disease setting for rectal cancer, excepting metastatic disease.

Cetuximab and panitumumab are monoclonal antibodies targeting epidermal growth factor receptor. Efficacy in colorectal cancer is limited to patients with wild-type K-ras. These are also used routinely in the management of metastatic disease. There are several small, largely single-arm phase II studies. The largest study, the EXPERT-C trial, is a phase II RCT including 165 patients who received neoadjuvant CAPOX chemotherapy and chemoradiation, followed by adjuvant CAPOX, with or without cetuximab (both neoadjuvant and adjuvant). Sixty per cent of assessable tumours were K-ras wild-type. The addition of cetuximab improved radiological response but, importantly, not the primary endpoint of pathological complete response, and was associated with increased toxicity. Subsequent analysis did not demonstrate improvement in progression-free survival or overall survival,[18][19]

**Practice point**

The roles of bevacizumab, panitumumab and cetuximab in the neoadjuvant setting for rectal cancer are uncertain, based on available evidence. These are not currently available for the treatment of non-metastatic rectal cancer, and they are not indicated in this setting.

Next section: optimal timing surgery after neoadjuvant therapy

Back to top

## 15.4.3 References

1. ↑ O'Connell MJ, Martenson JA, Wieand HS, Krook JE, Macdonald JS, Haller DG, et al. *Improving adjuvant therapy for rectal cancer by combining protracted-infusion fluorouracil with radiation therapy after curative surgery.* N Engl J Med 1994 Aug 25;331(8):502-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8041415.
2. ↑ [2.0] [2.1] [2.2] Hofheinz RD, Wenz F, Post S, Matzdorff A, Laechelt S, Hartmann JT, et al. *Chemoradiotherapy with capecitabine versus fluorouracil for locally advanced rectal cancer: a randomised, multicentre, non-inferiority, phase 3 trial.* Lancet Oncol 2012 Jun;13(6):579-88 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22503032.
3. ↑ [3.0] [3.1] O'Connell MJ, Colangelo LH, Beart RW, Petrelli NJ, Allegra CJ, Sharif S, et al. *Capecitabine and oxaliplatin in the preoperative multimodality treatment of rectal cancer: surgical end points from National Surgical Adjuvant Breast and Bowel Project trial R-04.* J Clin Oncol 2014 Jun 20;32(18):1927-34 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24799484.
4. ↑ [4.0] [4.1] Allegra CJ, Yothers G, O'Connell MJ, Beart RW, Wozniak TF, Pitot HC, et al. *Neoadjuvant 5-FU or Capecitabine Plus Radiation With or Without Oxaliplatin in Rectal Cancer Patients: A Phase III Randomized Clinical Trial.* J Natl Cancer Inst 2015 Nov;107(11) Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26374429.
5. ↑ Aschele C, Cionini L, Lonardi S, Pinto C, Cordio S, Rosati G, et al. *Primary tumor response to preoperative chemoradiation with or without oxaliplatin in locally advanced rectal cancer: pathologic results of the STAR-01 randomized phase III trial.* J Clin Oncol 2011 Jul 10;29(20):2773-80 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21606427.
6. ↑ Aschele C, Cionini L, Lonardi S, et al. *Final results of STAR-01: A randomized phase III trial comparing preoperative chemoradiation with or without oxaliplatin in locally advanced rectal cancer.* J Clin Oncol ; 2011; 29: 2773-80.
7. ↑ Gérard JP, Azria D, Gourgou-Bourgade S, Martel-Laffay I, Hennequin C, Etienne PL, et al. *Comparison of two neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy regimens for locally advanced rectal cancer: results of the phase III trial ACCORD 12/0405-Prodige 2.* J Clin Oncol 2010 Apr 1;28(10):1638-44 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20194850.
8. ↑ Francois, E; Gourgou-Bourgade, S; Azria, D; Conroy, T; Bouche, O; Doyen, J, et al. *ACCORD12/0405-Prodige 2 phase III trial neoadjuvant treatment in rectal cancer: Results after 5 years of follow-up.* J Clin Oncol 34, 2016 (suppl 4S; abstr 490) ;http://meetinglibrary.asco.org/content/160015-173.

9. ↑ Schmoll, H; Haustermans, K; Price, T; Nordlinger, B; Hofheinz, R; Daisne, J, et al. *Preoperative chemoradiotherapy and postoperative chemotherapy with capecitabine and oxaliplatin versus capecitabine alone in locally advanced rectal cancer: Disease-free survival results at interim analysis.* J Clin Oncol 32:5s, 2014 (suppl; abstr 3501) Available from: http://meetinglibrary.asco.org/content/134502-144.
10. ↑ Schmoll, H; Stein, A; Hofheinz, R; Price, T; Nordlinger, B; Daisne, J, et al. *Preoperative chemoradiotherapy and postoperative chemotherapy with capecitabine and oxaliplatin vs. capecitabine alone in locally advanced rectal cancer: final analyses.* Ann Oncol (2016) 27 (suppl 6): doi: 10.1093/annonc/mdw370.16 Available from: http://annonc.oxfordjournals.org/content/27/suppl_6/467PD.short?rss=1.
11. ↑ Jiao D, Zhang R, Gong Z, Liu F, Chen Y, Yu Q, et al. *Fluorouracil-based preoperative chemoradiotherapy with or without oxaliplatin for stage II/III rectal cancer: a 3-year follow-up study.* Chin J Cancer Res 2015 Dec;27(6):588-96 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26752933.
12. ↑ Sauer R, Liersch T, Merkel S, Fietkau R, Hohenberger W, Hess C, et al. *Preoperative versus postoperative chemoradiotherapy for locally advanced rectal cancer: results of the German CAO/ARO/AIO-94 randomized phase III trial after a median follow-up of 11 years.* J Clin Oncol 2012 Jun 1;30(16):1926-33 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22529255.
13. ↑ [13.0] [13.1] Deng Y, Chi P, Lan P, Wang L, Chen W, Cui L, et al. *Modified FOLFOX6 With or Without Radiation Versus Fluorouracil and Leucovorin With Radiation in Neoadjuvant Treatment of Locally Advanced Rectal Cancer: Initial Results of the Chinese FOWARC Multicenter, Open-Label, Randomized Three-Arm Phase III Trial.* J Clin Oncol 2016 Sep 20;34(27):3300-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27480145.
14. ↑ An X, Lin X, Wang FH, Goodman K, Cai PQ, Kong LH, et al. *Short term results of neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy with fluoropyrimidine alone or in combination with oxaliplatin in locally advanced rectal cancer: a meta analysis.* Eur J Cancer 2013 Mar;49(4):843-51 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23063351.
15. ↑ Wyrwicz L, Temnyk M, Spalek M. *The addition of oxaliplatin increases pathological complete response: a meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials on radiochemotherapy in rectal cancer.* Ann Oncol (2016) 27 (suppl 2): ii65 Available from: http://annonc.oxfordjournals.org/content/27/suppl_2/ii65.3.short?rss=1#.
16. ↑ Cassidy RJ, Liu Y, Patel K, Zhong J, Steuer CE, Kooby DA, et al. *Can we eliminate neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy in favor of neoadjuvant multiagent chemotherapy for select stage II/III rectal adenocarcinomas: Analysis of the National Cancer Database.* Cancer 2016 Oct 25 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27780316.
17. ↑ Fornaro L, Caparello C, Vivaldi C, Rotella V, Musettini G, Falcone A, et al. *Bevacizumab in the pre-operative treatment of locally advanced rectal cancer: a systematic review.* World J Gastroenterol 2014 May 28;20(20):6081-91 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24876730.
18. ↑ Sclafani F, Gonzalez D, Cunningham D, Hulkki Wilson S, Peckitt C, Giralt J, et al. *RAS mutations and cetuximab in locally advanced rectal cancer: results of the EXPERT-C trial.* Eur J Cancer 2014 May;50(8):1430-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24582914.
19. ↑ Dewdney A, Cunningham D, Tabernero J, Capdevila J, Glimelius B, Cervantes A, et al. *Multicenter randomized phase II clinical trial comparing neoadjuvant oxaliplatin, capecitabine, and preoperative radiotherapy with or without cetuximab followed by total mesorectal excision in patients with high-risk rectal cancer (EXPERT-C).* J Clin Oncol 2012 May 10;30(14):1620-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22473163.

Back to top

# 15.5 Optimal timing surgery after neoadjuvant therapy

## 15.5.1 Background

Traditionally, surgery is timed to occur 6-8 weeks after completion of neoadjuvant long-course chemoradiation. This is to allow enough time for pathological downstaging as well as patient recovery from neoadjuvant treatment. On the other hand, waiting too long could possibly increase the risk of tumour regrowth, metastatic potential, or the development of fibrosis making surgery more challenging.

An interval of at least 6 weeks between chemoradiation and surgery is favoured, based on the 1999 Lyon R90-01 study comparing intervals of less than 2 weeks and 68 weeks from radiation treatment completion to surgery. It found that the 6- to 8-week period improved tumour downstaging rates, compared with a shorter period.[1] A 6-week wait was also the schedule used in the seminal German CAO/ARO/AIO-94 study rectal cancer study.[2]

## 15.5.2 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews were undertaken for this topic. Practice points were based on selected published evidence. See Guidelines development process.

A 2016 meta-analysis[3] included 13 prospective or retrospective studies investigating intervals between chemoradiation and surgery that were either longer or shorter than the ‘traditional’ 6- to 8-week period (over 3500 patients in total). It found that waiting longer than 8 weeks was associated with an increased pathological complete response rate: risk ratio (RR) 1.42 (95% CI 1.19 to 1.68, $p < 0.0001$). There were no differences in survival outcomes, R0 resection or sphincter preservation rates, or complications. However, this meta-analysis did not include any randomised controlled trials (RCT) and is largely based on retrospective data.[3]

Three phase III RCTs have directly addressed this question:

- In the Lyon R90-01 study, 210 patients who received radiation treatment (39Gy in 13 daily fractions) were randomised to surgery within 2 weeks or at 6–8 weeks from completion of radiation treatment.[1] A higher rate of pathological complete response was noted in the longer wait group, but no difference in overall survival was seen. However, the results of this study are difficult to interpret because it used a hypo-fractionated schedule, compared with standard schedules.
- In the GRECCAR-6 study, 265 patients were randomised to undergo surgery 7 versus 11 weeks post completion of chemoradiation.[4] There was no difference in in the rates of pathological complete response or sphincter preservation between arms. Of some concern, the 11-week arm had a non-significantly higher rate of conversion to open surgery (15% versus 10%, p = 0.26) and more postoperative complications, including perineal healing complications if abdominoperineal resection was required.
- The UK NCT 01037049 trial, reported in abstract form and not yet published, randomised 237 patients with high risk features to surgery at either 6 weeks or 12 weeks after CRT.[5] Patients in the 12-week arm were more frequently downstaged (58% versus 43%, p=0.019) and had a higher pCR rate (20% versus 9%,P<0. 05). No significant difference was seen in surgical morbidity.

A retrospective cohort study using the National Cancer Database, published in 2016, included 6397 patients who had neoadjuvant therapy followed by surgery.[6] Of those patients who had pathological complete response, 76.2% had surgery within 60 days. Delaying surgery more than 60 days in this cohort study was associated with a higher risk of positive surgical margins and decreased likelihood of sphincter preservation, as well as shorted overall survival (hazard ratio [HR] 1.3; 95% CI 1.19 to 1.45 p < 0.001). This is retrospective data and thus should be interpreted with caution.

Interim results from the Stockholm III trial are available.[7] This study randomised 657 patients between 1998 and 2010 to one of three arms: short-course radiation treatment with immediate surgery, short-course radiation treatment with surgery after 4–8 weeks, or long-course radiation treatment with surgery after 4–8 weeks. A pre-planned interim analysis reported that patients who had short-course radiation treatment with delayed (4–8 weeks) surgery showed better outcomes, compared with those who had immediate surgery, including higher rates of tumour downstaging, pathologic complete regression (11.8% versus 1.7%), and tumour regression. It remains to be seen whether this translates to improved recurrence-free or overall survival. It was also observed that patients receiving short-course radiotherapy followed by surgery in between 11 and 17 days after the start of radiotherapy had the highest complication rate. Surgery should be avoided in this time window.

**Practice point**

Available data for the optimal timing between completion of neoadjuvant C-RT and surgery indicate that surgery at least 6 weeks but by 12 weeks appears to be appropriate, until results from further studies become available.

**Practice point**

Waiting longer within the 6-12 week time frame to allow optimal pathological downstaging may be selected preferentially, for example for patients with T4 tumours, where maximal downstaging is desirable.

Next section: adjuvant therapy for rectal cancer

Back to top

## 15.5.3 References

1. ↑ [1.0] [1.1] Francois Y, Nemoz CJ, Baulieux J, Vignal J, Grandjean JP, Partensky C, et al. *Influence of the interval between preoperative radiation therapy and surgery on downstaging and on the rate of sphincter-sparing surgery for rectal cancer: the Lyon R90-01 randomized trial.* J Clin Oncol 1999 Aug;17(8):2396 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10561302.
2. ↑ Sauer R, Becker H, Hohenberger W, Rödel C, Wittekind C, Fietkau R, et al. *Preoperative versus postoperative chemoradiotherapy for rectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 2004 Oct 21;351(17):1731-40 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15496622.
3. ↑ [3.0] [3.1] Petrelli F, Sgroi G, Sarti E, Barni S. *Increasing the Interval Between Neoadjuvant Chemoradiotherapy and Surgery in Rectal Cancer: A Meta-analysis of Published Studies.* Ann Surg 2016 Mar;263(3):458-64 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24263329.
4. ↑ Lefevre JH, Mineur L, Kotti S, Rullier E, Rouanet P, de Chaisemartin C, et al. *Effect of Interval (7 or 11 weeks) Between Neoadjuvant Radiochemotherapy and Surgery on Complete Pathologic Response in Rectal Cancer: A Multicenter, Randomized, Controlled Trial (GRECCAR-6).* J Clin Oncol 2016 Jul 18 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27432930.
5. ↑ Evans, J; Bhoday, J; Sizer, B; Tekkis, B; Swift, R; Perez, R; et al. *Results of a prospective randomised control 6 vs 12 trial: Is greater tumour downstaging observed on post treatment MRI if surgery is delayed to 12-weeks versus 6-weeks after completion of neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy?* Ann Oncol (2016) 27 (suppl 6): doi: 10.1093/annonc/mdw370.01 [cited 2016 Dec 28] Available from: http://annonc.oxfordjournals.org/content/27/suppl_6/452O.full.
6. ↑ Huntington CR, Boselli D, Symanowski J, Hill JS, Crimaldi A, Salo JC. *Optimal Timing of Surgical Resection After Radiation in Locally Advanced Rectal Adenocarcinoma: An Analysis of the National Cancer Database.* Ann Surg Oncol 2016 Mar;23(3):877-87 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26514119.
7. ↑ Pettersson D, Lörinc E, Holm T, Iversen H, Cedermark B, Glimelius B, et al. *Tumour regression in the randomized Stockholm III Trial of radiotherapy regimens for rectal cancer.* Br J Surg 2015 Jul;102(8):972-8; discussion 978 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26095256.

Back to top

# 15.6 Adjuvant therapy for rectal cancer

## Chapter subsections

See sections:

- Postoperative chemotherapy
- Postoperative radiation treatment|

# 15.6.1 Adjuvant therapy for rectal cancer

## Chapter subsections

See sections:

- Postoperative chemotherapy
- Postoperative radiation treatment|

# 15.6.2 Postoperative chemotherapy

**Contents**

## 15.6.2.1 Background

The aim of adjuvant chemotherapy is to eliminate micrometastatic disease, thereby reducing the risk of cancer recurrence and improving recurrence-free and overall survival.

Many studies that had reported benefit for adjuvant chemotherapy in this setting occurred in the era preceding neoadjuvant chemoradiation, before surgical advances became part of standard treatment. Pathological complete response to neoadjuvant therapy occurs in 10–20% of patients and is associated with a good prognosis.[1] As such, the role of postoperative therapy has now been brought into question.

Postoperative adjuvant therapy for cancers above the peritoneal reflection should be decided as per colon cancer recommendations (see Adjuvant treatment for colon cancer).

Oxaliplatin in combination with a fluoropyrimidine has now become standard therapy for stage III colon cancer, based on several trials including the MOSAIC[2] and NSABP C-07[3] studies (see Adjuvant treatment for colon cancer). It has since been investigated for rectal cancer.

Back to top

## 15.6.2.2 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews were undertaken for this topic. Practice points were based on selected published evidence. See Guidelines development process.

### 15.6.2.2.1 Post-operative adjuvant chemotherapy for rectal cancer following preoperative neoadjuvant therapy

Two recent systematic reviews and meta-analyses were published in 2015 addressing this issue specifically in patients who had received prior neoadjuvant therapy:

- A 2015 systematic review and meta-analysis[4] included four eligible phase III randomised controlled trials (RCTs) in patients with stage II or III rectal cancer with R0 resection (n = 1196). It found no significant differences in overall survival between those patients who received adjuvant chemotherapy compared with observation alone (hazard ratio [HR] 0.97, p=0.775). Disease-free survival and distant recurrences were also similar between arms. Subgroup analysis indicated that those patients with upper rectal tumour (10–15 cm from the anal verge) benefited from chemotherapy, with improved disease-free survival and less distant recurrence. This was based on individual patient data meta-analysis. However, there was no difference in survival outcomes with or without chemotherapy for patients with pathological stage III (node positive) versus stage II disease, or based on pathological nodal status (N0 vs N1 vs N2).

- A 2015 systematic review and meta-analysis[5] included two RCTs, one pooled analysis of five additional RCTs, and 10 retrospective studies, including 5457 patients in total. This analysis found improved 5 year overall survival (OR 0.64, p = 0.0006) and 5-year disease-free survival (odds ratio [OR] 0.71, p < 0.0001) but noted most of this benefit was limited to the retrospective studies. Subgroup analysis of those with node positive disease was not undertaken.

A 2012 Cochrane meta-analysis of adjuvant chemotherapy for rectal cancer, including literature published between 1975 and 2011, included 21 RCTs and nearly 10,000 patients with rectal cancer.[6] Only adjuvant 5FU was used in these trials (i.e. no oxaliplatin or other agents). The Cochrane review found that adjuvant chemotherapy significantly reduced the risk of death and disease recurrence. However, only one of these trials included neoadjuvant chemoradiation for all patients, so the data are hard to interpret in the context of today's conventional neoadjuvant treatment. In the three trials that reported data separately for stage III (node positive) rectal cancer, there was no difference in overall survival for patients with stage III disease who did and did not receive adjuvant chemotherapy.

Overall, the benefit of fluoropyrimidine-based adjuvant chemotherapy for patients is somewhat uncertain in the modern management of rectal cancer, which includes neoadjuvant treatment and more anatomically appropriate surgery (such as total mesorectal excision) than previously. International guidelines vary. The US National Comprehensive Cancer Network (NCCN) Clinical Practice Guidelines recommends adjuvant chemotherapy, preferably doublet therapy including oxaliplatin, for any T3-4 or node positive rectal cancer.[7] European Society for Medical Oncology (ESMO) Guidelines note that adjuvant chemotherapy 'can be given' for high risk stage II and stage III rectal cancer but acknowledge that the level of scientific evidence for benefit is much lower than for colon cancer.[8] The St Gallen European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer (EORTC) Consensus Panel agreed that for tumours staged clinically and pathologically as N0, adjuvant chemotherapy was not recommended.[9] However, for cN+ downstaged to pN0 there was no consensus, and most participants preferred to deliver adjuvant therapy for pN+ disease.[9]

**Practice point**

Strong evidence for benefit of adjuvant chemotherapy for rectal cancer is lacking, even in patients with node positive disease. In disease regarded as high risk, the uncertain benefits of adjuvant chemotherapy should be acknowledged.

**Practice point**

Patients with upper third rectal tumours (10–15cm from the anal verge) with either cN+ or pN+ findings, are possibly those who may derive any/most benefit from adjuvant chemotherapy.

Back to top

### 15.6.2.2.2 The role for oxaliplatin as adjuvant therapy in rectal cancer

Several trials have investigated the role of oxaliplatin in the adjuvant setting for rectal cancer:

- The ADORE phase II RCT conducted in Korea, randomised 321 patients with resected stage II/III rectal cancer who had received neoadjuvant CRT, to four cycles of adjuvant bolus 5FU/LV or eight cycles of FOLFOX chemotherapy.[10] At 3-year follow-up, disease-free survival was improved favouring the FOLFOX arm (71.6% versus 62.9%, HR 0.657, p = 0.047). The benefit appeared limited to patients with pathological stage III disease with no benefit observed for those with stage II cancer. Overall survival was also improved for the FOLFOX arm (3-year overall survival 95% versus 85.7%; HR 0.456, p = 0.036). Higher rates of toxicities were observed in the FOLFOX arm, including myelosuppression and neuropathy.

- The CHRONICLE phase III RCT[11] compared either observation alone or six cycles of XELOX (capecitabine and oxaliplatin) therapy in 113 patients with resected rectal cancer following chemoradiation. This study closed prematurely and did not meet its target recruitment of 780 patients so interpretation is limited due to low statistical power. Only 48% of patients assigned to postoperative chemotherapy completed all six cycles, with 39% of these patients having dose reductions and 40% experiencing grade 3–4 toxicities. The 3-year disease-free survival was not significantly different: 78% (chemotherapy) versus 71%, HR 0.8, p = 0.56, and 3-year overall survival was also similar.

A 2016 systematic review and meta-analysis included four RCTs (n = 2793) including both the above trials and also the PETACC-6 and CAO/ARO/AIO-04 studies, both of which included postoperative oxaliplatin in their randomisations.[12] It reported that adjuvant oxaliplatin-based chemotherapy was associated with improved disease-free survival (HR 0.85, p = 0.03) but no difference in overall survival, compared with fluoropyrimidine-based chemotherapy alone.[12] Comparison between stage II and stage III disease was not made. Similar compliance levels, but higher toxicities were noted for oxaliplatin-containing arms. Notably there was significant heterogeneity; in particular regimens differed considerably across the trials and follow up to date is relatively short.[12]

A second review and meta-analysis of five randomized trials (either fluoropyrimidine-only or fluoropyrimidine plus oxaliplatin-based adjuvant chemotherapy) did not find an overall survival or disease-free survival benefit, when comparing adjuvant oxaliplatin-based chemotherapy with fluoropyrimidine alone.[13]

**Practice point**

For patients with pathological stage II/III rectal cancer, adjuvant oxaliplatin-based chemotherapy is associated with increased toxicities. Benefits, if any, may be confined to those with stage III disease; but not all data concur.

**Practice point**

The uncertain benefits of oxaliplatin as adjuvant therapy in rectal cancer should be acknowledged.

Back to top

### 15.6.2.2.3 The role of adjuvant chemotherapy after pathological complete response

A 2012 systematic review and meta-analysis of patient outcomes following pathological complete response, which included 16 studies, demonstrated that those patients with a pathological complete response had fewer local recurrences (OR 0.25, p = 0.002) and lower rates of distant failure (OR 0.23, p < 0.001).[14] It was noted that 61.4% of patients in the pathological complete response cohort received adjuvant chemotherapy.

A 2015 pooled analysis of individual patient data from 13 separate datasets, included 3313 patients, 898 (27%) of whom achieved pathological complete response after neoadjuvant chemoradiation and surgery.[15] These patients had good prognosis, with statistically improved recurrence-free, disease-free and overall survival compared with patients who did not achieve pathological complete response. Of these patients, 290 (32%) subsequently had adjuvant chemotherapy whilst 608 (68%) did not. For those patients with pathological complete response, adjuvant chemotherapy made no impact on rates of recurrence-free survival, disease-free survival, or overall survival.

One prospective Spanish single-institution study included 176 patients with cT3-4 rectal cancer who received neoadjuvant chemoradiation then surgery. Those who had pathological complete response did not receive adjuvant chemotherapy. For 26 patients (15%) who achieved pathological complete response, 5-year disease-free survival was 95% and overall survival was 100%.[16] Follow-up of 210 patients from a single-institution database in China identified 40 patients with pathological complete response following neoadjuvant chemoradiation and surgery, of whom 19 received post-operative chemotherapy and 21 did not (non-randomised). Five-year disease free survival was 90% and 76% ($p = 0.142$). Retrospective studies are however limited by selection bias among other biases.

Data for the role of adjuvant chemotherapy following pathological complete response is otherwise largely limited to retrospective studies. A 2006 retrospective study of 95 patients who had received chemoradiation followed by surgery observed that chemotherapy added no additional 3-year disease-free survival benefit for patients with pathological node-negative disease.[17]

With large studies of adjuvant chemotherapy in rectal cancer (regardless of pathological response) not showing clear benefit for adjuvant chemotherapy, it would seem intuitive that those with pathological complete response, who inherently have better prognosis, could avoid its potential toxicities. Given that a RCT comparing observation with adjuvant therapy in patients with pathological complete response is unlikely, decisions need to be made on the basis of available prospective and retrospective cohort studies. The St Gallen EORTC consensus panel was divided as to whether or not adjuvant chemotherapy should be given in this context.[9]

**Practice point**

There are no randomised trials for adjuvant chemotherapy for patients with pathological complete response after chemoradiation followed by surgery. Available evidence suggests that these patients have a very good prognosis and any absolute benefits are likely to be small.

Next section: postoperative radiation treatment

Back to top

## 15.6.2.3 References

1. ↑ Maas M, Nelemans PJ, Valentini V, Das P, Rödel C, Kuo LJ, et al. *Long-term outcome in patients with a pathological complete response after chemoradiation for rectal cancer: a pooled analysis of individual patient data.* Lancet Oncol 2010 Sep;11(9):835-44 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20692872.
2. ↑ André T, Boni C, Navarro M, Tabernero J, Hickish T, Topham C, et al. *Improved overall survival with oxaliplatin, fluorouracil, and leucovorin as adjuvant treatment in stage II or III colon cancer in the MOSAIC trial.* J Clin Oncol 2009 Jul 1;27(19):3109-16 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19451431.
3. ↑ Yothers G, O'Connell MJ, Allegra CJ, Kuebler JP, Colangelo LH, Petrelli NJ, et al. *Oxaliplatin as adjuvant therapy for colon cancer: updated results of NSABP C-07 trial, including survival and subset analyses.* J Clin Oncol 2011 Oct 1;29(28):3768-74 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21859995.
4. ↑ Breugom AJ, Swets M, Bosset JF, Collette L, Sainato A, Cionini L, et al. *Adjuvant chemotherapy after preoperative (chemo)radiotherapy and surgery for patients with rectal cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis of individual patient data.* Lancet Oncol 2015 Feb;16(2):200-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25589192.
5. ↑ Petrelli F, Coinu A, Lonati V, Barni S. *A systematic review and meta-analysis of adjuvant chemotherapy after neoadjuvant treatment and surgery for rectal cancer.* Int J Colorectal Dis 2015 Apr;30(4):447-57 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25433820.
6. ↑ Petersen SH, Harling H, Kirkeby LT, Wille-Jørgensen P, Mocellin S. *Postoperative adjuvant chemotherapy in rectal cancer operated for cure.* Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2012 Mar 14;(3):CD004078 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22419291.
7. ↑ National Comprehensive Cancer Network. *NCCN Guidelines for Rectal Cancer Version 2.*; 2016 Available from: https://www.tri-kobe.org/nccn/guideline/colorectal/english/rectal.pdf.
8. ↑ Glimelius B, Tiret E, Cervantes A, Arnold D, ESMO Guidelines Working Group.. *Rectal cancer: ESMO Clinical Practice Guidelines for diagnosis, treatment and follow-up.* Ann Oncol 2013 Oct;24 Suppl 6:vi81-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24078665.
9. ↑ [9.0] [9.1] [9.2] Lutz MP, Zalcberg JR, Glynne-Jones R, Ruers T, Ducreux M, Arnold D, et al. *Second St. Gallen European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer Gastrointestinal Cancer Conference: consensus recommendations on controversial issues in the primary treatment of rectal cancer.* Eur J Cancer 2016 May 30;63:11-24 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27254838.
10. ↑ Hong YS, Nam BH, Kim KP, Kim JE, Park SJ, Park YS, et al. *Oxaliplatin, fluorouracil, and leucovorin versus fluorouracil and leucovorin as adjuvant chemotherapy for locally advanced rectal cancer after preoperative chemoradiotherapy (ADORE): an open-label, multicentre, phase 2, randomised controlled trial.* Lancet Oncol 2014 Oct;15(11):1245-53 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25201358.
11. ↑ Glynne-Jones R, Counsell N, Quirke P, Mortensen N, Maraveyas A, Meadows HM, et al. *Chronicle: results of a randomised phase III trial in locally advanced rectal cancer after neoadjuvant chemoradiation randomising postoperative adjuvant capecitabine plus oxaliplatin (XELOX) versus control.* Ann Oncol 2014 Jul;25(7):1356-62 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24718885.

12. ↑ 12.0 12.1 12.2 Zhao L, Liu R, Zhang Z, Li T, Li F, Liu H, et al. *Oxaliplatin/fluorouracil-based adjuvant chemotherapy for locally advanced rectal cancer after neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy and surgery: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials.* Colorectal Dis 2016 Aug;18(8):763-72 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27169752.
13. ↑ Boustani J, Caubet M, Bosset JF. *Adjuvant Chemotherapy in Rectal Cancer after Chemoradiotherapy.* Clin Oncol (R Coll Radiol) 2016 Feb;28(2):140-5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26698026.
14. ↑ Martin ST, Heneghan HM, Winter DC. *Systematic review and meta-analysis of outcomes following pathological complete response to neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy for rectal cancer.* Br J Surg 2012 Jul;99(7):918-28 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22362002.
15. ↑ Maas M, Nelemans PJ, Valentini V, Crane CH, Capirci C, Rödel C, et al. *Adjuvant chemotherapy in rectal cancer: defining subgroups who may benefit after neoadjuvant chemoradiation and resection: a pooled analysis of 3,313 patients.* Int J Cancer 2015 Jul 1;137(1):212-20 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25418551.
16. ↑ García-Albéniz X, Gallego R, Hofheinz RD, Fernández-Esparrach G, Ayuso-Colella JR, Bombí JA, et al. *Adjuvant therapy sparing in rectal cancer achieving complete response after chemoradiation.* World J Gastroenterol 2014 Nov 14;20(42):15820-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25400468.
17. ↑ Fietkau R, Barten M, Klautke G, Klar E, Ludwig K, Thomas H, et al. *Postoperative chemotherapy may not be necessary for patients with ypN0-category after neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy of rectal cancer.* Dis Colon Rectum 2006 Sep;49(9):1284-92 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16758130.

Back to top

# 15.6.3 Postoperative radiation treatment

## 15.6.3.1 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews were undertaken for this topic. Practice points were based on selected published evidence. See Guidelines development process.

Where possible, preoperative radiation treatment is favoured over postoperative radiation treatment as several trials discussed previously, including the landmark German CAO/ARO/AIO-94 study,[1][2] have shown that a neoadjuvant approach is more effective (less local recurrence) and less toxic, than postoperative delivery of radiation treatment. This approach would only ever be considered on an individual basis if preoperative radiation treatment (or chemoradiation) had not been delivered and pathological staging revealed unexpectedly higher-risk disease (T3 +/- N1-2, or R1 resection).[3]

In ideal circumstances, preoperative discussion and review of clinical details and MRI imaging in a multidisciplinary setting should reduce the proportion of patients who then require postoperative radiotherapy. However, no test is 100% sensitive, so unexpected upstaging at the time of histopathological assessment does occur.

A meta-analysis of 8 randomised trials of 2157 patients shows that post-operative adjuvant radiotherapy significantly reduces the yearly risk of local recurrence by 37% compared to surgery alone (p=0.002).[3]

The National Institute of Health (NIH) made a clinical announcement in 1991 about the benefits of a sequential regimen of 5-flurouracil based chemotherapy and radiation therapy in reducing overall tumour recurrence rates, local recurrence and prolong survival in patients with resected stage II and III rectal cancer.[4] This was based on the results of the Krook trial[5] in 204 patients demonstrating that a combination of post operative radiation with 5-FU and systemic therapy with a flurouracil based regimen reduced recurrence by 34% (p = 0.0016), local recurrence by 46% (p = 0.036) and distant metastasis by 37%(p = 0.01) and overall death rate by 29% (p = 0.025) compared to radiation alone. The INT0114 study of 1695 patients compared bolus 5FU alone, 5FU plus leucovorin, 5FU plus levamisole and 5FU plus leucovorin all with pelvic radiation post operatively. No difference in disease free survival or overall survival was seen.[6]

INT861751 randomised 660 patients with high risk rectal cancer to post operative 5FU given by bolus or protracted venous infusion (PVI) during radiotherapy. PVI demonstrated an improved disease free survival and overall survival predominantly in reducing distant relapse. The subsequent large INT0144 study of 1917 patients [7] however found no difference in relapse free survival or overall survival at 3 years for patients receiving post-operative pelvic radiotherapy with one of three adjuvant chemotherapy protocols: 1) bolus 5FU in two 5 day cycles before and after radiotherapy plus PVI 5FU during radiation, PVI 5FU 42 days before and 56 days after radiation and concurrent PVI 5FU or 3) bolus 5FU plus leucovorin in two 5 day cycles before and after radiation with bolus 5FU and levamisole. The PVI arm had a much lower haematological toxicity rate than the bolus arms.

**Practice point**

Patients with higher risk disease post-operatively who did not receive neoadjuvant treatment should be considered for adjuvant pelvic radiotherapy concurrent with 5 fluorouracil chemotherapy.

Next section: discussion

## 15.6.3.2 References

1. ↑ Sauer R, Becker H, Hohenberger W, Rödel C, Wittekind C, Fietkau R, et al. *Preoperative versus postoperative chemoradiotherapy for rectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 2004 Oct 21;351(17):1731-40 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15496622.

2. ↑ Sauer R, Liersch T, Merkel S, Fietkau R, Hohenberger W, Hess C, et al. *Preoperative versus postoperative chemoradiotherapy for locally advanced rectal cancer: results of the German CAO/ARO/AIO-94 randomized phase III trial after a median follow-up of 11 years.* J Clin Oncol 2012 Jun 1;30(16):1926-33 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22529255.
3. ↑ [3.0] [3.1] Colorectal Cancer Collaborative Group.. *Adjuvant radiotherapy for rectal cancer: a systematic overview of 8,507 patients from 22 randomised trials.* Lancet 2001 Oct 20;358(9290):1291-304 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11684209.
4. ↑ National Cancer Institute. *Benefits of adjuvant therapy for rectal cancer.* [homepage on the internet] US National Library of Medicine; 1991 Mar 13 [cited 2017 Jan 4]. Available from: https://www.nlm.nih.gov/databases/alerts/rectal_cancer.html.
5. ↑ Krook JE, Moertel CG, Gunderson LL, Wieand HS, Collins RT, Beart RW, et al. *Effective surgical adjuvant therapy for high-risk rectal carcinoma.* N Engl J Med 1991 Mar 14;324(11):709-15 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1997835.
6. ↑ Tepper JE, O'Connell M, Niedzwiecki D, Hollis DR, Benson AB 3rd, Cummings B, et al. *Adjuvant therapy in rectal cancer: analysis of stage, sex, and local control--final report of intergroup 0114.* J Clin Oncol 2002 Apr 1;20(7):1744-50 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11919230.
7. ↑ Smalley SR, Benedetti JK, Williamson SK, Robertson JM, Estes NC, Maher T, et al. *Phase III trial of fluorouracil-based chemotherapy regimens plus radiotherapy in postoperative adjuvant rectal cancer: GI INT 0144.* J Clin Oncol 2006 Aug 1;24(22):3542-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16877719.

Back to top

# 15.7 Discussion

**Contents**



## 15.7.1 Unresolved issues

The optimal protocol for neoadjuvant therapy, including the role of chemotherapy cycles at systemic doses, has not been determined. One observational study reported clinical complete response rates of up to 48% with the administration of extra chemotherapy in the wait period after chemoradiotherapy.[1]

## 15.7.2 Studies currently underway

Several randomised controlled trials (RCTs) are currently underway that should help to inform management of rectal cancer. In particular, the role of short-course versus long-course neoadjuvant treatment and the role of neoadjuvant chemotherapy cycles are two key areas for which additional prospective trial data will become available. Trials include (but are not limited to):

- The Stockholm III study[2] of short-course versus long-course radiation treatment.. This trial randomised 657 patients between 1998 and 2010 to one of three arms: short-course radiation treatment with immediate surgery (within a week), short-course radiation treatment with delayed surgery (4–8 weeks), or long-course RT with surgery within 4–8 weeks. Survival outcomes are yet to be reported.
- The PROSPECT/N1048 trial, a phase III RCT study assigning patients to standard preoperative chemoradiation treatment followed by total mesorectal excision and then adjuvant FOLFOX versus six cycles of preoperative FOLFOX with risk-adjusted use of preoperative radiation therapy.[3]
- The PRODIGE 23, an RCT comparing neoadjuvant chemoradiation with capecitabine then 6 months of adjuvant chemotherapy, with six cycles of FOLFIRINOX chemotherapy prior to chemoradiation, then 3 months of adjuvant chemotherapy. The adjuvant chemotherapy can be either mFOLFOX6 or capecitabine.[4]
- The phase III RAPIDO trial, which randomises patients with high risk rectal cancer (T4 and/or N2, other high risk features) to neoadjuvant chemoradiation with capecitabine then optional postoperative chemotherapy, or short course radiation treatment plus six cycles of neoadjuvant CAPOX without postoperative chemotherapies.[4]

## 15.7.3 Future research priorities

Future research priorities should include the validation of biomarkers to help guide management of rectal cancer. These may include both prognostic and predictive biomarkers to help determine the level of intensity of therapy as well as the most appropriate drug selection. In ideal circumstances treatment could be tailored to the individual on the basis of clinical, tumour and biomarker characteristics.

More robust methods to determine clinical complete response after neoadjuvant therapy are needed to help better help to better stratify patients into those who require surgery and those who can possibly be treated with an organ preservation strategy or ‘watch and wait’ protocols.

Multiple developments have occurred over the last two decades with respect to the management of curable rectal cancer resulting in greater locoregional disease control. Ongoing studies will help inform the best anti-cancer agents to use in the neoadjuvant disease setting, and the optimal timing of radiotherapy and surgery.

## 15.7.4 References

1. ↑ Habr-Gama A, Perez RO, Sabbaga J, Nadalin W, São Julião GP, Gama-Rodrigues J. *Increasing the rates of complete response to neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy for distal rectal cancer: results of a prospective study using additional chemotherapy during the resting period.* Dis Colon Rectum 2009 Dec;52(12):1927-34 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19934911.
2. ↑ Pettersson D, Lörinc E, Holm T, Iversen H, Cedermark B, Glimelius B, et al. *Tumour regression in the randomized Stockholm III Trial of radiotherapy regimens for rectal cancer.* Br J Surg 2015 Jul;102(8):972-8; discussion 978 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26095256.
3. ↑ ClinicalTrials.gov Identifier: NCT01515787. *PROSPECT: Chemotherapy Alone or Chemotherapy Plus Radiation Therapy in Treating Patients With Locally Advanced Rectal Cancer Undergoing Surgery.* Available from: https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01515787.
4. ↑ [4.0] [4.1] Nilsson PJ, van Etten B, Hospers GA, Påhlman L, van de Velde CJ, Beets-Tan RG, et al. *Short-course radiotherapy followed by neo-adjuvant chemotherapy in locally advanced rectal cancer--the RAPIDO trial.* BMC Cancer 2013 Jun 7;13:279 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23742033.

Back to top

# 16 Management resectable locally recurrent and metastatic disease

Following curative treatment of colorectal cancer, 20–35% of stage II and 50–70% of stage III colorectal cancers will recur.[1][2][3] The purpose of follow-up after curative resection is to allow early detection of these recurrences so that further curative resection may be undertaken if appropriate (see Follow-up after curative resection for colorectal cancer).

Previous studies documenting the patterns of recurrence after curative resection of colorectal cancer have found systemic recurrence to be most common followed by locoregional recurrence and both systemic and locoregional recurrence.[4][5] The management of these recurrences is complex and needs to be tailored to individual needs, based on the extent of disease, the severity of symptoms, physical fitness for further treatment, and the patient's values and preferences.

Multidisciplinary care is important as most of these patients will have complex needs that will require the input from surgeons, medical or radiation oncologists and palliative care physicians. Although clinicians are at the forefront of these patients' management, input from nurses (palliative care nurses) and other allied health members (stomal therapists, dietitians and physiotherapists) are also indispensable in ensuring holistic care and in the seamless transition from hospital to community care and, if appropriate, end-of-life care.

Surgical treatment of resectable metastatic disease and resectable local recurrences have come a long way in the past decade. Improved staging modalities, understanding of what drives long-term survival in patients and improved chemotherapy options have all allowed increasingly aggressive management of systemic and local recurrences. Depending on the pattern of recurrence (e.g. systemic versus locoregional), patients will require slightly different investigations, although the key objectives remain the same:

- to confirm the presence of recurrence
- to stage the disease accurately so as to determine disease resectability
- to rule out more widespread disease that may preclude curative resection.

See also:

Imaging a patient with diagnosis of colon/rectal adenocarcinoma

Follow-up after curative resection for colorectal cancer

## Chapter subsections

Sections:

- Investigation of recurrent colorectal cancer
- Management of locally recurrent resectable colorectal cancer (MNG13)
- Management of resectable metastatic colorectal cancer (MNG14)

1. ↑ André T, Boni C, Navarro M, Tabernero J, Hickish T, Topham C, et al. *Improved overall survival with oxaliplatin, fluorouracil, and leucovorin as adjuvant treatment in stage II or III colon cancer in the MOSAIC trial.* J Clin Oncol 2009 Jul 1;27(19):3109-16 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19451431.
2. ↑ Manfredi S, Lepage C, Hatem C, Coatmeur O, Faivre J, Bouvier AM. *Epidemiology and management of liver metastases from colorectal cancer.* Ann Surg 2006 Aug;244(2):254-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16858188.
3. ↑ O'Connell MJ, Campbell ME, Goldberg RM, Grothey A, Seitz JF, Benedetti JK, et al. *Survival following recurrence in stage II and III colon cancer: findings from the ACCENT data set.* J Clin Oncol 2008 May 10;26(14):2336-41 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18467725.
4. ↑ Galandiuk S, Wieand HS, Moertel CG, Cha SS, Fitzgibbons RJ Jr, Pemberton JH, et al. *Patterns of recurrence after curative resection of carcinoma of the colon and rectum.* Surg Gynecol Obstet 1992 Jan;174(1):27-32 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1729745.
5. ↑ Obrand DI, Gordon PH. *Incidence and patterns of recurrence following curative resection for colorectal carcinoma.* Dis Colon Rectum 1997 Jan;40(1):15-24 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9102255.

# 16.1 Introduction: management resectable locally recurrent and metastatic disease

Following curative treatment of colorectal cancer, 20–35% of stage II and 50–70% of stage III colorectal cancers will recur.[1][2][3] The purpose of follow-up after curative resection is to allow early detection of these recurrences so that further curative resection may be undertaken if appropriate (see Follow-up after curative resection for colorectal cancer).

Previous studies documenting the patterns of recurrence after curative resection of colorectal cancer have found systemic recurrence to be most common followed by locoregional recurrence and both systemic and locoregional recurrence.[4][5] The management of these recurrences is complex and needs to be tailored to individual needs, based on the extent of disease, the severity of symptoms, physical fitness for further treatment, and the patient's values and preferences.

Multidisciplinary care is important as most of these patients will have complex needs that will require the input from surgeons, medical or radiation oncologists and palliative care physicians. Although clinicians are at the forefront of these patients' management, input from nurses (palliative care nurses) and other allied health members (stomal therapists, dietitians and physiotherapists) are also indispensable in ensuring holistic care and in the seamless transition from hospital to community care and, if appropriate, end-of-life care.

Surgical treatment of resectable metastatic disease and resectable local recurrences have come a long way in the past decade. Improved staging modalities, understanding of what drives long-term survival in patients and improved chemotherapy options have all allowed increasingly aggressive management of systemic and local recurrences. Depending on the pattern of recurrence (e.g. systemic versus locoregional), patients will require slightly different investigations, although the key objectives remain the same:

- to confirm the presence of recurrence
- to stage the disease accurately so as to determine disease resectability
- to rule out more widespread disease that may preclude curative resection.

See also:

Imaging a patient with diagnosis of colon/rectal adenocarcinoma

Follow-up after curative resection for colorectal cancer

## Chapter subsections

Sections:

- Investigation of recurrent colorectal cancer
- Management of locally recurrent resectable colorectal cancer (MNG13)
- Management of resectable metastatic colorectal cancer (MNG14)

1. ↑ André T, Boni C, Navarro M, Tabernero J, Hickish T, Topham C, et al. *Improved overall survival with oxaliplatin, fluorouracil, and leucovorin as adjuvant treatment in stage II or III colon cancer in the MOSAIC trial.* J Clin Oncol 2009 Jul 1;27(19):3109-16 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19451431.
2. ↑ Manfredi S, Lepage C, Hatem C, Coatmeur O, Faivre J, Bouvier AM. *Epidemiology and management of liver metastases from colorectal cancer.* Ann Surg 2006 Aug;244(2):254-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16858188.
3. ↑ O'Connell MJ, Campbell ME, Goldberg RM, Grothey A, Seitz JF, Benedetti JK, et al. *Survival following recurrence in stage II and III colon cancer: findings from the ACCENT data set.* J Clin Oncol 2008 May 10;26(14):2336-41 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18467725.
4. ↑ Galandiuk S, Wieand HS, Moertel CG, Cha SS, Fitzgibbons RJ Jr, Pemberton JH, et al. *Patterns of recurrence after curative resection of carcinoma of the colon and rectum.* Surg Gynecol Obstet 1992 Jan;174(1):27-32 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1729745.
5. ↑ Obrand DI, Gordon PH. *Incidence and patterns of recurrence following curative resection for colorectal carcinoma.* Dis Colon Rectum 1997 Jan;40(1):15-24 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9102255.

# 16.2 Investigation of recurrent colorectal cancer

**Contents**

## 16.2.1 Background

### 16.2.1.1 Presentation of local recurrence

Patients with local recurrence may be symptomatic or asymptomatic.

Symptoms of local recurrence depends on the site of recurrence and therefore can vary between patients:

- In patients with anastomotic or luminal recurrences, symptoms are usually similar to those of patients with primary colorectal cancer in that patients usually present with rectal bleeding, anaemia or altered bowel habits. Depending on the extent of the local recurrence, patients may also present with varying degrees of bowel obstruction. Where there has been a previous low rectal anastomosis, the luminal recurrence may be readily palpable on digital rectal examination during routine follow up. In patients who have previously undergone an abdominoperineal excision, clinical findings may be limited.
- Patients with nodal or surgical bed recurrences may present with pain from mass effect on neighbouring structures (such as obstruction of ureters or neuropathic pain from the sciatic nerve compression) or may present as a palpable mass.
- Patients with pelvic recurrences are typically symptomatic, with pain as the most common presentation.

Asymptomatic patients may present with a rising serum carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) level or have a new abnormality detected on surveillance imaging or surveillance colonoscopy.

### 16.2.1.2 Presentation of systemic recurrence

The most common sites of systemic recurrence following curative treatment of colorectal cancer are hepatic followed by pulmonary metastases. Other visceral metastases such as adrenal metastases, metastases to distant nodal basins such as the para-aortic nodes, bony metastases and brain metastases can also occur but do so much less frequently. As with patients with local recurrence, patients with systemic recurrences may be symptomatic or asymptomatic. Symptoms varies depending on the site of recurrence, and may include abdominal pain from hepatomegaly, jaundice, pleuritic chest pain or shortness of breath. Patients with extensive disease may also have anorexia, cachexia and weight loss. Most recurrences present within the first 3 years after curative resection. Asymptomatic disease is usually detected during routine surveillance as a result of an elevated CEA or a new abnormality detected on surveillance CT scan.

Back to top

## 16.2.2 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews were undertaken for this topic. Practice points were based on selected evidence. Please see Guidelines Development for more information.

## 16.2.3 Investigation of suspected local recurrence

Initial assessment of patients with suspected local recurrence should include:

- serum CEA
- (unless contraindicated) contrast computed tomography (CT) scan of the chest, abdomen and pelvis
- positron emission tomography (PET)-CT
- pelvic MRI (for pelvic recurrences).

Depending on individual circumstances, additional investigations may also be necessary, including colonoscopy (if appropriate) prior to further surgery, CT or magnetic resonance angiography (MRA) for suspected mesenteric or iliac vessel involvement, or cystoscopy for potential bladder involvement. Particularly with isolated pelvic recurrences, an examination under anaesthesia can be very helpful as pain often limits the utility of clinical examination. Furthermore, an examination under anaesthesia may also permit other investigations or procedures to be undertaken at the same time such as biopsies, cystoscopy with ureteric stent insertion in the event of ureteric obstruction..

As re-operative surgery is usually complex and may be associated with significant surgical morbidity, histological confirmation of recurrent disease should ideally be obtained prior to embarking on surgery. This is also preferable if neoadjuvant chemoradiation is to be considered prior to surgery. Where the recurrence is extra-luminal, options for biopsies include transvaginal biopsies (where the recurrence is adjacent to the vagina) at the time of an examination under anaesthesia or CT-guided percutaneous biopsies. In situations where the recurrence site is difficult to access for histological confirmation and patient history, serum CEA, MRI as well as PET-CT corroborates the diagnosis of recurrence, biopsies may not be necessary following discussion on a multi-disciplinary team meeting. Further, although CT guided biopsies may carry the potential risk of biopsy tract seeding, reports on this are scant and the risk is likely to be negligible. On balance, histological confirmation is preferred because of the potential morbidity of reoperative procedures.

Back to top

## 16.2.4 Investigation of suspected systemic recurrence

Initial assessment of patients with suspected metastasis should include all of the following:

- serum CEA
- (unless contraindicated) contrast CT scan of the chest, abdomen and pelvis
- PET-CT.

Depending on the site of the metastasis, further investigations are usually necessary to determine the local extent of the disease so as to facilitate decision making about appropriateness of further surgical intervention.

In an era where CT and MRI are readily available, the role of liver ultrasound is somewhat limited although it remains a useful investigation in patients with extensive liver metastases where curative resection is impossible. The reported sensitivity of liver ultrasound varies between 50-76% but it is noteworthy that not only is ultrasound user dependent but also size dependent. Sensitivity of liver ultrasound can be as low as 20% for lesions under 10mm.[1] For most patients with hepatic metastases, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) of the liver is currently considered the most accurate staging modality for liver metastases. The addition of diffusion weighted imaging may improve the yield of MRI in detecting smaller liver metastases.

Intra-operative ultrasound of the liver is a useful adjunct in patients to rule out the presence of small hepatic metastases that may otherwise be otherwise missed on other imaging modalities. It also allows the surgeon to assess the anatomical relations between the metastasis and hepatic vascular and biliary anatomy so as to determine the best surgical approach. Liver biopsies are generally not needed to confirm the diagnosis of liver metastases as imaging alone is usually sufficient for diagnosis. Nor is this recommended, because of concerns of biopsy tract seeding.[2]

As most colorectal cancer related lung metastases are usually located within the lung parenchyma in the periphery of the lung, the most important diagnostic investigations are CT scan of the chest and a PET-CT. Comparison with previous imaging is important as interval changes are usually significant. While most patients do not require additional investigations, depending on the anatomic location of the metastasis, diagnostic certainty or whether or not there may be co-existing abnormalities such as questionable uptake within mediastinal nodes, additional investigations such as EBUS (endobronchial ultrasound), bronchoscopy or even mediastinoscopy may be required.

**Practice point**

Initial assessment of patients with suspected local or systematic recurrence should include serum CEA, contrast CT scan of the chest, abdomen and pelvis (unless contraindicated) and PET-CT.

**Practice point**

Depending on the type of recurrence, additional investigations are likely to be necessary. A high-quality pelvic MRI is recommended for patients with locally recurrent rectal cancer. Additional local investigations may also need to be considered depending on patient and disease factors such as CT or MRA if mesenteric or iliac vessel involvement is suspected, or cystoscopy if bladder involvement is suspected.

**Practice point**

If possible, local recurrence should be histologically confirmed before surgery. If this is not possible because of the extraluminal location of the disease, a transvaginal biopsy may be feasible where the recurrence abuts the vagina. Alternatively, CT-guided percutaneous biopsies can be considered after assessing the need for biopsy at a multidisciplinary team meeting.

**Practice point**

In patients with liver metastases, an MRI of the liver is usually also necessary if surgery is being considered.

Colonoscopy may be needed if further resection is planned.

**Practice point**

In patients with suspected lung metastases, CT chest and PET-CT are usually sufficient to confirm diagnosis. In patients where there is diagnostic uncertainty or concerns for mediastinal nodal involvement, an endobronchial ultrasound or bronchoscopy may be needed.

**Practice point**

All patients with locally recurrent disease or metastatic disease should be discussed in a multidisciplinary team meeting taking into consideration patient's previous surgical history, current imaging, fitness and desire for further treatment.

Next section: management of recurrent, resectable colorectal cancer

Back to top

## 16.2.5 References

1. ↑ Kinkel K, Lu Y, Both M, Warren RS, Thoeni RF. *Detection of hepatic metastases from cancers of the gastrointestinal tract by using noninvasive imaging methods (US, CT, MR imaging, PET): a meta-analysis.* Radiology 2002 Sep;224(3):748-56 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12202709.
2. ↑ Jones OM, Rees M, John TG, Bygrave S, Plant G. *Biopsy of resectable colorectal liver metastases causes tumour dissemination and adversely affects survival after liver resection.* Br J Surg 2005 Sep;92(9):1165-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15997444.

Back to top

# 16.3 Management of recurrent, resectable CRC (MNG13)

**Contents**



## 16.3.1 Background

‘Locoregional recurrences’ refers to anastomotic recurrences, recurrences in the surgical bed or regional nodal recurrences.

Local failure after colonic resection is relatively uncommon and is reported to occur in less than 5% of patients.[1][2] Rates of local recurrences following rectal cancer surgery were previously as high as 33%, but this has diminished dramatically over the past three decades to 5–10%.[3][4] This reduction in local recurrence has been achieved mainly through improved surgical techniques and pre-operative imaging which has improved patient selection for neoadjuvant treatment. These include:

- total mesorectal excision (see Elective and emergency surgery for colon and rectal cancer REC3 and COL1-2b)
- improved preoperative staging with pelvic magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) (see Imaging rectal cancer)
- the judicious use of preoperative radiotherapy with or without chemotherapy (see Neoadjuvant and adjuvant therapy for rectal cancer).

Notwithstanding the improvements in surgical techniques, there remain disease factors that predispose to local recurrence. These factors include nodal involvement, vascular invasion, grade of tumour, as well as surgical complications such as anastomotic leaks.

Re-resection for locally recurrent colorectal cancer should be undertaken where possible with a clear resection margin. While multi-visceral en bloc resection of locally recurrent colon cancer has long been accepted by the wider surgical community as the standard of care,[5] the uptake of pelvic exenteration for locally recurrent rectal cancers have been much slower because of the lack of evidence from randomised controlled trials (RCTs), the high rates of surgical morbidity and the potential quality of life implications following such radical resections. The past two to three decades however has seen increasing acceptance of pelvic exenteration for patients with isolated locally recurrent rectal cancer because of the number of studies demonstrating reduced operative mortality and improved quality of life outcomes particularly in selected Australian centres.[6][7][8][9] In an early cross sectional quality of life study in patients with locally recurrent rectal cancers, long-term survivors after pelvic exenteration for local recurrence were found to have comparable quality of life to patients who had primary rectal cancer.[6] Subsequently, a much larger prospective and longitudinal comparative quality of life study in these patients found that quality of life in pelvic exenteration patients was preserved compared to patients who underwent palliative treatment.[8] As part of the quality of life study, a cost-effectiveness analysis was also undertaken which found pelvic exenteration to be cost-effective when compared to palliative treatment.[9]

Back to top

## 16.3.2 Systematic review evidence

*In patients with locally recurrent colon or rectal cancer, what are the outcomes of curative surgery (+/- chemotherapy, +/- radiotherapy) when compared with surgical palliation +/- palliative chemotherapy +/- palliative radiotherapy or other palliative interventions (overall survival, disease free survival, quality of life and complications)? (MNG13)*

A systematic review was undertaken to determine the outcomes of curative resection (with or without radiation or chemotherapy) in the management of locally recurrent colorectal cancer, compared with palliative treatment options including palliative surgery (with or without palliative chemoradiation) or other palliative interventions for locally recurrent colorectal cancer.

One prospective observational cohort study[10] and three retrospective observational cohort studies[11][12][13] were identified that reported outcomes for patients with locally recurrent rectal cancer who underwent different management strategies:

- A US prospective cohort study[10] reported the outcomes of 105 patients with locally recurrent rectal cancer, of whom 62 (59%) underwent curative surgery and 43 (41%) underwent non-curative treatment. Of the 43 patients in the non-curative treatment group, 13 (12%) underwent non-curative surgery where an exploratory laparotomy was undertaken in conjunction with biopsies, intestinal bypass or diversion, and 30 (29%) underwent non-surgical treatment with chemoradiation, brachytherapy or supportive care. Duration of follow-up was not reported.[10]
- A UK retrospective cohort study[11] included 127 patients with locally recurrent rectal cancers, of whom 22 (16%) had both synchronous local and systemic recurrence. The type of primary resection varied and included prior anterior resection (69%), abdominoperineal excision (15%), Hartmann's procedure (5%), pelvic exenteration (5%), proctocolectomy (4%), and local excision (2%). Seventy (55%) patients were offered curative surgery. Patients who were radiotherapy-naïve were also offered preoperative long-course chemoradiation. Patients with node-positive disease on imaging and patients with a threatened margin were also offered neoadjuvant chemotherapy prior to surgery. Of 70 patients who underwent curative surgery, 45 (64%) had a clear resection margin (R0), 14 (20%) had a microscopically involved margin (R1) and 11 (16%) had macroscopic residual disease (R2). Of the 57 (45%) patients who did not undergo surgery, 26 had non-resectable disease, 15 had extensive metastatic disease that precluded curative resection, 6 were unfit for surgery, 3 declined further surgery and a further 7 patients were awaiting further assessments. Mean follow-up was 3 years.[11]
- A Korean retrospective cohort study[12] included 67 patients with locally recurrent rectal cancer of whom 45 underwent curative resection and 22 underwent chemoradiation alone. Three of the 45 patients who underwent curative surgery also received pre-operative chemoradiation, while the remaining 42 received postoperative chemoradiation. For the 45 patients who underwent curative surgery, resection margins were R0 in 19 (42%) patients, R1 in 24 (53%) and R2 in 2 (4%). Regardless of the treatment intent, following completion of treatment, 59 of 67 patients also received maintenance chemotherapy with flouropyrimidine, irinotecan or oxaliplatin. Median follow up was 41 months (range 16–108 months).[12]
- Another Korean retrospective cohort study[13] reported on the outcomes of 62 patients who had locally recurrent rectal cancer following some form of total mesorectal excision, whether sphincter sparing or not. Of these patients, 23 (37%) underwent curative resection with or without preoperative chemoradiation, while 39 (63%) underwent palliative treatment: 15 (38%) had palliative resection, 20, (51%) had palliative chemoradiation, and 4 (10%) had supportive care. Preoperative chemoradiation for the curative resection group was administered for patients who were radiotherapy naïve. In patients who previously received radiation for their primary rectal cancer, radiotherapy was restricted to the recurrence alone using 3-dimensional conformal techniques. Median follow-up was 49 months, with a range of 8–120 months.[13]

All studies were at high risk of bias. No studies comparing management strategies for locally recurrent colon cancer were identified.

The search strategy, inclusion and exclusion criteria, and quality assessment are described in detail in the Technical report.

Back to top

### 16.3.2.1 Perioperative mortality, morbidity and adverse events

Treatment-associated mortality, morbidity and adverse events outcomes were reported only by the two Korean studies.[12][13]

The study comparing curative resection with chemoradiation alone[12] reported no severe grade I to grade III complications associated with chemoradiation. Surgical adverse events were not reported.

The other study[13] reported no perioperative mortality. Of the 38 patients who underwent either curative or palliative surgery, 12 (31.6%) experienced postoperative complications: wound complications (6), intestinal obstruction (2), anastomotic leakage (1), enterocutaneous fistula (1), and pelvic abscess (1).[13]

Back to top

### 16.3.2.2 Survival outcomes

Three studies[11][12][13] reported overall survival, while two studies[10][11] reported median survival and two [11] [12] reported locoregional relapse-free survival.

The UK retrospective cohort study[11] reported 3-year overall survival rates of 69%, 56% and 20% for patients who had R0, R1 and R2 resections respectively. This difference between the three groups was statistically significant (p=0.011).[11]

Both Korean studies[12][13] reported 5-year overall survival rates. Lee et al reported no survival difference between surgically treated patients and patients who received chemoradiation alone (53% versus 41%; p = 0.181).[12] Park et al reported a significantly higher 5-year survival among surgically treated patients than among those who did not undergo curative resection (35% versus 0%; p = 0.0002).[13]

Median survival has not been reached by the end of their 3-year follow up but was 24 months amongst patients who underwent a R2 resection.[11]

Median survival in the US prospective cohort study [10] was 7.1 years (85.2 months) in patients within the curative surgery group, compared with 1.4 years (16.8 months) among patients treated non-curatively and 1.9 years (22.8 months) among patients treated non-surgically.[10]

The UK retrospective cohort study[11] reported a non-significant increase 3-year locoregional relapse-free survival in the curative surgery group compared with the non-curative group (80% versus 60%; p = 0.824).[11]

The Korean study comparing curative resection with chemoradiation alone[12] reported no significant difference in 5-year locoregional relapse-free survival rates between the curative surgery group and the non-curative group (16% versus 5%; p = 0.113).[12]

### 16.3.2.3 Quality-of-life outcomes

The US prospective cohort study[10] was the only study that reported quality-of-life outcomes, measured using the Brief Pain Inventory (BPI) and FACT-C, a colorectal cancer specific quality of life measure.[10] The only domain that demonstrated statistically significant differences between treatment groups was 'physical well-being', which was largely preserved among curative surgery patients but declined rapidly in patients who received non-curative or non-surgical treatments ($p = 0.049$).[10]

Pain scores did not differ between treatment groups and did not adversely affect the use of restricted narcotic medications.[10]

Back to top

## 16.3.3 Evidence summary and recommendations

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| In observational studies in patients with recurrent rectal cancer, curative surgery resulted in significantly better overall survival, relapse-free survival and distant metastasis-free survival than other management strategies. | III-2 | [10], [11], [13] |
| In an observational study of patients with recurrent rectal cancer, overall quality-of-life score was not different between patients undergoing curative surgery and non-curative treatments, with the exception that better physical well-being was seen amongst patients who underwent curative surgery. | III-2 | [10] |
| In an observational study, pain intensity and interference in daily life were not significantly different between patients undergoing curative surgery and non-curative treatments for recurrent rectal cancer. | III-2 | [10] |
| In an observational study of patients with recurrent rectal cancer, curative surgery was associated with significant treatment morbidity. | III-2 | [13] |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| Referral to a centre with the necessary expertise to perform curative surgery (also known as pelvic exenteration) should be considered for patients with isolated local recurrence of rectal cancer. | **D** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| Re-operative surgery for locally recurrent rectal cancer should only be offered after due consideration of, and discussion with the patient about, the potential survival advantage, quality-of-life outcomes, and potential treatment-related morbidity. | **D** |

**Consensus-based recommendation**

Patients who have not previously received radiotherapy should be considered for neoadjuvant chemoradiation prior to re-operative surgery.

**Practice point**

Patients with locally recurrent colorectal cancer should be referred to a centre with the expertise in the management of these cancers.

**Practice point**

All patients with locally recurrent colorectal cancer should be discussed at a multi-disciplinary team meeting with clinicians who have the expertise in the management of such malignancies. These meetings should review the patient's previous histology and relevant imaging prior to making an appropriate clinical recommendation.

**Practice point**

Re-operative surgery for locally recurrent colorectal cancer can be associated with significant morbidity. As such, all re-resections should only be offered when cure is considered possible.

**Practice point**

The key factor in achieving long-term survival in patients with locally recurrent colorectal cancer is a complete resection with clear resection margins (R0 margins), which is an important consideration when making clinical decision about disease resectability.

Back to top

## 16.3.3.1 Considerations in making these recommendations

Inclusion of the UK study that included patients with systemic recurrence as well as synchronous local recurrence did not alter the outcomes of the review.

Although the systematic review did not identify any suitable studies that compared curative surgery (with or without radiation and with or without chemotherapy) with non-curative treatments for locally recurrent colon cancer, the same treatment principles that apply to patients with recurrent rectal cancer are likely to be applicable to patients with locally recurrent colon cancer.

Considering the available evidence for re-operative surgery for locally recurrent colorectal cancers, it is unlikely that large randomised controlled trials will ever be performed in these patients.

Back to top

## 16.3.3.2 Health system implications

### 16.3.3.2.1 Clinical practice

The management of patients with locally recurrent colorectal cancer requires a multidisciplinary approach. The expertise needed is not restricted to surgeons alone. Expert radiologists to review the relevant pre-operative imaging so as to allow clinicians to arrive at the appropriate recommendation is important. The peri-operative management requires an experienced multi-disciplinary team comprised not just of clinicians but also allied health members and senior nurses to manage the complex peri-operative complications that may arise. Demonstration of improved survival outcomes without any compromise to long-term patient quality of life may result in an increased interest in these complex resections. This in turn may lead to increased referrals to centres with the necessary expertise and an increase in workload. This may also require establishment of more expert centres to ensure equity of care and services to patients in regional areas.

Back to top

#### 16.3.3.2.2 Resourcing

The recommendation to refer patients with locally recurrent colorectal cancer to a centre with the necessary expertise to perform curative surgery may necessitate the establishment of more expert centres. These expert centres will require more experienced surgeons and other members of the multidisciplinary team. These expert centres are also likely to be located in metropolitan cities where the large tertiary referral centres are located, which necessarily means that patients are still having to travel long distances for treatment.

#### 16.3.3.2.3 Barriers to implementation

No barriers to the implementation of these recommendations are envisaged.

Back to top

## 16.3.4 Discussion

### 16.3.4.1 Unresolved issues

One of the unresolved issues in locally recurrent colorectal cancer remains patient selection for surgery. Because a clear resection margin is the key determinant of long term survival, it is currently the most important criteria that most surgeons rely on when determining disease resectability and patient suitability for surgery. Whether or not there are other disease factors that play an important role in patient selection remains unclear. Furthermore, the role of palliative resections in selected patients with intractable symptoms remains unclear.

The role of adjuvant therapy following curative surgery is also unclear. Because of the long recovery times associated with most re-operative procedures, it is not uncommon that many patients remain unwell for consideration of adjuvant therapy after surgery within conventional time frames for chemotherapy. Whether or not these patients benefit from adjuvant therapy is not clear and warrant further evaluation.

Quality-of-life outcomes and other functional outcomes have not been well studied in patients with locally recurrent colorectal cancers. These outcomes need to be evaluated as part of a prospective study.

Back to top

### 16.3.4.2 Studies currently underway

We are not aware of any large randomised trials currently underway comparing curative surgery to non-curative treatment options. There are, however, studies currently underway to examine the role of adjuvant therapy in patients with recurrent colorectal cancer and also vaccine trials in these patients to determine its utility.

Prospective quality-of-life studies are continuing drawing on patients with locally advanced and locally recurrent malignancies of the pelvis.

Studies evaluating prognostic factors (such as CEA, time to recurrence and other disease factors) are also underway and should facilitate future decision making about patient selection.

### 16.3.4.3 Future research priorities

Future research should look to facilitate patient selection and refine patient treatment (e.g. adjuvant therapy), rather than defining the role of curative surgery which, within the confines of existing literature, has demonstrated improved survival relative to non-curative treatment options.

Next section: management of metastatic resectable colorectal cancer

Back to top

## 16.3.5 References

1. ↑ Read TE, Mutch MG, Chang BW, et al. *Locoregional recurrence and survival after curative resection of adenocarcinoma of the colon.* Journal of the American College of Surgeons 2002;195:33-40 Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12113543.
2. ↑ Hohenberger W, Weber K, Matzel K, Papadopoulos T, Merkel S. *Standardized surgery for colonic cancer: complete mesocolic excision and central ligation--technical notes and outcome.* Colorectal disease : the official journal of the Association of Coloproctology of Great Britain and Ireland 2009;11:354-64; discussion 64-5. Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19016817.
3. ↑ van Gijn W, Marijnen CA, Nagtegaal ID, Kranenbarg EM, Putter H, Wiggers T, et al. *Preoperative radiotherapy combined with total mesorectal excision for resectable rectal cancer: 12-year follow-up of the multicentre, randomised controlled TME trial.* Lancet Oncol 2011 Jun;12(6):575-82 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21596621.
4. ↑ Sauer R, Becker H, Hohenberger W, Rödel C, Wittekind C, Fietkau R, et al. *Preoperative versus postoperative chemoradiotherapy for rectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 2004 Oct 21;351(17):1731-40 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15496622.
5. ↑ Bowne WB, Lee B, Wong WD, et al.. *Operative salvage for locoregional recurrent colon cancer after curative resection: an analysis of 100 cases.* Diseases of the colon and rectum 2005;48:897-909. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15785892.
6. ↑ [6.0] [6.1] Austin KK, Young JM, Solomon MJ. *Quality of life of survivors after pelvic exenteration for rectal cancer.* Dis Colon Rectum 2010 Aug;53(8):1121-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20628274.
7. ↑ Young JM, Badgery-Parker T, Masya LM, King M, Koh C, Lynch AC, et al. *Quality of life and other patient-reported outcomes following exenteration for pelvic malignancy.* Br J Surg 2014 Feb;101(3):277-87 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24420909.
8. ↑ [8.0] [8.1] Choy I, Young JM, Badgery-Parker T, Masya LM, Shepherd HL, Koh C, et al. *Baseline quality of life predicts pelvic exenteration outcome.* ANZ J Surg 2015 Dec 21 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26687437.
9. ↑ [9.0] [9.1] Koh CE, Badgery-Parker T, Salkeld G, Young JM, Heriot AG, Solomon MJ. *Cost-effectiveness of pelvic exenteration for locally advanced malignancy.* Br J Surg 2016 Oct;103(11):1548-56 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27559684.

10. ↑ 10.00 10.01 10.02 10.03 10.04 10.05 10.06 10.07 10.08 10.09 10.10 10.11 10.12 You YN, Habiba H, Chang GJ, Rodriguez-bigas MA, Skibber JM. *Prognostic value of quality of life and pain in patients with locally recurrent rectal cancer.* Ann Surg Oncol 2011 Apr;18(4):989-96 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21132391.
11. ↑ 11.00 11.01 11.02 11.03 11.04 11.05 11.06 11.07 11.08 11.09 11.10 11.11 Bhangu A, Ali SM, Cunningham D, Brown G, Tekkis P. *Comparison of long-term survival outcome of operative vs nonoperative management of recurrent rectal cancer.* Colorectal Dis 2013 Feb;15(2):156-63 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23190113.
12. ↑ 12.00 12.01 12.02 12.03 12.04 12.05 12.06 12.07 12.08 12.09 12.10 Lee JH, Kim DY, Kim SY, Park JW, Choi HS, Oh JH, et al. *Clinical outcomes of chemoradiotherapy for locally recurrent rectal cancer.* Radiat Oncol 2011 May 20;6:51 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21595980.
13. ↑ 13.00 13.01 13.02 13.03 13.04 13.05 13.06 13.07 13.08 13.09 13.10 Park JK, Kim YW, Hur H, Kim NK, Min BS, Sohn SK, et al. *Prognostic factors affecting oncologic outcomes in patients with locally recurrent rectal cancer: impact of patterns of pelvic recurrence on curative resection.* Langenbecks Arch Surg 2009 Jan;394(1):71-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18663464.

Back to top

## 16.3.6 Appendices

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| View recommendation components | View pending evidence | View body of evidence | View all comments | View literature search |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| View PICO | NHMRC Evidence statement form MNG13 | Systematic review report MNG13 |

Back to top

# 16.4 Management of metastatic resectable CRC (MNG14)

**Contents**

## 16.4.1 Background

Systemic recurrence may occur in up to 40% of patients after curative treatment of their primary colorectal cancer.[1] Although less common, some patients may also present with stage IV disease at the time of initial presentation.

Liver and lungs are the most common sites of metastases. Liver and lung metastases may be amendable to curative resection, thereby improving survival. With improved imaging, surgical technique, understanding of what drives long-term survival, as well as improved chemotherapy options, clinicians are now increasingly aggressive with the oncological management of these metastases.

Bony metastases, brain metastases, other soft tissue metastases and metastases to distant, non-draining nodal basins such as the para-aortic nodes, are less common. Although palliative interventions may be required to prevent complications, metastases at these sites are generally not amendable to curative surgical interventions.

While liver resection has been accepted as the standard of care for patients with resectable liver metastases, the role of curative resection at other sites remains unclear.

The purpose of this review was to determine the role of curative surgery in patients with synchronous or metachronous metastatic disease in patients with colorectal cancer.

Back to top

## 16.4.2 Systematic review evidence

*In patients with resectable synchronous or metachronous metastatic colorectal cancer, what are the outcomes of surgical resection, with or without chemotherapy, when compared with non-surgical /palliative interventions (overall survival, disease-free survival, progression-free survival, quality of life and complications)? (MNG14)*

A systematic review was performed to compare outcomes of surgical resection (with or without chemotherapy) with non-surgical or palliative interventions in the management of metastatic colorectal cancer. The outcomes of interest included survival, disease free survival, quality of life, and complications.

Five cohort studies were identified, all of which involved patients with liver metastases:

- An European Organization for Research Treatment of Cancer (EORTC) multicentre cohort study [2] reported outcomes in 356 patients, of whom 263 underwent hepatectomy and 93 received palliative treatments. The most commonly performed liver resections were segmentectomies (46%) and hemihepatectomies (34.6%), followed by wedge resections of the liver (8.7%). Palliative treatment included chemotherapy (91%) and radiofrequency ablation (6%). Patients in the palliative group were twice as likely to have symptomatic hepatic disease (19% versus 8.4%) and were less likely to have disease detected as part of surveillance (31% versus 58.6%), compared with the hepatectomy group, which suggests that these patients had more extensive disease at diagnosis. The primary objective of this study was to test the validity and reliability of the EORTC Cancer Quality of Life questionnaire liver module (QLQ-LMC21), an EORTC quality-of-life instrument for patients with liver metastases. Follow-up was limited to 3 months only, as the QLQ-LMC21 was re-administered after treatment.[2]
- A Japanese single-centre cohort study [3] reported outcomes in 41 patients with synchronous liver metastatic disease (defined as liver metastases that occurred within 12 months of resection of the primary colorectal cancer), of whom 15 (37%) underwent liver resection and 26 (63%) received palliative treatment. The main aim of the study was to evaluate the benefit of alternating hepatic artery infusion and systemic chemotherapy in patients who did and did not undergo hepatectomy. Of the hepatectomy group, seven patients underwent synchronous resection of the metastatic disease and the primary colorectal cancer. Although the authors did not define what constituted disease that was amendable to simultaneous liver and colorectal resection, they referred to Japanese guidelines for managing colorectal cancer. Duration of follow-up was 3 years.[3]
- An Australian study [4] using data from the South Australian Metastatic Colorectal Cancer Database reported outcomes for 455 patients with liver-only metastases who underwent either the combination of chemotherapy and surgery with curative intent (121), surgery alone with curative intent (87), or chemotherapy alone (247). The cohort included 317 patients (69.7%) with synchronous liver metastases and 139 (30.5%) with metachronous liver metastases. The large proportion of patients with synchronous liver metastases in this study suggests that it is much more likely for patients with metachronous liver metastases to receive no intervention or to have metastatic disease not confined to the liver alone. Clear resection margins at hepatectomy were achieved in 86.2% of patients who underwent surgery alone and 95.9% of those who received combinational therapy ($p = 0.038$). In patients treated with chemotherapy and surgery, chemotherapy regimens varied considerably and were most commonly oxaliplatin-based. Timing of chemotherapy was preoperative (33.9%), perioperative (26.4%), or postoperative (37.2%). Median follow-up was 16.7 months.[4]

- A US single-centre cohort study based on Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center's prospectively maintained surgical and interventional radiology databases [5] reported outcomes in 52 patients with solid liver metastases of colorectal cancer, of whom 30 underwent non-anatomic wedge resection of the liver, with or without adjuvant systemic chemotherapy, and 22 underwent radiofrequency ablation, which routinely included tract ablation. The main aim of the study was to compare outcomes between non-anatomic wedge resections of the liver with radiofrequency ablation of solitary liver metastases. The surgical database identified 1144 patients with liver metastatic disease from colorectal cancer, of whom 580 patients had solitary liver metastases and only 30 (2.6%) underwent a non-anatomic wedge resection of the liver. Patients undergoing radiofrequency ablation were much more likely to have previously undergone liver resection(s) than those undergoing non-anatomic wedge resection (55% versus 23%; $p < 0.01$). Follow-up was carried out at 3- to 6-monthly intervals, with routine imaging for 2–3 years after treatment.[5]
- A Polish single-centre cohort study study [6] reported outcomes for 130 patients with synchronous (50; 38%) or metachronous (80; 62%) liver metastases who underwent either liver resection with or without adjuvant systemic chemotherapy (96 patients), or palliative radiofrequency ablation with or without palliative liver resection (34 patients). Of the resection group, 48 underwent hemihepatectomies, 28 underwent segmentectomies and 20 underwent metastasectomies. R0 resection (defined R0 as a microscopically clear resection margin including cases where the margins were clear by < 1 mm) was achieved in 78 (81%) of patients and 18 (19%) of patients had a R1 resection margin. Postoperatively, 25 (26%) patients in the resection group received adjuvant chemotherapy. Overall, the mean follow-up period was 39.3 months (range 2–156 months). Group-specific follow-up, however, was considerably longer for patients in the liver resection group (mean 44 months, range 6–156 months) than for the thermoablation group (mean 26 months, range 2–67 months).

All five cohort studies were at high risk of bias.[2][3][4][5][6] No eligible studies were found that compared strategies for managing metastatic disease involving other organs.

The search strategy, inclusion and exclusion criteria, and quality assessment are described in detail in the Technical report.

Back to top

## 16.4.2.1 Survival outcomes

Survival outcomes were reported by four studies: the Japanese cohort study,[3] the South Australian Metastatic Colorectal Cancer Database study,[4] the Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center database study,[5] and the Polish cohort study.[6] Overall, survival outcomes favoured the curative treatment group.

Back to top

#### 16.4.2.1.1 Overall survival

All four studies reported overall survival. All studies reported improved overall survival in the curative group relative to the non-curative group:

- In the Japanese cohort study, overall survival rates were higher in the hepatectomy group than the palliative group at 1 year (90% versus 63%), 2 years (72% versus 55%) and 3 years (52% versus 0%), but statistical analysis was not reported.[3]
- In the South Australian Metastatic Colorectal Cancer Database study, 1-year overall survival rates were 95.1% in the surgery alone group, 98.3% in the surgery plus adjuvant chemotherapy group, and 63.8% in the palliative group.13 At 3 years, overall survival was 73.8% in the surgery alone group, 73.7% in the surgery plus adjuvant chemotherapy group, and 19.5% in the palliative group. Statistical analysis was not reported.[4]
- In the Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center database study, overall survival at 1 year was 100% in both groups, but this rapidly declined in the non-curative group to 69% at 2 and 27% at 3 years, compared with 88% and 82% in the curative group at 2 and 3 years, respectively. Statistical analysis was not reported.[5]
- The Polish cohort study reported significantly higher overall survival rates in the liver resection group than the palliative radiofrequency ablation group at 3 years (64.5% versus 33%) and at 5 years (46.6% versus 9.5%) ($p = 0.002$ for both comparisons).[6]

Back to top

#### 16.4.2.1.2 Disease-free survival

Disease-free survival was reported by the Polish cohort study only for the curative group: 32% at 3 years and 30.5% at 5 years.[6]

#### 16.4.2.1.3 Progression-free survival

Progression-free survival was reported only by the Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center database study. At 1-year follow-up, progression free survival rates were 88% in the curative group and 29% in the non-curative group. At 2-year follow-up progression-free survival rates were 55% in the curative group and 18% in the non-curative group.[5] Statistical analyses were not reported.

Back to top

#### 16.4.2.1.4 Mean survival

Mean survival was reported only by the Japanese cohort study, which reported a significantly longer survival in the curative group compared with the non-curative group (1441 days versus 748 days; $p = 0.038$).[3]

### 16.4.2.2 Perioperative mortality, morbidity and adverse events

Complications were reported by only two studies: the Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center database study[5] and the Polish cohort study.[6]

In both studies, complication rates were significantly higher in the curative group, compared with the non-curative group.

The Memorial Sloan-Kettering Cancer Center database study[5] reported a significantly higher rate of major complications of in the curative group than the non-curative group (14% versus 4%; ($p < 0.01$).[5]

The Polish cohort study[6] reported a post-operative complication rate of 24.9% in the curative group, compared with a post-operative complication rate of 8.7% in the non-curative group.15 Rates for all complications were higher in the curative group. The most common were sepsis pneumonia, wound infection and urinary tract infection (13.5%), followed by intestinal complications and prolonged biliary drainage (5.2% each) and postoperative bleeding (1%). No statistical comparisons between groups were made.[6]

Back to top

### 16.4.2.3 Quality-of-life outcomes

Only the EORTC study[2] reported quality-of-life outcomes, measured using the EORTC QLQ-C30 questionnaire, for which reduction in functional or global health status score equates to worse function or quality of life while greater symptom status scores equates to higher level of symptomatology.

For patients in the hepatectomy group, there was a reduction in the global quality of life score as well as a reduction in scores in three of five domains (physical function, role function and social function, but not emotional function). These decreases in scores were all statistically significant for this group (p values ranged from $< 0.001$ to 0.033). This contrasts with patients in the palliative treatment group, where the only domain which was affected was the physical function domain which declined ($p < 0.001$).[2]

At baseline, patients in the palliative group had worse symptoms (pain, fatigue, and nausea and vomiting) measured using symptom scores, compared with patients in the hepatectomy group. Although symptoms worsened for all patients at 3 months compared with pre-treatment levels, patients in the hepatectomy group had a greater increase in symptom severity compared with patients in the palliative group. This difference was statistically significant for all three symptoms in the hepatectomy group only (p-values ranging from $< 0.001$-0.002).[2]

Quality of life and symptoms were also measured using the EORTC QLQ-LMC21 questionnaire.[2] At baseline, patients in the palliative group also generally had worse symptoms in most aspects (nutritional problems, fatigue, pain, emotional problems, weight loss, taste problems, dry mouth, jaundice, social problems and sexual problems) compared with patients in the hepatectomy group, consistent with more advanced disease at baseline. At 3 months, patients in both groups had worsening of symptoms, except for emotional problems in the palliative group and talking problems in both treatment groups, where there was either no change or slight improvement.

The deterioration in symptoms were slightly greater in the hepatectomy group compared to the palliative group (p-value range from <0.001 to 0.459), with the exception of taste problems, dry mouth, sore mouth, peripheral neuropathy, talking problems and sexual problems, where the deterioration was greater for the palliative group (p-value range from <0.001 to 0.658).[2]

It is however also noteworthy that this study was designed to validate the EORTC QLQ-LMC21. The follow up time period of only 3 months was probably insufficient to allow full recovery of quality of life after surgery in the liver resection group which in turn accounts for the worse quality of life in the short term. The short follow up period in this study is a limitation of the study. Furthermore, despite the statistical differences between groups, the minimal important difference was not clear. Therefore, whether or not the differences were also clinically significant is somewhat unclear.[7]

Back to top

## 16.4.3 Evidence summary and recommendations

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| In observational studies of patients with hepatic metastases, liver resection with or without adjuvant therapy improved survival, compared with non-curative treatment options. | III-2 | [3], [4], [5], [6] |
| In an observational study with a limited follow up of 3 months of patients with hepatic metastases, liver resection, with or without adjuvant therapy, was associated with a faster decline in quality of life compared with palliative treatment. However whether or not these changes were also clinically relevant is unclear. | III-2 | [2] |
| In observational studies of patients with hepatic metastases, liver resection was associated with higher rates of complications compared with non-curative treatment options. | III-2 | [5], [6] |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| In patients with resectable liver metastases, liver resection should be offered, as this improves overall and progression free survival. | **D** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| Patients referred for liver resection should be counselled about the potential complications associated with liver resection in comparison with non-curative treatments. | **D** |

**Consensus-based recommendation**

Where possible, patients should receive adjuvant therapy following liver resection, so as to reduce the likelihood of further local or systemic recurrences.

**Consensus-based recommendation**

Patients with liver metastases should be discussed in an experienced multi-disciplinary team because of the ongoing progress and evolution in the surgical options available to these patients. Broadly speaking, patients with liver metastases may be sub-classified into one of three categories based on the extent of their disease. Those with definitely resectable disease, borderline resectable disease and irresectable disease. The current systematic review supports liver resection in patients who belong to the definitely resectable category. Patients in the borderline resectable category should be offered chemotherapy as the disease may become resectable following a period of neoadjuvant chemotherapy. This highlights the importance of assessment by an experienced multi-disciplinary team.

**Consensus-based recommendation**

In patients with pulmonary metastases, pulmonary resection improves locoregional control and may improve survival.

**Consensus-based recommendation**

Systemic adjuvant chemotherapy following complete resection of pulmonary metastases may reduce the likelihood of further systemic or local recurrences.

**Consensus-based recommendation**

In patients with liver and lung metastases, curative treatment may still be feasible. Combined or staged resection of the metastases may be possible provided both the liver and lung metastases can be completely resected and after taking into account the anatomic as well as functional considerations of the remnant liver and lung. Furthermore, lung resection may be considered in patients who have previously undergone a liver resection and vice versa. The use of neoadjuvant chemotherapy with subsequent restaging may also be considered in patients with synchronous liver and lung metastases prior to offering definitive resection.

**Consensus-based recommendation**

In patients with other isolated metastases, metasectomy may be appropriate in a well-informed patient after appropriate investigations and discussion in a multi-disciplinary team meeting.

**Practice point**

Patients with isolated liver metastases should be referred to a centre with expertise in the management of these malignancies, for consideration of liver resection, if appropriate.

**Practice point**

Following curative treatment of liver metastases, patients need ongoing regular follow-up so as to permit early detection of further recurrences that may be amendable to further therapy.

Back to top

### 16.4.3.1 Considerations in making these recommendations

In patients with liver metastases, a clear resection margin is the most important factor that predicts for survival benefit and reduces the likelihood of further local recurrences within the liver.

Although the systematic review did not identify any suitable studies that compared curative surgery (with or without chemoradiation) for pulmonary metastases, the same principles that applies to patients with liver metastases are likely to be applicable to patients with pulmonary metastases. At present, patients should be considered for pulmonary resection provided the pulmonary metastases can be resected with clear margins.

An important consideration when offering liver or lung resection is ensuring that the remnant liver or lung retains adequate functional capacity. Multiple techniques (e.g. portal vein embolization or ligation) have been described to encourage hemi hypertrophy of the liver so as to increase remnant liver size and functional capacity. Some of these techniques remain experimental and more studies are needed to evaluate the safety of these techniques.

## 16.4.3.2 Health system implications

### 16.4.3.2.1 Clinical practice

The management of patients with metastatic disease requires a multidisciplinary approach. The expertise needed is not restricted to surgeons alone and includes experienced radiologists, medical and radiation oncologists. The input from each member will allow clinicians to arrive at the appropriate recommendation which should be individually tailored to the patient's disease. These guidelines and recommendations may result in more referrals to tertiary referral centres and may therefore increase the workload of these centres.

### 16.4.3.2.2 Resourcing

The peri-operative management of these patients can be complex and typically requires the input of intensive care physicians, rehabilitation physicians, pain physicians as well as senior nursing and allied health members. With increased awareness and demand, there may be the need for more experienced centres to be established.

### 16.4.3.2.3 Barriers to implementation

No barriers to the implementation of these recommendations are envisaged.

Back to top

# 16.4.4 Discussion

## 16.4.4.1 Unresolved issues

### 16.4.4.1.1 Liver metastases

In patients with multiple liver metastases, the extent of liver resection needs to be balanced against the functioning capacity of the liver remnant so as to avoid liver failure. Techniques such as portal vein embolisation or ligation to trigger hemi-hypertrophy of the non-ligated half of the liver from the ischaemic insult have been increasingly utilised (see Management of non-resectable locally recurrent disease and metastatic disease). Although feasibility and safety of such techniques have been demonstrated, these techniques have not been fully evaluated in comparative studies.

The same principles of treatment may be applied to patients who present with stage IV disease at the time of presentation where there is isolated liver metastases alone. However, unlike primary non-metastatic colorectal cancer, the appropriate sequence of interventions remain unclear. These patients often require chemotherapy, resection of their colorectal primary and liver resection at some stage. Whether a liver first approach is superior or whether a more conventional surgical approach is more appropriate is unclear. Currently, clinicians usually tailor treatment sequence to the individual patient's disease, but the evidence behind this approach is also somewhat limited.

The role of adjuvant therapy in reducing further systemic or local recurrences needs to be defined and warrants further evaluation in prospective randomised trials.

Back to top

### 16.4.4.1.2 Other sites of metastasis

There is inadequate evidence at present to inform recommendations about the role of lung resection in patients with resectable pulmonary colorectal metastases. A large multicentre randomised trial evaluating the role of pneumonectomy for colorectal metastases has recently been completed and the results of this are awaited.[8]

Similarly contentious are resection of other colorectal metastases such as para-aortic node resection, and bony resection for seemingly isolated metastases. As isolated metastases involving these sites are rare, multicentre collaborations are likely necessary to gain insight into the role of these resections.

## 16.4.4.2 Studies currently underway

A large multicentre randomised trial evaluating the role of pneumonectomy in patients with resectable pulmonary metastases have recently been completed.[8] Outcomes are awaited and will be highly informative about the role of pneumonectomy in these patients.

Back to top

### 16.4.4.3 Future research priorities

Metasectomy of metastases involving sites other than liver needs to be evaluated to determine the utility of surgical resection at these sites.

In patients with stage IV disease with liver metastases at presentation, the optimal treatment sequence needs further evaluation. Techniques such as portal vein ligation, embolisation or other techniques to stimulate liver hypertrophy, so as to boost potential functional capacity of the liver, warrant further evaluation.

Back to top

## 16.4.5 References

1. ↑ Manfredi S, Lepage C, Hatem C, Coatmeur O, Faivre J, Bouvier AM. *Epidemiology and management of liver metastases from colorectal cancer.* Ann Surg 2006 Aug;244(2):254-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16858188.
2. ↑ 2.0 2.1 2.2 2.3 2.4 2.5 2.6 2.7 2.8 Blazeby JM, Fayers P, Conroy T, Sezer O, Ramage J, Rees M, et al. *Validation of the European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer QLQ-LMC21 questionnaire for assessment of patient-reported outcomes during treatment of colorectal liver metastases.* Br J Surg 2009 Mar;96(3):291-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19224519.
3. ↑ 3.0 3.1 3.2 3.3 3.4 3.5 3.6 Mukai M, Oida Y, Tajima T, Kishima K, Ninomiya H, Sato S, et al. *Alternating hepatic arterial infusion and systemic chemotherapy for stage IV colorectal cancer with synchronous liver metastasis.* Oncol Rep 2006 Oct;16(4):865-70 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16969507.
4. ↑ 4.0 4.1 4.2 4.3 4.4 4.5 Padman S, Padbury R, Beeke C, Karapetis CS, Bishnoi S, Townsend AR, et al. *Liver only metastatic disease in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer: impact of surgery and chemotherapy.* Acta Oncol 2013 Nov;52(8):1699-706 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24102180.
5. ↑ 5.00 5.01 5.02 5.03 5.04 5.05 5.06 5.07 5.08 5.09 5.10 White RR, Avital I, Sofocleous CT, Brown KT, Brody LA, Covey A, et al. *Rates and patterns of recurrence for percutaneous radiofrequency ablation and open wedge resection for solitary colorectal liver metastasis.* J Gastrointest Surg 2007 Mar;11(3):256-63 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17458595.
6. ↑ 6.0 6.1 6.2 6.3 6.4 6.5 6.6 6.7 6.8 6.9 Zeman M, Maciejewski A, Półtorak S, Kryj M. *Evaluation of outcomes and treatment safety of patients with metastatic colorectal cancer to the liver with estimation of prognostic factors.* Pol Przegl Chir 2013 Jun;85(6):333-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23828415.
7. ↑ Lydick, E. & Epstein, R.S.. *Interpretation of quality of life changes.* Volume 2, Issue 3, pp 221–226 1993.
8. ↑ 8.0 8.1 Treasure T, Fallowfield L, Lees B.. *Pulmonary metastasectomy in colorectal cancer: the PulMiCC trial. Journal of thoracic oncology : official publication of the International Association for the Study of Lung Cancer.* Journal of Thoracic Oncology 2010;5:S203-6 Available from: http://www.jto.org/article/S1556-0864(15)32078-5/abstract.

Back to top

## 16.4.6 Appendices

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| View recommendation components | View pending evidence | View body of evidence | View all comments | View literature search |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| View PICO | NHMRC Evidence statement form MNG14 | Systematic review report MNG14 |

Back to top

# 16.5 Introduction: management of non resectable recurrent metastatic CRC

## 16.5.1 Background

Management of patients with newly diagnosed with metastatic colorectal cancer (mCRC) may be complex, and treatment decisions benefit from multidisciplinary input. The optimal treatment strategy for patients with non-resectable metastatic colorectal cancer is rapidly evolving. Management must be individualised based on the overall medical condition of the patient, the extent and distribution of metastatic disease and the patient's wishes. Among patients with mCRC, curative treatment can only be proposed for those in whom both the primary and distant metastases are resectable either initially or following "conversion" therapy. It is important to identify this group of patients as they have the greatest likelihood of cure. Unfortunately, only a minority of patients are suitable for curative resection; approximately 20% of mCRC patients.[1] The majority of patients will not have disease that can be surgically resected with curative intent. For these patients, the goal of care is generally palliative. Aims may include prolongation of survival, improvement of tumour related symptoms, and maintenance of quality of life.

For an individual patient, defining the goal of treatment informs the choice of first-line systemic treatment and the integration and sequencing of multimodal therapies. Palliative chemotherapy and other systemic therapies can significantly improve overall survival and quality of life, and are the mainstay of therapy for patients with non-resectable metastatic colorectal cancer who have adequate performance status to undergo these

treatments. For select patients with liver limited non-resectable disease, loco-regional liver-directed therapies may be considered. In this situation with goal of therapy is not necessarily cure but may allow discontinuation of standard systemic therapy, with the possibility of a (meaningful) relapse/disease free-interval. There are a number of evolving liver directed therapies to consider including (but not limited to) invasive local ablation (RFA), embolization techniques (particle, bead, Selective internal radiation therapy (SIRT)) and precision radiotherapy (Stereotactic body radiotherapy (SBRT)).

Another important group of mCRC (up to 25% of mCRC patients) are those who at the time of diagnosis of their primary colorectal cancer have synchronous metastases.[2] Initial management of the primary site in patients who present with metastatic disease is controversial. In general, the choice and sequence of treatment is guided by the presence and absence of symptoms from the primary tumour and whether or not the metastases are potentially resectable. Such decisions are usually made by a multidisciplinary team (MDT) with expertise in the management of mCRC.

#### 16.5.1.1 Chapter subsections

Subsections:

- Liver-directed therapies for patients with incurable metastatic colorectal cancer (MNG16)
- How should a synchronous primary be managed in patients with metastatic disease?
- Discussion

## 16.5.2 References

1. ↑ Kopetz S, Chang GJ, Overman MJ, Eng C, Sargent DJ, Larson DW, et al. *Improved survival in metastatic colorectal cancer is associated with adoption of hepatic resection and improved chemotherapy.* J Clin Oncol 2009 Aug 1;27(22):3677-83 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19470929.
2. ↑ Manfredi S, Lepage C, Hatem C, Coatmeur O, Faivre J, Bouvier AM. *Epidemiology and management of liver metastases from colorectal cancer.* Ann Surg 2006 Aug;244(2):254-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16858188.

Back to top

# 16.6 Liver directed therapies, unresectable metastatic CRC (MNG16)

**Contents**

## 16.6.1 Background

The liver is the most common site for metastases of colorectal cancer.[1] Nearly 50% of mCRC patients will develop liver metastases during the course of their disease, with half having hepatic metastases at the time of primary diagnosis and the other half developing metachronous disease.[2] Multiple liver-directed therapies have been trialled in an attempt to improve the long-term outcome for patients with non-resectable metastatic colorectal cancer, and to achieve better control of liver metastases. Current technologies may include:

- Embolisation techniques:
  - selective internal radiation treatment (SIRT)
  - trans-arterial chemoembolization (TACE) (e.g. the use of drug-eluting beads to deliver chemotherapy to the site)
- Invasive thermal ablation with distinct size limitations (e.g. radiofrequency ablation, RFA)
- Hepatic arterial infusion (HAI) of chemotherapy agents
- Conformal radiation treatment techniques (e.g. stereotactic body radiotherapy (SBRT) and high-dose rate brachytherapy).

The roles of liver-directed therapies have not been well defined. Liver-directed therapies are sometimes utilised after the cancer has progressed on systemic therapy but remains limited to the liver, or in addition to systemic therapy in earlier stages of metastatic disease, aiming to ablate all sites of disease. Whether this rationale is valid remains uncertain. Although some of these methods can provide local control, it is unclear whether the sequential use of regional treatments followed by systemic therapy at the time of progression provides better long-term benefit, in terms of duration of symptom control or survival, than systemic therapy alone. Embolisation techniques rely on the unique differential blood supply of the liver, in which hepatic metastases are preferentially supplied by the hepatic artery. These techniques are used for more diffuse liver metastases.

European Society for Medical Oncology (ESMO) consensus guidelines for the management of patients with colorectal cancer (2016)[3], that patients whose disease is not amenable to surgical resection, but who have a limited number of metastases and involved sites (oligometastatic disease), may be considered for local liver ablative treatments as part of a 'situation-adapted' treatment strategy following systemic therapy.

## 16.6.2 Systematic review evidence

*In patients with incurable metastatic colorectal cancer, what are the effects of liver-directed therapies on survival and quality-of-life outcomes, compared with standard care? (MNG16)*

A systematic review was undertaken to evaluate the effects of liver-directed therapies in patients with non-resectable metastatic colorectal cancer.

Seven level II studies were identified that compared liver-directed therapies with systemic therapy alone in colorectal cancer patients with incurable metastatic liver disease.

Seven randomised controlled trials (RCTs) evaluated liver ablative therapies with or without systemic therapy, compared with to systemic therapy alone.

***Selective Internal Radiation Therapy (SIRT)***

- SIRFLOX[4] was a multicentre Australian phase III RCT of systemic chemotherapy with modified FOLFOX (mFOLFOX6) plus or minus selective internal radiation therapy (SIRT) as first-line treatment of patients with non-resectable liver-only or liver-dominant mCRC. Liver-dominant mCRC was defined as the presence of liver metastases and limited lung (fewer than five nodules of ≤ 1 cm diameter or a single nodule of ≤ 1.7 cm diameter), and/or lymph node involvement (a single anatomic area of < 2 cm diameter). Bevacizumab was allowed, combined with mFOLFOX[4], at the investigator's discretionPatients included were WHO performance status 0-1.
- A German open-label phase III RCT[5] compared the combination of SIRT plus intravenous fluorouracil (FU) to FU alone in 44 patients with chemotherapy refractory (5FU, irinotecan and oxaliplatin) liver limited mCRC. Presence of extrahepatic disease was an exclusion factor. Patients enrolled were ECOG 0-2.[5]
- A small Australian phase 2 RCT[6] compared the combination of SIRT (*SIR-Spheres*) plus systemic fluorouracil /leucovorin chemotherapy (FULV) with FULV alone in 21 patients receiving first line therapy for mCRC with liver metastases +/- extrahepatic disease. Patients were WHO performance status <3.[6]

***Radiofrequency Ablation (RFA)***

- An RCT by the European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer (EORTC), the Chemotherapy + Local Ablation Versus Chemotherapy (CLOCC) study[7], compared the combination of radiofrequency ablation (RFA) plus FOLFOX4 with FOLFOX4 alone, and with modified FOLFOX4 with bevacizumab (mFOLFOX4) in 119 patients with non-resectable liver-limited mCRC. Patients with extra hepatic disease were excluded. There

had to be <10 liver metastases, with maximum diameter of 4 cm lesions to be treated by RFA. Metastatic involvement of the liver need to be ≤50% and complete treatment of all liver lesions was judged possible, either by RFA alone or by combination with resection of resectable lesions and RFA of the remaining non-resectable liver deposits. A minority of patients (16%) had prior chemotherapy for liver-only metastatic disease. The CLOCC study was initially designed as a phase III study, but transitioned to a phase II study because of slow accrual.[7]

***Trans arterial Chemoembolisation (TACE)***

- A US phase II multicentre RCT[8] compared the combination of trans arterial chemoembolization (TACE) using irinotecan drug-eluting beads (DEBIRI) plus mFOLFOX plus bevacizumab, with the combination of mFOLFOX plus bevacizumab in 70 patients who were chemotherapy naïve for metastatic disease and had liver-dominant disease (defined as ≥80% of the tumor body burden being confined to the liver) but less than 60% liver replacement by the tumor, and have an Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group performance status score ≤2.[8]
- An Italian multicentre RCT[9] compared DEBIRI with systemic irinotecan, fluorouracil and leucovorin (FOLFIRI) in 74 patients, all were pre-treated, including patients who had received a minimum of 2-3 lines of prior chemotherapy which may have included irinotecan. Patients had liver limited disease occupying up to 50% of the liver with no extrahepatic disease.[9]

***Hepatic Arterial Infusion (HAI)***

- An RCT by the US Cancer and Leukemia Group B (CALGB 9481) evaluated hepatic arterial infusion (HAI): this US study[10] compared hepatic arterial infusion with systemic bolus FULV in 135 treatment naïve patients. Eligible patients had non-resectable liver-limited (occupying <70% of the liver parenchyma) mCRC with no radiologic evidence of extra-hepatic metastatic disease. Patient included were of performance status 0-2 .

There were no RCTs of conformal radiation techniques identified by the systematic review process and thus this form of liver directed therapy is not included in the discussion.

Of these studies, one study had low risk of bias[4] two studies had a moderate risk of bias[6][10], and four studies had a high risk of bias overall.[5][7][8][9]

The search strategy, inclusion and exclusion criteria, and quality assessment are described in detail in the Technical report.

Outcomes reported included tumour response, progression-free survival, overall survival, quality of life, adverse events, and subsequent hepatic surgery resection rates.

Back to top

## 16.6.2.1 Liver-directed therapies - Outcomes

### 16.6.2.1.1 Tumour response

Tumour response outcomes were reported by six of the RCTs.[4][5][6][8][9][10]

***SIRT***

The small Australian SIRT study reported a significantly improved response (both the first integrated and best confirmed tumour responses at 36 months follow-up) with the addition of SIRT to FULV.[6] Compared with the FULV only group, the SIRT treatment group showed greater complete and partial responses and fewer patients with stable disease ($p < 0.001$).8 No disease progression was reported in the treatment group.[6]

The SIRFLOX trial reported a nonsignificant improvement in overall tumour response rate in patients who received SIRT plus chemotherapy patients compared with those who received systemic chemotherapy alone (76.4% versus 68.1%; $p = 0.113$).[4] The improvement in complete response rate approached significance (4.5% versus 1.5%; $p = 0.054$). However, the SIRT group showed significantly better outcomes than the control group for liver response rate (78.7% versus 68.8%; $p = 0.042$) and liver complete response (6% versus 1.9%; $p = 0.02$).[4]

Similarly, the German trial reported that the rate of partial response after a median follow-up of 24.8 months was greater in SIRT group than the non-SIRT group: 10% versus zero; 95% confidence interval (CI) -0.10 to 0.32.[5] The proportion of patients with stable disease was higher in the SIRT group than the non-SIRT group ($p = 0.001$). Fewer patients in the SIRT group showed progressive disease, but statistical analysis of these data was not reported.[5]

***TACE***

The US DEBIRI study[8] reported that patients who received DEBIRI in addition to systemic chemotherapy showed a significant improvement in overall response rates at follow-up intervals of 2 months ($p = 0.01$), 4 months ($p = 0.03$) and 6 months ($p = 0.05$) using Response Evaluation Criteria In Solid Tumors (RECIST v1.1) instrument. There was also a significantly higher overall response rate in the DEBIRI arm at 2 months ($p = 0.01$) and at 12 months' follow-up using Choi's criteria.[8] However, there was no significant difference in overall response between treatment arms at 4 months ($p = 0.09$) and 6 months ($p = 0.12$) using Choi's Criteria.[8] There was also a significantly higher rate of downsizing to resection in the FOLFOX-DEBIRI group than the FOLFOX/bevacizumab arm (35% versus 16%, $p = 0.05$). Statistical analysis was not reported for the other outcomes measured in this study.[8]

The Italian DEBIRI study did not report significant differences in outcomes between patients who received DEBIRI alone and those who received to systemic chemotherapy.[9] Although the statistical significance cannot be confirmed as these weren't reported, the DEBIRI group showed a higher tumour response rate at 50 months' follow-up, less stable disease and fewer with progressive tumours, compared with the group of patients who did not receive DEBIRI.[9]

***HAI***

The CALGB 9481 study reported a substantial improvement in overall tumour response rate with hepatic arterial infusion, compared with systemic chemotherapy at 6 years' follow-up (47% versus 24%, $p = 0.012$).[10] This advantage was observed in the complete and partial response rates. Fewer patients remained with stable disease in the hepatic arterial infusion group than the systemic chemotherapy group, although statistical analysis of these data was not reported.[10]

***RFA***

Tumour response rates associated with RFA were not reported in the CLOCC study.[7]

### 16.6.2.1.2 Progression-free survival

Progression-free survival was reported by all the included RCTs.

***SIRT***

The SIRFLOX trial reported similar median progression-free survival rates in the treatment and control groups at 60 months' follow-up:10.7 months versus 10.2 months, hazard ratio (HR) 0.93 (95% CI 0.77 to 1.12; p = 0.43).[4] In a planned subgroup analysis of patients with liver only metastases there was also no improvement in progression free survival with the addition of SIRT (n=318, HR 0.9 (0.7-1.15)). However, the SIRT group showed a significantly longer median time to liver progression: 20.5 months versus 12.6 months (p = 0.002); HR of 0.69 (95% CI 0.55 to 0.90).[4] Whether this improvement in control of liver metastases will result in improved overall survival is unknown.

The German SIRT trial reported significantly greater median time to progression and time to liver progression at 26 months in the SIRT group compared with the non-SIRT group: HRs 0.51 (95% CI 0.28 to 0.94, p=0.03) and 0.38 (95% CI 0.20 to 0.72, p = 0.003) respectively.[5] This remained the same for the censored median time to liver progression (p = 0.002); HR 0.35 (95% CI 0.18 to 0.69).[5]

The earlier Australian SIRT trial reported significantly longer median time to disease progression at 36 months in the SIRT group than the non-SIRT group (18.6 months versus 3.6 months; p < 0.0005).[6] While the study showed an improvement in progression-free survival with the addition of SIRT to FULV, the small numbers limit interpretation, as does the less conventional chemotherapy comparator.[6]

***RFA***

The CLOCC study[7] reported increased median time to progression in the RFA plus chemotherapy group, compared with the chemotherapy only group (16.8 months versus 9.9 months; p=0.025); HR 0.63 (95% CI 0.42 to 0.95). Progression-free survival at a median follow-up of 4.4 years was significantly higher in the treatment than control group (27.6% versus 10.6%; p = 0.025).[7]

***TACE***

The US DEBIRI study reported that the addition of DEBIRI to systemic chemotherapy achieved a small increase in median time to liver progression at 24 months' follow-up (17 months versus 12 months; p=0.05).[8] However, between group differences were nonsignificant for median progression free survival in the 'Liver non-target liver only' (p = 0.68), median progression free survival for overall extra-hepatic disease and(p = 0.35).median progression-free survival overall (p = 0.18) .[8]

The Italian DEBIRI study[9] reported that, at 50 months' median follow-up, patients who received DEBIRI had significantly longer progression-free survival than the non-DEBIRI group (7 months versus 5 months; p = 0.006) and longer median time to hepatic progression (7 months versus 4 month, p = 0.006). DEBIRI was also associated with a nonsignificant increase in median time to extra-hepatic progression (p=0.64).[9]

***HAI***

The CALGB 9481 study[10] reported a significant increase in progression-free survival in the hepatic arterial infusion group, compared with the systemic chemotherapy group, at 6 years' follow-up (24.4 months versus 20 months, p = 0.034).[10] This effect was also seen at 2 years' follow-up (51% versus 25%), although the statistical significance of this finding was not reported.[10] The CALGB 9481 study reported a significant increase in median time to hepatic progression in the hepatic arterial infusion group, compared with the systemic chemotherapy group, at 3 years' follow-up (p = 0.034).[10] However, a shorter median time to extra-hepatic progression was also observed in the hepatic arterial infusion group than the systemic chemotherapy group (p = 0.029). A nonsignificant difference in median time to progression, favouring the systemic chemotherapy group, was also observed (p = 0.95).[10]

### 16.6.2.1.3 Overall survival

Overall survival was reported by four of the RCTs.[5][6][7][9]

***SIRT***

The Australian SIRT study[6] (n=21) reported significantly greater overall survival in patients who received both SIRT and FULV, compared with those who received FULV only in first line therapy: 29.4 months vs. 12.8 months for patients treated with chemotherapy alone; HR 0.33 (95% CI 0.12 to 0.91; p=0.025). The improvement in survival was not statistically significant and less pronounced for censored data: (HR 0.39 (95% CI 0.14 to 1.13; p = 0.07).[6] While the study showed an improvement in overall survival with the addition of SIRT to FULV, the small numbers limit interpretation, as does the less conventional chemotherapy comparator.

The German SIRT study[5] did not find any significant increase in median overall survival among patients who received SIRT plus 5FU, compared with those who received 5FU only for chemo refractory disease(10 months versus 7.3 months, p = 0.8): HR 0.92 ( 95% CI 0.47 to 1.78).[5]

***RFA***

The CLOCC study reported a small nonsignificant increase in median overall survival at 4.4 years' median follow-up among patients who received RFA than those who did not (45.3 months versus 40.5 months, p = 0.22): HR 0.74 (95% CI 0.46 to 1.19).[7]

***TACE***

The Italian DEBIRI study[9] reported significantly longer overall median survival at 50 months' median follow-up in patients who received DEBIRI, compared with those who received systemic chemotherapy: 22 (95% CI 21 to 23) months versus 15 (95% CI 12 to 18) months (p = 0.031). A difference in median survival favouring DEBIRI was reported at 2 years' follow-up (56% versus 32%) and at 30 months' follow-up (34% versus 9%) and 50 months' follow-up (15% versus 0%), although statistical analyses were not reported.[9]

### 16.6.2.1.4 Resection rate

Resection rates were reported by two RCTs.[4][8]

***SIRT***

The SIRFLOX study reported no significant difference in liver resection rates between the SIRT group and the systemic chemotherapy only group (14.2% versus 13.7%, p = 0.857).[4]

***TACE***

The US DEBRI study reported a substantially higher resection rate in patients who received DEBIRI in addition to systemic chemotherapy, compared with those who received non-DEBIRI regimens, which was of borderline statistical significance (35% versus 6%, p = 0.05).[8]

### 16.6.2.1.5 Adverse events

Adverse event rates were reported by all the RCTs.

***SIRT***

The SIRFLOX study reported that the total rate of adverse events (≥ Grade 3) was higher among the SIRT group than the non-SIRT group at 60 months' follow-up, but this difference was not statistically significant (85.4% versus 73.4%, p = 0.516).[4] The SIRT group showed was a significantly higher incidence of neutropenia (p = 0.004), febrile neutropenia (p = 0.02), thrombocytopenia (p < 0.001), fatigue (p = 0.019) and abdominal pain (p = 0.009).6 There were no significant differences in the rates of other adverse events.[4]

This finding was also seen in the German trial.[5] After 24.8 months' median follow up, there were more reports of gastrointestinal events, neurological and other toxicities in the SIRT group than the non-SIRT group. In contrast to the SIRFLOX findings, fewer Grade ≥ 3 toxicities were reported among patients who received SIRT than those who did not, but this difference was not statistically significant (5% versus 27%, p = 0.1).[5]

The other Australian SIRT study reported that more Grade 3 and 4 toxicity events occurred in SIRT patients than non-SIRT patients (13 versus 5).[6] There were greater reports of granulocytopenia, anorexia, cirrhosis, mucositis and diarrhoea. One death out of the entire trial was attributed to SIRT. No significance was reported for any of these outcomes.[6]

***RFA***

In the CLOCC study the addition of RFA to systemic chemotherapy was associated with numerically higher incidences of Grade 3–4 toxicity compared to systemic treatment alone, although the impact of this finding cannot be determined as statistical analysis was not reported.[7]

***TACE***

In the US study DEBIRI in addition to systemic chemotherapy was associated with significantly greater incidences of serious adverse events than chemotherapy alone ($p = 0.03$).[8] The DEBIRI group also showed numerically greater incidences of chemotherapy-related adverse events, but this difference was not statistically significant ($p = 0.08$). This pattern was seen across total adverse incidence and specific adverse events, but no statistically significant differences were reported. However, there was a consistent trend toward higher incidences of adverse events among patients who received DEBIRI in addition to their standard chemotherapy.[8]

The Italian DEBIRI study reported significantly fewer grade ≥ 3 neutropenia events among patients who received DEBIRI than among those who received FOLFIRI after 50 months' median follow-up (4% versus 44%, $p < 0.0001$).[9]

***HAI***

The CALGB 9481 study reported lower rates of adverse events among patients who received hepatic arterial infusion, compared with those who received systemic chemotherapy, including significantly reductions in neutropenia grade ≥ 3 ($p < 0.0001$) and stomatitis ($p = 0.00002$), and a nonsignificant reduction in diarrhoea ($p = 0.075$).[10] However, bilirubin elevation ≥ 3 mg/dL was reported in a higher proportion of the hepatic arterial infusion group than the systemic chemotherapy ($p = 0.006$).[10]

## 16.6.2.1.6 'Quality of life

Quality-of-life outcomes were reported by four of the RCTs.[6][7][9][10]

***TACE***

The Italian DEBIRI study[9] reported differences in quality-of-life outcomes in favour of DEBIRI compared with FOLFIRI: better physical functioning at 3 months and at 8 months ($p = 0.025$ for both comparisons) and a longer time from treatment to the beginning of decline in quality of life (8 months versus 3 months, $p = 0.0002$).[9]

***SIRT***

The Australian SIRT study[6] reported no significant differences in patient-rated or clinician-rated quality-of-life scores between patients receiving SIRT in addition to FULV and those receiving FULV only.[6]

***RFA*** The CLOCC study[7] reported no significant differences in quality of life between patients receiving radiofrequency ablation in addition to systemic chemotherapy and those receiving chemotherapy alone.

***HAI*** The CALGB 9481 study assessed quality-of-life (physical functioning domain) using the Rand 26-item Health Status Profile.[10] The hepatic arterial infusion group showed improved quality of life, compared with the systemic chemotherapy group, at 3 months (p = 0.038), 6 months (p = 0.024) and among late dropouts at 12 months (p = 0.001). At 18 months' follow-up, overall physical functioning was superior among the hepatic arterial infusion group (62% versus 58%), but statistical analysis was not reported.[10]

Back to top

## 16.6.3 Evidence summary and recommendations

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| Overall, the evidence suggests some benefit to tumour response rate with the use of DEBIRI (TACE), HAI, or the addition of SIRT for colorectal cancer patients with non-resectable liver limited disease, but the clinical relevance of these endpoints remain unclear. | II | [4], [5], [6], [8], [9], [10] |
| There is limited evidence that liver directed therapies prolong progression free survival. Some phase II studies suggest benefit for RFA and DEBIRI, and for SIRT in chemotherapy refractory disease, but there are no phase III studies showing improved PFS for liver directed therapies. | II | [7], [6] |
| Liver directed therapies with RFA and DEBIRI have been shown to improve overall survival in single phase II studies, however there are no phase III studies demonstrating improved overall survival with liver directed therapies. | II | [7], [9] |
| Overall, liver-directed therapies provide little or no benefit in improving quality of life in metastatic colorectal cancer patients with non-resectable liver limited disease. | II | [6], [7], [9], [10] |
| There is inconclusive evidence to suggest a definitive benefit given by liver directed therapies in improving resection rate in colorectal cancer patients with incurable liver metastases. | II | |
| Liver-directed therapies, in combination with systemic chemotherapy, were generally associated with higher incidences of adverse events in treated patients. | II | [4], [5], [6], [7], [8] |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| There is limited evidence to suggest that liver directed therapies – SIRT, RFA, HAI or TACE improve response rates, survival times, resection rates or quality of life in patients with non-resectable liver-limited mCRC. These treatments should be considered in the context of a clinical trial or after multidisciplinary team discussion in centres with expertise in the specific | **D** |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| liver-directed therapy. | |

**Consensus-based recommendation**

In patients with non-resectable liver metastases only (or oligometastatic disease) liver directed techniques can be considered by the MDT based on local experience, patient preference and tumour characteristics. Treating clinicians should have an in-depth discussion with every patient regarding technical complexity, potential outcomes and complications in addition to other therapies available for that patient..

**Practice point**

All patients with metastatic colorectal cancer should be discussed at a multidisciplinary team meeting with clinicians who have expertise in management of metastatic colorectal cancer.

**Practice point**

For patients who could be considered surgical candidates if their metastases were smaller, we suggest initial systemic chemotherapy followed by re-evaluation for surgery.

**Practice point**

Wherever possible, patients considering liver-directed therapies should be enrolled into clinical trials examining these treatments in comparison to standard therapies.

**Practice point**

SIRT in combination with systemic chemotherapy can be used to prolong the time to liver progression but not improve colorectal cancer survival.

Back to top

## 16.6.4 Health system implications

### 16.6.4.1 Clinical practice

Liver-directed therapies are highly specialised therapies which are carried out in centres with the requisite expertise. The management these patients requires multidisciplinary team approach whereby the likely interactions between any prior, concurrent or planned biological, chemotherapeutic, local or loco-regional ablative, surgical, external beam radiation treatment, or radiosurgery should be extensively discussed. It is likely that these expert centres are likely to be located in tertiary referral centres. Consideration would need to be given to equitable access particularly for patients from regional/rural areas.

### 16.6.4.2 Resourcing

The present recommendations would have little effect on current resourcing because they would only affect referral centres with the necessary expertise and infrastructure required to perform liver ablative therapies. Only highly selected group of mCRC would be suitable for such therapies based on current evidence.

### 16.6.4.3 Barriers to implementation

No barriers to the implementation of these recommendations are envisaged

Next section: management synchronous primary in metastatic colorectal cancer

Back to top

## 16.6.5 References

1. ↑ Clark ME, Smith RR. *Liver-directed therapies in metastatic colorectal cancer.* J Gastrointest Oncol 2014 Oct;5(5):374-87 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25276410.
2. ↑ Weitz J, Koch M, Debus J, Höhler T, Galle PR, Büchler MW. *Colorectal cancer.* Lancet 2005 Jan;365(9454): 153-65 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15639298.
3. ↑ Van Cutsem E, Cervantes A, Adam R, Sobrero A, Van Krieken JH, Aderka D, et al. *ESMO consensus guidelines for the management of patients with metastatic colorectal cancer.* Ann Oncol 2016 Aug;27(8): 1386-422 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27380959.
4. ↑ 4.00 4.01 4.02 4.03 4.04 4.05 4.06 4.07 4.08 4.09 4.10 4.11 4.12 4.13 van Hazel GA, Heinemann V, Sharma NK, Findlay MP, Ricke J, Peeters M, et al. *SIRFLOX: Randomized Phase III Trial Comparing First-Line mFOLFOX6 (Plus or Minus Bevacizumab) Versus mFOLFOX6 (Plus or Minus Bevacizumab) Plus Selective Internal Radiation Therapy in Patients With Metastatic Colorectal Cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2016 May 20;34(15):1723-31 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26903575.
5. ↑ 5.00 5.01 5.02 5.03 5.04 5.05 5.06 5.07 5.08 5.09 5.10 5.11 5.12 5.13 5.14 Hendlisz A, Van den Eynde M, Peeters M, Maleux G, Lambert B, Vannoote J, et al. *Phase III trial comparing protracted intravenous fluorouracil infusion alone or with yttrium-90 resin microspheres radioembolization for liver-limited metastatic colorectal cancer refractory to standard chemotherapy.* J Clin Oncol 2010 Aug 10;28(23):3687-94 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20567019.

6. ↑ 6.00 6.01 6.02 6.03 6.04 6.05 6.06 6.07 6.08 6.09 6.10 6.11 6.12 6.13 6.14 6.15 6.16 6.17 6.18 6.19 Van Hazel G, Blackwell A, Anderson J, Price D, Moroz P, Bower G, et al. *Randomised phase 2 trial of SIR-Spheres plus fluorouracil/leucovorin chemotherapy versus fluorouracil/leucovorin chemotherapy alone in advanced colorectal cancer.* J Surg Oncol 2004 Nov 1;88(2):78-85 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15499601.
7. ↑ 7.00 7.01 7.02 7.03 7.04 7.05 7.06 7.07 7.08 7.09 7.10 7.11 7.12 7.13 7.14 Ruers T, Punt C, Van Coevorden F, Pierie JP, Borel-Rinkes I, Ledermann JA, et al. *Radiofrequency ablation combined with systemic treatment versus systemic treatment alone in patients with non-resectable colorectal liver metastases: a randomized EORTC Intergroup phase II study (EORTC 40004).* Ann Oncol 2012 Oct;23(10):2619-26 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22431703.
8. ↑ 8.00 8.01 8.02 8.03 8.04 8.05 8.06 8.07 8.08 8.09 8.10 8.11 8.12 8.13 8.14 8.15 Martin RC 2nd, Scoggins CR, Schreeder M, Rilling WS, Laing CJ, Tatum CM, et al. *Randomized controlled trial of irinotecan drug-eluting beads with simultaneous FOLFOX and bevacizumab for patients with unresectable colorectal liver-limited metastasis.* Cancer 2015 Oct 15;121(20):3649-58 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26149602.
9. ↑ 9.00 9.01 9.02 9.03 9.04 9.05 9.06 9.07 9.08 9.09 9.10 9.11 9.12 9.13 9.14 9.15 9.16 9.17 Fiorentini G, Aliberti C, Tilli M, Mulazzani L, Graziano F, Giordani P, et al. *Intra-arterial infusion of irinotecan-loaded drug-eluting beads (DEBIRI) versus intravenous therapy (FOLFIRI) for hepatic metastases from colorectal cancer: final results of a phase III study.* Anticancer Res 2012 Apr;32(4):1387-95 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22493375.
10. ↑ 10.00 10.01 10.02 10.03 10.04 10.05 10.06 10.07 10.08 10.09 10.10 10.11 10.12 10.13 10.14 10.15 10.16 Kemeny NE, Niedzwiecki D, Hollis DR, Lenz HJ, Warren RS, Naughton MJ, et al. *Hepatic arterial infusion versus systemic therapy for hepatic metastases from colorectal cancer: a randomized trial of efficacy, quality of life, and molecular markers (CALGB 9481).* J Clin Oncol 2006 Mar 20;24(9):1395-403 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16505413.

Back to top

## 16.6.6 Appendices

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| View recommendation components | View pending evidence | View body of evidence | View all comments | View literature search |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| View PICO | NHMRC Evidence statement form MNG16 | Systematic review report MNG16 |

Back to top

# 16.7 Synchronous primary in metastatic CRC

**Contents**



Back to top

## 16.7.1 Background

At the time of diagnosis, up to 25% of patients with colorectal cancer present with synchronous metastases.2 Most patients (70%–90%) with metastatic disease are unsuitable for curative surgical treatment, and early chemotherapy in association with targeted therapies has been demonstrated to provide optimal palliation in terms of survival and quality of life or tumour down-staging.[1][2]

Initial management of the primary site in patients who present with metastatic disease is controversial. The choice and sequence of treatment is guided by the presence and absence of symptoms from the primary tumour and whether or not the metastases are potentially resectable.

With the exception of obstructing perforated or bleeding primary tumours, where surgical intervention is often indicated, it is still controversial whether either primary tumour resection followed by chemotherapy or immediate chemotherapy without primary tumour resection is the best therapeutic option.

## 16.7.2 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews were undertaken for this topic. Practice points were based on selected published literature. Please see Guidelines Development for more information.

### 16.7.2.1 Impact of palliative resection of primary on survival in patients with non-resectable metastatic colorectal cancer

Several studies have assessed the impact of primary tumour resection for colorectal cancer with non-resectable metastases.[3][4][5][6][7][8][9][10][11][12][13][14][15][16][17][18][19][20][21] Published studies were predominantly non-randomised, mostly retrospective and reported by single institutions. The major draw backs in these studies were that surgery was offered to the patients with the best performance status and the preferred treatment for the other patients was systemic therapy alone.[22] In addition, those patients with a heavy burden of metastatic disease were more likely to be offered systemic therapy rather than surgery.[22] Another limitation is that the majority of published studies have included colon and rectal cancers together; the issues can be very different for these two localisations. Surgery is often more complex for rectal cancer patients and symptoms relating to local progression of rectal tumours can be associated with significant morbidity (e.g. rectal pain) which can be difficult to manage.[22]

A meta-analysis of 21 studies (including 44,226 patients) evaluating the effect of primary tumour resection in patients with non-resectable metastatic colorectal cancer concluded that there was a significantly lower mortality risk compared with no resection: odds ratio (OR) 0.28; 95% confidence interval (CI) 0.165 to 0.474. This translated into a difference in mean survival of approximately 6.4 months in favour of resection.[23] The authors acknowledged significant cross-study heterogeneity and selection biases in the majority of studies, with healthier patients and those felt to have better prognosis more likely to undergo resection.[23]

Importantly, none of the above series reporting a survival benefit for resection of the primary site has assessed the contribution of systemic chemotherapy to outcomes, or controlled for all possible variables that could have favourably affected outcomes in the resected patients.

Results of meta-analyses that have taken the effect of chemotherapy into account have been conflicting. A meta-analysis of individual data from randomised controlled trials (RCTs) of first-line chemotherapy for metastatic colorectal cancer (which included patients with non-resectable disease) found that primary tumour resection was independently associated with better overall survival in multivariate analysis: hazard ratio (HR) for death 0.63 (95% CI 0.53 to 0.75).[24]

To the contrary, a Cochrane review of seven non-randomised studies, totalling 1086 patients, concluded that resection of the primary cancer in asymptomatic patients with non-resectable metastatic colorectal cancer managed with chemo/radiotherapy was not associated with consistent improvement in overall survival and did not significantly reduce the risk of primary site complications (i.e. bleeding, perforation, obstruction).[25] Despite conflicting evidence, retrospective data show that approximately 50% of all patients with mCRC undergo resection of the primary tumour.[26][27] This is in keeping with Australian data indicating that the majority of palliative metastatic colorectal cancer patients in clinical practice have their colorectal primary tumours resected. A retrospective analysis of the prospective Treatment of Recurrent and Advanced Colorectal Cancer registry reported on just over 1000 synchronous metastatic colorectal cancer patients between July 2009 and November 2015.[28] Of those patients, 70% were considered palliative at multidisciplinary team meeting.40 And of those 45% had their colorectal primary tumours resected.[28] Reasons for primary resection in the palliative group were surgeon decision (45%) and obstruction (33%) but 4% achieved curative resection of metastases. In

this study, performance status, metastasis resection (R0 versus R1 versus R2 versus no resection), resection of the colorectal primary and treatment intent determined at multidisciplinary team meeting were the most significant factors for progression-free and overall survival.[28] These data, in the setting of modern chemotherapy management, add to the literature supporting routine colorectal primary resection even when the metastases are not resectable.[28]

### 16.7.2.2 Morbidity of primary tumour resection in the setting of non-resectable mCRC

For patients operated for their primary tumour as part of their initial management, the question of the potential extra-risk of postoperative morbidity associated with the resection of the tumor in metastatic setting should be considered. Several studies have suggested that resection of the primary tumor in the presence of metastatic disease is associated with high postoperative morbidity and mortality rates.[19][29] One study by Stelzner et al. reported that 15 out of 128 patients (11.7%) patients died within 30 days of surgery.[19] The results however, are likely biased as many of these patients were symptomatic and underwent emergency surgery. The same series found a 27.8% mortality rate in patients who underwent emergency surgery compared to a 7.3% mortality rate for elective procedures ($p = 0.002$). These mortality rates were higher than those found in a recently-published meta-analysis in which collectively, perioperative mortality was 1.7% (95% CI 0.7%-3.9%).[30] Most patients within this meta-analysis were asymptomatic and were managed electively likely explaining the lower reported mortality. In this meta-analysis, postoperative morbidity occurred in 68 of 299 patients for a pool proportion of 23% (95% CI 18.5-21.8). The most frequent complication was wound infection which could be managed conservatively; however, in some instances, a major complication arose requiring additional surgery. Anastomotic leakage, occurring in 1.7% of patients (5/299 patients) can lead to sepsis, significantly prolongs hospital stays and delays or even precludes the administration of chemotherapy.[30]

The type of surgery performed may be important as suggested by another systematic review and meta-analysis that identified five studies comparing open palliative colectomies with laparoscopic palliative colectomies in this setting and found laparoscopic procedures were associated with reduced post-operative complications, blood loss and length of hospital stays.[31]

### 16.7.2.3 Asymptomatic primary tumour

The decision to surgically resect the primary in asymptomatic patients with non-resectable metastatic colorectal cancer is complex and requires careful consideration of the risk to benefit ratio for the patient. The impact of prophylactic surgery in this setting is uncertain.[18]

Leaving the primary tumour intact may not lead to unacceptable local complications (or significantly compromise survival).[32][33][34] There is a relatively low risk of bleeding (3%) or obstruction/perforation (7–14%) in patients who present with metastatic colorectal cancer and an intact asymptomatic primary managed at least initially without resection.[25][33][35]

Moreover, this group of patients appear to have higher rates of postoperative morbidity (20–30%) and perioperative mortality (1–6% percent)[10][17][18] which may lead to delays in the initiation of systemic therapy and detrimental effects on survival.

The prospective multicentre phase II NSABP C-10 trial[32] showed that patients with an asymptomatic primary colon tumour and non-resectable metastatic disease who received modFOLFOX with bevacizumab experienced an acceptable level of morbidity without upfront resection of the primary tumour. In this study, survival did not appear to be compromised by leaving the primary tumour intact and improvement in the primary site can be seen within the first two weeks of systemic therapy.

Systemic chemotherapy is generally the favoured treatment for patients presenting with synchronous metastatic colorectal cancer with asymptomatic primary. Although with modern chemotherapy regimens there may be a response within the primary tumour, this response may not be as robust as seen in the metastatic disease sites.[36] Thus, for patients with an intact primary site it is imperative to evaluate the primary site periodically. There are no guidelines for identifying non-resectable metastatic colorectal cancer patients with intact primaries who are more likely to suffer complications and require surgery during systemic therapy. Some have shown that even patients who appear to be at a high risk for subsequent complications based on tumour site or colonoscopy findings (i.e. nearly obstructing lesion or inability to advance the scope beyond the tumour) can avoid palliative surgery and obtain good control with systemic therapy.[37] The current National Comprehensive Cancer Network Guidelines[38] recommend leaving the primary tumour intact and starting systemic therapy first in patients with non-resectable metastatic colorectal cancer and asymptomatic intact primaries.

### 16.7.2.4 Symptomatic primary tumour

A small number of patients (approximately 6%) with mCRC present with acute complications related to their primary tumours such as obstruction, significant haemorrhage, and perforation, where an urgent intervention is usually indicated prior to starting systemic therapy.[25][39][40][41]

For bowel perforation, surgery should be considered to either remove the tumour when it is easily resectable (such as a right hemicolectomy for right-side colon lesions or sigmoid colectomy for sigmoid lesions), or to create a stoma (left colon) in cases requiring more technical surgery, such as low rectal resections.[42]

Nonsurgical methods of palliation can be considered for patients not suitable for surgical procedures. Successful local palliation of an obstructing or nearly obstructing tumour may be achieved through endoscopic or radiographic placement of self-expanding metal stent (SEMS). Among the advantages of SEMS over palliative surgery are a faster recovery time (permitting earlier administration of chemotherapy) and a shorter hospital stay If the tumour is not completely obstructing, electrofulguration or laser ablation (using an Nd:YAG or argon ion [argon plasma coagulation or APC] laser) can be attempted to maintain the patency of the lumen.[43] Radiation therapy directed at the primary tumour may is another alternative to control bleeding

Back to top

### 16.7.2.5 Practice points

**Practice point**

Routine palliative resection of asymptomatic synchronous primary lesion in patients with unresectable metastatic colorectal cancer remains controversial. The indication for primary tumour resection as initial management remains questionable and its effect on survival and quality of life uncertain. No randomised trials have answered this question to date.

**Practice point**

The possible risks versus benefits of asymptomatic primary tumour resection in patients with unresectable metastatic colorectal cancer should be discussed in a multidisciplinary setting.

**Practice point**

For patients with a symptomatic primary tumour or complications from the primary tumour (obstruction, bleeding or perforation) and synchronous metastatic disease, resection of the primary tumour should be considered before initiation of systemic therapy. For candidates not suitable for primary tumour resection other palliative options to control symptoms including surgical bypass, stents, laser ablation in addition to systemic treatment should be considered.

**Practice point**

For patients with unresectable metastatic rectal cancer with symptomatic primary tumour, irradiation (+/- chemotherapy) of the primary tumour should be considered after multidisciplinary discussion in order to obtain optimal symptom control and reduce morbidity.

Next section: discussion

## 16.7.3 References

1. ↑ Golfinopoulos V, Salanti G, Pavlidis N, Ioannidis JP. *Survival and disease-progression benefits with treatment regimens for advanced colorectal cancer: a meta-analysis.* Lancet Oncol 2007 Oct;8(10):898-911 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17888735.
2. ↑ Tol J, Koopman M, Cats A, Rodenburg CJ, Creemers GJ, Schrama JG, et al. *Chemotherapy, bevacizumab, and cetuximab in metastatic colorectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 2009 Feb 5;360(6):563-72 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19196673.
3. ↑ Aslam MI, Kelkar A, Sharpe D, Jameson JS. *Ten years experience of managing the primary tumours in patients with stage IV colorectal cancers.* Int J Surg 2010;8(4):305-13 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20380899.
4. ↑ Bajwa A, Blunt N, Vyas S, Suliman I, Bridgewater J, Hochhauser D, et al. *Primary tumour resection and survival in the palliative management of metastatic colorectal cancer.* Eur J Surg Oncol 2009 Feb;35(2):164-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18644695.
5. ↑ Benoist S, Pautrat K, Mitry E, Rougier P, Penna C, Nordlinger B. *Treatment strategy for patients with colorectal cancer and synchronous irresectable liver metastases.* Br J Surg 2005 Sep;92(9):1155-60 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16035135.
6. ↑ Chan TW, Brown C, Ho CC, Gill S. *Primary tumor resection in patients presenting with metastatic colorectal cancer: analysis of a provincial population-based cohort.* Am J Clin Oncol 2010 Feb;33(1):52-5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19704367.
7. ↑ Costi R, Mazzeo A, Di Mauro D, Veronesi L, Sansebastiano G, Violi V, et al. *Palliative resection of colorectal cancer: does it prolong survival?* Ann Surg Oncol 2007 Sep;14(9):2567-76 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17541693.
8. ↑ Evans MD, Escofet X, Karandikar SS, Stamatakis JD. *Outcomes of resection and non-resection strategies in management of patients with advanced colorectal cancer.* World J Surg Oncol 2009 Mar 10;7:28 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19284542.
9. ↑ Frago R, Kreisler E, Biondo S, Salazar R, Dominguez J, Escalante E. *Outcomes in the management of obstructive unresectable stage IV colorectal cancer.* Eur J Surg Oncol 2010 Dec;36(12):1187-94 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20864304.
10. ↑ [10.0] [10.1] Galizia G, Lieto E, Orditura M, Castellano P, Imperatore V, Pinto M, et al. *First-line chemotherapy vs bowel tumor resection plus chemotherapy for patients with unresectable synchronous colorectal hepatic metastases.* Arch Surg 2008 Apr;143(4):352-8; discussion 358 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18427022.
11. ↑ Karoui M, Roudot-Thoraval F, Mesli F, Mitry E, Aparicio T, Des Guetz G, et al. *Primary colectomy in patients with stage IV colon cancer and unresectable distant metastases improves overall survival: results of a multicentric study.* Dis Colon Rectum 2011 Aug;54(8):930-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21730780.
12. ↑ Kaufman MS, Radhakrishnan N, Roy R, Gecelter G, Tsang J, Thomas A, et al. *Influence of palliative surgical resection on overall survival in patients with advanced colorectal cancer: a retrospective single institutional study.* Colorectal Dis 2008 Jun;10(5):498-502 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17949445.

13. ↑ Konyalian VR, Rosing DK, Haukoos JS, Dixon MR, Sinow R, Bhaheetharan S, et al. *The role of primary tumour resection in patients with stage IV colorectal cancer.* Colorectal Dis 2007 Jun;9(5):430-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17504340.
14. ↑ Law WL, Chan WF, Lee YM, Chu KW. *Non-curative surgery for colorectal cancer: critical appraisal of outcomes.* Int J Colorectal Dis 2004 May;19(3):197-202 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14618348.
15. ↑ Michel P, Roque I, Di Fiore F, Langlois S, Scotte M, Tenière P, et al. *Colorectal cancer with non-resectable synchronous metastases: should the primary tumor be resected?* Gastroenterol Clin Biol 2004 May;28(5):434-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15243315.
16. ↑ Mik, M Dziki, L Galbfach, P Trzcinski, R Sygut, A Dziki, A. *Resection of the primary tumour or other palliative procedures in incurable stage IV colorectal cancer patients?* Colorectal Disease 2009 Apr 10; DOI: 10.1111/j.1463-1318.2009.01860.x.
17. ↑ 17.0 17.1 Ruo L, Gougoutas C, Paty PB, Guillem JG, Cohen AM, Wong WD. *Elective bowel resection for incurable stage IV colorectal cancer: prognostic variables for asymptomatic patients.* J Am Coll Surg 2003 May;196(5):722-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12742204.
18. ↑ 18.0 18.1 18.2 Scoggins CR, Meszoely IM, Blanke CD, Beauchamp RD, Leach SD. *Nonoperative management of primary colorectal cancer in patients with stage IV disease.* Ann Surg Oncol 1999 Oct;6(7):651-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10560850.
19. ↑ 19.0 19.1 19.2 Stelzner, S Hellmich, G Koch, R Ludwig, K. *Factors predicting survival in stage IV colorectal carcinoma patients after palliative treatment: A multivariate analysis.* Journal of Surgical Oncology 2005 Mar 15;89(4), p. 211-217 DOI: 10.1002/jso.20196.
20. ↑ Tebbutt NC, Norman AR, Cunningham D, Hill ME, Tait D, Oates J, et al. *Intestinal complications after chemotherapy for patients with unresected primary colorectal cancer and synchronous metastases.* Gut 2003 Apr;52(4):568-73 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12631671.
21. ↑ Yun HR, Lee WY, Lee WS, Cho YB, Yun SH, Chun HK. *The prognostic factors of stage IV colorectal cancer and assessment of proper treatment according to the patient's status.* Int J Colorectal Dis 2007 Nov;22(11):1301-10 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17486358.
22. ↑ 22.0 22.1 22.2 Cotte E, Villeneuve L, Passot G, Boschetti G, Bin-Dorel S, Francois Y, et al. *GRECCAR 8: impact on survival of the primary tumor resection in rectal cancer with unresectable synchronous metastasis: a randomized multicentre study.* BMC Cancer 2015 Feb 12;15:47 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25849254.
23. ↑ 23.0 23.1 Clancy C, Burke JP, Barry M, Kalady MF, Calvin Coffey J. *A meta-analysis to determine the effect of primary tumor resection for stage IV colorectal cancer with unresectable metastases on patient survival.* Ann Surg Oncol 2014 Nov;21(12):3900-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24849523.
24. ↑ Faron M, Pignon JP, Malka D, Bourredjem A, Douillard JY, Adenis A, et al. *Is primary tumour resection associated with survival improvement in patients with colorectal cancer and unresectable synchronous metastases? A pooled analysis of individual data from four randomised trials.* Eur J Cancer 2015 Jan;51(2):166-76 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25465185.
25. ↑ 25.0 25.1 25.2 Cirocchi R, Trastulli S, Abraha I, Vettoretto N, Boselli C, Montedori A, et al. *Non-resection versus resection for an asymptomatic primary tumour in patients with unresectable stage IV colorectal cancer.* Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2012 Aug 15;(8):CD008997 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22895981.

26. ↑ Cook AD, Single R, McCahill LE. *Surgical resection of primary tumors in patients who present with stage IV colorectal cancer: an analysis of surveillance, epidemiology, and end results data, 1988 to 2000.* Ann Surg Oncol 2005 Aug;12(8):637-45 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15965730.
27. ↑ van der Pool AE, Damhuis RA, Ijzermans JN, de Wilt JH, Eggermont AM, Kranse R, et al. *Trends in incidence, treatment and survival of patients with stage IV colorectal cancer: a population-based series.* Colorectal Dis 2012 Jan;14(1):56-61 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21176063.
28. ↑ 28.0 28.1 28.2 28.3 Malouf P, Gibbs P, Shapiro J, Sockler J, Bell S. *Australian contemporary management of synchronous metastatic colorectal cancer.* ANZ J Surg 2016 Apr 28 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27122066.
29. ↑ Venderbosch S, de Wilt JH, Teerenstra S, Loosveld OJ, van Bochove A, Sinnige HA, et al. *Prognostic value of resection of primary tumor in patients with stage IV colorectal cancer: retrospective analysis of two randomized studies and a review of the literature.* Ann Surg Oncol 2011 Nov;18(12):3252-60 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21822557.
30. ↑ 30.0 30.1 Stillwell AP, Buettner PG, Ho YH. *Meta-analysis of survival of patients with stage IV colorectal cancer managed with surgical resection versus chemotherapy alone.* World J Surg 2010 Apr;34(4):797-807 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20054541.
31. ↑ Yang TX, Billah B, Morris DL, Chua TC. *Palliative resection of the primary tumour in patients with Stage IV colorectal cancer: systematic review and meta-analysis of the early outcome after laparoscopic and open colectomy.* Colorectal Dis 2013 Aug;15(8):e407-19 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23895669.
32. ↑ 32.0 32.1 McCahill LE, Yothers G, Sharif S, Petrelli NJ, Lai LL, Bechar N, et al. *Primary mFOLFOX6 plus bevacizumab without resection of the primary tumor for patients presenting with surgically unresectable metastatic colon cancer and an intact asymptomatic colon cancer: definitive analysis of NSABP trial C-10.* J Clin Oncol 2012 Sep 10;30(26):3223-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22869888.
33. ↑ 33.0 33.1 Poultsides GA, Servais EL, Saltz LB, Patil S, Kemeny NE, Guillem JG, et al. *Outcome of primary tumor in patients with synchronous stage IV colorectal cancer receiving combination chemotherapy without surgery as initial treatment.* J Clin Oncol 2009 Jul 10;27(20):3379-84 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19487380.
34. ↑ Tsang, W Ziogas, A Lin, B Seery, T Karnes, W Stamos, M Zell, J. *Role of Primary Tumor Resection Among Chemotherapy-Treated Patients with Synchronous Stage IV Colorectal Cancer: A Survival Analysis.* Journal of Gastrointestinal Surgery 2013 Dec 3;18(3), p. 592-598 DOI: 10.1007/s11605-013-2421-0.
35. ↑ Nitzkorski, J Farma, J Watson, J Siripurapu, V Zhu, F Matteotti, R Sigurdson, E. *Outcome and Natural History of Patients with Stage IV Colorectal Cancer Receiving Chemotherapy Without Primary Tumor Resection.* Annals of Surgical Oncology 2011 Aug 23;19(2), p. 379-383 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-011-2028-1.
36. ↑ Gervaz P, Rubbia-Brandt L, Andres A, Majno P, Roth A, Morel P, et al. *Neoadjuvant chemotherapy in patients with stage IV colorectal cancer: a comparison of histological response in liver metastases, primary tumors, and regional lymph nodes.* Ann Surg Oncol 2010 Oct;17(10):2714-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20405223.
37. ↑ Ballian N, Mahvi DM, Kennedy GD. *Colonoscopic findings and tumor site do not predict bowel obstruction during medical treatment of stage IV colorectal cancer.* Oncologist 2009 Jun;14(6):580-5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19465681.
38. ↑ National Comprehensive Cancer Network. *NCCN Guidelines: Colon Cancer.* National Comprehensive Cancer Network; 2016.

39. ↑ Karoui M, Charachon A, Delbaldo C, Loriau J, Laurent A, Sobhani I, et al. *Stents for palliation of obstructive metastatic colon cancer: impact on management and chemotherapy administration.* Arch Surg 2007 Jul;142(7):619-23; discussion 623 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17638798.
40. ↑ Tilney HS, Lovegrove RE, Purkayastha S, Sains PS, Weston-Petrides GK, Darzi AW, et al. *Comparison of colonic stenting and open surgery for malignant large bowel obstruction.* Surg Endosc 2007 Feb;21(2):225-33 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17160651.
41. ↑ Vemulapalli R, Lara LF, Sreenarasimhaiah J, Harford WV, Siddiqui AA. *A comparison of palliative stenting or emergent surgery for obstructing incurable colon cancer.* Dig Dis Sci 2010 Jun;55(6):1732-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19693667.
42. ↑ Adam R, de Gramont A, Figueras J, Kokudo N, Kunstlinger F, Loyer E, et al. *Managing synchronous liver metastases from colorectal cancer: a multidisciplinary international consensus.* Cancer Treat Rev 2015 Nov;41(9):729-41 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26417845.
43. ↑ Kimmey MB. *Endoscopic methods (other than stents) for palliation of rectal carcinoma.* J Gastrointest Surg 2004 Mar;8(3):270-3 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15019921.

Back to top

# 16.8 Discussion

**Contents**



## 16.8.1 Discussion

### 16.8.1.1 Unresolved issues

To be added

### 16.8.1.2 Studies currently underway

The overall survival analysis of the three first-line studies planned for 2017 will hopefully give clinicians guidance as to the role of SIRT in chemo-naive patients:

- [Name of study 1]Reference
- [Name of study 1]Reference
- [Name of study 1].Reference

Two RCTs of primary site resection in patients who present with non-resectable metastatic disease are yet to be reported:

- the Dutch Colorectal Cancer Group's CAIRO4 study[1] comparing systemic therapy (fluoropyrimidine-based chemotherapy in combination with bevacizumab) only, with resection of the primary tumour followed by systemic therapy, in patients with synchronous unresectable metastases of colorectal cancer and few or no symptoms of the primary tumour
- the German SYNCHRONOUS study[2] comparing resection of the primary tumour before systemic chemotherapy, with no resection, in patients with synchronous unresectable metastases and no symptoms of the primary tumour.[2][3][4][5]

It has been hypothesized that pulmonary metastases may behave in a more indolent fashion and control of hepatic metastases will therefore improve survival, however, this question will not be answered until the overall survival results are presented (in combination with FOXFIRE and FOXFIRE Global studies).

### 16.8.1.3 Future research priorities

Quality of life is a critical aspect of palliative treatment. All previous studies evaluating the impact of primary tumour resection for patients with non-resectable metastatic colorectal cancer have focused on survival and morbidity. Quality of life has never been specifically assessed.

## 16.8.2 References

1. ↑ 't Lam-Boer J, Mol L, Verhoef C, de Haan AF, Yilmaz M, Punt CJ, et al. *The CAIRO4 study: the role of surgery of the primary tumour with few or absent symptoms in patients with synchronous unresectable metastases of colorectal cancer--a randomized phase III study of the Dutch Colorectal Cancer Group (DCCG).* BMC Cancer 2014 Oct 2;14:741 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25277170.
2. ↑ 2.0 2.1 Rahbari NN, Lordick F, Fink C, Bork U, Stange A, Jäger D, et al. *Resection of the primary tumour versus no resection prior to systemic therapy in patients with colon cancer and synchronous unresectable metastases (UICC stage IV): SYNCHRONOUS--a randomised controlled multicentre trial (ISRCTN30964555).* BMC Cancer 2012 Apr 5;12:142 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22480173.
3. ↑ Mathus-Vliegen EM, Tytgat GN. *Analysis of failures and complications of neodymium: YAG laser photocoagulation in gastrointestinal tract tumors. A retrospective survey of 18 years' experience.* Endoscopy 1990 Jan;22(1):17-23 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1689658.

4. ↑ Spinelli P, Mancini A, Dal Fante M. *Endoscopic treatment of gastrointestinal tumors: indications and results of laser photocoagulation and photodynamic therapy.* Semin Surg Oncol 1995 Jul;11(4):307-18 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7481368.
5. ↑ Tan CC, Iftikhar SY, Allan A, Freeman JG. *Local effects of colorectal cancer are well palliated by endoscopic laser therapy.* Eur J Surg Oncol 1995 Dec;21(6):648-52 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/8631414.

Back to top

# 17 Role systemic therapies in non-resectable metastatic CRC

The last 10 to 15 years have seen major advances in the treatment of metastatic colorectal cancer. The average median survival duration is now approaching 3 years, and 5-year survival rates as high as 20% are reported in some trials of patients treated with chemotherapy alone.[1] These improvements have been mainly driven by the availability of new active agents, which include conventional cytotoxic agents other than 5-fluorouracil (5FU), and biologic agents targeting angiogenesis and the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR).

There are now eight different classes of drugs with antitumour activity in metastatic colorectal cancer:

- fluoropyrimidines:
  - 5FU – usually given intravenously (IV) with leucovorin (LV)
  - capecitabine (oral)
  - S-1 (orally active combination of tegafur, 5-chloro-2, 4-dihydroxypyridine and potassium oxonate). S-1 is not registered in Australia by the Therapeutic Goods Administration (TGA).
  - tegafur plus uracil (oral). This combination is not registered in Australia by the TGA.
  - raltitrexed - a folate analogue and thymidylate synthase inhibitor
- irinotecan
- oxaliplatin
- monoclonal antibodies directed against EGFR:
  - cetuximab
  - panitumumab
- monoclonal antibodies directed against vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF):
  - bevacizumab – recombinant anti-VEGF monoclonal antibody
  - ramucirumab – recombinant monoclonal antibody that binds to and blocks activation of VEGF receptor 2 (VEGFR-2)
- aflibercept – an intravenous recombinant fusion protein that functions as a decoy receptor that prevents intravascular and extravascular VEGF-A, VEGF-B, and placenta growth factor (PlGF) from binding to their receptors
- regorafenib – an orally active inhibitor of angiogenic tyrosine kinases (including the VEGF receptors 1 to 3), as well as other membrane and intracellular kinases.

- trifluridine-tipiracil (TAS-102) – an oral cytotoxic agent that consists of the nucleoside analogue trifluridine (a cytotoxic antimetabolite that inhibits thymidylate synthase and, after modification within tumour cells, is incorporated into DNA, causing strand breaks) and tipiracil (a potent thymidine phosphorylase inhibitor, which inhibits trifluridine metabolism and also has antiangiogenic properties). Trifluridine-tipiracil is not registered in Australia by the TGA.

Despite the pace of clinical research, the best way to combine and sequence all of these drugs to optimise treatment is not yet established. In general, exposure to all active drugs, as appropriate, is more important than the specific sequence of administration.

### 17.1 Chapter subsections

Please see sections:

- Molecular pathology and biomarkers – implications for systemic therapy
- Systemic chemotherapy treatment options for first-line treatment
- Role of biological agents in first-line treatment of metastatic colorectal cancer
- Subsequent treatment and the continuum-of-care model
- Systemic options for second-line treatment
- Systemic options for third-line treatment

## 17.2 References

1. ↑ Heinemann V, von Weikersthal LF, Decker T, Kiani A, Vehling-Kaiser U, Al-Batran SE, et al. *FOLFIRI plus cetuximab versus FOLFIRI plus bevacizumab as first-line treatment for patients with metastatic colorectal cancer (FIRE-3): a randomised, open-label, phase 3 trial.* Lancet Oncol 2014 Sep;15(10):1065-75 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25088940.

Back to top

# 17.1 Introduction: role systemic therapies in non-resectable metastatic CRC

The last 10 to 15 years have seen major advances in the treatment of metastatic colorectal cancer. The average median survival duration is now approaching 3 years, and 5-year survival rates as high as 20% are reported in some trials of patients treated with chemotherapy alone.[1] These improvements have been mainly driven by the availability of new active agents, which include conventional cytotoxic agents other than 5-fluorouracil (5FU), and biologic agents targeting angiogenesis and the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR).

There are now eight different classes of drugs with antitumour activity in metastatic colorectal cancer:

- fluoropyrimidines:
  - 5FU – usually given intravenously (IV) with leucovorin (LV)
  - capecitabine (oral)
  - S-1 (orally active combination of tegafur, 5-chloro-2, 4-dihydroxypyridine and potassium oxonate). S-1 is not registered in Australia by the Therapeutic Goods Administration (TGA).
  - tegafur plus uracil (oral). This combination is not registered in Australia by the TGA.
  - raltitrexed - a folate analogue and thymidylate synthase inhibitor
- irinotecan
- oxaliplatin
- monoclonal antibodies directed against EGFR:
  - cetuximab
  - panitumumab
- monoclonal antibodies directed against vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF):
  - bevacizumab – recombinant anti-VEGF monoclonal antibody
  - ramucirumab – recombinant monoclonal antibody that binds to and blocks activation of VEGF receptor 2 (VEGFR-2)
- aflibercept – an intravenous recombinant fusion protein that functions as a decoy receptor that prevents intravascular and extravascular VEGF-A, VEGF-B, and placenta growth factor (PlGF) from binding to their receptors
- regorafenib – an orally active inhibitor of angiogenic tyrosine kinases (including the VEGF receptors 1 to 3), as well as other membrane and intracellular kinases.
- trifluridine-tipiracil (TAS-102) – an oral cytotoxic agent that consists of the nucleoside analogue trifluridine (a cytotoxic antimetabolite that inhibits thymidylate synthase and, after modification within tumour cells, is incorporated into DNA, causing strand breaks) and tipiracil (a potent thymidine phosphorylase inhibitor, which inhibits trifluridine metabolism and also has antiangiogenic properties). Trifluridine-tipiracil is not registered in Australia by the TGA.

Despite the pace of clinical research, the best way to combine and sequence all of these drugs to optimise treatment is not yet established. In general, exposure to all active drugs, as appropriate, is more important than the specific sequence of administration.

### 17.1.1 Chapter subsections

Please see sections:

- Molecular pathology and biomarkers – implications for systemic therapy
- Systemic chemotherapy treatment options for first-line treatment
- Role of biological agents in first-line treatment of metastatic colorectal cancer
- Subsequent treatment and the continuum-of-care model
- Systemic options for second-line treatment
- Systemic options for third-line treatment

## 17.1.2 References

1. ↑ Heinemann V, von Weikersthal LF, Decker T, Kiani A, Vehling-Kaiser U, Al-Batran SE, et al. *FOLFIRI plus cetuximab versus FOLFIRI plus bevacizumab as first-line treatment for patients with metastatic colorectal cancer (FIRE-3): a randomised, open-label, phase 3 trial.* Lancet Oncol 2014 Sep;15(10):1065-75 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25088940.

Back to top

# 17.2 Molecular pathology and biomarkers for systemic therapy

**Contents**

## 17.2.1 Background

Increasingly, biomarker expression is driving therapeutic decision-making in medicine. Obtaining tissue to confirm the diagnosis of suspected colorectal cancer is fundamental prior to commencement of systemic therapy.

See also:

- Additional information on pathology reporting
- Sampling and specimen handling considerations for molecular markers
- Optimal molecular profiling.

## 17.2.2 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews were undertaken for this topic. Practice points were based on selected reviews, primary studies, and other clinical practice guidelines (see Guideline development process).

### 17.2.2.1 RAS mutation testing

Among patients with metastatic colorectal cancer, RAS mutation status permits clinicians to identify individuals who might benefit from strategies targeting the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR). Anti-EGFR monoclonal antibodies (cetuximab and panitumumab) should only be prescribed for patients whose tumours are RAS wild-type. As yet, there are no accepted biologic or molecular markers of responsiveness to bevacizumab or to conventional cytotoxic chemotherapy agents, although these are active areas of research.

Tumour overexpression of several genes involved in the EGFR signalling pathway and downstream events might identify patients who are most likely to respond to anti-EGFR agents. It is now well established that activating mutations in KRAS, which result in constitutive activation of the RAS-RAF-ERK pathway, result in resistance to anti-EGFR therapy.[1][2][3][4][5][6][7][8][9][10][11][12] Activating mutations in KRAS are detected in approximately 40% of metastatic colorectal cancers.

In metastatic colorectal cancer, KRAS mutations are mainly found in exon 2 (codons 12, 13).[13] Retrospective analyses of pivotal clinical trials for the anti-EGFR monoclonal antibodies, cetuximab and panitumumab, have shown that patients with metastatic colorectal cancer whose tumours contain activating mutations in KRAS exon 2 (codons 12, 13) do not derive a benefit from EGFR monoclonal antibody therapy.[2][6][12][14][15][16] Furthermore, evidence from the PRIME study with panitumumab,[17] from the CRYSTAL study with cetuximab,[18] and from other studies of EGFR monoclonal antibody therapies, has shown that mutations other than those in KRAS exon 2 – i.e. exons 3 and 4 of KRAS and exons 2, 3 and 4 of NRAS (extended RAS analysis) – also predict a lack of response to EGFR-targeting monoclonal antibodies and that these therapies may, in fact, have a detrimental effect in patients with RAS-mutant disease, specifically when combined with an oxaliplatin-based cytotoxic backbone.[17][18][19][20][21][22][23]

These findings were supported by results from the phase II PEAK study, in which patients with KRAS and NRAS exon 2, 3 and 4 wild-type metastatic colorectal cancer treated with the combination of leucovorin calcium (folinic acid), 5-fluorouracil (5FU) and oxaliplatin (FOLFOX) regimen '6' (FOLFOX6) plus panitumumab showed longer progression-free survival than those treated with FOLFOX6 plus bevacizumab, and a trend towards improved overall survival.[22]

Next-generation sequencing techniques to identify additional RAS-activating mutations were used to analyses tumour samples previously tested for KRAS exon 2 mutations from patients previously enrolled in the phase III trial of panitumumab in chemorefractory metastatic colorectal cancer.[21] When treated with panitumumab, patients with RAS wild-type tumours achieved response rates with of 15%, compared with 1% among those with RAS-mutant tumours.

Similar findings have been reported with cetuximab in patients with RAS wild-type tumours (according to extended RAS analysis). The addition of cetuximab to FOLFOX regimen '4' (FOLFOX4) or to the combination of folinic acid, 5FU and irinotecan hydrochloride (FOLFIRI) was associated with improved treatment outcomes across all efficacy end points.[18][19]

The importance of extended RAS testing was accentuated in the phase III FIRE-3 trial, in which patients with previously untreated metastatic colorectal cancer with RAS wild-type tumours receiving FOLFIRI and cetuximab showed an improvement in overall survival, compared with patients with RAS mutation receiving the same regimen (median 33.1 versus 28.7 months).[24]

The weight of evidence indicates that anti-EGFR monoclonal antibody therapy should be restricted to those patients whose tumours lack mutations after extended RAS testing. Harbouring a RAS mutation is therefore a negative predictive marker of treatment outcome in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer who receive anti-EGFR therapies. Extended RAS testing is therefore required for all patients who are candidates for anti-EGFR therapy. To allow for the development of a strategic management plan, patients with metastatic colorectal cancer should have their tumour tested for RAS mutations at the time of diagnosis of their metastatic disease.

See Optimal molecular profiling.

**Practice point**

RAS testing should be carried out on all patients at the time of diagnosis of metastatic colorectal cancer.

**Practice point**

RAS mutational status is a negative predictive biomarker for therapeutic choices involving EGFR antibody therapies in metastatic colorectal cancer.

**Practice point**

Cetuximab and panitumumab should only be considered for the treatment of patients with RAS wild-type metastatic colorectal cancer.

### 17.2.2.2 BRAF mutation testing

BRAF is a component of the RAS-RAF-MAPK signalling pathway. Activating mutations, which are mutually exclusive with KRAS mutations, are found in approximately 5–10% of metastatic colorectal cancers. BRAF mutations (most of which are V600E mutations) have consistently been associated with poor prognosis overall and as such their presence is considered to be a negative prognostic marker in metastatic colorectal cancer patients.[16][25][26][27][28][29] An Australian retrospective analysis of patients with metastatic colorectal cancer demonstrated that two-thirds of BRAF-mutant patients' primary lesions were located on the right side of the colon and associated with an increased incidence of peritoneal and distant lymph node metastases, but fewer pulmonary metastases.[27] This study also reported a median survival of 10.4 months among patients with BRAF-mutant tumours, compared with 34.7 months for patients with BRAF wild-type tumours. Moreover, BRAF mutations also appear to have predictive value, according to accumulating data. Evidence increasingly suggests that response to EGFR-targeted agents is less likely in patients whose tumours harbor BRAF mutations (particularly the BRAF V600E mutation). At least two meta-analyses have addressed the efficacy of EGFR antibody therapies in patients with RAS wild-type/BRAF mutated tumours. Although neither analysis found a survival advantage for the addition of EGFR antibody therapy, they reached somewhat different conclusions:[30][31]

- The first meta-analysis[30] included 10 randomised controlled trials (RCTs) comparing cetuximab or panitumumab alone or plus chemotherapy with standard therapy or best supportive care (one phase II and nine phase III trials). Six trials were conducted in the first-line treatment setting, two for second-line therapy and two in patients with chemorefractory disease.[30] Among patients with RAS wild-type/BRAF-mutant tumours, compared with control regimens, the addition of an anti-EGFR monoclonal antibody did not significantly improve progression-free survival (hazard ratio [HR] 0.88, 95% confidence interval [CI] 0.67 to 1.14), overall survival (HR 0.91, 95% CI 0.62 to 1.34), or objective response rate (relative risk [RR] 1.31, 95% CI 0.83 to 2.08).
- The second meta-analysis included eight RTCs; four conducted in the first-line setting, three in the second-line setting, and one in patients with chemorefractory disease.[31] Among patients with RAS wild-type/BRAF mutant metastatic colorectal cancer, there was no significant overall survival benefit for the addition of an anti-EGFR therapies (HR 0.97, 95% CI 0.67 to 1.41). In contrast, overall survival was significantly greater in

patients with RAS wild-type BRAF wild-type tumours (HR 0.81; 95% CI 0.7 to 0.95). When comparing the overall survival benefit between BRAF mutant and BRAF wild-type tumours, the test for interaction was not statistically significant. The authors concluded that the observed differences in the effect of anti-EGFR therapies on overall survival according to BRAF mutation status could have been due to chance, and that the evidence was insufficient to state that BRAF-mutant tumours attain a different treatment benefit from anti-EGFR agents compared to individuals with BRAF wild-type tumours.

Results from TRIBE study[9] has shown promising outcomes for patients with BRAF-mutated tumours treated with aggressive systemic therapy consisting of leucovorin calcium (folinic acid), 5FU, oxaliplatin and irinotecan hydrochloride (FOLFOXIRI) plus bevacizumab. In this trial, patients with metastatic colorectal cancer who received FOLFOXIRI plus bevacizumab showed 2.5 months longer progression-free survival than those who were treated with FOLFIRI. However, the overall survival results remained disappointing for patients with BRAF-mutated tumours, compared with those with BRAF wild-type tumours (19.0 months versus 41.7 months). Clinical trials are currently underway to test targeted therapies in BRAF-mutated metastatic colorectal cancer, akin to the development of therapies for BRAF-mutated metastatic melanoma. Early results are promising but have generally been less favourable than the melanoma trials.[32][33][34][35] Early studies evaluating single-agent BRAF inhibitor therapy or combination BRAF/mitogen-activated protein kinase (MEK) inhibition has yielded disappointing results.

EGFR activation has been implicated in the pathogenesis of BRAF mutant colorectal cancer. Therefore, the combination of BRAF/MEK inhibition and anti-EGFR therapy has recently been evaluated in a trial comparing (i) dabrafenib plus panitumumab, (ii) trametinib plus panitumumab, and (iii) the combination of dabrafenib, trametinib and panitumumab.[36] In the dabrafenib/panitumumab treatment arm, the objective response rate was 10%, and 80% of patients achieved stable disease. With trametinib/panitumumab no patients attained objective response but 53% showed stable disease. However, combined BRAF/MEK inhibition with panitumumab yielded an 18% objective response rate and 67% of patients showed stable disease.[36]

Somatic BRAF V600E mutations have been associated with sporadic cases of DNA mismatch repair deficiency showing microsatellite instability stability (MSI) phenotype.[37] On the contrary, BRAF V600E mutation is not associated with the MSI phenotype due to a germline mutation in mismatch repair (Lynch Syndrome).[38][39] BRAF V600E mutations have been proposed as a means of excluding Lynch syndrome. Subsets of patients with BRAF mutations in codons 594 and 596 have been shown to have microsatellite stability and significantly longer survival times, compared with those who have BRAF V600E disease.[40]

See Optimal molecular profiling.

**Practice point**

The BRAF mutation status should ideally be performed at the time of diagnosis of metastatic colorectal cancer, as this represents a distinct biologic subtype.

**Practice point**

The presence of a BRAF mutation in metastatic colorectal cancer is considered a poor prognostic marker.

**Practice point**

BRAF mutation status in combination with testing for DNA mismatch repair deficiency can assist in the identification of a germline versus somatic cause of DNA mismatch repair deficiency.

**Practice point**

The preponderance of the available evidence is that response to EGFR-targeted agents is less likely in patients whose tumours harbour a BRAF mutation.

**Practice point**

The BRAF mutation status should ideally be performed at the time of diagnosis of metastatic colorectal cancer, as this represents a distinct biologic subtype.

**Practice point**

Metastatic colorectal cancer patients with a BRAF mutation should be considered for a clinical trial where available or triplet chemotherapy if suitable.

### 17.2.2.3 Microsatellite instability (MSI) testing

Approximately 10% of colorectal carcinomas demonstrate MSI. Distinct from the majority of colorectal cancers with chromosomal instability, tumours with MSI retain intact chromosomal numbers but contain microsatellite repeats due to deficiency in DNA mismatch repair which are thought to contribute to the early steps of tumourigenesis in colorectal cancer.[41] While emerging clinical data have highlighted improved prognosis of tumours with MSI in early colorectal cancer, potentially circumventing the need for adjuvant chemotherapy, the implications of MSI in metastatic colorectal cancer remain uncertain.

A retrospective analysis in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer[42] observed that MSI phenotype was associated with younger age (median 67 years), higher risk of poor differentiation (58%), and a higher risk of stage IV disease at presentation 45%. BRAF V600E mutations were present in 30% of patients with MSI.[42] Most studies have shown MSI not to be relevant as a predictive marker for various chemotherapeutic agents. However in a pooled analysis of four phase III studies (CAIRO, CAIRO2, COIN and FOCUS), BRAF mutations have been shown to be more frequent in patients with tumours exhibiting MSI than in those with microsatellite-stable tumours.[28] Furthermore, in this analysis, progression-free survival and overall survival were significantly worse for patients with tumours with MSI, compared with those with microsatellite-stable tumours (HR, 1.33; 95% CI 1.12 to 1.57 and HR 1.35; 95% CI 1.13 to 1.61, respectively), and for patients with BRAF-mutant tumours when compared with those with BRAF wild-type tumours (HR 1.34; 95% CI 1.17 to 1.54 and HR 1.91; 95% CI 1.66–2.19, respectively).[28]

Emerging data have shown DNA mismatch repair status to predict the clinical benefit of immune checkpoint blockade with pembrolizumab in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer. A phase II study evaluating pembrolizumab in patients with colorectal cancer[43] reported immune-related objective response rates and immune-related 6-month progression-free survival rates of 40% (4 out of 10 patients) and 78% (7 out of 9 patients), respectively, for patients with DNA mismatch repair deficiency tumours, and 0% and 11% for those with DNA mismatch repair-proficient tumours. The study reported excellent rates of median progress-free survival and overall survival (maturity not reached) in the cohort with DNA mismatch repair deficiency tumours versus 2.2 and 5.0 months, respectively, in the cohort with DNA mismatch repair-proficient tumours.[43]

CheckMate-142[44] is a phase II study evaluating the role of nivolumab, alone or in combination with ipilimumab, in heavily pre-treated MSI-high colorectal cancer. This study also had a cohort of non-MSI patients. In preliminary results, the objective response rate in the nivolumab-alone arm was 27%, compared with 15% in the combination treatment arm. Stable disease was reported in 24% in the nivolumab arm and 65% in the combination treatment arm. Median overall survival was more than 16 months in the nivolumab arm and has not been reached in the combination arm.[44]

While these data provide proof of principle as to the potential for benefit from immunotherapy in metastatic colorectal cancer, it is premature to conclude, based upon these small studies, that immune checkpoint inhibitors represent a standard treatment for metastatic DNA mismatch repair-deficient colorectal cancer. Confirmation in larger data sets is needed, as is further exploration of the data from these trials, to understand why there was a complete lack of response in microsatellite-stable tumours, which represents the vast majority of patients with metastatic colorectal cancer.

See Optimal molecular profiling.

**Practice point**

MSI testing in the metastatic setting can be useful to help identify patients who require referral for further genetic testing and counselling.

**Practice point**

BRAF V600 mutational analysis should be done in conjunction with MSI testing for prognostic stratification.

**Practice point**

MSI testing may be a predictive marker for the use of immune checkpoint inhibitors in the treatment of patients with metastatic colorectal cancer.

### 17.2.2.4 Emerging biomarkers

There is a growing list of additional biomarkers that may impact on responses to agents we have available for the treatment of metastatic colorectal cancer. At the present time, emerging biomarkers are not recommended for routine patient management outside of clinical trial settings.

Response to EGFR-targeted agents may also be influenced by mutations of other genes, such as PIK3CA,[45][46] p53, and PTEN,[47] or polymorphisms in EGF[48] mutations in genes involved in the insulin-like growth factor 1 (IGF1) signalling pathway,[49][50] a low fraction of cells staining for EGFR by IHC[51], expression of certain microRNAs,[52] overexpression of the EGFR ligands epiregulin and amphiregulin,[53] and amplification of HER2 and MET.[54] The data are conflicting with regard to PTEN and PIK3CA mutations.[55]

It seems likely that a comprehensive biomarker analysis will be required to identify the subgroup of patients with metastatic colorectal cancer who will truly benefit from treatment with an anti-EGFR agent.

Although metastatic colorectal cancer is primarily considered to be a genetic disease characterised by the sequential accumulation of genetic of genetic mutations, evidence now suggests that epigenetic alterations[56] add further complexity to pathogenesis, aetiology and prognosis of subgroups of the disease.

### 17.2.2.5 Left-sided versus right-sided tumours

Evidence is emerging to support the premise that left-sided and right-sided colon tumours have clinically significant differences. They differ with respect to biology, pathology and epidemiology, and previous data suggest a mortality difference between left- and right-sided colon tumours.[57][58] Patients with right-sided colon tumour tend to have more poorly differentiated, mutant KRAS, mutated PIK3CA and wild-type BRAF tumours, fewer liver and lung metastases, and shorter interval between diagnosis and study entry.[59] Two recent RCTs have provided data on the prognostic and predictive value of primary tumour location in patients with RAS wild-type metastatic colorectal cancer:

- The Cetuximab Combined With Irinotecan in First-line Therapy for Metastatic Colorectal Cancer (CRYSTAL) study evaluated first-line FOLFIRI plus cetuximab.[60]
- The FOLFIRI Plus Cetuximab Versus FOLFIRI Plus Bevacizumab as First-Line Treatment For Patients With Metastatic Colorectal Cancer (FIRE-3) study[24] compared FOLFIRI plus cetuximab with FOLFIRI plus bevacizumab as first-line treatment.

Results from a retrospective analysis of these two RCTs show that in patients with RAS wild-type metastatic colorectal cancer, those with left-sided tumours treated with targeted chemotherapies had markedly better progression-free survival, overall survival and objective response rate than patients with right-sided primary tumours given the same treatments. [61]

In the RAS wild-type populations of these studies, patients with left-sided tumours (n = 142 in CRYSTAL and n = 157 in FIRE-3) had markedly superior progression-free survival, overall survival, and objective response rates, compared with patients with right-sided tumours (n = 33 and n = 38, respectively). In patients with RAS wild-type left-sided tumours, FOLFIRI plus cetuximab significantly improved overall survival relative to the respective comparators (FOLFIRI and FOLFIRI plus bevacizumab). In contrast, in patients with RAS wild-type poor-prognosis right-sided tumours, limited efficacy benefits were observed upon the addition of cetuximab to FOLFIRI in CRYSTAL, and comparable outcomes were observed between the FOLFIRI plus cetuximab and FOLFIRI plus bevacizumab arms of FIRE-3. Within the RAS wild-type populations, in multivariable models that also included sex, prior adjuvant therapy, and BRAF mutational status, a significant interaction was observed between primary tumour location and treatment for overall survival in both CRYSTAL (HR 1.95; 95% CI 1.09 to 3.48) and in FIRE-3 (HR 0.40; 95% CI 0.23 to 0.70).[61]

Furthermore, a retrospective analysis phase III trial (CALGB/SWOG 80405) found that among patients with RAS wild-type tumours, cetuximab provided superior survival for those with left-sided primary tumours (median 36 versus 31.4 months), while bevacizumab was superior to cetuximab for patients with right-sided primary tumours (median 24.2 versus 16.7 months).[62]

These retrospective data analyses support a preference for a bevacizumab-containing rather than cetuximab-containing regimen for initial treatment of right-sided tumours, even if they are wild-type for RAS and BRAF. However, confirmatory data is required.

The influence of tumour location on responsiveness to particular therapies remains incompletely understood. Primary tumour location should be included in the stratification criteria for future trials in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer, particularly those involving EGFR inhibitors.

**Practice point**

Further confirmatory data from prospective trials is needed before a recommendation can be made to select treatment for individuals based on the side of their colon tumour.

**Practice point**

Future trials for colon cancer should stratify patients by 'sidedness,' to better understand this issue.

Next section: systemic chemotherapy first-line treatment

1. ↑ Amado RG, Wolf M, Peeters M, Van Cutsem E, Siena S, Freeman DJ, et al. *Wild-type KRAS is required for panitumumab efficacy in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2008 Apr 1;26(10):1626-34 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18316791.
2. ↑ [2.0] [2.1] Bokemeyer C, Bondarenko I, Makhson A, Hartmann JT, Aparicio J, de Braud F, et al. *Fluorouracil, leucovorin, and oxaliplatin with and without cetuximab in the first-line treatment of metastatic colorectal cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2009 Feb 10;27(5):663-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19114683.
3. ↑ Dahabreh IJ, Terasawa T, Castaldi PJ, Trikalinos TA. *Systematic review: Anti-epidermal growth factor receptor treatment effect modification by KRAS mutations in advanced colorectal cancer.* Ann Intern Med 2011 Jan 4;154(1):37-49 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21200037.
4. ↑ de Reyniès A, Boige V, Milano G, Faivre J, Laurent-Puig P. *KRAS mutation signature in colorectal tumors significantly overlaps with the cetuximab response signature.* J Clin Oncol 2008 May 1;26(13):2228-30; author reply 2230-1 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18445856.
5. ↑ Di Fiore F, Blanchard F, Charbonnier F, Le Pessot F, Lamy A, Galais MP, et al. *Clinical relevance of KRAS mutation detection in metastatic colorectal cancer treated by Cetuximab plus chemotherapy.* Br J Cancer 2007 Apr 23;96(8):1166-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17375050.
6. ↑ [6.0] [6.1] Karapetis CS, Khambata-Ford S, Jonker DJ, O'Callaghan CJ, Tu D, Tebbutt NC, et al. *K-ras mutations and benefit from cetuximab in advanced colorectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 2008 Oct 23;359(17):1757-65 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18946061.
7. ↑ Khambata-Ford S, Garrett CR, Meropol NJ, Basik M, Harbison CT, Wu S, et al. *Expression of epiregulin and amphiregulin and K-ras mutation status predict disease control in metastatic colorectal cancer patients treated with cetuximab.* J Clin Oncol 2007 Aug 1;25(22):3230-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17664471.

8. ↑ Lièvre A, Bachet JB, Boige V, Cayre A, Le Corre D, Buc E, et al. *KRAS mutations as an independent prognostic factor in patients with advanced colorectal cancer treated with cetuximab.* J Clin Oncol 2008 Jan 20;26(3):374-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18202412.
9. ↑ [9.0] [9.1] Loupakis F, Ruzzo A, Cremolini C, Vincenzi B, Salvatore L, Santini D, et al. *KRAS codon 61, 146 and BRAF mutations predict resistance to cetuximab plus irinotecan in KRAS codon 12 and 13 wild-type metastatic colorectal cancer.* Br J Cancer 2009 Aug 18;101(4):715-21 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19603018.
10. ↑ Richman SD, Seymour MT, Chambers P, Elliott F, Daly CL, Meade AM, et al. *KRAS and BRAF mutations in advanced colorectal cancer are associated with poor prognosis but do not preclude benefit from oxaliplatin or irinotecan: results from the MRC FOCUS trial.* J Clin Oncol 2009 Dec 10;27(35):5931-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19884549.
11. ↑ Tougeron D, Lecomte T, Pagès JC, Villalva C, Collin C, Ferru A, et al. *Effect of low-frequency KRAS mutations on the response to anti-EGFR therapy in metastatic colorectal cancer.* Ann Oncol 2013 May;24 (5):1267-73 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23293113.
12. ↑ [12.0] [12.1] Van Cutsem E, Köhne CH, Hitre E, Zaluski J, Chang Chien CR, Makhson A, et al. *Cetuximab and chemotherapy as initial treatment for metastatic colorectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 2009 Apr 2;360(14):1408-17 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19339720.
13. ↑ Jimeno A, Messersmith WA, Hirsch FR, Franklin WA, Eckhardt SG. *KRAS mutations and sensitivity to epidermal growth factor receptor inhibitors in colorectal cancer: practical application of patient selection.* J Clin Oncol 2009 Mar 1;27(7):1130-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19124802.
14. ↑ Bokemeyer C, Bondarenko I, Hartmann JT, de Braud F, Schuch G, Zubel A, et al. *Efficacy according to biomarker status of cetuximab plus FOLFOX-4 as first-line treatment for metastatic colorectal cancer: the OPUS study.* Ann Oncol 2011 Jul;22(7):1535-46 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21228335.
15. ↑ Peeters M, Price TJ, Cervantes A, Sobrero AF, Ducreux M, Hotko Y, et al. *Randomized phase III study of panitumumab with fluorouracil, leucovorin, and irinotecan (FOLFIRI) compared with FOLFIRI alone as second-line treatment in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2010 Nov 1;28(31):4706-13 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20921462.
16. ↑ [16.0] [16.1] Van Cutsem E, Köhne CH, Láng I, Folprecht G, Nowacki MP, Cascinu S, et al. *Cetuximab plus irinotecan, fluorouracil, and leucovorin as first-line treatment for metastatic colorectal cancer: updated analysis of overall survival according to tumor KRAS and BRAF mutation status.* J Clin Oncol 2011 May 20; 29(15):2011-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21502544.
17. ↑ [17.0] [17.1] Douillard JY, Oliner KS, Siena S, Tabernero J, Burkes R, Barugel M, et al. *Panitumumab-FOLFOX4 treatment and RAS mutations in colorectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 2013 Sep 12;369(11):1023-34 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24024839.
18. ↑ [18.0] [18.1] [18.2] Van Cutsem E, Lenz HJ, Köhne CH, Heinemann V, Tejpar S, Melezínek I, et al. *Fluorouracil, leucovorin, and irinotecan plus cetuximab treatment and RAS mutations in colorectal cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2015 Mar 1;33(7):692-700 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25605843.
19. ↑ [19.0] [19.1] Bokemeyer C, Köhne CH, Ciardiello F, Lenz HJ, Heinemann V, Klinkhardt U, et al. *FOLFOX4 plus cetuximab treatment and RAS mutations in colorectal cancer.* Eur J Cancer 2015 Jul;51(10):1243-52 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25937522.

20. ↑ Peeters M, Oliner KS, Price TJ, Cervantes A, Sobrero AF, Ducreux M, et al. *Analysis of KRAS/NRAS Mutations in a Phase III Study of Panitumumab with FOLFIRI Compared with FOLFIRI Alone as Second-line Treatment for Metastatic Colorectal Cancer.* Clin Cancer Res 2015 Dec 15;21(24):5469-79 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26341920.
21. ↑ 21.0 21.1 Poulin-Costello M, Azoulay L, Van Cutsem E, Peeters M, Siena S, Wolf M. *An analysis of the treatment effect of panitumumab on overall survival from a phase 3, randomized, controlled, multicenter trial (20020408) in patients with chemotherapy refractory metastatic colorectal cancer.* Target Oncol 2013 Jun;8(2):127-36 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23625191.
22. ↑ 22.0 22.1 Schwartzberg LS, Rivera F, Karthaus M, Fasola G, Canon JL, Hecht JR, et al. *PEAK: a randomized, multicenter phase II study of panitumumab plus modified fluorouracil, leucovorin, and oxaliplatin (mFOLFOX6) or bevacizumab plus mFOLFOX6 in patients with previously untreated, unresectable, wild-type KRAS exon 2 metastatic colorectal cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2014 Jul 20;32(21):2240-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24687833.
23. ↑ Stintzing, S Jung, A Rossius, L Modest, DP von Weikersthal, LF Decker, T Kiani, A Al-Batran, S-E Vehling-Kaiser, U Heintges, T Moehler, M Scheithauer, W Kirchner, T Heinemann, V. *Mutations within the EGFR signaling pathway: Influence on efficacy in FIRE-3—A randomized phase III study of FOLFIRI plus cetuximab or bevacizumab as first-line treatment for wild-type (WT) KRAS (exon 2) metastatic colorectal cancer (mCRC) patients.* J Clin Oncol 2014;32, abstract 445 Available from: http://meetinglibrary.asco.org/content/123133-143.
24. ↑ 24.0 24.1 Heinemann V, von Weikersthal LF, Decker T, Kiani A, Vehling-Kaiser U, Al-Batran SE, et al. *FOLFIRI plus cetuximab versus FOLFIRI plus bevacizumab as first-line treatment for patients with metastatic colorectal cancer (FIRE-3): a randomised, open-label, phase 3 trial.* Lancet Oncol 2014 Sep;15(10):1065-75 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25088940.
25. ↑ Lochhead P, Kuchiba A, Imamura Y, Liao X, Yamauchi M, Nishihara R, et al. *Microsatellite instability and BRAF mutation testing in colorectal cancer prognostication.* J Natl Cancer Inst 2013 Aug 7;105(15):1151-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23878352.
26. ↑ Maughan TS, Adams RA, Smith CG, Meade AM, Seymour MT, Wilson RH, et al. *Addition of cetuximab to oxaliplatin-based first-line combination chemotherapy for treatment of advanced colorectal cancer: results of the randomised phase 3 MRC COIN trial.* Lancet 2011 Jun 18;377(9783):2103-14 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21641636.
27. ↑ 27.0 27.1 Tran B, Kopetz S, Tie J, Gibbs P, Jiang ZQ, Lieu CH, et al. *Impact of BRAF mutation and microsatellite instability on the pattern of metastatic spread and prognosis in metastatic colorectal cancer.* Cancer 2011 Oct 15;117(20):4623-32 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21456008.
28. ↑ 28.0 28.1 28.2 Venderbosch S, Nagtegaal ID, Maughan TS, Smith CG, Cheadle JP, Fisher D, et al. *Mismatch repair status and BRAF mutation status in metastatic colorectal cancer patients: a pooled analysis of the CAIRO, CAIRO2, COIN, and FOCUS studies.* Clin Cancer Res 2014 Oct 15;20(20):5322-30 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25139339.
29. ↑ Yuan ZX, Wang XY, Qin QY, Chen DF, Zhong QH, Wang L, et al. *The prognostic role of BRAF mutation in metastatic colorectal cancer receiving anti-EGFR monoclonal antibodies: a meta-analysis.* PLoS One 2013;8(6):e65995 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23776587.

30. ↑ 30.0 30.1 30.2 Pietrantonio F, Petrelli F, Coinu A, Di Bartolomeo M, Borgonovo K, Maggi C, et al. *Predictive role of BRAF mutations in patients with advanced colorectal cancer receiving cetuximab and panitumumab: a meta-analysis.* Eur J Cancer 2015 Mar;51(5):587-94 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25673558.
31. ↑ 31.0 31.1 Rowland A, Dias MM, Wiese MD, Kichenadasse G, McKinnon RA, Karapetis CS, et al. *Meta-analysis of BRAF mutation as a predictive biomarker of benefit from anti-EGFR monoclonal antibody therapy for RAS wild-type metastatic colorectal cancer.* Br J Cancer 2015 Jun 9;112(12):1888-94 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25989278.
32. ↑ Corcoran RB, Atreya CE, Falchook GS, Kwak EL, Ryan DP, Bendell JC, Hamid O. *Combined BRAF and MEK Inhibition With Dabrafenib and Trametinib in BRAF V600–Mutant Colorectal Cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2015 Sep 21 [cited 2015 Sep 21];33(34), 4023–4031. Available from: https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC4669588/.
33. ↑ Corcoran RB, Ebi H, Turke AB, Coffee EM, Nishino M, Cogdill AP, et al. *EGFR-mediated re-activation of MAPK signaling contributes to insensitivity of BRAF mutant colorectal cancers to RAF inhibition with vemurafenib.* Cancer Discov 2012 Mar;2(3):227-35 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22448344.
34. ↑ Hyman DM, Puzanov I, Subbiah V, Faris JE, Chau I, Blay JY, et al. *Vemurafenib in Multiple Nonmelanoma Cancers with BRAF V600 Mutations.* N Engl J Med 2015 Aug 20;373(8):726-36 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26287849.
35. ↑ Prahallad A, Sun C, Huang S, Di Nicolantonio F, Salazar R, Zecchin D, et al. *Unresponsiveness of colon cancer to BRAF(V600E) inhibition through feedback activation of EGFR.* Nature 2012 Jan 26;483(7387):100-3 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22281684.
36. ↑ 36.0 36.1 R.B. Corcoran, T. André, T. Yoshino, J.C. Bendell, C.E. Atreya, J.H.M. Schellens, M.P. Ducreux, A. McRee, S. Siena, G. Middleton, M. Gordon, Y. Humblet, K. Muro, E. Elez, R. Yaeger, R. Sidhu, M. Squires, S. Jaeger, F. Rangwala, E. Van Cutsem. *Efficacy and circulating tumor DNA (ctDNA) analysis of the BRAF inhibitor dabrafenib (D), MEK inhibitor trametinib (T), and anti-EGFR antibody panitumumab (P) in patients (pts) with BRAF V600E–mutated (BRAFm) metastatic colorectal cancer (mCRC). Ann Oncol. 27 (suppl_6): 455O. https://academic.oup.com/annonc/article-abstract/doi/10.1093/annonc/mdw370.04/2799194/Efficacy-and-circulating-tumor-DNA-ctDNA-analysis.*; 2016.
37. ↑ Bettstetter M, Dechant S, Ruemmele P, Grabowski M, Keller G, Holinski-Feder E, et al. *Distinction of hereditary nonpolyposis colorectal cancer and sporadic microsatellite-unstable colorectal cancer through quantification of MLH1 methylation by real-time PCR.* Clin Cancer Res 2007 Jun 1;13(11):3221-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17545526.
38. ↑ Domingo E, Niessen RC, Oliveira C, Alhopuro P, Moutinho C, Espín E, et al. *BRAF-V600E is not involved in the colorectal tumorigenesis of HNPCC in patients with functional MLH1 and MSH2 genes.* Oncogene 2005 Jun 2;24(24):3995-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15782118.
39. ↑ Loughrey MB, Waring PM, Tan A, Trivett M, Kovalenko S, Beshay V, et al. *Incorporation of somatic BRAF mutation testing into an algorithm for the investigation of hereditary non-polyposis colorectal cancer.* Fam Cancer 2007;6(3):301-10 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17453358.
40. ↑ Cremolini C, Di Bartolomeo M, Amatu A, Antoniotti C, Moretto R, Berenato R, et al. *BRAF codons 594 and 596 mutations identify a new molecular subtype of metastatic colorectal cancer at favorable prognosis.* Ann Oncol 2015 Oct;26(10):2092-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26153495.

41. ↑ Yim KL. *Microsatellite instability in metastatic colorectal cancer: a review of pathology, response to chemotherapy and clinical outcome.* Med Oncol 2012 Sep;29(3):1796-801 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21901450.
42. ↑ 42.0 42.1 Goldstein J, Tran B, Ensor J, Gibbs P, Wong HL, Wong SF, et al. *Multicenter retrospective analysis of metastatic colorectal cancer (CRC) with high-level microsatellite instability (MSI-H).* Ann Oncol 2014 May;25(5):1032-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24585723.
43. ↑ 43.0 43.1 Le DT, Uram JN, Wang H, Bartlett BR, Kemberling H, Eyring AD, et al. *PD-1 Blockade in Tumors with Mismatch-Repair Deficiency.* N Engl J Med 2015 Jun 25;372(26):2509-20 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26028255.
44. ↑ 44.0 44.1 Overman, MJ Kopetz, S McDermott, RS Leach, J Lonardi, S Lenz, H-J Morse, MA Desai, J Hill, A Axelson, M.D. Moss, R.A. Lin, C-S Goldberg, M Andre, T. *Nivolumab ± ipilimumab in treatment (tx) of patients (pts) with metastatic colorectal cancer (mCRC) with and without high microsatellite instability (MSI-H): CheckMate-142 interim results.* J Clin Oncol 2016;34, abstract 3501 Available from: http://meetinglibrary.asco.org/content/166455-176.
45. ↑ Mao C, Yang ZY, Hu XF, Chen Q, Tang JL. *PIK3CA exon 20 mutations as a potential biomarker for resistance to anti-EGFR monoclonal antibodies in KRAS wild-type metastatic colorectal cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis.* Ann Oncol 2012 Jun;23(6):1518-25 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22039088.
46. ↑ Tian S, Simon I, Moreno V, Roepman P, Tabernero J, Snel M, et al. *A combined oncogenic pathway signature of BRAF, KRAS and PI3KCA mutation improves colorectal cancer classification and cetuximab treatment prediction.* Gut 2013 Apr;62(4):540-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22798500.
47. ↑ Laurent-Puig P, Cayre A, Manceau G, Buc E, Bachet JB, Lecomte T, et al. *Analysis of PTEN, BRAF, and EGFR status in determining benefit from cetuximab therapy in wild-type KRAS metastatic colon cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2009 Dec 10;27(35):5924-30 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19884556.
48. ↑ Garm Spindler KL, Pallisgaard N, Rasmussen AA, Lindebjerg J, Andersen RF, Crüger D, et al. *The importance of KRAS mutations and EGF61A>G polymorphism to the effect of cetuximab and irinotecan in metastatic colorectal cancer.* Ann Oncol 2009 May;20(5):879-84 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19179548.
49. ↑ Huang F, Xu LA, Khambata-Ford S. *Correlation between gene expression of IGF-1R pathway markers and cetuximab benefit in metastatic colorectal cancer.* Clin Cancer Res 2012 Feb 15;18(4):1156-66 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22294722.
50. ↑ Winder T, Zhang W, Yang D, Ning Y, Bohanes P, Gerger A, et al. *Germline polymorphisms in genes involved in the IGF1 pathway predict efficacy of cetuximab in wild-type KRAS mCRC patients.* Clin Cancer Res 2010 Nov 15;16(22):5591-602 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20935157.
51. ↑ Ålgars A, Lintunen M, Carpén O, Ristamäki R, Sundström J. *EGFR gene copy number assessment from areas with highest EGFR expression predicts response to anti-EGFR therapy in colorectal cancer.* Br J Cancer 2011 Jul 12;105(2):255-62 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21694725.
52. ↑ Igarashi H, Kurihara H, Mitsuhashi K, Ito M, Okuda H, Kanno S, et al. *Association of MicroRNA-31-5p with Clinical Efficacy of Anti-EGFR Therapy in Patients with Metastatic Colorectal Cancer.* Ann Surg Oncol 2015 Aug;22(8):2640-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25472647.

53. ↑ Seligmann JF, Elliott F, Richman SD, Jacobs B, Hemmings G, Brown S, et al. *Combined Epiregulin and Amphiregulin Expression Levels as a Predictive Biomarker for Panitumumab Therapy Benefit or Lack of Benefit in Patients With RAS Wild-Type Advanced Colorectal Cancer.* JAMA Oncol 2016 Feb 11 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26867820.
54. ↑ Misale S, Di Nicolantonio F, Sartore-Bianchi A, Siena S, Bardelli A. *Resistance to anti-EGFR therapy in colorectal cancer: from heterogeneity to convergent evolution.* Cancer Discov 2014 Nov;4(11):1269-80 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25293556.
55. ↑ Karapetis CS, Jonker D, Daneshmand M, Hanson JE, O'Callaghan CJ, Marginean C, et al. *PIK3CA, BRAF, and PTEN status and benefit from cetuximab in the treatment of advanced colorectal cancer--results from NCIC CTG/AGITG CO.17.* Clin Cancer Res 2014 Feb 1;20(3):744-53 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24218517.
56. ↑ Juo YY, Johnston FM, Zhang DY, Juo HH, Wang H, Pappou EP, et al. *Prognostic value of CpG island methylator phenotype among colorectal cancer patients: a systematic review and meta-analysis.* Ann Oncol 2014 Dec;25(12):2314-27 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24718889.
57. ↑ Petrelli F, Tomasello G, Borgonovo K, Ghidini M, Turati L, Dallera P, et al. *Prognostic Survival Associated With Left-Sided vs Right-Sided Colon Cancer: A Systematic Review and Meta-analysis.* JAMA Oncol 2016 Oct 27 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27787550.
58. ↑ Yahagi M, Okabayashi K, Hasegawa H, Tsuruta M, Kitagawa Y. *The Worse Prognosis of Right-Sided Compared with Left-Sided Colon Cancers: a Systematic Review and Meta-analysis.* J Gastrointest Surg 2016 Mar;20(3):648-55 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26573851.
59. ↑ Brule SY, Jonker DJ, Karapetis CS, et al.. *Location of colon cancer (right-sided versus left-sided) as a prognostic factor and a predictor of benefit from cetuximab in NCIC CO.17.* Eur J Cancer 2015;51:1405-14.
60. ↑ E. Van Cutsem, M. Nowacki, I. Lang, S. Cascinu, I. Shchepotin, J. Maurel, P. Rougier, D. Cunningham, J. Nippgen, C. Köhne. *Randomized phase III study of irinotecan and 5-FU/FA with or without cetuximab in the first-line treatment of patients with metastatic colorectal cancer (mCRC): The CRYSTAL trial.* 25:18_suppl, 4000-4000 2007 Available from: http://ascopubs.org/action/showCitFormats?doi=10.1200/jco.2007.25.18_suppl.4000.
61. ↑ [61.0] [61.1] Tejpar S, Stintzing S, Ciardiello F, Tabernero J, Van Cutsem E, Beier F, et al. *Prognostic and Predictive Relevance of Primary Tumor Location in Patients With RAS Wild-Type Metastatic Colorectal Cancer: Retrospective Analyses of the CRYSTAL and FIRE-3 Trials.* JAMA Oncol 2016 Oct 10 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27722750.
62. ↑ Alan P. Venook, Donna Niedzwiecki, Federico Innocenti, Briant Fruth, Claire Greene, Bert H. O'Neil, James Edward Shaw, James Norman Atkins, Laura E. Horvath, Blase N. Polite, Jeffrey A. Meyerhardt, Eileen Mary O'Reilly, et al. *Impact of primary (1º) tumor location on overall survival (OS) and progression-free survival (PFS) in patients (pts) with metastatic colorectal cancer (mCRC): Analysis of CALGB/SWOG 80405 (Alliance).* J Clin Oncol 34, 2016 (suppl; abstr 3504) 2016 Available from: http://meetinglibrary.asco.org/content/161936-176.

## 17.3 Systemic chemotherapy first-line treatment

**Contents**



## 17.3.1 Background

Chemotherapy combinations commonly used in the treatment of metastatic colorectal cancer include:

- fluorouracil (5FU) and leucovorin (FU/LV)
- leucovorin calcium (folinic acid), 5FU and oxaliplatin (FOLFOX)
- leucovorin calcium (folinic acid), 5FU and irinotecan hydrochloride (FOLFIRI)
- leucovorin calcium (folinic acid), 5FU, oxaliplatin and irinotecan hydrochloride (FOLFOXIRI)
- capecitabine plus oxaliplatin (XELOX) – also called CAPOX
- capecitabine plus irinotecan hydrochloride (XELIRI).

First line chemotherapy for metastatic colorectal cancer typically contains a fluoropyrimidine (intravenous 5FU or oral capecitabine) in combination with either oxaliplatin or irinotecan in various schedules.

For information on protocols, see eviQ cancer treatments.

Back to top

## 17.3.2 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews were undertaken for this topic. Practice points were based on selected reviews, primary studies, and other clinical practice guidelines (see Guideline development process).

### 17.3.2.1 The cytotoxic chemotherapy backbone

Systemic chemotherapy produces clinically meaningful improvements in median survival and progression-free survival. These benefits are most pronounced with regimens containing irinotecan or oxaliplatin in combination with 5FU.

Therapy should be individualised, based upon biomarker studies (see Molecular pathology and biomarkers), previous treatment, disease extent, organ function, and medical comorbidities. For most patients, treatment will be palliative, not curative. The treatment goals may be to prolong overall survival and maintain quality of life for as long as possible.

Combination chemotherapy with a fluoropyrimidine plus either oxaliplatin or irinotecan (FOLFOX or FOLFIRI) achieves higher response rates and improved progression free survival times than a fluoropyrimidine or FULV alone.[1][2] FOLFOX and FOLFIRI are both acceptable choices for first-line therapy. This recommendation is consistent with consensus-based guidelines by the US National Comprehensive Cancer Network (NCCN)[3] and the European Society for Medical Oncology (ESMO).[4]

5FU chemotherapy can be delivered in a number of different ways. Continuous infusion 5FU is generally less toxic than some bolus and oral regimens. Capecitabine, the oral formulation, can be used as an alternative to FULV alone[5] (XELOX and XELIRI) or as monotherapy in patients with poor performance status or medical comorbidities precluding the use of combination therapy approaches. The combination of capecitabine and irinotecan (XELIRI) has been shown to be inferior and more toxic (higher rates of severe vomiting, diarrhoea and dehydration) than infusional fluorouracil and irinotecan (FOLFIRI).[6][7] The preferred regimen of the eviQ reference committee is FOLFIRI or irinotecan monotherapy.

The following monoclonal antibodies have been shown to improve the clinical outcome of patients with metastatic colorectal cancer when combined with combination chemotherapy in the first-line setting:[8][9][10][11][12][13][14][15][16][17]

- bevacizumab
- cetuximab
- panitumumab.

Back to top

## 17.3.2.2 Patients who are not candidates for intensive therapy

For patients who are not candidates for an intensive first-line oxaliplatin or irinotecan-based combination regimen, we suggest fluoropyrimidine therapy alone.[18] This recommendation is consistent with consensus-based guidelines from the NCCN[3] and ESMO.[4]

Capecitabine monotherapy is an effective first-line regimen when fluoropyrimidines alone are indicated. If intravenous 5FU is used, short-term infusional FU/LV rather than bolus 5FU administration is preferable because of its favourable toxicity profile.

The use of FU/LV or capecitabine plus bevacizumab is also appropriate in patients who are not good candidates for oxaliplatin or irinotecan. In two phase II randomised controlled trials (RCTs) in which previously untreated patients were assigned to bolus FU/LV with or without bevacizumab (5 or 10 mg/kg every two weeks), response rates were approximately two fold higher with bevacizumab, and median survival was extended by 7.7 and 3.7 months for the two doses, respectively.[19][20]

For patients in whom either oxaliplatin or irinotecan need to be withheld because of toxicity, it is reasonable to continue the fluoropyrimidine plus bevacizumab, or even bevacizumab alone.

### 17.3.2.3 Patients who are candidates for intensive systemic therapy

For patients who are able to tolerate it, we suggest combination chemotherapy with a doublet (FOLFOX, XELOX, or FOLFIRI) rather than a single-agent sequential therapy for initial treatment of metastatic colorectal cancer, particularly for those who have limited liver metastases that might become potentially resectable. This recommendation is consistent with consensus-based guidelines from NCCN)[3] and ESMO.[4]

The three active conventional chemotherapy agents for metastatic colorectal cancer are fluoropyrimidines, irinotecan, and oxaliplatin. The proportion of patients exposed to all three drug classes during the course of therapy correlates strongly with median survival in all large published phase III trials over the last decade.[18]

The triplet combination chemotherapy regimen FOLFOXIRI with or without bevacizumab can be considered for first-line therapy in selected patients who are able to tolerate intensive therapy and for whom a more aggressive initial approach is chosen due to patient factors such as excellent performance status, younger age, higher tumour load, conversion therapy for initially non-resectable liver metastases, contraindication to cetuximab/panitumumab (e.g. RAS/BRAF mutation). In an Italian study FOLFOXIRI was shown to be superior to FOLFIRI in terms of response rate (the primary end point, 66% versus 41%) the number of patients able to undergo complete secondary surgical cytoreduction of liver metastases, median progression-free survival, and median overall survival (23 versus 17 months).[21][22]

Similar high response rates and improved median overall survival were noted with FOLFOXIRI plus bevacizumab as compared to FOLFIRI plus bevacizumab in the TRIBE trial, but it did not confirm higher rates of secondary surgical resection of liver metastases with an initial three-drug chemotherapy backbone.[23] Furthermore, grade 3 to 4 toxic effects that were more common with FOLFOXIRI included diarrhoea, stomatitis, neutropenia, and peripheral neuropathy. Not all studies have concluded a benefit from triplet cytotoxic therapy versus a standard doublet[24] and the contribution bevacizumab makes to the triplet regimen remains uncertain.

**Practice point**

**For patients who are not candidates for intensive therapy**

- Patient comorbidities, ECOG performance status, and location and burden of metastatic disease should be considered in treatment decisions
- For patients who are medically unfit with poor performance status, a supportive care approach may be appropriate.
- In patients with poor performance status or significant comorbidities palliative treatment with single agent fluoropyrimidine (with or without bevacizumab) may be preferred to doublet chemotherapy. Fluoropyrimidine-based therapy alone (or in combination with bevacizumab) can be considered in patients with low-volume unresectable disease.

**Practice point**

**For patients who are candidates for intensive therapy**

- For patients who are able to tolerate it, combination chemotherapy with a doublet (FOLFOX, XELOX [CAPOX], or FOLFIRI) rather than a single agent sequential therapy for initial treatment of metastatic colorectal cancer, is preferred.

**Practice point**

**When the aim is cytoreduction prior to surgical resection**

- Patients with potentially resectable metastatic disease should be discussed at a multidisciplinary meeting, and treatment plans should consider patient comorbidity and suitability for an aggressive treatment strategy.
- Monotherapy is not appropriate and combination chemotherapy with a doublet (FOLFOX, XELOX [CAPOX], or FOLRIR) should be used where the aim of therapy is significant cytoreduction. For those with RAS wild-type tumours, an anti-EGFR antibody in conjunction with combination chemotherapy can be considered.
- For those with good performance status and without significant comorbidities intensive triplet chemotherapy with FOLFIRINOX can be considered.

Next section: biological agents first-line treatment of metastatic CRC

Back to top

## 17.3.3 References

1. ↑ de Gramont A, Figer A, Seymour M, Homerin M, Hmissi A, Cassidy J, et al. *Leucovorin and fluorouracil with or without oxaliplatin as first-line treatment in advanced colorectal cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2000 Aug;18 (16):2938-47 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10944126.
2. ↑ Douillard JY, V-303 Study Group.. *Irinotecan and high-dose fluorouracil/leucovorin for metastatic colorectal cancer.* Oncology (Williston Park) 2000 Dec;14(12 Suppl 14):51-5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11200150.
3. ↑ [3.0] [3.1] [3.2] National Comprehensive Cancer Network. *NCCN Guidelines: Colon Cancer.* National Comprehensive Cancer Network; 2016.
4. ↑ [4.0] [4.1] [4.2] Van Cutsem E, Cervantes A, Adam R, Sobrero A, Van Krieken JH, Aderka D, et al. *ESMO consensus guidelines for the management of patients with metastatic colorectal cancer.* Ann Oncol 2016 Aug;27(8):1386-422 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27380959.

5. ↑ Van Cutsem E, Hoff PM, Harper P, Bukowski RM, Cunningham D, Dufour P, et al. *Oral capecitabine vs intravenous 5-fluorouracil and leucovorin: integrated efficacy data and novel analyses from two large, randomised, phase III trials.* Br J Cancer 2004 Mar 22;90(6):1190-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15026800.
6. ↑ Fuchs CS, Marshall J, Mitchell E, Wierzbicki R, Ganju V, Jeffery M, et al. *Randomized, controlled trial of irinotecan plus infusional, bolus, or oral fluoropyrimidines in first-line treatment of metastatic colorectal cancer: results from the BICC-C Study.* J Clin Oncol 2007 Oct 20;25(30):4779-86 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17947725.
7. ↑ Köhne CH, De Greve J, Hartmann JT, Lang I, Vergauwe P, Becker K, et al. *Irinotecan combined with infusional 5-fluorouracil/folinic acid or capecitabine plus celecoxib or placebo in the first-line treatment of patients with metastatic colorectal cancer. EORTC study 40015.* Ann Oncol 2008 May;19(5):920-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18065406.
8. ↑ Bokemeyer C, Bondarenko I, Makhson A, Hartmann JT, Aparicio J, de Braud F, et al. *Fluorouracil, leucovorin, and oxaliplatin with and without cetuximab in the first-line treatment of metastatic colorectal cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2009 Feb 10;27(5):663-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19114683.
9. ↑ Van Cutsem E, Köhne CH, Hitre E, Zaluski J, Chang Chien CR, Makhson A, et al. *Cetuximab and chemotherapy as initial treatment for metastatic colorectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 2009 Apr 2;360(14):1408-17 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19339720.
10. ↑ Bokemeyer C, Bondarenko I, Hartmann JT, de Braud F, Schuch G, Zubel A, et al. *Efficacy according to biomarker status of cetuximab plus FOLFOX-4 as first-line treatment for metastatic colorectal cancer: the OPUS study.* Ann Oncol 2011 Jul;22(7):1535-46 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21228335.
11. ↑ Van Cutsem E, Köhne CH, Láng I, Folprecht G, Nowacki MP, Cascinu S, et al. *Cetuximab plus irinotecan, fluorouracil, and leucovorin as first-line treatment for metastatic colorectal cancer: updated analysis of overall survival according to tumor KRAS and BRAF mutation status.* J Clin Oncol 2011 May 20;29(15):2011-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21502544.
12. ↑ Douillard JY, Oliner KS, Siena S, Tabernero J, Burkes R, Barugel M, et al. *Panitumumab-FOLFOX4 treatment and RAS mutations in colorectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 2013 Sep 12;369(11):1023-34 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24024839.
13. ↑ Van Cutsem E, Lenz HJ, Köhne CH, Heinemann V, Tejpar S, Melezínek I, et al. *Fluorouracil, leucovorin, and irinotecan plus cetuximab treatment and RAS mutations in colorectal cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2015 Mar 1;33(7):692-700 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25605843.
14. ↑ Bokemeyer C, Köhne CH, Ciardiello F, Lenz HJ, Heinemann V, Klinkhardt U, et al. *FOLFOX4 plus cetuximab treatment and RAS mutations in colorectal cancer.* Eur J Cancer 2015 Jul;51(10):1243-52 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25937522.
15. ↑ Douillard JY, Siena S, Cassidy J, Tabernero J, Burkes R, Barugel M, et al. *Randomized, phase III trial of panitumumab with infusional fluorouracil, leucovorin, and oxaliplatin (FOLFOX4) versus FOLFOX4 alone as first-line treatment in patients with previously untreated metastatic colorectal cancer: the PRIME study.* J Clin Oncol 2010 Nov 1;28(31):4697-705 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20921465.
16. ↑ Hurwitz H, Fehrenbacher L, Novotny W, Cartwright T, Hainsworth J, Heim W, et al. *Bevacizumab plus irinotecan, fluorouracil, and leucovorin for metastatic colorectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 2004 Jun 3;350(23):2335-42 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15175435.

17. ↑ Saltz LB, Clarke S, Díaz-Rubio E, Scheithauer W, Figer A, Wong R, et al. *Bevacizumab in combination with oxaliplatin-based chemotherapy as first-line therapy in metastatic colorectal cancer: a randomized phase III study.* J Clin Oncol 2008 Apr 20;26(12):2013-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18421054.
18. ↑ [18.0] [18.1] Goldberg RM, Rothenberg ML, Van Cutsem E, Benson AB 3rd, Blanke CD, Diasio RB, et al. *The continuum of care: a paradigm for the management of metastatic colorectal cancer.* Oncologist 2007 Jan;12(1):38-50 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17227899.
19. ↑ Kabbinavar FF, Schulz J, McCleod M, Patel T, Hamm JT, Hecht JR, et al. *Addition of bevacizumab to bolus fluorouracil and leucovorin in first-line metastatic colorectal cancer: results of a randomized phase II trial.* J Clin Oncol 2005 Jun 1;23(16):3697-705 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15738537.
20. ↑ Vincenzi B, Santini D, Russo A, Spoto C, Venditti O, Gasparro S, et al. *Bevacizumab in association with de Gramont 5-fluorouracil/folinic acid in patients with oxaliplatin-, irinotecan-, and cetuximab-refractory colorectal cancer: a single-center phase 2 trial.* Cancer 2009 Oct 15;115(20):4849-56 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19626652.
21. ↑ Falcone A, Ricci S, Brunetti I, Pfanner E, Allegrini G, Barbara C, et al. *Phase III trial of infusional fluorouracil, leucovorin, oxaliplatin, and irinotecan (FOLFOXIRI) compared with infusional fluorouracil, leucovorin, and irinotecan (FOLFIRI) as first-line treatment for metastatic colorectal cancer: the Gruppo Oncologico Nord Ovest.* J Clin Oncol 2007 May 1;25(13):1670-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17470860.
22. ↑ Masi G, Vasile E, Loupakis F, Cupini S, Fornaro L, Baldi G, et al. *Randomized trial of two induction chemotherapy regimens in metastatic colorectal cancer: an updated analysis.* J Natl Cancer Inst 2011 Jan 5;103(1):21-30 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21123833.
23. ↑ Cremolini C, Loupakis F, Antoniotti C, Lupi C, Sensi E, Lonardi S, et al. *FOLFOXIRI plus bevacizumab versus FOLFIRI plus bevacizumab as first-line treatment of patients with metastatic colorectal cancer: updated overall survival and molecular subgroup analyses of the open-label, phase 3 TRIBE study.* Lancet Oncol 2015 Oct;16(13):1306-15 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26338525.
24. ↑ Souglakos J, Androulakis N, Syrigos K, Polyzos A, Ziras N, Athanasiadis A, et al. *FOLFOXIRI (folinic acid, 5-fluorouracil, oxaliplatin and irinotecan) vs FOLFIRI (folinic acid, 5-fluorouracil and irinotecan) as first-line treatment in metastatic colorectal cancer (MCC): a multicentre randomised phase III trial from the Hellenic Oncology Research Group (HORG).* Br J Cancer 2006 Mar 27;94(6):798-805 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16508637.

Back to top

# 17.4 Biological agents in first-line tx of metastatic CRC

**Contents**

# 17.4.1 Background

Biological agents used in the treatment of patients with colorectal cancer include:

- bevacizumab – a humanised monoclonal antibody that targets vascular endothelial growth factor-A (VEGF-A), a member of a family of VEGF receptor-activating ligands
- cetuximab and panitumumab – monoclonal antibodies that target epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR).

# 17.4.2 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews were undertaken for this topic. Practice points were based on selected reviews, primary studies, and other clinical practice guidelines (see Guideline development process).

## 17.4.2.1 Anti-VEGF therapy – bevacizumab

In a pivotal early randomised controlled trial (RCT), the addition of bevacizumab to the bolus irinotecan, leucovorin (folinic acid), and fluorouracil (IFL) regimen significantly improved response rates (45% versus 35%), increased time to tumour progression (11 versus 6 months), and prolonged overall survival (20 versus 16 months).[1]

Since then, benefit for adding bevacizumab to a variety of fluoropyrimidine, irinotecan, and oxaliplatin-containing regimens used for first-line therapy has been confirmed, although the magnitude of both the overall and progression-free survival benefits are relatively modest.[2] To date, there are still only limited data on the benefit of adding bevacizumab to an oxaliplatin-based regimen[3] although this has been a standard first-line treatment in many patients, and no RCT comparing FOLFIRI versus FOLFIRI plus bevacizumab has been published.

A open-label, phase 3 trial (the TRIBE study) reported that the combination of leucovorin calcium (folinic acid), 5FU, oxaliplatin and irinotecan hydrochloride (FOLFOXIRI) in combination with bevacizumab enhanced response rate and progression-free survival, compared with FOLFIRI plus bevacizumab[4] and reported a median overall survival of 29.8 months. The use of FOLFOXIRI–bevacizumab treatment is limited to select patients with excellent performance status and minimal comorbidities. The contribution bevacizumab makes to the triplet regimen is uncertain.

Bevacizumab can be associated with a number of potentially serious side effects, including proteinuria, hypertension, bleeding, bowel perforation, impaired wound healing, arterial (but not venous) thromboembolic events (such as transient ischemic attack, stroke, angina, myocardial infarction), and reversible posterior multifocal leukoencephalopathy.[5]

Currently there is no validated predictive biomarker for bevacizumab.

For patients with RAS and BRAF wild-type tumours, an important question is whether a bevacizumab-containing regimen provides superior outcomes as compared with an initial regimen that contains an anti-EGFR agent. Emerging data suggest that first-line cetuximab-containing regimens may provide superior outcomes for patients with RAS/BRAF wild-type metastatic colorectal cancer with a primary tumour site in the left colon (see Left-sided versus right-sided tumours).[6]

Back to top

### 17.4.2.2 Anti-EGFR therapy

The EGFR antibodies cetuximab and panitumumab are active in various combinations, either alone or with cytotoxic chemotherapy agents.

The activity of EGFR antibodies is limited to patients with RAS wild-type tumours. Thus, knowledge of the RAS mutational status of the patient is a prerequisite to treatment with EGFR antibodies. Unlike cetuximab (a chimeric monoclonal antibody produced in a murine culture), panitumumab is a fully human monoclonal antibody, and has a lower incidence of infusion reactions. The available evidence suggests that antitumor efficacy is similar to that of cetuximab, and that the two drugs might be interchangeable.[7][8]

The addition of cetuximab to FOLFIRI has been shown to improve response rate, median progression-free survival rate and overall survival rate in first-line use, compared with FOLFIRI alone in metastatic colorectal cancer patients with RAS wild-type tumours.[9][10][11] Both cetuximab and panitumumab also increase the activity of the cytotoxic doublet FOLFOX in metastatic colorectal cancer patients with RAS wild-type tumours.[12][13][14][15][16][17] In contrast, benefits have not been shown for the addition of EGFR antibodies to oxaliplatin-based regimens where non-infusional fluoropyrimidines were used, such as bolus administration, the combination of 5-flourouracil (5FU), calcium leucovorin (folinic acid) and oxaliplatin (FLOX), capecitabine, or capecitabine plus oxaliplatin (CAPOX).[16][18]

Biologicals are generally indicated for the first-line treatment of patients with metastatic colorectal cancer unless contraindicated due to, for example, reduced organ function, poor performance status or cardiovascular insufficiency. Capecitabine-based therapy should not be used in combination with EGFR antibody therapies.[16]

Combinations of cetuximab or panitumumab plus an irinotecan or oxaliplatin-based cytotoxic regimen that contains infusional 5FU (i.e, FOLFIRI and FOLFOX) are safe and effective. These are a reasonable first-line option for patients with RAS and BRAF wild-type tumours, especially for patients with a primary tumour on the left side.

| **Practice point** |
| --- |
| Biological agents targeting EGFR or VEGF in combination with chemotherapy are recommended in the first-line treatment of most patients unless contraindicated. |

**Practice point**

EGFR antibodies should:

- be used in patients with RAS wild-type tumours
- be used in combination with FOLFIRI or FOLFOX
- not be combined with capecitabine-based and bolus 5FU-based regimens
- be considered in patients with RAS wild-type left-sided tumours.

**Practice point**

EGFR antibodies may be less efficacious in patients with BRAF mutations.

**Practice point**

VEGF antibody (bevacizumab):

- should be used in combination with cytotoxic doublets including FOLFOX, XELOX and FOLFIRI
- can be used in combination with the triplet cytotoxic regimen FOLFOXIRI in select fit patients where tumour shrinkage is the goal, and potentially in fit patients with a BRAF mutation
- can be used in combination with fluoropyrimidine monotherapy in less fit patients unlikely to be suitable for a doublet cytotoxic regimen.

Next section: treatment and continuum of care model

Back to top

## 17.4.3 References

1. ↑ Hurwitz H, Fehrenbacher L, Novotny W, Cartwright T, Hainsworth J, Heim W, et al. *Bevacizumab plus irinotecan, fluorouracil, and leucovorin for metastatic colorectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 2004 Jun 3;350(23): 2335-42 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15175435.

2. ↑ Hurwitz HI, Tebbutt NC, Kabbinavar F, Giantonio BJ, Guan ZZ, Mitchell L, et al. *Efficacy and safety of bevacizumab in metastatic colorectal cancer: pooled analysis from seven randomized controlled trials.* Oncologist 2013;18(9):1004-12 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23881988.
3. ↑ Saltz LB, Clarke S, Díaz-Rubio E, Scheithauer W, Figer A, Wong R, et al. *Bevacizumab in combination with oxaliplatin-based chemotherapy as first-line therapy in metastatic colorectal cancer: a randomized phase III study.* J Clin Oncol 2008 Apr 20;26(12):2013-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18421054.
4. ↑ Cremolini C, Loupakis F, Antoniotti C, Lupi C, Sensi E, Lonardi S, et al. *FOLFOXIRI plus bevacizumab versus FOLFIRI plus bevacizumab as first-line treatment of patients with metastatic colorectal cancer: updated overall survival and molecular subgroup analyses of the open-label, phase 3 TRIBE study.* Lancet Oncol 2015 Oct;16(13):1306-15 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26338525.
5. ↑ Roche. *Avastatin (bevacizumab) TGA-approved product information. Last updated 13 October 2015.* [homepage on the internet]; Available from: Available at: www.ebs.tga.gov.au.
6. ↑ Sandrine Hiret, Christophe Borg, Aurelie Bertaut, Olivier Bouche, Antoine Adenis, Gael Deplanque, Eric Francois, Thierry Conroy, Francois Ghiringhelli, Gaetan Des Guetz, Jean-François Seitz, Pascal Artru, Trevor Stanbury, Marc G. Denis, Jaafar Bennouna. *Bevacizumab or cetuximab plus chemotherapy after progression with bevacizumab plus chemotherapy in patients with wtKRAS metastatic colorectal cancer: A randomized phase II study (Prodige 18 –UNICANCER GI).* J Clin Oncol; 2016.
7. ↑ Jonker DJ, O'Callaghan CJ, Karapetis CS, Zalcberg JR, Tu D, Au HJ, et al. *Cetuximab for the treatment of colorectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 2007 Nov 15;357(20):2040-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18003960.
8. ↑ Price TJ, Peeters M, Kim TW, Li J, Cascinu S, Ruff P, et al. *Panitumumab versus cetuximab in patients with chemotherapy-refractory wild-type KRAS exon 2 metastatic colorectal cancer (ASPECCT): a randomised, multicentre, open-label, non-inferiority phase 3 study.* Lancet Oncol 2014 May;15(6):569-79 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24739896.
9. ↑ Van Cutsem E, Köhne CH, Hitre E, Zaluski J, Chang Chien CR, Makhson A, et al. *Cetuximab and chemotherapy as initial treatment for metastatic colorectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 2009 Apr 2;360(14):1408-17 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19339720.
10. ↑ Van Cutsem E, Köhne CH, Láng I, Folprecht G, Nowacki MP, Cascinu S, et al. *Cetuximab plus irinotecan, fluorouracil, and leucovorin as first-line treatment for metastatic colorectal cancer: updated analysis of overall survival according to tumor KRAS and BRAF mutation status.* J Clin Oncol 2011 May 20;29(15):2011-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21502544.
11. ↑ Van Cutsem E, Lenz HJ, Köhne CH, Heinemann V, Tejpar S, Melezínek I, et al. *Fluorouracil, leucovorin, and irinotecan plus cetuximab treatment and RAS mutations in colorectal cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2015 Mar 1;33(7):692-700 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25605843.
12. ↑ Bokemeyer C, Bondarenko I, Makhson A, Hartmann JT, Aparicio J, de Braud F, et al. *Fluorouracil, leucovorin, and oxaliplatin with and without cetuximab in the first-line treatment of metastatic colorectal cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2009 Feb 10;27(5):663-71 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19114683.
13. ↑ Bokemeyer C, Bondarenko I, Hartmann JT, de Braud F, Schuch G, Zubel A, et al. *Efficacy according to biomarker status of cetuximab plus FOLFOX-4 as first-line treatment for metastatic colorectal cancer: the OPUS study.* Ann Oncol 2011 Jul;22(7):1535-46 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21228335.

14. ↑ Douillard JY, Oliner KS, Siena S, Tabernero J, Burkes R, Barugel M, et al. *Panitumumab-FOLFOX4 treatment and RAS mutations in colorectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 2013 Sep 12;369(11):1023-34 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24024839.
15. ↑ Bokemeyer C, Köhne CH, Ciardiello F, Lenz HJ, Heinemann V, Klinkhardt U, et al. *FOLFOX4 plus cetuximab treatment and RAS mutations in colorectal cancer.* Eur J Cancer 2015 Jul;51(10):1243-52 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25937522.
16. ↑ [16.0] [16.1] [16.2] Maughan TS, Adams RA, Smith CG, Meade AM, Seymour MT, Wilson RH, et al. *Addition of cetuximab to oxaliplatin-based first-line combination chemotherapy for treatment of advanced colorectal cancer: results of the randomised phase 3 MRC COIN trial.* Lancet 2011 Jun 18;377(9783):2103-14 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21641636.
17. ↑ Douillard JY, Siena S, Cassidy J, Tabernero J, Burkes R, Barugel M, et al. *Final results from PRIME: randomized phase III study of panitumumab with FOLFOX4 for first-line treatment of metastatic colorectal cancer.* Ann Oncol 2014 Jul;25(7):1346-55 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24718886.
18. ↑ Tveit KM, Guren T, Glimelius B, Pfeiffer P, Sorbye H, Pyrhonen S, et al. *Phase III trial of cetuximab with continuous or intermittent fluorouracil, leucovorin, and oxaliplatin (Nordic FLOX) versus FLOX alone in first-line treatment of metastatic colorectal cancer: the NORDIC-VII study.* J Clin Oncol 2012 May 20;30(15):1755-62 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22473155.

Back to top

# 17.5 Subsequent treatment & continuum-of-care model

**Contents**



## 17.5.1 Background

After initial systemic therapy for colorectal cancer, the approach to subsequent therapy is variable. It might include maintenance chemotherapy (particularly for patients treated initially with an oxaliplatin-containing regimen) or a switch to a different regimen altogether because of disease progression or intolerance to the initial regimen.

## 17.5.2 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews were undertaken for this topic. Practice points were based on selected reviews, primary studies, and other clinical practice guidelines (see Guideline development process).

### 17.5.2.1 Continuum-of-care model

For patients with metastatic colorectal cancer, a 'continuum-of-care' approach is now favoured over the model of distinct 'lines' of chemotherapy (in which regimens containing non-cross-resistant drugs are each used in succession until disease progression).[1]

This approach emphasises an individualised treatment strategy that might include periods of maintenance chemotherapy interspersed with more aggressive treatment protocols, rechallenging patients who responded to first-line treatment with the same agents used first-line[2][3] as well as reutilisation of previously administered chemotherapy agents in combination with other active drugs.

For medically unfit patients with a poor performance status or extensive comorbidity, supportive care without chemotherapy should be considered.

Back to top

### 17.5.2.2 Discontinuation of treatment and maintenance therapy

The optimal duration of initial chemotherapy for non-resectable disease in the absence of disease progression is debated. In general, the decision to permit treatment breaks during initial therapy (i.e. intermittent rather than continuous therapy) must be individualised and based upon several factors, including tolerance of and response to chemotherapy, disease bulk and location, quality of life, patient preferences and symptomatology.

Irrespective of the regimen chosen for first-line therapy, the optimal duration of treatment in those patients who achieve at least stable diseases and do not have unacceptable toxicity remains uncertain.

In many cases, particularly with oxaliplatin-based regimens, toxicity occurs before progressive disease and thus cumulative toxicity can be problematic. As a result, discontinuation/de-escalation/intermittent combination therapy or maintenance strategies have become popular. Such strategies provide an attractive treatment options for patients who have responded or reached stable disease.

The administration of intermittent combination chemotherapy has been investigated in a number of clinical trials. Although early data suggested inferior outcomes with an oxaliplatin-free regimen, compared with continued chemotherapy, these results have been called into question by a more recent meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials (RCTs) of continuous versus intermittent strategies of delivering systemic

chemotherapy to previously untreated patients with metastatic colorectal cancer.[4] It included eight trials, four of which did not employ maintenance therapy, one of which used maintenance therapy with a fluoropyrimidine alone, two trials which used biologic therapy alone, and one trial, a fluoropyrimidine plus a biologic agent.[4] Intermittent delivery of chemotherapy did not result in a significantly reduced overall survival compared with continuous delivery, whether or not maintenance treatment was included. Quality of life was the same or better with intermittent therapy.[4]

More recently, the concept of treatment de-escalation and maintenance have been studied. Randomised trials involving more than 1000 patients have investigated the concept of 'maintenance' treatment as a separate phase in the treatment strategy and continuum of care.[5][6][7][8] The data from these phase II/III RCTs comparing maintenance therapy with biologicals plus or minus chemotherapy with a chemotherapy-free interval [7][8][9][10] show any fluoropyrimidine plus bevacizumab to have the best activity in terms of interval progression-free survival and a trend towards an improved survival.

The advantage of intermittent treatment with irinotecan-based regimens is unclear, given the relative lack of cumulative toxicity. Furthermore, the available data suggest similar overall outcomes (progression-free survival and overall survival) whether or not the regimen is administered continuously until progression or toxicity, or in 2 months on/2 months off intervals.

**Practice point**

Individualisation and discussion with the patient is essential when planning treatment breaks and or de-escalation/maintenance schedules.

**Practice point**

When the combination of leucovorin calcium (folinic acid), 5-fluorouracil (5FU) and oxaliplatin (FOLFOX), with or without bevacizumab, is used for first-line therapy, the available data suggest that it is reasonable to discontinue oxaliplatin temporarily while maintaining a fluoropyrimidine with or without bevacizumab.

**Practice point**

When the combination of folinic acid, 5FU and irinotecan hydrochloride (FOLFIRI), with or without bevacizumab, is used for first- line therapy, patients can continue on induction therapy for as long as tumour shrinkage continues and the treatment is tolerable.

**Practice point**

For patients receiving initial therapy with folinic acid, 5FU, oxaliplatin and irinotecan hydrochloride (FOLFOXIRI), with or without bevacizumab, a fluoropyrimidine plus bevacizumab may be considered as maintenance therapy (as was done in the pivotal trials examining FOLFOXIRI).

**Practice point**

For patients receiving initial therapy with a single-agent fluoropyrimidine (plus bevacizumab), induction therapy should be maintained.

**Practice point**

Initial induction therapy or a second-line therapy should be reintroduced at radiological or first signs of symptomatic progression.

**Practice point**

If a second-line therapy is chosen, re introduction of the initial induction treatment should be a part of the entire treatment strategy as long as no relevant residual toxicity is present.

Next section: systemic options second-line treatment

Back to top

## 17.5.3 References

1. ↑ Goldberg RM, Rothenberg ML, Van Cutsem E, Benson AB 3rd, Blanke CD, Diasio RB, et al. *The continuum of care: a paradigm for the management of metastatic colorectal cancer.* Oncologist 2007 Jan; 12(1):38-50 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17227899.

2. ↑ de Gramont A, Buyse M, Abrahantes JC, Burzykowski T, Quinaux E, Cervantes A, et al. *Reintroduction of oxaliplatin is associated with improved survival in advanced colorectal cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2007 Aug 1;25 (22):3224-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17664470.
3. ↑ Yeoh C, Chau I, Cunningham D, Norman AR, Hill M, Ross PJ. *Impact of 5-fluorouracil rechallenge on subsequent response and survival in advanced colorectal cancer: pooled analysis from three consecutive randomized controlled trials.* Clin Colorectal Cancer 2003 Aug;3(2):102-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12952566.
4. ↑ [4.0] [4.1] [4.2] Berry SR, Cosby R, Asmis T, Chan K, Hammad N, Krzyzanowska MK, et al. *Continuous versus intermittent chemotherapy strategies in metastatic colorectal cancer: a systematic review and meta-analysis.* Ann Oncol 2015 Mar;26(3):477-85 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25057174.
5. ↑ Díaz-Rubio E, Gómez-España A, Massutí B, Sastre J, Abad A, Valladares M, et al. *First-line XELOX plus bevacizumab followed by XELOX plus bevacizumab or single-agent bevacizumab as maintenance therapy in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer: the phase III MACRO TTD study.* Oncologist 2012;17(1):15-25 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22234633.
6. ↑ Hegewisch-Becker S, Graeven U, Lerchenmüller CA, Killing B, Depenbusch R, Steffens CC, et al. *Maintenance strategies after first-line oxaliplatin plus fluoropyrimidine plus bevacizumab for patients with metastatic colorectal cancer (AIO 0207): a randomised, non-inferiority, open-label, phase 3 trial.* Lancet Oncol 2015 Oct;16(13):1355-69 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26361971.
7. ↑ [7.0] [7.1] Koeberle D, Betticher DC, von Moos R, Dietrich D, Brauchli P, Baertschi D, et al. *Bevacizumab continuation versus no continuation after first-line chemotherapy plus bevacizumab in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer: a randomized phase III non-inferiority trial (SAKK 41/06).* Ann Oncol 2015 Apr;26(4):709-14 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25605741.
8. ↑ [8.0] [8.1] Simkens LH, van Tinteren H, May A, ten Tije AJ, Creemers GJ, Loosveld OJ, et al. *Maintenance treatment with capecitabine and bevacizumab in metastatic colorectal cancer (CAIRO3): a phase 3 randomised controlled trial of the Dutch Colorectal Cancer Group.* Lancet 2015 May 9;385(9980):1843-52 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25862517.
9. ↑ Chibaudel B, Maindrault-Goebel F, Lledo G, Mineur L, André T, Bennamoun M, et al. *Can chemotherapy be discontinued in unresectable metastatic colorectal cancer? The GERCOR OPTIMOX2 Study.* J Clin Oncol 2009 Dec 1;27(34):5727-33 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19786657.
10. ↑ Wasan H, Meade AM, Adams R, Wilson R, Pugh C, Fisher D, et al. *Intermittent chemotherapy plus either intermittent or continuous cetuximab for first-line treatment of patients with KRAS wild-type advanced colorectal cancer (COIN-B): a randomised phase 2 trial.* Lancet Oncol 2014 May;15(6):631-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24703531.

Back to top

## 17.6 Systemic second-line treatment

**Contents**



# 17.6.1 Background

'Second-line therapy' currently refers to therapy administered from the time the first-line chemotherapy backbone has to be changed. The aim is to offer second-line therapy to as many patients with metastatic colorectal cancer as possible.

Chemotherapy combinations commonly used in the second-line treatment of non-resectable metastatic colorectal cancer include:

- leucovorin calcium (folinic acid), 5-fluorouracil (5FU) and oxaliplatin (FOLFOX)
- leucovorin calcium (folinic acid), 5FU and irinotecan hydrochloride (FOLFIRI)
- capecitabine plus oxaliplatin (XELOX) – also called CAPOX.

For information on protocols, see eviQ cancer treatments.

# 17.6.2 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews were undertaken for this topic. Practice points were based on selected reviews, primary studies, and other clinical practice guidelines (see Guideline development process).

Back to top

## 17.6.2.1 Second-line choice following FOLFOX or FOLFIRI

Most patients initially treated with FOLFOX (or XELOX) are offered FOLFIRI, while those initially treated with FOLFIRI are generally offered FOLFOX (or XELOX). The treatment model of FOLFOX followed by FOLFIRI, or FOLFIRI followed by FOLFOX was the evaluated in the GERCOR study,93 which still represents one of the longest median survivals (21 months) for patients with metastatic colorectal cancer reported in the prebiologics era.

## 17.6.2.2 Second-line choice following 5FU monotherapy

Patients initially progressing on 5FU monotherapy should be offered an irinotecan or oxaliplatin-containing regimen if they have adequate performance status.[1][2][3] As shown in the GERCOR study, treatment with all three cytotoxic agents during the treatment of metastatic colorectal cancer is associated with longer survival times.[4]

Back to top

## 17.6.2.3 Anti-EGFR therapy

Both of the therapeutic monoclonal antibodies that target the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), cetuximab and panitumumab, have well-documented and comparable single-agent activity in patients with previously treated metastatic colorectal cancer that lacks mutations in RAS (and, possibly, BRAF).[5][6]Regimens that combine an anti-EGFR agent with irinotecan alone or a chemotherapy doublet are also efficacious, with the exception of regimens that contain oxaliplatin with a non-infusional fluoropyrimidine (i.e. XELOX).

The combination of cetuximab or panitumumab with second-line FOLFIRI after failure of initial FOLFOX is associated with improved response rates and prolonged progression-free survival. The Erbitux Plus Irinotecan in Colorectal cancer (EPIC) trial[7] reported on 1300 patients with EGFR-expressing, but not RAS-selected, metastatic colorectal cancer who had failed initial FOLFOX therapy and were randomly assigned to single-agent irinotecan with or without cetuximab. The addition of cetuximab quadrupled the response rate (16% versus 4%), significantly prolonged progression-free survival (4 versus 2.6 months) and, despite the higher frequency of side effects, was associated with better quality of life.[7] Similar results were reported in a phase III randomised controlled trial (RCT) of panitumumab plus FOLFIRI versus FOLFIRI alone after failure of initial 5FU-containing chemotherapy.[8] In the KRAS wild-type group (n = 597), the addition of panitumumab was associated with a significant improvement in response rate (35% versus 10%) and median progression-free survival (5.9 versus 3.9 months).[8]

In patients with RAS wild-type metastatic colorectal cancer in whom rapid tumour growth is observed after first-line oxaliplatin plus bevacizumab-based therapy, switching to adding cetuximab (or panitumumab) in combination with irinotecan-based therapy to elicit higher anti-tumour activity is the preferred option, particularly because the biology of the disease in these patients might not allow for a step-wise, sequential therapeutic approach. By contrast, in a case of a rather indolent, slowly progressive tumour, sequential use of agents (irinotecan first, followed by irinotecan plus cetuximab (or panitumumab) might be preferable. Another alternative is to continue bevacizumab with the second-line cytotoxic chemotherapy backbone.

Emerging data support the view that anti-EGFR antibodies do not appear to be useful for right-sided tumours in the setting of first-line therapy[9] (see Role of biological agents in with the treatment of metastatic colorectal cancer.)

Back to top

## 17.6.2.4 Anti-VEGF therapy

Therapy targeting vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) also has a role in second-line systemic therapy for metastatic colorectal cancer.

If bevacizumab (anti-VEGF monoclonal antibody) was not used as the first-line biological agent, it should be considered in second line. FOLFOX plus bevacizumab was shown to improve overall survival, compared with FOLFOX alone, in a phase III trial[10] and this finding was confirmed by subsequent studies.

For patients treated with a first-line bevacizumab-containing chemotherapy regimen, the use of bevacizumab beyond progression in conjunction with a second-line fluoropyrimidine-based chemotherapy regimen can be considered, based on the available data. However, this approach is not subsidised by the Australian Pharmaceutical Benefits Scheme (PBS). Data from two RCTs, the phase III TML study[11] and the BEBYP study,[12] showed that continuation of bevacizumab treatment with second-line chemotherapy benefited patients previously treated with bevacizumab. This finding suggests that patients treated first line with bevacizumab can benefit from subsequent therapies that target VEGF.

There is only limited data as to whether bevacizumab should be continued into 2nd line therapy in RAS WT patients or whetehr to initiate anti-EGFR therapy. Phase II PRODIGE 18 trial[9] preliminary report presented at the ASCO 2016 suggested continuation with bevacizumab was associated with a numerically higher but not statistically significant PFS rate at four months (79 versus 67 percent, p = 0.09) and overall survival (15.9 versus 10.6 months, p = 0.08) compared to cetuximab plus chemotherapy. Data from this small phase 2 study (n=135) should be interpreted with caution and further data is needed to guide practice in this sub-set of patients.[9]

Aflibercept, an anti-angiogenic fusion protein, has shown benefit in combination with FOLFIRI for the treatment of patients with metastatic colorectal cancer that is resistant to, or has progressed following, an oxaliplatin-containing regimen. The placebo-controlled VELOUR trial, in which 1226 patients with oxaliplatin-refractory metastatic colorectal cancer were randomly assigned to aflibercept (4 mg/kg IV) or placebo, plus FOLFIRI, every 2 weeks until progression, reported improved median overall survival in patients treated with aflibercept (13.5 versus 12.1 months).[13] Benefit and safety were similar regardless of prior bevacizumab exposure, but side effect profile and discontinuation rates for toxicity were higher than what would be expected with bevacizumab in this trial. This cost of this agent is not reimbursed in Australia by PBS.

Ramucirumab, a recombinant monoclonal antibody of the IgG1 class that binds to the VEGFR-2, blocking receptor activation, has also shown second line efficacy in metastatic colorectal cancer. In the double-blind phase III RAISE trial[14], 1072 patients with progression after first-line therapy with bevacizumab, oxaliplatin, and a fluoropyrimidine were randomly assigned to FOLFIRI with ramucirumab (8 mg/kg IV every two weeks) or placebo until disease progression, unacceptable toxicity, or death. Median survival was modestly but significantly greater with ramucirumab (13.3 versus 11.7 months), as was median progression-free survival.[14] Given the modest benefit and expense the role of this agent remains uncertain. Ramucirumab treatment is not subsidised by PBS in Australia.

Emerging data suggest that anti-EGFR antibodies are not useful in first-line therapy for right-sided tumours[9] (see Role of biological agents in with the treatment of metastatic colorectal cancer.) However, whether these results can be extrapolated to later lines of therapy is not clear. Nevertheless, some clinicians would favour the use of continued bevacizumab over an anti-EGFR antibody for right-sided tumours.

**Practice point**

Patients who did not receive bevacizumab as part of first-line therapy should be considered for bevacizumab in second-line therapy, in combination with a second-line cytotoxic regimen.

**Practice point**

Patients who received bevacizumab as part of the first-line regimen and have RAS wild-type (BRAF wild-type) metastatic colorectal cancer should be considered for combination EGFR monoclonal antibodies with FOLFIRI/irinotecan.

**Practice point**

Patients who received a first-line oxaliplatin-containing regimen should be switched to an irinotecan-containing regimen, and vice versa.

**Practice point**

Patients who experience disease progression during first-line 5FU monotherapy should be offered an irinotecan or oxaliplatin-containing regimen if they have adequate performance status.

Next section: systemic options third-line treatment

Back to top

## 17.6.3 References

1. ↑ Haller DG, Rothenberg ML, Wong AO, Koralewski PM, Miller WH Jr, Bodoky G, et al. *Oxaliplatin plus irinotecan compared with irinotecan alone as second-line treatment after single-agent fluoropyrimidine therapy for metastatic colorectal carcinoma.* J Clin Oncol 2008 Oct 1;26(28):4544-50 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18824706.

2. ↑ Koopman M, Antonini NF, Douma J, Wals J, Honkoop AH, Erdkamp FL, et al. *Sequential versus combination chemotherapy with capecitabine, irinotecan, and oxaliplatin in advanced colorectal cancer (CAIRO): a phase III randomised controlled trial.* Lancet 2007 Jul 14;370(9582):135-42 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17630036.
3. ↑ Seymour MT, Maughan TS, Ledermann JA, Topham C, James R, Gwyther SJ, et al. *Different strategies of sequential and combination chemotherapy for patients with poor prognosis advanced colorectal cancer (MRC FOCUS): a randomised controlled trial.* Lancet 2007 Jul 14;370(9582):143-52 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17630037.
4. ↑ Grothey A, Sargent D, Goldberg RM, Schmoll HJ. *Survival of patients with advanced colorectal cancer improves with the availability of fluorouracil-leucovorin, irinotecan, and oxaliplatin in the course of treatment.* J Clin Oncol 2004 Apr 1;22(7):1209-14 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15051767.
5. ↑ Jonker DJ, O'Callaghan CJ, Karapetis CS, Zalcberg JR, Tu D, Au HJ, et al. *Cetuximab for the treatment of colorectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 2007 Nov 15;357(20):2040-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18003960.
6. ↑ Van Cutsem E, Peeters M, Siena S, Humblet Y, Hendlisz A, Neyns B, et al. *Open-label phase III trial of panitumumab plus best supportive care compared with best supportive care alone in patients with chemotherapy-refractory metastatic colorectal cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2007 May 1;25(13):1658-64 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17470858.
7. ↑ [7.0] [7.1] Sobrero AF, Maurel J, Fehrenbacher L, Scheithauer W, Abubakr YA, Lutz MP, et al. *EPIC: phase III trial of cetuximab plus irinotecan after fluoropyrimidine and oxaliplatin failure in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2008 May 10;26(14):2311-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18390971.
8. ↑ [8.0] [8.1] Peeters M, Price TJ, Cervantes A, Sobrero AF, Ducreux M, Hotko Y, et al. *Randomized phase III study of panitumumab with fluorouracil, leucovorin, and irinotecan (FOLFIRI) compared with FOLFIRI alone as second-line treatment in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer.* J Clin Oncol 2010 Nov 1;28(31):4706-13 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20921462.
9. ↑ [9.0] [9.1] [9.2] [9.3] Sandrine Hiret, Christophe Borg, Aurelie Bertaut, Olivier Bouche, Antoine Adenis, Gael Deplanque, Eric Francois, Thierry Conroy, Francois Ghiringhelli, Gaetan Des Guetz, Jean-François Seitz, Pascal Artru, Trevor Stanbury, Marc G. Denis, Jaafar Bennouna. *Bevacizumab or cetuximab plus chemotherapy after progression with bevacizumab plus chemotherapy in patients with wtKRAS metastatic colorectal cancer: A randomized phase II study (Prodige 18 –UNICANCER GI).* J Clin Oncol; 2016.
10. ↑ Giantonio BJ, Catalano PJ, Meropol NJ, O'Dwyer PJ, Mitchell EP, Alberts SR, et al. *Bevacizumab in combination with oxaliplatin, fluorouracil, and leucovorin (FOLFOX4) for previously treated metastatic colorectal cancer: results from the Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group Study E3200.* J Clin Oncol 2007 Apr 20;25(12):1539-44 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17442997.
11. ↑ Bennouna J, Sastre J, Arnold D, Österlund P, Greil R, Van Cutsem E, et al. *Continuation of bevacizumab after first progression in metastatic colorectal cancer (ML18147): a randomised phase 3 trial.* Lancet Oncol 2013 Jan;14(1):29-37 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23168366.
12. ↑ Masi G, Salvatore L, Boni L, Loupakis F, Cremolini C, Fornaro L, et al. *Continuation or reintroduction of bevacizumab beyond progression to first-line therapy in metastatic colorectal cancer: final results of the randomized BEBYP trial.* Ann Oncol 2015 Apr;26(4):724-30 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25600568.

13. ↑ Van Cutsem E, Tabernero J, Lakomy R, Prenen H, Prausová J, Macarulla T, et al. *Addition of aflibercept to fluorouracil, leucovorin, and irinotecan improves survival in a phase III randomized trial in patients with metastatic colorectal cancer previously treated with an oxaliplatin-based regimen.* J Clin Oncol 2012 Oct 1; 30(28):3499-506 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22949147.
14. ↑ [14.0] [14.1] Tabernero J, Yoshino T, Cohn AL, Obermannova R, Bodoky G, Garcia-Carbonero R, et al. *Ramucirumab versus placebo in combination with second-line FOLFIRI in patients with metastatic colorectal carcinoma that progressed during or after first-line therapy with bevacizumab, oxaliplatin, and a fluoropyrimidine (RAISE): a randomised, double-blind, multicentre, phase 3 study.* Lancet Oncol 2015 May;16(5):499-508 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25877855.

Back to top

# 17.7 Systemic third-line treatment

**Contents**



## 17.7.1 Background

General statement

## 17.7.2 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews were undertaken for this topic. Practice points were based on selected reviews, primary studies, and other clinical practice guidelines (see Guideline development process).

Patients who maintain adequate performance status should be considered for third-line therapy.

### 17.7.2.1 Cetuximab and panitumumab

In patients with RAS wild-type metastatic colorectal cancer, both cetuximab and panitumumab have shown efficacy in the third-line/salvage-therapy setting,[1][2] and are equally active as single agents.[3] Combination therapy with cetuximab and irinotecan appears more active than cetuximab alone in patients with irinotecan-refractory tumours.

Back to top

### 17.7.2.2 Regorafenib

Regorafenib is an orally active inhibitor of angiogenic tyrosine kinases (including the VEGF receptors 1 to 3), as well as other receptor and intracellular kinases. It has reported activity versus placebo plus best supportive care in two phase III trials.[4][5]

Based on these data, regorafenib may be considered for patients with refractory metastatic colorectal cancer after treatment with all available cytotoxic agents, bevacizumab and EGFR antibodies (in RAS wild-type tumours) . The CORRECT trial[6] compared best supportive care plus regorafenib (160 mg orally once daily for three of every four weeks) or placebo in 760 patients with chemotherapy refractory disease. It demonstrated a significant survival benefit for regorafenib (median 6.4 versus 5 months, Hazard Ratio 0.77), albeit with little objective antitumor response, but with maintained quality of life over time.[6]

The dosing regimen has been questioned by many clinicians; many start with a lower dose and then increase the dose to the approved dose if no toxicity is observed. Frequent and close monitoring for regorafenib toxicity is recommended.

Regorafenib is approved in Australia by the Therapeutic Goods Administration (TGA).

### 17.7.2.3 Trifluridine-tipiracil

Recently, trifluridine-tipiracil (TAS-102), an oral cytotoxic agent that consists of the nucleoside analogue trifluridine and tipiracil, a potent thymidine phosphorylase inhibitor, which inhibits trifluridine metabolism and has antiangiogenic properties as well has been shown to be effective in patients with refractory metastatic colorectal cancer.[7]

In the phase III trial (RECOURSE) 800 patients who were refractory to or intolerant of fluoropyrimidines, irinotecan, oxaliplatin, bevacizumab, and anti-EGFR agents (if wild-type KRAS) were randomly assigned to trifluridine-tipiracil (35 mg/m2 orally twice daily on days 1 through 5, and 8 to 12 of each 28-day cycle) or placebo.[6]

Trifluridine-tipiracil was associated with a significant prolongation in median overall survival, the primary endpoint (7.1 versus 5.3 months), and this benefit was irrespective of prior regorafenib use.

The benefit of this agent is similar to that of regorafenib, but with a better toxicity profile.

Trifluridine-tipiracil is not registered in Australia by the TGA.

**Practice point**

Cetuximab or panitumumab treatment should be considered in patients with RAS wild-type and BRAF wild-type metastatic colorectal cancer not previously treated with these agents, taking into account the following:

- Cetuximab and Panitumumab are equally effective as single agents.
- Cetuximab in combination with irinotecan is more active than cetuximab alone in patients refractory to irinotecan with adequate performance status to receive combination therapy.

**Practice point**

If available, regorafenib or trifluridine/tipiracil can be considered for patients with metastatic colorectal cancer refractory to all standard available therapies.

**Practice point**

Patients receiving third-line therapy should be offered participation in clinical trials, wherever available.

Back to top

## 17.7.3 References

1. ↑ Cunningham D, Humblet Y, Siena S, Khayat D, Bleiberg H, Santoro A, et al. *Cetuximab monotherapy and cetuximab plus irinotecan in irinotecan-refractory metastatic colorectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 2004 Jul 22;351(4):337-45 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15269313.
2. ↑ Hecht JR, Patnaik A, Berlin J, Venook A, Malik I, Tchekmedyian S, et al. *Panitumumab monotherapy in patients with previously treated metastatic colorectal cancer.* Cancer 2007 Sep 1;110(5):980-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17671985.
3. ↑ Price TJ, Peeters M, Kim TW, Li J, Cascinu S, Ruff P, et al. *Panitumumab versus cetuximab in patients with chemotherapy-refractory wild-type KRAS exon 2 metastatic colorectal cancer (ASPECCT): a randomised, multicentre, open-label, non-inferiority phase 3 study.* Lancet Oncol 2014 May;15(6):569-79 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24739896.

4. ↑ Grothey A, Sargent D, Goldberg RM, Schmoll HJ. *Survival of patients with advanced colorectal cancer improves with the availability of fluorouracil-leucovorin, irinotecan, and oxaliplatin in the course of treatment.* J Clin Oncol 2004 Apr 1;22(7):1209-14 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15051767.
5. ↑ Li J, Qin S, Xu R, Yau TC, Ma B, Pan H, et al. *Regorafenib plus best supportive care versus placebo plus best supportive care in Asian patients with previously treated metastatic colorectal cancer (CONCUR): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, phase 3 trial.* Lancet Oncol 2015 Jun;16(6):619-29 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25981818.
6. ↑ [6.0] [6.1] [6.2] Mayer RJ, Van Cutsem E, Falcone A, Yoshino T, Garcia-Carbonero R, Mizunuma N, et al. *Randomized trial of TAS-102 for refractory metastatic colorectal cancer.* N Engl J Med 2015 May 14;372(20):1909-19 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25970050.
7. ↑ Matsushita S, Nitanda T, Furukawa T, Sumizawa T, Tani A, Nishimoto K, et al. *The effect of a thymidine phosphorylase inhibitor on angiogenesis and apoptosis in tumors.* Cancer Res 1999 Apr 15;59(8):1911-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10213500.

Back to top

## 17.8 Supportive care options

# 18 Follow-up after curative resection for CRC

## 18.1 Background

The debate regarding the rigour and intensity of follow-up investigations is complex.

Patient surveillance following curative resection for colorectal cancer varies from minimal to intensive follow-up. There is no consensus on the definition of these approaches and, therefore, there are many different protocols for minimal and intensive follow-up.

Minimal follow-up may include clinical assessment with or without carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) testing and colonoscopy. Alternatively, minimal follow-up can involve performing investigations only when patients become symptomatic.

Intensive follow-up may include, in addition to clinical assessment and CEA, computed tomography (CT) and/or positron emission tomography (PET) at regular intervals.

Intensive follow-up after curative resection for colorectal cancer is common practice, but the evidence to date has been limited and non-conclusive.

### 18.1.1 Chapter subsections

Subsections:

- Rationale for follow-up
- Optimal surveillance protocol (FUR1-2)
- Health professionals performing follow-up and suggested follow-up schedule

## 18.1 Introduction: follow-up after curative resection for CRC

### 18.1.1 Background

The debate regarding the rigour and intensity of follow-up investigations is complex.

Patient surveillance following curative resection for colorectal cancer varies from minimal to intensive follow-up. There is no consensus on the definition of these approaches and, therefore, there are many different protocols for minimal and intensive follow-up.

Minimal follow-up may include clinical assessment with or without carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) testing and colonoscopy. Alternatively, minimal follow-up can involve performing investigations only when patients become symptomatic.

Intensive follow-up may include, in addition to clinical assessment and CEA, computed tomography (CT) and/or positron emission tomography (PET) at regular intervals.

Intensive follow-up after curative resection for colorectal cancer is common practice, but the evidence to date has been limited and non-conclusive.

#### 18.1.1.1 Chapter subsections

Subsections:

- Rationale for follow-up
- Optimal surveillance protocol (FUR1-2)
- Health professionals performing follow-up and suggested follow-up schedule

## 18.2 Rationale for follow-up

The primary aim for surveillance is to promote long-term survival through the early detection of local and distant recurrent disease.

Surveillance is also useful for detecting metachronous colorectal cancers, reassuring patients, and maximising quality of life, and for enabling collection of data for research purposes.

**Contents**



### 18.2.1 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews were undertaken for this topic. Practice points were based on selected evidence and consensus. See Guidelines development process.

### 18.2.1.1 Early detection of recurrence

About one in three patients who have curative surgery for colorectal cancer will die as a result of recurrent disease.[1] Follow-up is performed to improve on this outcome by detecting recurrence at an earlier and potentially curable stage. In general, this will mean detecting recurrence in an asymptomatic person. Ideally such recurrence would be early and resectable local or distant disease, for which further treatment is potentially curative and may prolong survival. Proponents of intensive follow-up argue that this approach could lead to earlier detection of recurrent and/or metachronous disease and, by improving resectability rates, may improve survival time.

Chemotherapy and surgical resection for metastatic or recurrent disease have been shown to improve survival. Patients who have complete resection of liver metastases have a 5-year survival rate of approximately 40%.[2] Similar results have been reported for lung metastases.[3] Additionally, advances in pelvic exenteration for locally recurrent rectal cancer have shown improved complete oncological resection rates (R0) and achieved 5-year disease-free survival rates of up to 43%.[4]

Comparably complete cytoreductive surgery (CRS) and hyperthermic intraperitoneal chemotherapy (HIPEC) for colorectal cancer related peritoneal carcinomatosis is, in highly selected patients, beneficial, resulting in 40-50% five-year survival and 16% ten-year survival.[5][6]

### 18.2.1.2 Detection of secondary primary tumours

Following curative surgery for colorectal cancer, patients have an increased incidence of metachronous primary colorectal cancers and adenomatous polyps.[7] In one series, the rates of development of new primary cancers and adenomas at 4 years were 7.7% and 62%, respectively.[8]

Colonoscopic surveillance and the removal of any adenomas might reduce the incidence of subsequent primary bowel cancer.

### 18.2.1.3 Data collection and audit

Follow-up provides information on clinical outcomes for clinicians to evaluate their practice against professional standards.[9] It is essential for participation in clinical trials.[10] Follow-up is also required in order to produce national outcomes data to assess the impact of new guidelines and the introduction of alternative therapies.

| **Practice point** |
| --- |
| As there are no reliable indicators of an individual’s risk of synchronous or metachronous lesions, nor of treatable recurrence, all patients who have undergone curative surgery should be offered follow-up if they are fit for further intervention should disease be detected. |

**Practice point**

Patients who are unfit for further surgery or who have advanced disease require appropriate follow-up directed at psychological support and symptom relief.

Next section: optimal surveillance protocol

## 18.2.2 References

1. ↑ Kievit J, Bruinvels DJ. *Detection of recurrence after surgery for colorectal cancer.* Eur J Cancer 1995 Jul; 31A(7-8):1222-5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7577026.
2. ↑ Kanas GP, Taylor A, Primrose JN, Langeberg WJ, Kelsh MA, Mowat FS, et al. *Survival after liver resection in metastatic colorectal cancer: review and meta-analysis of prognostic factors.* Clin Epidemiol 2012;4: 283-301 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23152705.
3. ↑ Gonzalez M, Poncet A, Combescure C, Robert J, Ris HB, Gervaz P. *Risk factors for survival after lung metastasectomy in colorectal cancer patients: a systematic review and meta-analysis.* Ann Surg Oncol 2013 Feb;20(2):572-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23104709.
4. ↑ Milne T, Solomon MJ, Lee P, Young JM, Stalley P, Harrison JD. *Assessing the impact of a sacral resection on morbidity and survival after extended radical surgery for locally recurrent rectal cancer.* Ann Surg 2013 Dec;258(6):1007-13 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23364701.
5. ↑ Elias D, Lefevre JH, Chevalier J, Brouquet A, Marchal F, Classe JM, et al. *Complete cytoreductive surgery plus intraperitoneal chemohyperthermia with oxaliplatin for peritoneal carcinomatosis of colorectal origin.* J Clin Oncol 2009 Feb 10;27(5):681-5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19103728.
6. ↑ Quenet F, Goéré D, Mehta SS, Roca L, Dumont F, Hessissen M, et al. *Results of two bi-institutional prospective studies using intraperitoneal oxaliplatin with or without irinotecan during HIPEC after cytoreductive surgery for colorectal carcinomatosis.* Ann Surg 2011 Aug;254(2):294-301 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21772129.
7. ↑ Nava HR, Pagana TJ. *Postoperative surveillance of colorectal carcinoma.* Cancer 1982 Mar 1;49(5):1043-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7059921.
8. ↑ Beck DE, Opelka FG, Hicks TC, Timmcke AE, Khoury DA, Gathright JB Jr. *Colonoscopic follow-up of adenomas and colorectal cancer.* South Med J 1995 May;88(5):567-70 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/7732448.
9. ↑ The Royal College of Surgeons of England: Association of coloproctology of Great Britain and Ireland. *Guidelines for the Management of Colorectal Cancer.*; 1996.
10. ↑ Beart RW Jr, O'Connell MJ. *Postoperative follow-up of patients with carcinoma of the colon.* Mayo Clin Proc 1983 Jun;58(6):361-3 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/6855273.

Back to top

# 18.3 Optimal follow-up surveillance protocol (FUR1-2)

**Contents**



## 18.3.1 Systematic review evidence

*In patients who have had curative resection of colorectal cancer, what surveillance protocol achieves the best outcomes in terms of detected recurrent disease, 5-year survival, quality of life, and colorectal cancer-related mortality? (FUR1-2a)*

A systematic review was performed to compare the outcomes of minimal and intensive follow-up modalities in patients who had undergone curative resection for colorectal cancer. Note: colonoscopy follow-up is covered in the colorectal cancer surveillance guidelines.)

Five prospective randomised controlled trials (RCTs) were identified:[1][2][3][4][5]

- The UK CEA Second-Look (CEASL) trial[5] performed carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) testing in 1447 patients, and randomised those with significantly elevated CEA to aggressive follow-up (second-look surgery) or conventional follow-up.
- The UK Follow-up After Colorectal Surgery (FACS) trial[1] compared minimal follow-up with three more intensive follow-up protocols that included additional imaging (approximately 300 patients per group): computed tomography (CT), CEA, or CEA plus CT.

- The Italian GILDA trial[3] compared follow-up protocols based on minimal and intensive imaging.
- A Spanish study[2] compared a simple surveillance protocol with an intensive protocol that involved abdominal CT or ultrasonography, chest radiograph, and colonoscopy.
- A French study[4] randomised patients to conventional follow-up or positron emission tomography (PET) to detect tumour recurrence.

Of these RCTs one[1] had a high risk of bias, while the remaining RCTs[2][3][4][5] had unclear risk of bias.

All studies reported on overall survival and rates of tumour recurrence.[1][2][3][4][5] Other reported outcomes included time to recurrence and outcomes of curative surgery following the detection of recurrence.

The search strategy, inclusion and exclusion criteria, and quality assessment are described in detail in the Technical report.

Back to top

## 18.3.1.1 Survival and mortality

Survival and mortality data from all five RCTs showed consistent non-significant differences between different follow-up protocols for patients who had undergone curative resection for colorectal cancer.[1][2][3][4][5]

The CEASL trial[5] reported no significant differences in overall mortality between the conventional follow-up group and the aggressive follow-up group: risk ratio (RR) 1.16 (95% confidence interval [CI] 0.87 to 1.37).

The FACS trial[1] reported no significant differences between groups for overall mortality ($p = 0.45$) and colorectal cancer-specific mortality ($p = 0.66$) on intention-to-treat (ITT) analysis. Furthermore, no significant differences in mortality rates were observed between protocols with and without CEA ($p > 0.05$), and between protocols with and without CT ($p > 0.05$).

The GILDA trial[3] found no differences in outcomes between patients undergoing less intensive and more intensive follow-up protocols with 82.9% survival observed in the less intensive follow-up group and 81.6% survival observed in the more intensive follow-up group: hazard ratio (HR) 1.14 (95% CI 0.87 to 1.48, $p = 0.34$). Similar 5-year survival rates were also observed in this trial (84% versus 81%), but no statistical comparisons were provided.

The Spanish study[2] also reported a non-significant difference in overall survival between simple and intensive protocols with a median follow-up time of 49 months (79.5%, versus 83.5%, $p = 0.41$).

The French PET study[4] found no significant difference in rates of 2-year overall mortality between the conventional follow-up group and of the PET group (9.2% versus 5%, $p = 0.33$).

Back to top

## 18.3.1.2 Tumour recurrence

Rates of tumour recurrence were reported in five RCTs.[1][2][3][4][5]

Overall, detection of tumour recurrence did not differ significantly according to follow-up modality. However there was a significant difference in the rates of detection of resectable recurrence between the conventional and intensive-imaging follow-up groups. CT scans were effective in detecting recurrences.

The CEASL trial[5] reported higher recurrence rates in the conventional follow-up group (82.4%) compared with the second-look group (76.9%), but did not report statistical analysis of these data.

The FACS trial[1] also reported non-significant differences in recurrence rates between the four follow-up groups: "minimum follow-up" 12.3%, CEA 19%, CT 19.1%, and CEA plus CT 15.9%, ($p = 0.08$). However, significant differences were observed for the rate of recurrence detected by each method: "minimum" 3%, CEA 11%, CT 16.1% and CEA plus CT 13.2% ($p < 0.001$). When follow-up groups were split into CEA versus no CEA, no significant differences were observed in overall recurrence rates ($p=0.41$) or the rate of recurrence detected during follow-up ($p=0.14$). By contrast, when patients receiving CT were compared with those who did not receive CT, a significantly higher rate of detected recurrences was observed in the CT groups than the no-CT group (14.6% versus 7%, $p < 0.001$). However this effect was not significantly different for rates of overall recurrence ($p = 0.39$).

Although the GILDA trial[3] did not provide statistical comparisons between groups for recurrence rates, similar overall recurrence rates were observed between less intensive (18.8%) and more intensive (22%) follow-up groups. Comparable rates were also observed when recurrence was stratified by type, including local anastomotic, local extra-anastomotic, liver only, lung only, multiple, and other site recurrence.

The Spanish RCT comparing simple and intense protocols[2] reported several tumour recurrence-related outcomes including overall recurrence, type of recurrence, and the rate of resectable tumour recurrence stratified across stage and location (rectal and colon). The overall recurrence rate was non-significantly higher in the intensive follow-up group compared with the simple follow-up group (27.6% versus 25.8%, $p = 0.74$), and the type of recurrence (metachronous versus loco-regional versus distant) did not differ significantly between groups ($p = 0.81$). Overall rates of resectable tumour recurrence were, however, significantly different between groups, with 51% recurrence observed in the intense group and 29% observed in the simple follow-up group: odds ratio (OR) 2.85 (95% CI 1.04 to 7.87, $p = 0.04$). However, when stratified by tumour stage (II versus III), only patients with stage II tumours showed a significant difference in recurrence, with patients in the intensive follow-up group having higher recurrence (73.3%) than the simple follow-up group (20%): OR 8.88 (95% CI 1.40 to 49.3, $p = 0.01$). When resectable tumour recurrence was stratified by location, patients with tumour of the colon did not show a significant difference between groups: OR 2.22 (95% CI 0.7 to 6.67, $p = 0.89$). By comparison, among patients with resectable rectal tumours, a higher proportion was detected by intensive follow-up than simple follow-up (80% versus 20%, $p = 0.08$). However, this effect was not significant after controlling for age, preoperative CEA levels, tumour stage, tumour location, and risk of metachronous lesions: OR 29.4 (95% CI 0.94 to 916.48, $p = 0.054$).

The French PET trial[4] reported 2-year survival rates. It reported comparable rates of recurrence in for the conventional and PET groups both on ITT analysis (32.3% versus 38.5%) and per-protocol analysis (32.3% versus 38.3%). However no statistical comparison of these data was provided.

Back to top

### 18.3.1.3 Time to recurrence

Time to recurrence was reported as an outcome in three RCTs.[4][1][2]

In the FACS trial[1], Kaplan-Meier curves were used to compare time to recurrence between four different follow-up protocols (minimal, CEA, CT and CEA plus CT). No significant difference was observed between these protocols over 5 years of follow-up ($p = 0.18$).

Similarly, the Spanish study[2] reported comparable mean time to recurrence for simple and intense follow-up protocols (39 months versus 39 months).

By contrast, the French RCT comparing conventional and PET protocols[4] reported a significantly shorter mean time to detected recurrence in the PET follow-up group than the conventional follow-up group (12.1 versus 15.4 months) for patients included in the per-protocol analysis ($p = 0.01$), with similar rates observed on ITT analysis.

Back to top

### 18.3.1.4 Curative follow-up surgery

Rates of attempted and successful curative surgery following the identification of local recurrence during follow-up were reported in the FACS trial[1] and the French PET study[4].

The French study[4] reported higher rates of curative resection in the PET group compared with the conventional screening group on per-protocol analysis (65% versus 9.5%, $p < 0.0001$). Similarly, the rate of successful curative resection was higher for patients undergoing PET follow-up than conventional follow-up (43.5% versus 9.5%, $p < 0.01$).

Similarly to the Spanish study[2], the FACS trial[1] also reported higher rates of attempted curative resection in the intensive follow-up group. On ITT analysis, the rate of surgical treatment with curative intent was significantly lower in the minimal follow-up group (2.3%), than the other three groups:

- CEA only (6.7%): OR 3.00 (95% CI 1.23 to 7.33, $p = 0.004$)
- CT only (8%): OR 3.10 (95% CI 1.27 to 7.57, $p = 0.01$)
- combination of CEA plus CT (6.6%): OR 6.71 (95% CI 1.96 to 22.9, $p = 0.005$).[1]

The combination of CEA and CT did not add any benefit when compared with CEA alone or CT alone. The same significant effects were also observed on per-protocol analysis. No significant differences in overall recurrence were observed on ITT analysis when follow-up protocols that included CEA were compared with no CEA ($p = 0.53$), or when protocols that included CT were compared with no CT ($p = 0.59$).[1]

Back to top

### 18.3.1.5 Quality of life

Quality of life was reported as an outcome in the GILDA trial.[3] This study observed no significant difference between SF12 mental and physical health scores for patients undergoing less intensive versus more intensive follow-up protocols. Psychological General Well-Being Index questionnaire scores also showed no differences between patients undergoing different follow-up protocols. No statistics were provided for these comparisons.

Back to top

## 18.3.2 Evidence summary and recommendations

| Evidence summary | Level | References |
|---|---|---|
| **Survival and mortality**<br>No difference between intensive and less intensive follow-up groups was observed for both overall survival and mortality. | II | [1], [2], [3], [4], [5] |
| **Tumour recurrence**<br><br>Rates of tumour recurrence and detected tumour recurrence were inconsistent across studies, with the majority reporting no consistent or significant differences between different follow-up schedules.<br><br>There was a significant increase in the detection of resectable recurrence with intensive follow-up. | II | [1], [2], [3], [4], [5] |
| **Time to recurrence**<br><br>Time to recurrence was not consistently different between follow-up groups and may be dependent on the type, rather than the intensity, of the follow-up. | II | [1], [2], [4] |
| **Curative follow-up surgery**<br><br>More intensive follow-up schedules (including CEA, CT and PET/CT) may result in higher rates of curative follow-up resection and improved survival in those patients in whom resectable colorectal cancer was detected. | II | [1], [4] |
| **Quality of life**<br><br>Quality of life was only reported in one study, which showed negligible difference between follow-up groups. | II | [3] |

| Evidence-based recommendation | Grade |
|---|---|
| Intensive follow-up after curative surgery for colorectal cancer should include colonoscopy with CEA and/or CT scan, with the aim of early detection of recurrence or residual disease where there is the possibility for curative resection.<br><br>PET/CT scan can be used as an effective adjunct for detection of recurrence, especially when the CEA and/or CT scans are suggestive of recurrence. | **D** |

| Practice point |
|---|
| These recommendations apply only to asymptomatic patients. All patients who develop symptoms should be investigated rigorously. |

| Practice point |
|---|
| Colonoscopy should be included as routine follow-up, primarily as a preventive measure. |

| Practice point |
|---|
| Intensive follow-up for colorectal cancer should be considered for patients who have had potentially curable disease, although optimal modality and frequency are yet to be firmly established. |

| Practice point |
|---|
| Intensive follow-up can detect resectable recurrences earlier which may have benefit in survival, albeit a small difference. |

| Practice point |
| --- |
| CEA and CT scans are readily accessible and relatively sensitive investigations. |

Back to top

## 18.3.2.1 Considerations in making these recommendations

The benefits from follow-up include:

- the detection of potentially curable recurrent disease
- the ability to remove metachronous polyps and to detect early metachronous cancers
- the provision of audit and survival data
- patient support.

The most recent randomised controlled trials[1][2][3][4][5] and meta-analyses[6][7] support a survival advantage, albeit small, for patients who are followed up intensively after curative resection of colorectal cancer.

Back to top

## 18.3.2.2 Health system implications

### 18.3.2.2.1 Clinical practice

Between 12 and 20 patients must undergo intensive investigation for one patient to have a resectable recurrence detected and receive surgery for curative intent.[1]

### 18.3.2.2.2 Resourcing

CEA is relatively cost-effective when compared with CT scans. However, two-thirds of patients with recurrence were detected on CT scan first in the FACS study.9[1]

### 18.3.2.2.3 Barriers to implementation

No barriers to the implementation of these recommendations are envisaged.

Back to top

## 18.3.3 Discussion

### 18.3.3.1 Unresolved issues

There are no significant unresolved issues.

### 18.3.3.2 Studies currently underway

There are no significant ongoing studies.

### 18.3.3.3 Future research priorities

Although the costs and complications of follow-up investigations can be considerable, the cost-benefit ratio needs to be assessed formally with further trials.

There is research on which to establish an algorithm based on the rate of change in CEA, to improve specificity for the detection of recurrent disease. This approach has been successful using cancer antigen 125 levels in the detection of ovarian cancer.[6] The implementation of such an algorithm may lead to fewer CT scans and would reduce costs to the health system.

There is growing interest in systematic second-look surgery and HIPEC in patients who are high risk for CRC related peritoneal carcinomatosis (T4 lesions, perforation at primary operation and ovarian/low volume peritoneal metastases excised) due to the late onset of symptoms and low sensitivity of imaging techniques and tumour markers. A French multi-centre randomized trial is ongoing (Prophylochip).[8] Patients at high risk after adjuvant treatment with FOLFOX 6 and with a negative follow-up are randomly assigned to surveillance or second-look laparotomy and HIPEC. The aim of the research is to evaluate rate of peritoneal recurrence at three years.).[8]

Next section: health professionals performing follow-up and suggested follow-up schedule

Back to top

## 18.3.4 References

1. ↑ 1.00 1.01 1.02 1.03 1.04 1.05 1.06 1.07 1.08 1.09 1.10 1.11 1.12 1.13 1.14 1.15 1.16 1.17 1.18 1.19 1.20 Primrose JN, Perera R, Gray A, Rose P, Fuller A, Corkhill A, et al. *Effect of 3 to 5 years of scheduled CEA and CT follow-up to detect recurrence of colorectal cancer: the FACS randomized clinical trial.* JAMA 2014 Jan 15;311(3): 263-70 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24430319.
2. ↑ 2.00 2.01 2.02 2.03 2.04 2.05 2.06 2.07 2.08 2.09 2.10 2.11 2.12 2.13 2.14 Rodriguez-Moranta F, Salo J, Arcusa A, Boadas J, Pinol V, Bessa X, et al. *Postoperative surveillance in patients with colorectal cancer who have undergone curative resection: a prospective, multicenter, randomized, controlled trial.* J Clin Oncol 2006 Jan 1;24(3):386-93.

3. ↑ 3.00 3.01 3.02 3.03 3.04 3.05 3.06 3.07 3.08 3.09 3.10 3.11 3.12 Rosati G, Ambrosini G, Barni S, Andreoni B, Corradini G, Luchena G, et al. *A randomized trial of intensive versus minimal surveillance of patients with resected Dukes B2-C colorectal carcinoma.* Ann Oncol 2016 Feb;27(2):274-80 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/26578734.
4. ↑ 4.00 4.01 4.02 4.03 4.04 4.05 4.06 4.07 4.08 4.09 4.10 4.11 4.12 4.13 4.14 4.15 4.16 Sobhani I, Tiret E, Lebtahi R, Aparicio T, Itti E, Montravers F, et al. *Early detection of recurrence by 18FDG-PET in the follow-up of patients with colorectal cancer.* Br J Cancer 2008 Mar 11;98(5):875-80 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18301402.
5. ↑ 5.00 5.01 5.02 5.03 5.04 5.05 5.06 5.07 5.08 5.09 5.10 Treasure T, Monson K, Fiorentino F, Russell C. *The CEA Second-Look Trial: a randomised controlled trial of carcinoembryonic antigen prompted reoperation for recurrent colorectal cancer.* BMJ Open 2014 May 13;4(5):e004385 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24823671.
6. ↑ 6.0 6.1 Jeffery GM, Hickey BE, Hider P. *Follow-up strategies for patients treated for non-metastatic colorectal cancer.* Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2002;(1):CD002200 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11869629.
7. ↑ Renehan AG, Egger M, Saunders MP, O'Dwyer ST. *Impact on survival of intensive follow up after curative resection for colorectal cancer: systematic review and meta-analysis of randomised trials.* BMJ 2002 Apr 6;324(7341):813 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/11934773.
8. ↑ 8.0 8.1 ClinicalTrials.gov. *Trial Comparing Simple Follow-up to Exploratory Laparotomy Plus "in Principle" (Hyperthermic Intraperitoneal Chemotherapy) HIPEC in Colorectal Patients (ProphyloCHIP).* [homepage on the internet]; Available from: https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/study/NCT01226394.

Back to top

## 18.3.5 Appendices

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| View recommendation components | View pending evidence | View body of evidence | View all comments | View literature search |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| View PICO | NHMRC Evidence statement form FUR1-2a | Systematic review report FUR1-2a |

Back to top

# 18.4 Health professionals performing follow-up & suggested schedule

**Contents**



## 18.4.1 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews were undertaken for this topic. Practice points were based on selected evidence and consensus. See Guidelines development process.

### 18.4.1.1 Health professionals performing follow-up

It has not been established whether outcomes differ by provider of follow-up care. For example it has not been established whether intensive (hospital-based) follow up is associated with a survival advantage over care provided by a general practitioner or clinical nurse consultant in colorectal cancer. Further studies are needed to determine whether community-based follow up can be adequately performed without decreasing patient survival, and to define the optimal balance between follow-up care provided by the general practitioner or clinical nurse consultant and the specialist.

**Practice point**

Follow-up can be delivered as a combination of visits to the surgeon or associated gasteroenterologist, with ongoing care by the GP and clinical nurse consultant.

Back to top

### 18.4.1.2 Suggested follow-up schedule

After the routine review post discharge, patients should be reviewed at 3- to 6-monthly intervals for the first year (3 monthly in those patients who had poor prognostic factors such a positive margin, patients with stage III disease who decline chemotherapy), 6-monthly for the next two years and then yearly for a total of 5 years. There is no consensus on these intervals, as evidenced by the variability in follow-up protocols in the published literature, but there are organizations that would support a similar follow-up schedule.[1][2][3] This is a guide for the clinician and further trials will be necessary to establish optimal protocols.

Clinical assessment includes history and physical examination. Regular carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA) measurement (at each consultation) and annual computed tomography (CT) should be considered in follow-up protocols as they may provide useful in early detection of recurrence and the potential for surgery with curative intent. Positron emission tomography (PET/CT) can be an effective alternative to standard CT after detection of a significant rise in CEA.[4][5][6]

The anastomosis should be assessed 12 months after surgery to exclude recurrence. If the patient did not have complete colonoscopy prior to surgery, then this should be performed at least 6 months after surgery.

Future studies should focus on the cost-effectiveness and efficiency of investigations employed.[7]

Back to top

## 18.4.2 References

1. ↑ Meyerhardt JA, Mangu PB, Flynn PJ, Korde L, Loprinzi CL, Minsky BD, et al. *Follow-up care, surveillance protocol, and secondary prevention measures for survivors of colorectal cancer: American Society of Clinical Oncology clinical practice guideline endorsement.* J Clin Oncol 2013 Dec 10;31(35):4465-70 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24220554.
2. ↑ National Comprehensive Cancer Network. *NCCN Guidelines: Colon Cancer.* National Comprehensive Cancer Network; 2016.
3. ↑ National Comprehensive Cancer Network. *NCCN Guidelines for Rectal Cancer Version 2.*; 2016 Available from: https://www.tri-kobe.org/nccn/guideline/colorectal/english/rectal.pdf.
4. ↑ Yu T, Meng N, Chi D, Zhao Y, Wang K, Luo Y. *Diagnostic Value of (18)F-FDG PET/CT in Detecting Local Recurrent Colorectal Cancer: A Pooled Analysis of 26 Individual Studies.* Cell Biochem Biophys 2015 Jun;72 (2):443-51 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/25737131.
5. ↑ Peng NJ, Hu C, King TM, Chiu YL, Wang JH, Liu RS. *Detection of resectable recurrences in colorectal cancer patients with 2-[18F]fluoro-2-deoxy-D-glucose-positron emission tomography/computed tomography.* Cancer Biother Radiopharm 2013 Jul;28(6):479-87 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23713869.
6. ↑ Culverwell AD, Chowdhury FU, Scarsbrook AF. *Optimizing the role of FDG PET-CT for potentially operable metastatic colorectal cancer.* Abdom Imaging 2012 Dec;37(6):1021-31 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22371087.
7. ↑ Ohlsson B, Pålsson B. *Follow-up after colorectal cancer surgery.* Acta Oncol 2003;42(8):816-26 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/14968942.

Back to top

# 19 Psychosocial care

**Contents**



## 19.1 Background

The diagnosis and treatment of cancer presents a major and stressful life event that can reduce quality of life in the short and long term. Apart from the existential challenge faced by all patients with a life-threatening disease, patients with colorectal cancer have specific challenges.

Before their operation, people with colorectal cancer commonly experience fear, isolation and uncertainty, and have a high need for information and support.[1] Postoperatively, patients may experience physical, social and psychological challenges, especially if they have a new stoma.

Back to top

## 19.2 Overview of evidence (non-systematic literature review)

No systematic reviews were undertaken for this topic. Practice points were based on selected evidence. Please see Guidelines Development for more information.

### 19.2.1 Physical challenges

Postoperative physical challenges include bowel issues, such as frequent bowel movements, constipation and diarrhoea. Patients with stomas may face leakage, skin and stoma problems, and odour.[2][3]

Sexual dysfunction is also very common among people with colorectal cancer, with sexual dysfunction rates following rectal surgery ranging from 23% to 69% in men and 19% to 62% in women.[4] Problems with erectile function and ejaculation have been reported in men,[5] and women have experienced dyspareunia, vaginal dryness and pain interfering with sexual pleasure after surgery.[6] Some patients experience a disturbed body image,[7] which can lead to low self-esteem and exacerbate sexual dysfunction.

Back to top

### 19.2.2 Social challenges

Patients who have undergone surgery for colorectal cancer (especially those with stomas) may avoid and fear social interactions, and experience disrupted intimate relationships due to body changes, changes in roles, social restrictions and sexual dysfunction.[7][8]

Back to top

### 19.2.3 Psychological challenges

#### 19.2.3.1 Cognitive dysfunction

The effects of chemotherapy on cognitive function have been assessed in patients with colorectal cancer, as for those with other cancers. A recent meta-analysis of 13 relevant studies[9] found evidence of impairment in executive function and memory in patients of all ages. Longer treatment duration, but not shorter time since treatment, was associated with worse impairment.[9]

Back to top

#### 19.2.3.2 Anxiety and depression

Many patients with colorectal cancer experience moderate-to-severe anxiety and depression. In a population-based Australian sample of 1966 colorectal cancer survivors assessed at six time points from 5 months to 5 years post diagnosis,[10] the prevalence of high overall distress ranged between 44% and 32%. The study[10] identified four trajectories of distress – some declining, and others (38.5% of the sample) steadily increasing over time. Other studies have reported clinical levels of depression in 8–23% of people with colorectal cancer and anxiety in 16– 39%.[11][12][13][14]

Back to top

### 19.2.3.3 Distress affects survival rates

Patients' distress is important, not only because of its impact on quality of life, but also its impact on survival. Quality of life has been reported to predict survival in patients with advanced colorectal cancer.[15] Depression has also been found to influence survival in a population-based sample of 1074 colorectal cancer survivors in the Netherlands.[16] In analyses adjusted for metastasis and other potential confounders, depressive symptoms significantly increased the risk of death among 1-year to 10-year colorectal cancer survivors (hazard ratio [HR] 1.88; 95 % CI, 1.24–2.83; $p < 0.01$) and even more in 1-year to 2-year colorectal cancer survivors (HR, 2.55; 95 % CI, 1.44–4.51; $p < 0.001$).[16] Thus depression has the highest negative effect on survival in the first 1-2 years, but this effect extends out to 10 years post-diagnosis.

Back to top

### 19.2.3.4 Who is more vulnerable to anxiety and depression?

A number of studies have explored predictors of anxiety, depression and distress among people with colorectal cancer. However, a recent systematic review[17] noted that most studies were cross-sectional and psychosocial variables have been poorly studied.

Many of the factors associated with anxiety, depression and distress may be modified with appropriate intervention.

Factors that were associated with an increased risk of developing anxiety include:[14]

- more, or more severe, symptoms such as poor self-reported cognitive functioning, dyspnoea and diarrhoea
- financial difficulties.

Factors that were associated with an increased risk of developing depression include:[14]

- neo-adjuvant radiotherapy
- poor physical, cognitive or social functioning
- difficulties with personal care and communicating with others.

Factors that were associated with an increased risk of developing distress include:[10]

- male sex
- younger age
- lower education
- poor socioeconomic advantage
- poor social support
- late disease stage
- pre-diagnosis anxiety, pessimism and a distressed personality style.[17]

The investigators of an Australian prospective survey of colorectal cancer survivors[10] concluded that, based on their higher levels of distress, men who are younger, and with low education and poor social support, should be a priority for targeted intervention.

Back to top

### 19.2.4 Family distress

There is also evidence that families of people with colon cancer experience considerable distress, particularly if the person has metastatic disease.[18] In a large Australian study of patients with advanced cancer in the palliative care setting,[19] evidence of substantial psychological distress warranting specific support was identified in up to half of the patients (20% of whom had colorectal cancer), one-third of their spouses and one-quarter of their offspring. For people in palliative care, this distress reverberates through the family in such a way that both patient and family-centred models of care need to be adopted.

Back to top

## 19.3 Psychological care and treatments

The importance of psychosocial care is recognised in the 2003 national guideline Clinical practice guidelines for the psychosocial care of adults with cancer.[20] This guideline is a useful evidence-based source for practising clinicians.

### 19.3.1 Persisting unmet need

Despite widespread acceptance that psychosocial care is integral to quality cancer care, psychological morbidity is often undetected and underestimated in busy cancer services,[21] and people with cancer continue to experience high levels of unmet need for psychosocial care.[22] Colorectal cancer patients report many deficiencies in their supportive care.[23]

Back to top

### 19.3.2 Screening for distress

Because anxiety and depression are often under-detected, international guidelines recommend routine screening of all cancer patients for psychological distress, using validated, reliable, objective measures.[24] The International Psycho-Oncology Society (IPOS) and 68 affiliated organisations have set a standard of care involving monitoring distress as the ‘6th vital sign’. The authors of an Australian study that measured distress in colorectal cancer survivors[10] recommend that screening should occur not only at diagnosis, but also at key points of the illness trajectory and into survivorship, to ensure that late-onset distress is not missed. Recent Australian clinical guidelines for screening for, and managing, anxiety and depression in cancer patients[10] recommend the following tools to screen for distress: the 1-item “Distress Thermometer” (with 39 problem areas to tick)[24] and the 9-item ESAS (Edmonton Symptom Assessment Schedule).[25]

Back to top

## 19.3.3 Psychological intervention

There is now a large evidence base, summarised in meta-analyses and systematic reviews, demonstrating that interventions for distress in patients with cancer are effective in the short and long term.[26][27][28][29] A recent review of psychological interventions specifically in colorectal cancer,[30] which identified 11 studies meeting inclusion criteria, found that psychosocial interventions (including educational interventions, cognitive–behavioural therapy, relaxation training and supportive group therapy) for colorectal cancer patients reduced length of hospital stay, days to stoma proficiency, and anxiety and depression, and improved quality of life.

Relaxation-based therapies are greatly beneficial in reducing anxiety, treatment-related phobias, conditioned nausea and vomiting, and insomnias.[31] Both cognitive–behavioural and supportive–expressive therapies are effective in countering existential fears of dying, aloneness, meaninglessness and unrealistic fears about processes of treatment.[26] Early referral for specialist support from a clinical psychologist or liaison psychiatrist is worthwhile when symptoms of distress or high risk become evident. One study has also shown that peer support (face-to-face group or individual by phone) is feasible, acceptable and appreciated by colo-rectal patients, although efficacy of this intervention has not yet been evaluated.[32]

Randomised controlled trials of early versus late referral to palliative care services show strong evidence of the benefits of early referral in reducing time spent in hospital, enhancing symptom control, increasing family satisfaction, and permitting death to occur in the desired location.[33] Early referral to community-based domiciliary palliative care services support and information, where available, may have several benefits and enhance quality of life. Support can be provided by various health disciplines with appropriate training.

**Practice point**

- patients with colorectal cancer should be screened for psychological distress at diagnosis and key points in their disease trajectory.
- Psychological interventions should be a component of colorectal cancer care, as they can improve the quality of life for patients with cancer.

Back to top

## 19.3.4 Information needs and decision aids

### 19.3.4.1 Providing information to patients

Surveys of patients with cancer repeatedly identify information provision as a major unmet need.[21] Research has shown that the provision of adequate information is related to increased psychological wellbeing.[34] Effective communication skills, which can be learned through facilitated communication skills training, ensure that this information is clearly explained and understood.[35]

Six main principles of information provision for cancer patients are relevant to the care of people with colorectal cancer patients:

- Treatment options should be explained clearly, with realistic information about potential effectiveness and adverse effects.
- Patients should be invited to guide the clinician to provide the level of detail they wish to receive and to enable their desired level of active involvement in decision making.[36]
- Clinicians should review both the person's understanding of the information, and their reactions to it, as a means of increasing integration and providing emotional support.
- Written materials should be provided, and clinicans should consider offering audio recording of key consultations.[33] The involvement of a specialist nurse or counsellor, provision of a follow-up letter, and participation in psychoeducational programs may also assist in recall of information.[37][38]
- Information should be made available over time and, if desired, review appointments that allow time for further integration of information should be scheduled.
- Patients' carers and families should also be kept well informed.

Back to top

## 19.3.5 The role of decision aids

Some decisions in colorectal cancer are 'preference sensitive'; that is, the optimal decision is one that is consistent with patient values and preferences. Shared decision making is a model that seeks to include both patients and their healthcare providers in the decision making process. It encourages patients to play an active role in decisions concerning their health, which is a goal of patient-centered care.[39]

Shared decision making can be facilitated by patient decision aids, which are defined as interventions designed to help people make specific and deliberative choices among options by providing information on the options and outcomes relevant to the patient's health status.[40] The effectiveness of decision aids has been demonstrated in at least three separate systematic reviews.[35][41][42]

Decision aids have been shown to:[35][41][42]

- improve patient knowledge
- lower decisional conflict related to feeling uninformed and unclear about personal values

- reduce the proportion of people who were passive in decision making post-intervention
- improve agreement between patient values and health care option chosen.

Only a few decision aids have been developed and evaluated for colorectal cancer treatment. In an Australian-US collaboration,[43] a decision aid was developed for patients with advanced colorectal cancer who are considering first-line chemotherapy and reviewing treatment options, prognostic information, and toxicities. In a randomised controlled trial with 207 patients, patients receiving the decision aid demonstrated a greater increase in understanding of prognosis, options, and benefits, with higher overall understanding ($P < .001$), compared with patients who received a standard medical oncology consultation. Anxiety was similar between groups, and decisions were not affected; 74% chose chemotherapy, 7% supportive care alone, and 10% observation.

Another trial evaluating a decision aid for people with colorectal cancer has been registered, but has not yet reported results. The decision aid addresses the two surgical options for rectal cancer patients: low anterior resection with re-establishment of bowel continuity, and abdominoperineal resection with a permanent stoma. The decision aid is currently being piloted and a barriers analysis, exploring factors that might hinder introduction into routine care, is planned to follow. Further work on decision aid development for colorectal cancer treatment is required.

**Practice point**

- The use of decision aids should be considered for preference-sensitive decisions about treatment for colorectal cancer.

Back to top

1. ↑ Worster B, Holmes S. *The preoperative experience of patients undergoing surgery for colorectal cancer: a phenomenological study.* Eur J Oncol Nurs 2008 Dec;12(5):418-24 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18842456.
2. ↑ Black, P.. *Coping with common stoma problems in care homes.* Nursing & Residential Care 2011;13(3): 126-128.
3. ↑ Burch J. *The pre- and postoperative nursing care for patients with a stoma.* Br J Nurs 2005 Mar;14(6): 310-8 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/15902026.
4. ↑ Ho VP, Lee Y, Stein SL, Temple LK. *Sexual function after treatment for rectal cancer: a review.* Dis Colon Rectum 2011 Jan;54(1):113-25 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21160322.
5. ↑ Pietrangeli, A. Bove, L. Innocenti, P. Pace, A. Tirelli, C. Santoro, E. Jandolo, B.. *Neurophysiological evaluation of sexual dysfunction in patients operated for colorectal cancer.* Clin Auton Res 1998;8(6): 353-35.
6. ↑ Bambrick, M. Fazio, V. W. Hull, T. L. Pucel, G.. *Sexual function following restorative proctocolectomy in women.* Dis Colon Rectum 1996;39(6): 610-614.

7. ↑ 7.0 7.1 Ross L, Abild-Nielsen AG, Thomsen BL, Karlsen RV, Boesen EH, Johansen C. *Quality of life of Danish colorectal cancer patients with and without a stoma.* Support Care Cancer 2007 May;15(5):505-13 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17103196.
8. ↑ Simmons KL, Smith JA, Bobb KA, Liles LL. *Adjustment to colostomy: stoma acceptance, stoma care self-efficacy and interpersonal relationships.* J Adv Nurs 2007 Dec;60(6):627-35 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18039249.
9. ↑ 9.0 9.1 Hodgson KD, Hutchinson AD, Wilson CJ, Nettelbeck T. *A meta-analysis of the effects of chemotherapy on cognition in patients with cancer.* Cancer Treat Rev 2013 May;39(3):297-304 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23219452.
10. ↑ 10.0 10.1 10.2 10.3 10.4 10.5 Dunn J, Ng SK, Holland J, Aitken J, Youl P, Baade PD, et al. *Trajectories of psychological distress after colorectal cancer.* Psychooncology 2013 Aug;22(8):1759-65 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23125004.
11. ↑ Tsunoda A, Nakao K, Hiratsuka K, Yasuda N, Shibusawa M, Kusano M. *Anxiety, depression and quality of life in colorectal cancer patients.* Int J Clin Oncol 2005 Dec;10(6):411-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16369745.
12. ↑ Strong V, Waters R, Hibberd C, Rush R, Cargill A, Storey D, et al. *Emotional distress in cancer patients: the Edinburgh Cancer Centre symptom study.* Br J Cancer 2007 Mar 26;96(6):868-74 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17311020.
13. ↑ Medeiros M, Oshima CT, Forones NM. *Depression and anxiety in colorectal cancer patients.* J Gastrointest Cancer 2010 Sep;41(3):179-84 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20180047.
14. ↑ 14.0 14.1 14.2 Gray NM, Hall SJ, Browne S, Johnston M, Lee AJ, Macleod U, et al. *Predictors of anxiety and depression in people with colorectal cancer.* Support Care Cancer 2014 Feb;22(2):307-14 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24077745.
15. ↑ Maisey NR, Norman A, Watson M, Allen MJ, Hill ME, Cunningham D. *Baseline quality of life predicts survival in patients with advanced colorectal cancer.* Eur J Cancer 2002 Jul;38(10):1351-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12091066.
16. ↑ 16.0 16.1 Mols F, Husson O, Roukema JA, van de Poll-Franse LV. *Depressive symptoms are a risk factor for all-cause mortality: results from a prospective population-based study among 3,080 cancer survivors from the PROFILES registry.* J Cancer Surviv 2013 Sep;7(3):484-92 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23677523.
17. ↑ 17.0 17.1 Sales PM, Carvalho AF, McIntyre RS, Pavlidis N, Hyphantis TN. *Psychosocial predictors of health outcomes in colorectal cancer: a comprehensive review.* Cancer Treat Rev 2014 Jul;40(6):800-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24679516.
18. ↑ Northouse LL, Mood D, Templin T, Mellon S, George T. *Couples' patterns of adjustment to colon cancer.* Soc Sci Med 2000 Jan;50(2):271-84 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10619695.
19. ↑ Kissane, David W. Bloch, Sidney Burns, W. Ivon McKenzie, Dean Posterino, Maria. *Psychological morbidity in the families of patients with cancer.* Psychooncology 1994;3(1): 47-56.
20. ↑ National Breast Cancer Centre, National Cancer Control Initiative. *Clinical practice guidelines for the psychosocial care of adults with cancer.* Camperdown, NSW: National Breast Cancer Centre 2003 Jan 1 Available from: http://www.nhmrc.gov.au/_files_nhmrc/file/publications/synopses/cp90.pdf.

21. ↑ 21.0 21.1 Newell S, Sanson-Fisher RW, Girgis A, Bonaventura A. *How well do medical oncologists' perceptions reflect their patients' reported physical and psychosocial problems? Data from a survey of five oncologists.* Cancer 1998 Oct 15;83(8):1640-51 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/9781960.
22. ↑ Sanson-Fisher R, Girgis A, Boyes A, Bonevski B, Burton L, Cook P. *The unmet supportive care needs of patients with cancer. Supportive Care Review Group.* Cancer 2000 Jan 1;88(1):226-37 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/10618627.
23. ↑ van Ryn, M. Phelan, S. M. Arora, N. K. Haggstrom, D. A. Jackson, G. L. Zafar, S. Y. Griffin, J. M. Zullig, L. L. Provenzale, D. Yeazel, M. W. Jindal, R. M. Clauser, S. B.. *Patient-reported quality of supportive care among patients with colorectal cancer in the Veterans Affairs Health Care System.* J Clin Oncol 2014;32 (8): 809-815.
24. ↑ 24.0 24.1 Holland JC, Bultz BD, National comprehensive Cancer Network (NCCN). *The NCCN guideline for distress management: a case for making distress the sixth vital sign.* J Natl Compr Canc Netw 2007 Jan;5 (1):3-7 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17323529.
25. ↑ Bruera E, Kuehn N, Miller MJ, Selmser P, Macmillan K. *The Edmonton Symptom Assessment System (ESAS): a simple method for the assessment of palliative care patients.* J Palliat Care 1991;7(2):6-9 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1714502.
26. ↑ 26.0 26.1 Osborn RL, Demoncada AC, Feuerstein M. *Psychosocial interventions for depression, anxiety, and quality of life in cancer survivors: meta-analyses.* Int J Psychiatry Med 2006;36(1):13-34 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16927576.
27. ↑ Hart SL, Hoyt MA, Diefenbach M, Anderson DR, Kilbourn KM, Craft LL, et al. *Meta-analysis of efficacy of interventions for elevated depressive symptoms in adults diagnosed with cancer.* J Natl Cancer Inst 2012 Jul 3;104(13):990-1004 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22767203.
28. ↑ Jacobsen PB, Jim HS. *Psychosocial interventions for anxiety and depression in adult cancer patients: achievements and challenges.* CA Cancer J Clin 2008 Jul;58(4):214-30 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/18558664.
29. ↑ Subnis UB, Starkweather AR, McCain NL, Brown RF. *Psychosocial therapies for patients with cancer: a current review of interventions using psychoneuroimmunology-based outcome measures.* Integr Cancer Ther 2014 Mar;13(2):85-104 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24105361.
30. ↑ Chien CH, Liu KL, Chien HT, Liu HE. *The effects of psychosocial strategies on anxiety and depression of patients diagnosed with prostate cancer: a systematic review.* Int J Nurs Stud 2014 Jan;51(1):28-38 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/23398917.
31. ↑ Hoon, L. S. Chi Sally, C. W. Hong-Gu, H.. *Effect of psychosocial interventions on outcomes of patients with colorectal cancer: a review of the literature.* Eur J Oncol Nurs 2013;17(6): 883-891.
32. ↑ Ieropoli SC, White VM, Jefford M, Akkerman D. *What models of peer support do people with colorectal cancer prefer?* Eur J Cancer Care (Engl) 2011 Jul;20(4):455-65 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20738390.
33. ↑ 33.0 33.1 Cheung YL, Molassiotis A, Chang AM. *The effect of progressive muscle relaxation training on anxiety and quality of life after stoma surgery in colorectal cancer patients.* Psychooncology 2003 Apr;12 (3):254-66 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/12673809.
34. ↑ Higginson IJ, Wade AM, McCarthy M. *Effectiveness of two palliative support teams.* J Public Health Med 1992 Mar;14(1):50-6 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1376133.

35. ↑ 35.0 35.1 35.2 Stacey D, Bennett CL, Barry MJ, Col NF, Eden KB, Holmes-Rovner M, et al. *Decision aids for people facing health treatment or screening decisions.* Cochrane Database Syst Rev 2011 Oct 5;(10): CD001431 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21975733.
36. ↑ De Vries AM, de Roten Y, Meystre C, Passchier J, Despland JN, Stiefel F. *Clinician characteristics, communication, and patient outcome in oncology: a systematic review.* Psychooncology 2014 Apr;23(4): 375-81 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24243790.
37. ↑ Singh S, Butow P, Charles M, Tattersall MH. *Shared decision making in oncology: assessing oncologist behaviour in consultations in which adjuvant therapy is considered after primary surgical treatment.* Health Expect 2010 Sep;13(3):244-57 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/20579121.
38. ↑ Waller A, Forshaw K, Bryant J, Mair S. *Interventions for preparing patients for chemotherapy and radiotherapy: a systematic review.* Support Care Cancer 2014 Aug;22(8):2297-308 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/24906837.
39. ↑ Damian D, Tattersall MH. *Letters to patients: improving communication in cancer care.* Lancet 1991 Oct 12;338(8772):923-5 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/1681275.
40. ↑ Barry MJ, Edgman-Levitan S. *Shared decision making--pinnacle of patient-centered care.* N Engl J Med 2012 Mar 1;366(9):780-1 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/22375967.
41. ↑ 41.0 41.1 O'Connor AM, Bennett C, Stacey D, Barry MJ, Col NF, Eden KB, et al. *Do patient decision aids meet effectiveness criteria of the international patient decision aid standards collaboration? A systematic review and meta-analysis.* Med Decis Making 2007 Sep;27(5):554-74 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17873255.
42. ↑ 42.0 42.1 O'Brien MA, Whelan TJ, Villasis-Keever M, Gafni A, Charles C, Roberts R, et al. *Are cancer-related decision aids effective? A systematic review and meta-analysis.* J Clin Oncol 2009 Feb 20;27(6): 974-85 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/19124808.
43. ↑ Leighl NB, Shepherd HL, Butow PN, Clarke SJ, McJannett M, Beale PJ, et al. *Supporting treatment decision making in advanced cancer: a randomized trial of a decision aid for patients with advanced colorectal cancer considering chemotherapy.* J Clin Oncol 2011 May 20;29(15):2077-84 Available from: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21483008.

# 20 Appendices

See:

- Guideline development process
- Clinical question list
- Technical report
- Glossary and abbreviations
- Working party and sub-committee membership
- Project team contributions
- Conflict of interest register

# 20.1 Guideline development process

**Contents**

8 References

## 20.1.1 Introduction

These draft clinical practice guidelines are a revision and update of the 2005 *Clinical Practice Guidelines for the Prevention, Early Detection and Management of Colorectal Cancer*. The guidelines were originally developed in 1999.

This current revision and update was commissioned and funded by the Department of Health Commonwealth of Australia.

The guidelines project commenced in December 2014, and in June 2015 the National Health and Medical Research Council (NHMRC) agreed to consider approving the guideline, provided it was developed according to NHMRC procedures and requirements.

Back to top

## 20.1.2 Guidelines development group

Cancer Council Australia approached key stakeholders from the Working Party involved in the development of the 2005 colorectal cancer (CRC) guidelines. From this group, Cancer Council Australia appointed a designated Management Committee responsible for the overall management and strategic leadership of the guideline development process. This group acted as a steering committee to ensure that all deliverables agreed in the project plan were delivered to acceptable standards in accordance with NHMRC requirements, within agreed timeframes and within the approved budget.

A wider multidisciplinary Working Party of relevant experts was then convened to develop the revised guidelines and author specific sections. This was to ensure that representatives from all specialities and disciplines involved in the diagnosis and treatment of CRC were represented. Two consumer representatives were invited to be part of the Working Party.

A project team based at Cancer Council Australia conducted the systematic reviews, comprising of systematic literature searches, literature screening against pre-determined inclusion and exclusion criteria and critical evaluation and data extraction of the included literature. The project team was responsible for liaising with the Working Party members in regards to content development, content review and compiling the document. The clinical practice guideline was developed according to the procedures and requirements for meeting the 2011 NHMRC standard for clinical practice guidelines.[1] The development program was designed to meet the scientific rigour required by the standard for developing high quality, evidence-based clinical practice guidelines. A series of NHMRC resources and handbooks[2][3][4][5][6][7][8][9][10] guided the process and outlined the major steps and expectations involved in developing guidelines. These documents provided the definitions and protocols for developing research questions and search strategies, conducting systematic literature reviews, summarising and assessing the relevant literature and finally, formulating and grading the recommendations. They also included checklists and templates created to satisfy designated standards of quality and process.

The questions were allocated to specific Guidelines Working Party members to act as lead authors according to their areas of expertise. Each lead author team was able to co-opt additional experts as co-authors for their allocated questions. The Management Committee assessed the suggestion of any additional co-authors including their declaration of interest.

Back to top

## 20.1.3 Steps in preparing clinical practice guidelines to NHMRC criteria

For every question the below steps were followed:
1. Develop a structured clinical question (PICO question)
2. Search for existing relevant guidelines and systematic reviews
3. Process if relevant clinical practice guideline was identified or not

| **3a If no relevant clinical practice guideline was found** | **3b If a relevant clinical practice guideline was found and assessed as suitable for adaption** |
|---|---|
| Check if an existing systematic review of high quality exists and can be used to inform the systematic review process | Conduct systematic literature review update for the question of the existing clinical practice guideline |
| Developing the systematic review protocol and systematic literature search strategy for each PICO question | Screening of literature update results against pre-defined inclusion and exclusion criteria |
| Conducting the systematic literature search according to protocol | Critical appraisal and data extraction of each new included article |
| Screening of literature results against pre-defined inclusion and exclusion criteria | Update evidence table of evidence review of existing guideline with new literature update results |
| Critical appraisal and data extraction of each included article | |

4. Summarise the relevant data
5. Assess the body of evidence and formulate recommendations
6. Write the content narrative

Back to top

### 20.1.3.1 Developing a structured clinical question

A wide range of questions were proposed for inclusion in the revised guidelines. In 2015, the Management Committee discussed the clinical questions that would be answered by systematic review. A shortlisting and voting process was undertaken to determine the final questions.

The questions focused on chemoprevention, screening, diagnosis, treatment and follow up. All proposed questions were reviewed on the basis of their purpose, scope and clinical importance to the target audience and were structured according to the PICO (populations, interventions, comparisons, outcomes) framework (see the clinical question list). The lead author and subcommittee members provided the systematic review team with feedback to refine the PICO questions.

### 20.1.3.2 Search for existing relevant guidelines and systematic reviews

For each PICO question, the National Guideline Clearinghouse, the Guidelines Resource Centre as well as the scoping search for the PICO question were scanned for relevant clinical practice guidelines that could potentially be suitable for adaption.

If an existing guideline was identified, the guideline was assessed for adaption according to the AGREEII assessment tool.

Relevant guidelines that did not meet the criteria for adaption were checked for systematic reviews that could be used as a source of relevant references to inform the systematic review process for the PICO question. Full systematic reviews were then performed as outlined in the following sections.

Back to top

### 20.1.3.3 Developing a systematic search strategy

For each PICO question, systematic literature search strategies were developed by the technical team. Most searches were directed to CRC as a generic base. Searches were limited or widened as necessary according to the PICO structure using keywords or MESH and subject terms. Systematic search strategies were derived from these terms for each included electronic databases. The included standard databases searched were PubMed, Embase, Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews and Database of Abstracts of Reviews of Effects and Health Technology Assessment for all questions. The psychosocial questions also included CINAHL and PsycINFO databases to retrieve relevant literature.

Back to top

### 20.1.3.4 Conducting the systematic literature search according to protocol

Clinical practice guidelines should be based on systematic identification and synthesis of the best available scientific evidence.[2] For each clinical question, that required a systematic literature review, literature searches were conducted systematically with the literature cut-off date of 31 August 2016. The following electronic databases were part of the systematic literature search strategy:

- **PubMed (U.S. National Library of Medicine):** bibliographic references and abstracts to articles in a range of languages on topics such as clinical medical information and biomedicine, and including the allied health fields, biological and physical sciences
- **EMBASE**: major pharmacological and biomedical database indexing drug information from 4550 journals published in 70 countries
- **Database of Abstracts of Reviews of Effects and Health Technology Assessment:** contains details of systematic reviews that evaluate the effects of healthcare interventions and the delivery and organisation of health services
- **The Cochrane Database of Systematic Reviews:** contains systematic reviews of primary research in human health care and health policy, and are internationally recognised as the highest standard in evidence-based health care
- **CINAHL:** bibliographic references and abstracts to journal articles, book chapters, pamphlets, audiovisual materials, software, dissertations, critical paths, and research instruments on topics including nursing and allied health, biomedicine, consumer health, health sciences librarianship, behavioural sciences, management, and education
- **Psychinfo:** Bibliographic references and abstracts to journal articles, book chapters, dissertations and technical reports on psychology; social, clinical, cognitive and neuropsychology; psychiatry, sociology, anthropology and education, with source material from a wide range of languages.

A search filter to retrieve relevant literature considering Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples was added to each question.

Additional relevant papers from reference lists and, where appropriate, clinical trial registries, were also identified for retrieval as part of the snowballing process.

The full detailed systematic literature search strategy for every clinical question is fully documented in the technical report of the question (see Technical report).

### 20.1.3.5 Screening of literature results against pre-defined inclusion and exclusion criteria

Part of the systematic review process is to screen all retrieved literature results against the pre-defined inclusion and exclusion criteria in two stages.

a) First screen
During the first screening round, the titles and abstracts of all retrieved literature were screened by one or two reviewers. All irrelevant, incorrect and duplicates were removed.

b) Second screen
A second screen was undertaken based on the full article. A reviewer assessed each article for inclusion against the pre-defined inclusion and exclusion criteria for each question. In the case of a disagreement between the reviewers, a third independent reviewer assessed the article against the inclusion and exclusion criteria. Articles that met the inclusion criteria were forwarded for quality assessment and data extraction.

### 20.1.3.6 Critical appraisal and data extraction of each included article

Two assessors independently assessed the risk of bias of each of the included studies using a study design specific assessment tool and where necessary pre-specified criteria (see Technical report for all quality assessment tools). Any disagreements were adjudicated by a third reviewer.

For all included articles, the relevant data was extracted and summarised in study characteristics and evidence tables. Each data extraction was checked by a second assessor. These tables are included in the technical report for each question (see Technical report).

### 20.1.3.7 Summary of the relevant data

For each outcome examined, the results, level of the evidence, the risk of bias due to study design, and the relevance of the evidence for each included study were documented in a body of evidence table.

Each question was addressed by a systematic review resulting in a systematic review report. All systematic review reports are published in the technical report of the guidelines. Levels of evidence are shown below.

#### 20.1.3.7.1 Table A1. Designations of levels of evidence according to type of research question (NHMRC, 2009)

| Level | Intervention | Diagnosis | Prognosis | Aetiology | Screening |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| I | A systematic review of level II studies | A systematic review of level II studies | A systematic review of level II studies | A systematic review of level II studies | A systematic review of level II studies |
| II | A randomised controlled trial | A study of test accuracy with: an independent, blinded comparison with a valid reference standard, among consecutive patients with a defined | A prospective cohort study | A prospective cohort study | A randomised controlled trial |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | clinical presentation | | | |
| III-1 | A pseudo-randomised controlled trial (i.e. alternate allocation or some other method) | A study of test accuracy with: an independent, blinded comparison with a valid reference standard, among non-consecutive patients with a defined clinical presentation | All or none | All or none | A pseudo-randomised controlled trial (i.e. alternate allocation or some other method) |
| III-2 | A comparative study with concurrent controls:<br>Non-randomised, experimental trial<br>Cohort study<br>Case-control study<br>Interrupted time series with a control group | A comparison with reference standard that does not meet the criteria required for Level II and III-1 evidence | Analysis of prognostic factors amongst untreated control patients in a randomised controlled trial | A retrospective cohort study | A comparative study with concurrent controls:<br>Non-randomised, experimental trial<br>Cohort study<br>Case-control study |
| III-3 | A comparative study without concurrent controls:<br>Historical control study<br>Two or more single arm study | Diagnostic case-control study | A retrospective cohort study | A case-control study | A comparative study without concurrent controls:<br>Historical control study |

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Interrupted time series without a parallel control group | | | | Two or more single arm study |
| IV | Case series with either post-test or pre-test/post-test outcomes | Study of diagnostic yield (no reference standard) | Case series, or cohort study of patients at different stages of disease | A cross-sectional study | Case series |

*Source: National Health and Medical Research Council. NHMRC additional levels of evidence and grades for recommendations for developers of guidelines. Canberra: NHMRC; 2009. (https://www.nhmrc.gov.au/_files_nhmrc/file/guidelines/developers/nhmrc_levels_grades_evidence_120423.pdf)*

Back to top

## 20.1.3.8 Assess the body of evidence and formulate recommendations

The technical report for each question was forwarded to each lead author. The authors, in collaboration with their subcommittee members and systematic review team (who conducted the systematic reviews and provided the technical reports), assessed the body of evidence and completed the NHMRC Evidence Statement form to record the volume of the evidence, its consistency, clinical impact, generalisability and applicability and developed evidence statements (see Technical report). The process is described in NHMRC additional levels of evidence and grades for recommendations for developers of guidelines (2009).[10]

Following grading of the body of evidence and development of evidence statements, expert authors were asked to formulate evidence-based recommendations that related to the summarised body of evidence. The method of grading recommendations is shown in Table A2.

### 20.1.3.8.1 Table A2. Grading of recommendations

| **Component of Recommendation** | **Recommendation Grade** | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **A**<br>**Excellent** | **B**<br>**Good** | **C**<br>**Satisfactory** | **D**<br>**Poor** |
| | one or more level I studies with a low risk of | one or two level II studies with a low risk of bias or a systematic | one or two level III studies with a low risk | level IV studies, or level I to III studies |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Volume of evidence** [1**] | bias or several level II studies with a low risk of bias | review/several level III studies with a low risk of bias | of bias, or level I or II studies with a moderate risk of bias | /systematic reviews with a high risk of bias |
| **Consistency** [2**] | all studies consistent | most studies consistent and inconsistency may be explained | some inconsistency reflecting genuine uncertainty around clinical question | evidence is inconsistent |
| **Clinical impact** | very large | substantial | moderate | slight or restricted |
| **Generalisability** | population/s studied in body of evidence are the same as the target population for the guideline | population/s studied in the body of evidence are similar to the target population for the guideline | population/s studied in body of evidence differ to target population for guideline but it is clinically sensible to apply this evidence to target population[3] | population/s studied in body of evidence different to target population and hard to judge whether it is sensible to generalise to target population |
| **Applicability** | directly applicable to Australian healthcare context | applicable to Australian healthcare context with few caveats | probably applicable to Australian healthcare context with some caveats | not applicable to Australian healthcare context |

[1] Level of evidence determined from level of evidence criteria

[2] If there is only one study, rank this component as 'not applicable'

[3] For example results in adults that are clinically sensible to apply children OR psychosocial outcomes for one cancer that may be applicable to patients with another cancer.

[**]For a recommendation to be graded A or B, the volume and consistency of evidence must also be graded either A or B. *Source: National Health and Medical Research Council. NHMRC additional levels of evidence and grades for recommendations for developers of guidelines. Canberra: NHMRC; 2009. (https://www.nhmrc.gov.au/_files_nhmrc/file/guidelines/developers/nhmrc_levels_grades_evidence_120423.pdf)*

The overall recommendations grade are shown in Table A3.

### 20.1.3.8.2 Table A3. Overall recommendation grades

| Grade of recommendation | Description |
|---|---|
| **A** | Body of evidence can be trusted to guide practice |
| **B** | Body of evidence can be trusted to guide practice in most situations |
| **C** | Body of evidence provides some support for recommendation(s) but care should be taken in its application |
| **D** | Body of evidence is weak and recommendation must be applied with caution |

*Source: National Health and Medical Research Council. NHMRC levels of evidence and grades for recommendations for developers of guidelines. Canberra: NHMRC; 2009. (https://www.nhmrc.gov.au/_files_nhmrc/file/guidelines/developers/nhmrc_levels_grades_evidence_120423.pdf)*

In addition to developing evidence-based recommendations as a result of the systematic review for a question, expert authors could also draft consensus-based recommendations in the absence of evidence after having performed a systematic review, or practice points, when a matter was outside the scope of the search strategy for the systematic review. The NHMRC approved recommendation types and definitions are shown in Table A4.

### 20.1.3.8.3 Table A4. NHMRC approved recommendation types and definitions

| Type of recommendation | Definition |
|---|---|
| **Evidence-based recommendation** | A recommendation formulated after a systematic review of the evidence, indicating supporting references |
| **Consensus-based recommendation** | A recommendation formulated in the absence of quality evidence, after a systematic review of the evidence was conducted and failed to identify admissible evidence on the clinical question |
| **Practice point** | A recommendation on a subject that is outside the scope of the search strategy for the systematic review, based on expert opinion and formulated by a consensus process |

*Source: National Health and Medical Research Council. Procedures and requirements for meeting the NHMRC standard for clinical practice guidelines. Melbourne: National Health and Medical Research Council, 2011*

Back to top

## 20.1.3.9 Writing the content

For each question, the assigned lead authors were asked to draft their guideline chapter using the following format:

- general introduction to the clinical question

- background to the clinical question, including its clinical importance and historical evidence, where relevant
- review of the evidence, including the number, quality and findings of studies identified by the systematic review
- evidence summary in tabular form including evidence statements, levels of evidence of included studies, and reference citations
- evidence-based recommendation(s) and corresponding grade(s), consensus-based recommendations and practice points
- implications for implementation of the recommendations, including possible effects on usual care, organisation of care, and any resource implications
- discussion, including unresolved issues, relevant studies currently underway, and future research priorities
- references.

The content draft was then reviewed by subcommittee members who were available. The draft documents often underwent several iterations.

Back to top

### 20.1.3.10 Review of the draft chapters

The draft guidelines sections were circulated to the Working Party members and posted on Cancer Council's wiki platform. The group was asked to review the content and submit feedback. Members were asked to submit further suggestions on consensus-based recommendation and practice points.

A face-to-face meeting with all available Working Party members was held in December 2016 to review and finalise the draft guidelines for public consultation. Prior to this meeting, the latest iteration draft guidelines were circulated as soon as they were available. All members were asked to review the content, individual recommendations and practice points in detail, and to identify and note any controversies and points to be discussed at the group meeting.

During the meeting, each chapter/section was tabled as an agenda point and recommendations and practice points were discussed in detail. All clinical guidance was reviewed and approved by consensus, which was reached by voting. In some cases, the authors agreed on specific actions for the content or discussed further sections or amendments to be added. These were actioned by the authors.

Each recommendation and practice point was approved once the eligible panellists (excluding representatives of the funding bodies and panellists who cannot vote due to conflict of interest) have reached consensus.

Back to top

## 20.1.4 Public consultation

A complete draft of the guideline was sent out for public consultation from 10 March 2017 to 8 April 2017. Submissions were invited from the general public and professional societies and groups and other relevant stakeholders. The consultation was publicised by email to key stakeholders, including contacting professional societies and groups, consumer groups and other relevant parties.

All feedback on the draft received during the consultation period will be compiled and sent to the relevant author and subcommittee to review their draft content, assessing and considering the submitted comments. Each additional submitted paper during public consultation was be assessed by the methodologist team against the systematic review protocol.

Another face-to-face Working Party meeting will be convened to review all public consultation comments and the amended content. Subsequent changes to the draft will be agreed by consensus, based on consideration of the evidence. The same consensus process that was followed prior to public consultation would be followed again. All changes resulting from the public consultation submission reviews will be documented and made accessible once the guidelines are published.

A final independent review of experts in their fields is also planned to be conducted before the final draft is submitted to NHMRC Council. Any further suggestions by the independent expert reviewers will be integrated in the final draft and then submitted to NHMRC Council for approval.

Back to top

## 20.1.5 Organisations formally endorsing the guidelines

The following medical colleges and professional bodies will be approached to endorse the guideline:

- Australian College of Rural and Remote Medicine (ACRRM)
- Medical Oncology Group of Australia Incorporated (MOGA)
- Royal College of Pathologists of Australia (RCPA)
- Royal Australasian College of Physicians (RACP) – Adult Medicine Division
- Royal Australian College of Physicians – Australian Chapter of Palliative Medicine (AChPM, RACP)
- Royal Australian College of Physicians – Australian Faculty of Public Health Medicine (AFPHM, RACP)
- Royal Australian College of Surgeons (RACS)
- Royal Australian College of General Practitioners (RACGP).

Back to top

## 20.1.6 Dissemination and implementation

Cancer Council Australia will create a plan regarding the dissemination of the guideline in Australia.

The guidelines will also be made available online via the Cancer Council Australia Cancer Guidelines wiki. The online guideline version increases availability as well as accessibility, and usage will be tracked and analysed with a web analytics solution. Interlinking and listing the guidelines on national and international guideline portal is an important part of the digital dissemination strategy. Important Australian health websites, such as EviQ and healthdirect Australia will be approached to link to the online guideline. The guideline will also to be listed on national and international guideline portals such as Australia’s Clinical Practice Guidelines Portal,

Guidelines International Network guidelines library and National Guidelines Clearinghouse. The Cancer Guidelines wiki is a responsive website that is optimised for mobile and desktop access. When accessing the guidelines with a mobile and tablet device, an icon can be easily added to the homescreen of mobile devices, offering easy mobile access. In addition, the final guideline document will be launched via email alert to professional organisations, interested groups and clinical experts in the field, directing them via URL link to the online guideline and all associated resources.

The Cancer Guidelines wiki is based on semantic web technology, so the guidelines are available in a machine-readable format, which offers the possibility to easily integrate the guideline content with systems and web applications used in the Australian healthcare context.

Use of the guidelines as part of core curriculum in specialty exams will be encouraged. It is recognised that a planned approach is necessary to overcome specific barriers to implementation in particular settings and to identify appropriate incentives to encourage uptake of guideline recommendations. Implementation of the guidelines will require a combination of effective strategies and may include further CME initiatives and interactive learning, the development and promotion of computer-assisted decision aids and electronic decision-support systems, and the creation of audit and other clinical tools.

Back to top

## 20.1.7 Future updates

The incoming literature updates will continue to be monitored for each systematic review question. If there is strong evidence emerging in a specific area of colorectal cancer management, the Management Committee will be reconvened to assess if this warrants a guideline update (full or partly). It is recommended that these guidelines be updated after 5 years.

## 20.1.8 References

1. ↑ National Health and Medical Research Council. *Procedures and requirements for meeting the NHMRC standard for clinical practice guidelines.* Melbourne; 2011.
2. ↑ [2.0] [2.1] National Health and Medical Research Council. *A guide to the development, evaluation and implementation of clinical practice guidelines.* Commonwealth of Australia: National Health and Medical Research Council; 1999 Jan 1 Available from: http://www.nhmrc.gov.au/_files_nhmrc/publications/attachments/cp30.pdf.
3. ↑ National Health and Medical Research Council. *How to review the evidence: Systematic identification and review of scientific literature.* Canberra: National Health and Medical Research Council; 1999 Available from: http://www.nhmrc.gov.au/_files_nhmrc/publications/attachments/cp65.pdf.
4. ↑ National Health and Medical Research Council. *How to prepare and present evidence-based information for consumers of health services: A literature review.* Commonwealth of Australia: National Health and Medical Research Council; 1999 Jan 1 Available from: http://www.nhmrc.gov.au/_files_nhmrc/publications/attachments/cp72.pdf.
5. ↑ National Health and Medical Research Council. *How to present evidence for consumers: Preparation of consumer publications.* Canberra: Commonwealth of Australia; 1999.

6. ↑ National Health and Medical Research Council. *How to put evidence into practice: Implementation and dissemination strategies.* Commonwealth of Australia: National Health and Medical Research Council; 2000 Jan 1 Available from: http://www.nhmrc.gov.au/_files_nhmrc/publications/attachments/cp71.pdf.
7. ↑ National Health and Medical Research Council. *How to use the evidence: assessment and application of scientific evidence.* Commonwealth of Australia: National Health and Medical Research Council; 2000 Jan 1 Available from: http://www.nhmrc.gov.au/_files_nhmrc/publications/attachments/cp69.pdf.
8. ↑ National Health and Medical Research Council. *How to compare the costs and benefits: evaluation of the economic evidence.* Commonwealth of Australia: National Health and Medical Research Council; 2001 Jan 1 Available from: http://www.nhmrc.gov.au/_files_nhmrc/publications/attachments/cp73.pdf.
9. ↑ National Health and Medical Research Council. *Using socioeconomic evidence in clinical practice guidelines.* NHMRC 2002 Available from: http://www.nhmrc.gov.au/_files_nhmrc/publications/attachments/cp89.pdf.
10. ↑ [10.0] [10.1] National Health and Medical Research Council. *NHMRC additional levels of evidence and grades for recommendations for developers of guidelines.* Canberra; 2009 Available from: www.mja.com.au/sites/default/files/NHMRC.levels.of.evidence.2008-09.pdf.

Back to top

# 20.2 Clinical question list

This page lists the questions answered by systematic review and modelling. For full details about the reviews, including the inclusion and exclusion criteria, please see the Technical report.

**Contents**

## 20.2.1 Primary prevention (section lead: Finlay Macrae)

**Clinical Question PPR1:**
What is the risk-benefit ratio for use of aspirin for prevention of colorectal cancer stratified by risk of colorectal cancer itself? (What is the optimal dose and frequency of administration?)

**PICO Question PPR1:**
In an asymptomatic population at average risk or increased risk of colorectal cancer, what is the cost-benefit ratio of prophylactic Aspirin use in reducing the mortality and incidence of colorectal cancer?

| Population | Intervention | Comparator | Outcomes | Study Design |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ■ Asymptomatic western population at average risk of colorectal cancer, or<br>■ Populations at increased risk of colorectal cancer | Prophylactic aspirin use | Placebo or no Aspirin use | ■ Colorectal cancer incidence<br>■ Colorectal cancer mortality<br>■ Adverse effects | Systematic reviews of Level II evidence or randomised controlled trials. |

Back to top

## 20.2.2 Population screening for colorectal cancer (section leads: James St. John and Hooi Ee)

**Clinical Question PSC1:**
Is population screening based on testing with (a) immunochemical FOBT (iFOBT), (b) flexible sigmoidoscopy, (c) colonoscopy, (d) CT colonography, (e) faecal biomarkers such as DNA (f) plasma biomarkers such as DNA (g) any combination of the above screening tests effective in reducing bowel cancer mortality rates, feasible, acceptable and a cost-effective method of screening for the target population? a) Is population screening starting at an earlier age more effective, feasible, acceptable and cost-effective, compared with starting at age 50 years? b) In population screening, do the harms outweigh the benefits if routine screening by any method is continued beyond the age of 75 years?

**PICO Question PSC1a (Screening benefit):**
In persons without a colorectal cancer diagnosis or symptoms that might indicate colorectal cancer, which screening modality (immunochemical FOBT, flexible sigmoidoscopy, colonoscopy, CT colonography, faecal or blood biomarkers, or any combinations) compared with no screening, reduces colorectal cancer mortality, or the incidence of metastases at diagnosis?

| Population | Intervention | Comparator | Outcomes |
|---|---|---|---|
| Persons without a colorectal cancer diagnosis or symptoms that might indicate colorectal cancer | ■ Immunochemical FOBT, or<br>■ Flexible sigmoidoscopy, or<br>■ Colonoscopy, or<br>■ Faecal biomarkers, or<br>■ Blood biomarkers, or<br>■ Any combinations. | No screening test | ■ Colorectal cancer specific mortality<br>■ Metastatic colorectal cancer diagnosis |

**PICO Question PSC1b (Screening test accuracy):**

For persons without a colorectal cancer diagnosis or symptoms that might indicate colorectal cancer, which screening modality (immunochemical FOBT, flexible sigmoidoscopy, colonoscopy, faecal or blood biomarkers, or any combinations) performs best in detecting colorectal cancer, and how does the diagnostic performance change with family history, age, or gender?

| Population | Index Test 1 | Index Test 2 | Reference standard | Outcomes |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Persons without a colorectal cancer diagnosis or symptoms that might indicate colorectal cancer<br><br>(with a family history of colorectal cancer or no family history of colorectal cancer) | Screening for CRC with:<br><br>■ Immunochemical FOBT, or<br>■ Flexible sigmoidoscopy,<br>■ Colonoscopy, or<br>■ Faecal biomarkers, or<br>■ Blood biomarkers, or<br>■ Any combinations | An alternative screening test or no screening | Colonoscopy or long-term follow up | Diagnostic performance related to advanced adenoma and colorectal cancer |

**PICO Question PSC1c (Screening cost effectiveness - modelling):**

In persons without a bowel cancer diagnosis or symptoms that might indicate bowel cancer, what is the most cost-effective, feasible and acceptable screening modality (iFOBT, flexible sigmoidoscopy, colonoscopy, CT colonography, faecal or blood biomarkers test, or any combinations) compared with no screening?

**PICO Question PSC1d (Screening age - modelling):**
Is population screening starting at an earlier age more effective and as feasible, acceptable and cost-effective as screening starting at age 50 years? In population screening, do the harms outweigh the benefits if routine screening is continued beyond the age of 75 years?

Back to top

## 20.2.3 The symptomatic patient (section lead: Jon Emery)

**Clinical Question SPT1-2:**
What signs/symptoms alone or in combination are most predictive of CRC and what is the optimal maximum time from referral to diagnosis and treatment (diagnostic interval)?

**PICO SPT1-2a (signs/symptoms):**
In symptomatic patients without a colorectal cancer diagnosis, what signs or symptoms (persistent changed bowel movements, persistent diarrhoea or constipation, unexplained rectal bleeding, general or localised abdominal pain, unexplained palpable abdominal or rectal mass, unexplained weight loss, iron deficient anaemia, tiredness, fatigue, or any combination) correlate best with a diagnosis of colorectal cancer?

| Population | Signs/Symptoms | Outcomes |
|---|---|---|
| Patients without colorectal cancer diagnosis presenting with symptoms of colorectal cancer | Signs or symptoms alone or in combination:<br>■ persistent changed bowel movements<br>■ persistent diarrhoea or constipation<br>■ unexplained rectal bleeding<br>■ general or localised abdominal pain<br>■ unexplained palpable abdominal or rectal mass<br>■ unexplained weight loss<br>■ iron-deficient anaemia<br>■ tiredness or fatigue<br>■ rectal or anal pain | ■ Diagnosis of colorectal cancer<br>■ Specificity<br>■ Sensitivity<br>■ Positive predictive value<br>■ Negative predictive value<br>■ AUC of ROC |

**Clinical Question SPT1-2:**
What signs/symptoms alone or in combination are most predictive of CRC and what is the optimal maximum time from referral to diagnosis and treatment (diagnostic interval)?

**PICO Question SPT1-2b (diagnostic interval):**
In symptomatic patients without a colorectal cancer diagnosis, what is the optimal maximum diagnostic interval that achieves better than or equivalent outcomes in terms of survival, mortality, and diagnosis of metastatic disease?

| Population | Intervention | Comparator | Outcomes |
|---|---|---|---|
| Symptomatic patients without a colorectal cancer diagnosis | The time delay between presentation with symptoms associated with colorectal cancer and treatment for colorectal cancer | An alternative delay, or immediate treatment | ■ 3-year survival, or<br>■ 5-year survival, or<br>■ Colorectal cancer mortality<br>■ Metastatic disease at diagnosis |

## 20.2.4 Risk and screening based on family history (section lead: Mark Jenkins)

**Clinical Question FHS2:**
What is the strength of association between family history and colorectal cancer risk and how do these associations vary by, number of affected relatives and degree of relatedness and age and sex of affected relatives and by the age and sex of the at-risk person?

**PICO Question FSH2:**
For individuals, has a family history of colorectal cancer been shown to be reliably associated with an increase in risk of occurrence of or death from colorectal cancer when compared to individuals who do not have a family history of colorectal cancer?

| Population | Exposure | Comparator/ Reference group | Outcomes |
|---|---|---|---|
| Persons without a colorectal cancer diagnosis or symptoms that might indicate colorectal cancer | Presence of a family history of colorectal cancer | No known family history of colorectal cancer | ■ Colorectal cancer mortality<br>■ Colorectal cancer diagnosis |

Back to top

## 20.2.5 Pathology and staging (section leads: Charles Chan and Pierre Chapuis)

**Clinical Question PTH1:**
What is the optimal molecular profiling of colorectal cancer?

**PICO Question PTH1:**
In patients diagnosed with colorectal cancer who have undergone surgical resection or biopsy of the primary colorectal tumour, which molecular marker (BRAF/KRAS/NRAS/DNA mismatch repair /microsatellite instability) best predicts response to surgery, or adjuvant therapy or radiotherapy (disease-free survival, overall survival, disease-specific mortality, overall mortality, or relapse incidence)?

| Population | Prognostic factor | Outcomes |
|---|---|---|
| Patients diagnosed with colorectal cancer and have had resection of the primary tumour<br><br>(any age, with or without a family history of CRC, or any stage of CRC including M1) | Any single prognostic marker (or any combination) examined in the primary resected colorectal cancer tumour tissue:<br><br>Immunohistochemical markers:<br>BRAF<br>Mismatch repair enzymes (MLH1, MSH2, PMS2, MSH6)<br>PCR markers:<br>BRAF<br>Microsatellite instability (which loci?)<br>KRAS<br>NRAS | Response to surgery, or adjuvant therapy or radiotherapy, including:<br><br>■ disease-free survival<br>■ overall survival<br>■ disease-specific mortality<br>■ overall mortality<br>■ relapse incidence |

Back to top

## 20.2.6 Preparation for surgery and peri-operative optimisation (section lead: Elizabeth Murphy)

**Clinical Question PRP2-5, 7:**
Can peri operative management be optimised?

**PICO Question PRP2-5, 7:**

In patients diagnosed with colorectal cancer and undergoing surgical tumour resection, does mechanical bowel preparation with or without antibiotic prophylaxis, when compared to usual care, achieve better outcomes in terms of anastomotic leakage, surgical site infection, length of hospital stay and ileus?

| Population | Intervention | Comparator | Outcomes |
|---|---|---|---|
| Patients diagnosed with colorectal cancer and undergoing surgical tumour resection of curative intent | Either:<br>1. Mechanical bowel preparation with oral and intravenous antibiotic prophylaxis or<br>2. Mechanical bowel preparation and intravenous antibiotic prophylaxis or<br>3. Mechanical bowel preparation and oral antibiotic prophylaxis | No mechanical bowel preparation | ■ Anastomotic leakage /dehiscence rates<br>■ Rate of surgical site/wound infection<br>■ Length of hospital stay<br>■ Ileus |

Back to top

## 20.2.7 Elective and emergency surgery for colon and rectal cancer

**Clinical Question COL1-2a and b:**

What is the optimal approach to resection of colorectal cancers?

**PICO Question COL1-2a (section lead: Andrew Luck):**

In patients diagnosed with colon cancer, what is the optimal resection strategy to achieve the best outcomes in terms of length and quality of life?

| Population | Intervention | Comparator | Outcomes |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | | ■ Colorectal cancer mortality<br>■ Perioperative morbidity<br>■ Perioperative mortality |

| Population | Intervention | Comparator | Outcomes |
|---|---|---|---|
| Patients diagnosed with colon cancer and undergoing tumour resection | Laparoscopic colon resection | Open colon resection (colectomy) | ■ Length of hospital stay<br>■ Post-op time to return of bowel function<br>■ Length of operation<br>■ Quality of life<br>■ Adverse events |

**PICO Question COL1-2b (section lead: Alexander (Sandy) Heriot):**

In patients diagnosed with rectal cancer, what is the optimal resection strategy to achieve the best outcomes in terms of length and quality of life?

| Population | Intervention | Comparator | Outcomes |
|---|---|---|---|
| Patients diagnosed with rectal cancer and undergoing tumour resection | ■ Polypectomy<br>■ Local transanal resection<br>■ Transanal endoscopic microsurgery<br>■ Total mesorectal excision<br>■ Abdominoperineal resection<br>■ Anterior resection<br>■ Laparoscopic resection<br>■ Open resection | An alternative resection strategy | ■ Colorectal cancer mortality<br>■ 30-day mortality rate<br>■ Perioperative mortality<br>■ 2-year survival<br>■ 5-year survival<br>■ Local recurrence rate<br>■ Perioperative morbidity<br>■ Permanent stoma rate<br>■ Quality of life<br>■ Adverse events |

**Clinical Question REC3:**

What is the most effective treatment for early rectal cancer?

**PICO Question REC3 (section lead: Alexander (Sandy) Heriot):**

In patients diagnosed with stage I-II rectal cancer, what is the most effective treatment strategy to achieve the best outcomes in terms of length and quality of life?

| Population | Intervention | Comparator | Outcomes |
|---|---|---|---|
| Patients diagnosed with localised stage I-II potential resectable rectal cancer (nodal status unknown) | Local resection with or without radiotherapy or chemotherapy | Radical resection with or without radiotherapy or chemotherapy | ■ Overall survival<br>■ 30-day survival<br>■ Local recurrence (positive nodes or margins)<br>■ Rectal cancer mortality<br>■ Quality of life<br>■ Adverse events<br>■ Stoma rates |

**Clinical Question COLMNG5:**
What are the benefits of stenting or colostomy vs. acute resection with primary anastomosis in acute obstruction due to left-sided colon or rectal carcinoma?

**PICO Question COLMNG5 (section leads: Alexander (Sandy) Heriot and Andrew Luck):**
In patients diagnosed with colorectal cancer and acute obstruction, does stenting or colostomy achieve equivalent or better outcomes compared to acute resection with primary anastomosis?

| Population | Intervention | Comparator | Outcomes |
|---|---|---|---|
| Patients diagnosed with colorectal cancer and acute obstruction (due to left-side colon cancer or rectal cancer) | ■ Stenting, or<br>■ Colostomy, or<br>■ Hartmann's procedure | Acute surgical resection with primary anastomosis | ■ Perioperative mortality<br>■ Perioperative morbidity<br>■ 5 year survival<br>■ Cancer specific survival<br>■ Length of hospital stay<br>■ Stoma rate (temporary or permanent)<br>■ Quality of life<br>■ Adverse events |

**Clinical Question COLMNG3: (Section leads: Cherry Koh and Andrew Luck)**
What is the role for peritonectomy with or without PIC in the treatment recurrent as well as primary colorectal cancer with peritoneal involvement (not including appendiceal neoplasia)?

**PICO Question COLMNG3 (Section leads: Cherry Koh and Andrew Luck):**
For patients diagnosed with colorectal cancer and peritoneal involvement or isolated peritoneal recurrence of colorectal cancer, does peritonectomy, with or without perioperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy (PIC), achieve better outcomes in terms of length and quality of life than usual care?

| Population | Intervention | Comparator | Outcomes |
|---|---|---|---|
| Patients diagnosed with colorectal cancer and peritoneal involvement or isolated peritoneal recurrence of colorectal cancer | Peritonectomy with or without HIPEC | Usual care (systemic chemotherapy) | ■ Colorectal cancer specific mortality<br>■ 30-day mortality<br>■ 5-year survival<br>■ Quality of life<br>■ Adverse events |

Back to top

## 20.2.8 Adjuvant therapy for colon cancer (section lead: Peter Gibbs)

**Clinical Question ADJ1:**
What is the efficacy of adjuvant combination chemotherapy in elderly patients with colon cancer?

**PICO Question ADJ1:**
In elderly patients (≥70 years) diagnosed with colon cancer, what is the efficacy of surgery and adjuvant combination chemotherapy (involving either 5-flurouracil or capecitabine combined with oxaliplatin), compared to surgery with a single chemotherapeutic agent (fluoropyrimidine based) in achieving the best outcomes in terms of colorectal cancer mortality, recurrence, quality of life and adverse effects?

| Population | Intervention | Comparator | Outcomes |
|---|---|---|---|
| Elderly patients diagnosed with colon cancer (≥70 | Surgery in combination with one of the following:<br>■ Chemotherapy (either 5-Fluoruracil, Capecitabine, or Oxaliplatin) | Surgery with a single chemotherapeutic agent | ■ Colorectal cancer mortality<br>■ Colorectal recurrence |

| Population | Intervention | Comparator | Outcomes |
|---|---|---|---|
| years) | AND an additional adjuvant chemotherapy drug (either 5-fluoruracil, capecitabine, or oxaliplatin) | (Fluoropyrimidine based). | ■ Quality of life<br>■ Adverse events |

Back to top

## 20.2.9 Neo-adjuvant and adjuvant therapy for rectal cancer (section leads: Desmond Yip and Kathryn Field)

**Clinical Question NEO1a-b:**

Which patients with rectal cancer stage I-II could be considered for definitive chemoradiotherapy (no surgery), neo-adjuvant chemoradiotherapy or surgery alone?
a) What is the optimal timing for surgery after neoadjuvant therapy?
b) Should they be restaged?

**PICO Question NEO1b:**

For patients diagnosed with stage I-III rectal cancer, for which patients does neoadjuvant treatment (short or long course chemoradiotherapy) with surgery achieve equivalent or better outcomes in terms of length and quality of life than surgery alone?

| Population | Intervention | Comparator | Outcomes |
|---|---|---|---|
| Patients diagnosed with stage I-III rectal cancer | Surgery without neoadjuvant therapy | Short/long course chemoradiotherapy with surgery | ■ Rectal cancer mortality<br>■ 30-day mortality<br>■ Distant metastases<br>■ Disease-free survival<br>■ Overall survival<br>■ Local recurrence<br>■ Quality of life<br>■ Sexual dysfunction<br>■ Adverse events<br>■ Rehospitalisation<br>■ Permanent stoma formation<br>■ Return to normal bowel function |

**PICO Question NEO1a:**
For patients diagnosed with stage I-III rectal cancer, for which patients does neoadjuvant treatment (short or long course chemoradiotherapy) with surgery achieve equivalent or better outcomes in terms of length and quality of life than neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy alone?

| Population | Intervention | Comparator | Outcomes |
|---|---|---|---|
| Patients diagnosed with stage I-III rectal cancer | Definitive neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy | Neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy with surgery | ■ Rectal cancer mortality<br>■ 30-day mortality<br>■ Distant metastases<br>■ Disease-free survival<br>■ Overall survival<br>■ Local recurrence<br>■ Quality of life<br>■ Sexual dysfunction<br>■ Adverse events<br>■ Rehospitalisation<br>■ Permanent stoma formation<br>■ Return to normal bowel function |

Back to top

## 20.2.10 Management of resectable locally recurrent disease and metastatic disease (section lead: Cherry Koh)

**Clinical Question MNG13:**
Which patients with locally recurrent colon or rectal cancer are more suitable for curative surgery?

**PICO Question MNG13:**
In patients with locally recurrent colon or rectal cancer, what is the role of curative surgery (+/- chemotherapy +/- radiotherapy) when compared to surgical palliation +/- palliative chemotherapy +/- palliative radiotherapy or other palliative interventions in terms of outcomes (overall survival, disease free survival, quality of life and complications)?

| Population | Intervention | Comparator | Outcomes |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Curative surgery with or without | | ■ Overall survival |

| Population | Intervention | Comparator | Outcomes |
|---|---|---|---|
| Patients diagnosed with locally recurrent colon or rectal cancer | chemotherapy, with or without radiotherapy | Surgical palliation with or without palliative chemotherapy or radiotherapy and/or palliative care | ■ Disease-free survival<br>■ Quality of life<br>■ Complications |

**Clinical Question MNG14:**
Which patients with resectable synchronous or metachronous metastatic colon or rectal cancer are suitable for curative surgery?

**PICO Question MNG14:**
In patients with resectable synchronous or metachronous metastatic colorectal cancer, what is the role of surgical resection +/- chemotherapy when compared to non-surgical /palliative interventions in terms of outcomes (overall survival, disease free survival, progression free survival, quality of life and complications?)

| Population | Intervention | Comparator | Outcomes |
|---|---|---|---|
| Patients diagnosed with metastatic colon or rectal cancer and synchronous or metachronous resectable metastases | ■ Curative surgery<br>■ With or without chemotherapy<br>■ With or without radiotherapy | Non-surgical (chemotherapy, radiotherapy, etc) and/or palliative care | ■ Overall survival<br>■ Disease-free survival<br>■ Quality of life<br>■ Complications |

Back to top

## 20.2.11 Management of non-resectable locally recurrent disease and metastatic disease (section lead: Louise Nott)

**Clinical Question MNG16:**
What is the impact of different liver directed therapies in patients with incurable metastatic colorectal cancer?

**PICO Question MNG16:**
In patients with incurable metastatic colorectal cancer, what are the effects of liver-directed therapies on survival and quality-of-life outcomes, compared with standard care?

| Population | Intervention | Comparator | Outcomes |
|---|---|---|---|
| | ■ Liver directed therapies involving:<br>■ Trans-arterial (chemo) embolization, or | | ■ Colorectal cancer mortality, or |

| Population | Intervention | Comparator | Outcomes |
|---|---|---|---|
| Patients with metastatic incurable colorectal cancer | ■ Hepatic intra-arterial infusion, or<br>■ Stereotactic radiotherapy, or<br>■ Radiofrequency ablation<br>■ Radioembolization in particular SIR-Spheres | Standard care (no therapy or, systemic chemotherapy with or without biologic surgery) | ■ Survival (progression free or overall), or<br>■ Quality of life, or<br>■ Adverse events, or<br>■ Surgical resection rate |

Back to top

## 20.2.12 Follow up after curative resection for colorectal cancer (section lead: Peter Lee)

**Clinical Question FUR1-2:**
What is the optimal intensity of follow up post curative resection of colorectal cancer? And where?

**PICO Question FUR1-2a:**
In patients who have had curative resection of colorectal cancer, what surveillance protocol achieves the best outcomes in terms of detected recurrent disease, 5-year survival, quality of life, and colorectal cancer-related mortality?

| Population | Intervention | Comparator | Outcomes |
|---|---|---|---|
| Patient who have had curative resection of colorectal cancer | Follow-up including:<br>■ Sigmoidoscopy, or<br>■ Serum CEA test, or<br>■ Imaging (CT scan), or<br>■ Chest X-ray, or<br>■ FOBT, or<br>■ Ultrasonographic screening | An alternative follow-up modality | ■ Colorectal cancer mortality, or<br>■ Recurrence rates, or<br>■ Rate of curative resection following recurrence, or<br>■ Time to recurrence, or- 5 year survival, or<br>■ Quality of life |

Back to top

## 20.3 Journal articles

**Contents**



# 20.3.1 Bowel cancer

Journal articles developed out of the Australian *Clinical practice guidelines for the prevention, early detection and management of colorectal cancer* and *Clinical practice guidelines for surveillance colonoscopy*.

As part of the dissemination and implementation plans for these guidelines, lead authors were encouraged to develop articles to submit to journals for publication in order to further promote the updated Australian guidance on surveillance colonoscopy and the prevention, early detection and management of colorectal cancer.

Dissemination and implementation plans:

- Clinical practice guidelines for the prevention, early detection and management of colorectal cancer
- Clinical practice guidelines for surveillance colonoscopy.

## 20.3.1.1 Colorectal cancer

**Journal articles published or accepted for publication:**

Revised Australian national guidelines for colorectal cancer screening: family history *Mark A Jenkins, Driss Ait Ouakrim, Alex Boussioutas, John L Hopper, Hooi C Ee, Jon D Emery, Finlay A Macrae, Albert Chetcuti, Laura Wuellner and James B St John* (29 October 2018)

The National Bowel Cancer Screening Program: time to achieve its potential to save lives *Hooi C Ee, James St John* (31 July 2019)

## 20.3.1.2 Surveillance colonoscopy

**Journal articles published or accepted for publication:**

TBC

# 20.3.2 Skin cancer

## 20.3.2.1 Keratinocyte cancer

**Journal articles published or accepted for publication:**

TBC

## 20.3.2.2 Melanoma

Journal articles developed out of the Australian *Clinical practice guidelines for the diagnosis and management of melanoma*.

As part of the dissemination and implementation plan for the guideline, lead authors were encouraged to develop articles to submit to journals for publication in order to further promote the updated Australian guidance on the diagnosis and management of melanoma.

**Journal articles published or accepted for publication:**

When is a sentinel node biopsy indicated for patients with primary melanoma? An update of the 'Australian guidelines for the management of cutaneous melanoma' *David E Gyorki, Andrew Barbour, Mark Hanikeri, Victoria Mar, Shahneen Sandhu and John F Thompson*

Clinical practice guidelines for the diagnosis and management of melanoma: melanomas that lack classical clinical features *Victoria J Mar, Alex J Chamberlain, John W Kelly, William K Murray and John F Thompson*

Updated evidence-based clinical practice guidelines for the diagnosis and management of melanoma: definitive excision margins for primary cutaneous melanoma *Michael J Sladden, Omgo E Nieweg, Julie Howle, Brendon J Coventry and John F Thompson*

Methods of melanoma detection and of skin monitoring for individuals at high risk of melanoma: new Australian clinical practice *Nikki R Adler, John W Kelly, Pascale Guitera, Scott W Menzies, Alex J Chamberlain, Paul Fishburn, Alison E Button-Sloan, Clinton Heal, H Peter Soyer and John F Thompson*

Multidisciplinary care of cancer patients – a passing fad or here to stay? *John F Thompson and Gabrielle J Williams*

Improving diagnostic accuracy for suspicious melanocytic skin lesions: new Australian melanoma clinical practice guidelines stress the importance of clinician/pathologist communication *Richard A Scolyer, H Peter Soyer, John W Kelly, Craig James, Catriona A McLean, Brendon J Coventry, Peter M Ferguson, Robert V Rawson, Victoria J Mar, Sara L de Menezes, Paul Fishburn, Jonathan R Stretch, Stephen Lee and John F Thompson*

New treatment paradigms for clinically-apparent metastatic melanoma in regional lymph nodes *Michael A. Henderson, John Spillane, T. Michael Hughes, Andrew J. Spillane, B. Mark Smithers and John F. Thompson*

Evidence-based clinical practice guidelines for the management of patients with lentigo maligna *Mitchell Robinson, Clare Primiero, Pascale Guitera, Angela Hong, Richard A. Scolyer, Jonathan R. Stretch, Geoffrey Strutton, John F. Thompson and H. Peter Soyer*

Diagnosis and Management of Cutaneous Melanoma *Victoria Mar (20-4-2020: accepted for publication AJGP)*

New Australian melanoma management guidelines – the patient perspective *J F Thompson & Alison Button-Sloan (27-May-2020: accepted for publication MJA)*

Last updated: 6 July 2020

# 20.4 Technical report

This Technical Report accompanies the *Clinical practice guidelines for the prevention, early detection and management of colorectal cancer*, developed by Cancer Council Australia.

It outlines the guideline development process and methodology, lists the clinical questions, provides all accompanying NHMRC Statement Forms, the detailed technical documentation for each question and the risk of bias assessment tools used to assess the included literature as a result of a systematic review.

**Contents**



## 20.4.1 Guideline development process

## 20.4.2 Clinical question list

## 20.4.3 Evidence statement forms, systematic review reports and modelling reports

The following reports are for questions that were answered by a new systematic literature review or modelling. The associated technical documentation appears at the bottom of the relevant content pages.

The questions were given alphanumeric codes when they were developed, please refer to the codes below and see the clinical question list for more detail.

**PPR1:** *In an asymptomatic population at average risk or increased risk of colorectal cancer, what is the cost-benefit ratio of prophylactic Aspirin use in reducing the mortality and incidence of colorectal cancer?*
Evidence statement form PPR1
Systematic review report PPR1

**PSC1a:** *In persons without a colorectal cancer diagnosis or symptoms that might indicate colorectal cancer, which screening modality (immunochemical FOBT, flexible sigmoidoscopy, colonoscopy, CT colonography, faecal or blood biomarkers, or any combinations) compared with no screening, reduces colorectal cancer mortality, or the incidence of metastases at diagnosis?*
Evidence statement form PSC1a
Systematic review report PSC1a

**PSC1b:** *For persons without a colorectal cancer diagnosis or symptoms that might indicate colorectal cancer, which screening modality (immunochemical FOBT, flexible sigmoidoscopy, colonoscopy, faecal or blood biomarkers, or any combinations) performs best in detecting colorectal cancer, and how does the diagnostic performance change with family history, age, or gender?*
Evidence statement form PSC1b
Systematic review report PSC1b

**PSC1c:** *In persons without a bowel cancer diagnosis or symptoms that might indicate bowel cancer, what is the most cost-effective, feasible and acceptable screening modality (immunochemical FOBT, flexible sigmoidoscopy, colonoscopy, CT colonography, faecal or blood biomarkers, or any combinations) compared with no screening?*
Modelling report PSC1c

**PSC1d:** *Is population screening starting at an earlier age more effective and as feasible, acceptable and cost-effective as screening starting at age 50 yr? In population screening, do the harms outweigh the benefits if routine screening is continued beyond the age of 75yr?*
Modelling report PSC1d

**SPT1-2a:** *In symptomatic patients without a colorectal cancer diagnosis, what signs or symptoms (persistent changed bowel movements, persistent diarrhoea or constipation, unexplained rectal bleeding, general or localised abdominal pain, unexplained palpable abdominal or rectal mass, unexplained weight loss, iron deficient anaemia, tiredness, fatigue, or any combination) correlate best with a diagnosis of colorectal cancer?*
Evidence statement form SPT1-2a
Systematic review report SPT1-2a

**SPT1-2b:** *In symptomatic patients without a colorectal cancer diagnosis, what is the optimal maximum*

*diagnostic interval that achieves better than or equivalent outcomes in terms of survival, mortality, and diagnosis of metastatic disease?*
Evidence statement form SPT1-2b
Systematic review report SPT1-2b

**FHS2:** *For individuals, has a family history of colorectal cancer been shown to be reliably associated with an increase in risk of occurrence of or death from colorectal cancer when compared to individuals who do not have a family history of colorectal cancer?*
Evidence statement form FHS2
Systematic review report FSH2

**PTH1**: *In patients diagnosed with colorectal cancer and have undergone surgical resection of the primary colorectal tumour, which molecular marker (BRAF/KRAS/NRAS/MMRD/MSI) best predicts response to surgery, or adjuvant therapy or radiotherapy (disease-free survival, overall survival, disease-specific mortality, overall mortality, or relapse incidence)?*
Evidence statement form PTH1
Systematic review report PTH1

**PRP2-5,7:** *In patients diagnosed with colorectal cancer and undergoing surgical tumour resection, does mechanical bowel preparation with or without antibiotic prophylaxis, when compared to usual care, achieve better outcomes in terms of anastomotic leakage, surgical site infection, length of hospital stay and ileus?*
Evidence statement form PRP2-5,7
Systematic review report PRP2-5,7

**COL1-2a:** *In patients diagnosed with colon cancer, what is the optimal resection strategy to achieve the best outcomes in terms of length and quality of life?*
Evidence statement form COL1-2a
Systematic review report COL1-2a

**COL1-2b:** *In patients diagnosed with rectal cancer, what is the optimal resection strategy to achieve the best outcomes in terms of length and quality of life?*
Evidence statement form COL1-2b
Systematic review report COL1-2b

**REC3:** *In patients diagnosed with stage I-II rectal cancer, what is the most effective treatment strategy to achieve the best outcomes in terms of length and quality of life?*
Evidence statement form REC3
Systematic review report REC3

**COLMNG5:** *In patients diagnosed with colorectal cancer and acute obstruction, does stenting or colostomy achieve equivalent or better outcomes compared to acute resection with primary anastomosis?*
Evidence statement form COLMNG5
Systematic review report COLMNG5

**COLMNG3:** *For patients diagnosed with colorectal cancer and peritoneal involvement or isolated peritoneal recurrence of colorectal cancer, does peritonectomy, with or without perioperative intraperitoneal chemotherapy (PIC), achieve better outcomes in terms of length and quality of life than usual care?*
Evidence statement form COLMNG3
Systematic review report COLMNG3

**ADJ1:** *In elderly patients (≥70 years) diagnosed with colon cancer, what is the efficacy of surgery and adjuvant combination chemotherapy (involving either 5-flurouracil or capecitabine combined with oxaliplatin), compared to surgery with a single chemotherapeutic agent (fluoropyrimidine based) in achieving the best outcomes in terms of colorectal cancer mortality, recurrence, quality of life and adverse effects?*
Evidence statement form ADJ1
Systematic review report ADJ1

**NEO1b:** *For patients diagnosed with stage I-III rectal cancer, for which patients does neoadjuvant treatment (short or long course chemoradiotherapy) with surgery achieve equivalent or better outcomes in terms of length and quality of life than surgery alone?*
Evidence statement form NEO1b
Systematic review report NEO1b

**NEO1a:** *For patients diagnosed with stage I-III rectal cancer, for which patients does neoadjuvant treatment (short or long course chemoradiotherapy) with surgery achieve equivalent or better outcomes in terms of length and quality of life than neoadjuvant chemoradiotherapy alone?*
Evidence statement form NEO1a
Systematic review report NEO1a

**MNG13**: *In patients with locally recurrent colon or rectal cancer, what is the role of curative surgery (+/- chemotherapy +/- radiotherapy) when compared to surgical palliation +/- palliative chemotherapy +/- palliative radiotherapy or other palliative interventions in terms of outcomes (overall survival, disease free survival, quality of life and complications)?*
Evidence statement form MNG13
Systematic review report MNG13

**MNG14:** *In patients with resectable synchronous or metachronous metastatic colorectal cancer, what is the role*

*of surgical resection +/- chemotherapy when compared to non-surgical /palliative interventions in terms of outcomes (overall survival, disease free survival, progression free survival, quality of life and complications?)*
Evidence statement form MNG14
Systematic review report MNG14

**MNG16:** *In patients with incurable metastatic colorectal cancer, what are the effects of liver-directed therapies on survival and quality-of-life outcomes, compared with standard care?*
Evidence statement form MNG16
Systematic review report MNG16

**FUR1-2a:** *In patients who have had curative resection of colorectal cancer, what surveillance protocol achieves the best outcomes in terms of detected recurrent disease, 5-year survival, quality of life, and colorectal cancer-related mortality?*
Evidence statement form FUR1-2a
Systematic review report FUR1-2a

#### 20.4.3.1 Comments on technical report documentation

To make comments on the technical documentation, either navigate to the relevant chapter/section in the draft guidelines or use the button below. Please be as specific as possible with your feedback (identifying the form or report with the question code, if possible).

### 20.4.3.2 Cohort studies (risk factors) risk of bias assessment tool

- Cohort studies risk of bias assessment form
- Cohort studies risk of bias assessment help sheet

Back to top

## 20.5 Additional resources

## 20.6 Glossary and abbreviations

| Term | Definition |
|---|---|
| 5-Fluorouracil | 5-fluorouracil is a systemic chemotherapy using fluorouracil. |
| Abdominoperineal Resection | Abdominoperineal resection is a type of TME for cancers higher up the back passage; involves the removal of the anus, rectum and sigmoid colon. |
| Adjuvant chemotherapy | Adjuvant chemotherapy is given after primary treatment to lower the risk of recurrence. |
| Analgesic | An analgesic is any member of the group of drugs used to achieve pain relief. |
| Anterior resection (lower) | Anterior resection (lower) is a type of TME for cancers in the middle of the back passage; involves the removal of most of the rectum. |
| Antibiotic | An antibiotic is a low molecular substance produced by a microorganism that at a low concentration inhibits or kills other microorganisms. |
| Antimicrobial | An antimicrobial substance is any substance of natural, semisynthetic or synthetic origin that kills or inhibits the growth of microorganisms but causes little to no damage to the host. |
| Appendiceal neoplasms | Appendiceal neoplasms are malignancy of the vermiform appendix; tumours that occur in the appendix. |
| Close margin | Close margin is when cancer cells are close to the edge of the removed tissue. |
| Colectomy | A colectomy is the surgical removal of all or part of the colon. |
| Confidence Interval | A confidence interval is an interval estimate combined with a probability statement. |
| C-Reactive Protein | C-reactive protein is a substance produced by the liver in response to inflammation. |
| Cytoreductive surgery | Cytoreductive surgery is the only surgical option for patients diagnosed with peritoneal mesothelioma. This is a major surgery that requires an experienced mesothelioma surgeon. It aims to remove as much cancerous growth as possible from multiple sites in the abdomen. |
| Dehiscence | A dehiscence is a surgical complication where a wound ruptures along a surgical incision. |
| Distant metastasis | Distant metastasis is when the spread of the cancer is outside the surgical field to other organs. |
| Distant recurrence | Distant recurrence is when the cancer has spread (metastasised) to organs or tissues far from the place of the original cancer. |
| Drug-Eluting Beads, Irinotecan | A device that embolises the arteries feeding the tumour site and delivers irinotecan in a controlled manner to the tumour site. |
| Early Post-operative Intraperitoneal Chemotherapy | Early post-operative intraperitoneal chemotherapy is intraperitoneal chemotherapy delivered soon after surgery. |
| | Endoscopic mucosal resection is similar to ESD (see below). It is a submucosal injection used to lift the lesion, and endoscopic snare resection is used to remove |

| Term | Definition |
|---|---|
| Endoscopic Mucosal Resection | the lesion. |
| Endoscopic Submucosal Dissection | Endoscopic submucosal dissection is an advanced technique of therapeutic endoscopy for superficial gastrointestinal neosplasms that involves injecting fluid into the submucosa to elevate the lesion, cutting the surrounding mucosa of the lesion, and dissecting the submucosa beneath the lesion. |
| European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer | European Organisation for Research and Treatment of Cancer is an international organisation that aims to improve the management of cancer and related problems by increasing survival but also patient quality of life. |
| European Society for Medical Oncology | The European Society for Medical Oncology is the leading European professional organisation for medical oncology; the society of reference for oncology education and information. |
| Faecal Immunochemical Test | Faecal immunochemical test is a test that can detect minimal amounts of blood in your bowel motions. Also known as FIT or immunochemical faecal occult blood test (iFOBT). |
| Fistula | A fistula is an anastomosis that is abnormal whether congential or acquired. |
| Faecal Occult Blood Test | A faecal occult blood test can detect minimal amounts of blood in your bowel motions. |
| Fluorouracil plus Leucovorin | Fluorouracil plus leucovorin is a systemic chemotherapy using a combination of fluorouracil and leucovorin. |
| Guaiac Faecal Occult Blood Test (gFOBT) | Guaiac faecal occult blood test is a type of faecal occult blood test that detects blood in your stool. |
| Hand-Assisted Laparoscopic Surgery | Hand-assisted laparoscopic surgery is when a surgeon inserts their hand into the abdomen during laparoscopic surgery. |
| Hazard Ratio | A measure of how often a particular event happens in one group compared to another group, over time. |
| Hemicolectomy | A hemicolectomy is a procedure to remove one side of the colon. |
| Hemoperitoneum | Hemoperitoneum is the presence of blood in the peritoneal cavity. |
| High anterior resection | A high anterior resection is a procedure that removes the lower left part of the colon and the upper part of the rectum. |
| Hyperthermic Intraperitoneal Chemotherapy | Hyperthermic intraperitoneal chemotherapy is a highly concentrated, heated chemotherapy treatment that is delivered directly to the abdomen during surgery. |
| Immunohistochemical Faecal Occult Blood Test (iFOBT) | Immunohistochemical faecal occult blood test is a type of faecal occult blood test that detects non-visible blood in stool. Also known as a faecal immunochemical test or FIT. |
| | An incisional hernia is a type of hernia caused by an incompletely healed surgical |

| Term | Definition |
|---|---|
| Incisional hernia | wound. |
| Laparoscopic resection | Laparoscopic resection is the removal of a tumour via laparoscopic exision. |
| Laparoscopic surgery | Laparoscopic surgery is a procedure where small multiple incisions are made to perform the operation far from the incision location. |
| Laparotomy | Laparotomy is a surgical incision in the abdominal cavity. |
| Leucovorin calcium (folinic acid) plus Fluorouracil plus Irinotecan hydrochloride plus Oxaplatin | Leucovorin calcium (folinic acid) plus fluorouracil plus irinotecan hydrochloride plus oxaplatin is a systemic chemotherapy using a combination of leucovorin calcium (folinic acid) plus gluorouracil plus irinotecan hydrochloride plus oxaplatin. |
| Leucovorin calcium (folinic acid) plus Fluorouracil plus Oxaliplatin | Leucovorin calcium (folinic acid) plus fluorouracil plus oxaliplatin is a systemic chemotherapy using a combination of leucovorin calcium (folinic acid) plus fluorouracil plus oxaliplatin. |
| Local recurrence | Local recurrence is when the cancer is in the same place as the original cancer or is very close to it. |
| Local transanal resection | Local transanal resection is the local resection of tumour through the anus. |
| Lymphorrhea | Lymphorrhea is the leakage of the lymph node which can be through cutting, tearing or the bursting of blood vessels. |
| Magnetic Resonance Imaging | Magnetic resonance imaging is a procedure in which radio waves and a powerful magnet linked to a computer are used to create detailed pictures of areas inside the body. |
| Mechanical Bowel Preparation | Mechanical bowel preparation is a pre-operative procedure involving mechanical cleansing of the bowel. |
| Medical Benefits Schedule | Medical benefits schedule is a listing of Medicare services subsidised by the Australian Government. |
| Narcotic | Narcotics are used only for severe pain and is not helped by other types of painkillers. |
| National Bowel Cancer Screening Program | The National Bowel Cancer Screening Program aims to reduce illness and death from bowel cancer through early detection or prevention of the disease. |
| National Comprehensive Cancer Network | The National Comprehensive Cancer Network |

## 20.7 Working party members & contributors

**Contents**



# 20.7.1 Colorectal Cancer Guidelines Working Party members and contributors

## 20.7.1.1 Management Committee

| Name | Affiliation |
|---|---|
| Professor Timothy Price (Chair) | Chair, Management Committee and Colorectal Cancer Guidelines Revision Working Party<br><br>Medical Oncologist, The Queen Elizabeth Hospital, Adelaide |
| Professor Sanchia Aranda | CEO, Cancer Council Australia |
| Dr Cameron Bell | Gastroenterologist, Royal North Shore Hospital, Sydney |
| | Consultant Colorectal Surgeon |

| Name | Affiliation |
|---|---|
| Professor Alexander (Sandy) Heriot | Director Cancer Surgery, Peter MacCallum Cancer Centre Director, Lower GI Tumour Stream, Victorian Comprehensive Cancer Centre |
| Professor Finlay Macrae | Gastroenterologist, Royal Melbourne Hospital, Melbourne |
| Dr Elizabeth Murphy | Head, Colorectal Surgical Unit, Lyell McEwin Hospital Adelaide |
| Professor Michael Solomon | Colorectal Surgeon, Royal Prince Alfred Hospital, Sydney |
| Professor James St John | Gastroenterologist, Honorary Senior Associate, Cancer Council Victoria, Melbourne |
| Dr Bernie Towler | Chief Medical Adviser, Population Health Division, Department of Health, Canberra |
| Ms Jutta von Dincklage | Head, Clinical Guidelines Network (until November 2016) |
| Ms Laura Wuellner | Acting Head, Clinical Guidelines Network (from November 2016) |
| Professor John R Zalcberg | Head of Cancer at the School of Public Health and Preventive Medicine, Monash University, Melbourne |

### 20.7.1.2 Guideline section leaders

| Name | Specialty | Section |
|---|---|---|
| Professor Finlay Macrae | Gastroenterology | Primary prevention |
| Professor James St John | Gastroenterology | Population screening for colorectal cancer (co-lead) |
| Dr Hooi Ee | Gastroenterology | Population screening for colorectal cancer (co-lead) |
| Professor Mark Jenkins | Genetic epidemiology, cancer epidemiology (colorectal cancer, Lynch syndrome, genetic epidemiology) | Risk and screening based on family history |
| Professor Jon Emery | General practice | The symptomatic patient |
| Professor Phyllis Butow | Psycho-oncology | Psychosocial care |
| Professor Barbara | | |

| Name | Specialty | Section |
|---|---|---|
| Leggett | Gastroenterology | High-risk familial syndromes |
| Dr Kirsten Gormly | Radiology | Imaging a patient with a diagnosis of colon/rectal adenocarcinoma |
| Dr Andrew Luck | Colorectal surgery | Elective and emergency surgery colon |
| Professor Alexander (Sandy) Heriot | Colorectal surgery | Elective and emergency surgery for colon and rectal cancer |
| Dr Elizabeth Murphy | Colorectal surgery | Preparation for surgery and peri-operative optimisation |
| Professor Pierre Chapuis | Colorectal surgery | Pathology and staging (co-lead) |
| A/Professor Charles Chan | Pathology | Pathology and staging (co-lead) |
| A/Professor Peter Gibbs | Medical oncology | Adjuvant therapy for colon cancer |
| Professor Desmond Yip | Medical oncology | Neoadjuvant and adjuvant therapy for rectal cancer (co-lead) |
| Dr Kathryn Field | Medical oncology | Neoadjuvant and adjuvant therapy for rectal cancer (co-lead) |
| Dr Peter J. Lee | Colorectal surgery | Follow up after curative resection for colorectal cancer |
| Dr Cherry Koh | Colorectal surgery | Management of resectable locally recurrent disease and metastatic disease |
| Dr Louise Nott | Medical oncology | Management of non-resectable locally recurrent disease and metastatic disease; The role of systemic therapies in non-resectable metastatic disease |

### 20.7.1.3 Additional working party members

| Name | Specialty |
|---|---|
| Jeff Cuff | Consumer representative |
| Jillian Arnott | Consumer representative |

| Name | Specialty |
|---|---|
| Professor Karen Canfell | Director, Cancer Research Division, Cancer Council NSW (Epidemiology expert) |
| Professor Dianne O'Connell | Senior Epidemiologist, Manager, Cancer Research Division, Cancer Council NSW (Epidemiology expert) |

# 20.7.2 Chapter details

## 20.7.2.1 Colorectal cancer in Australia

| Name | Affiliation |
|---|---|
| Dr Prema Thavaneswaran* | Manager, Public Health Policy, Cancer Council Australia |
| Professor Jane Young | Executive Director, Research, Institute of Academic Surgery, Executive Director, Surgical Outcomes Research Centre (SOuRCe) Royal Prince Alfred Hospital and University of Sydney, Professor in Cancer Epidemiology, School of Public Health, University of Sydney |
| Professor Michael Solomon | Colorectal Surgeon, Royal Prince Alfred Hospital, Sydney |

*Section lead author

## 20.7.2.2 Primary prevention

| Name | Affiliation |
|---|---|
| Professor Finlay Macrae* | Gastroenterologist, Royal Melbourne Hospital, VIC |
| Ms Julie Clarke | Senior Research Scientist, CSIRO |
| Professor Jon Emery | General Practitioner |
| Professor Mark Jenkins | Risk and screening based on family history |
| Dr Trevor Lockett | Theme Leader, Commonwealth Scientific and Industrial Research Organisation (CSIRO) |
| Professor John McNeil | Head of Department of Epidemiology & Preventive Medicine, Head of School of Public Health & Preventive Medicine, Monash University, Melbourne |
| Professor Allan Spigelman | Head of School, St Vincent's Clinical School |

| Name | Affiliation |
|---|---|
| Dr Aung Ko Win | Genetic Epidemiologist, Centre for Epidemiology & Biostatistics, Melbourne School of Population and Global Health |
| A/Professor Robyn Woods | Associate Professor, Monash University |
| Professor Graeme Young | Professor of Global Gastrointestinal Health, Faculty of Medicine, Nursing and Health Sciences, Flinders University |
| Professor John R Zalcberg | Head of Cancer at the School of Public Health and Preventive Medicine, Monash University, Melbourne |

*Section lead author

## 20.7.2.3 Population screening for colorectal cancer

| Name | Affiliation |
|---|---|
| Professor James St John* | Gastroenterologist, Honorary Senior Associate, Cancer Council Victoria, Melbourne |
| Dr Hooi Ee* | Gastroenterologist, Sir Charles Gairdner Hospital, Perth |
| Professor Jon Emery | Honorary Senior Visiting Research Fellow, Winthrop Professor of General Practice at the Western University of Australia and Professor of Primary Care Cancer Research at the University of Melbourne (also practising GP) |
| Professor Finlay Macrae | Gastroenterologist, Royal Melbourne Hospital, Melbourne |
| Professor Mark Jenkins | Director of the Centre for Epidemiology & Biostatistics, University of Melbourne |
| Paul Grogan | Director, Public Policy & Knowledge Management, Cancer Council Australia |
| Professor Karen Canfell | Director, Cancer Research Division, Cancer Council NSW |
| Ms Jie-Bin Lew | Senior Research Programmer, Cancer Council NSW |
| Ms Rachel Mulqueeney | Cancer Screening Project Coordinator<br>Prevention Division Cancer Council Victoria |

*Section lead author

## 20.7.2.4 The symptomatic patient

| Name | Affiliation |
|---|---|
| Professor Jon Emery* | General Practitioner |
| Dr Cameron Bell | Gastroenterologist – Royal North Shore Hospital, Sydney |
| A/Professor Gregor Brown | Head of Endoscopy, The Alfred Hospital, Melbourne |
| Professor Finlay Macrae AO | Gastroenterologist, Royal Melbourne Hospital, VIC |
| Dr Iain Skinner | Colorectal surgeon |
| A/Professor Justin Tse | Director of Medical Student Education (Clinical Dean) St Vincent's Clinical School, The University of Melbourne |

*Section lead author

## 20.7.2.5 Risk and screening based on family history

| Name | Affiliation |
|---|---|
| Professor Mark Jenkins* | Director of the Centre for Epidemiology & Biostatistics, University of Melbourne, Melbourne. |
| Professor Alex Boussioutas | GE at University of Melbourne, Pter MacCallum Cancer Centre and Royal Melbourne Hospital, Melbourne |
| Dr Driss Ait Quakrim | Research Fellow – Epidemiologist, Centre for Epidemiology and Biostatistics, University of Melbourne, Melbourne |
| Professor James St John | Gastroenterologist, Honorary Senior Associate, Cancer Council Victoria, Melbourne |
| Dr Hooi Ee | Gastroenterologist, Sir Charles Gairdner Hospital, Perth |
| Professor Jon Emery | Honorary Senior Visiting Research Fellow, Winthrop Professor of General Practice at the Western University of Australia and Professor of Primary Care Cancer Research at the University of Melbourne (also practising GP) |
| Professor Finlay Macrae | Gastroenterologist, Royal Melbourne Hospital, Melbourne |

*Section lead author

## 20.7.2.6 High-risk familial syndromes

| Name | Affiliation |
|---|---|
| Barbara Leggett* | Laboratory Head, Conjoint Gastroenterology, QIMR Berghofer Medical Research Institute, QLD |
| Dr Nicola Poplawski | Clinical Geneticist, SA Pathology, South Australia |
| Dr Nicholas Pachter | Clinical Senior Lecturer, School of Paediatrics and Child Health, The University of Western Australia, Perth |
| Dr Christophe Rosty | Anatomical Pathologist at Envoi Specialist Pathologist; Associate Professor, Molecular and Cellular Pathology, University of Queensland; Associate Professor, Department of Pathology, The University of Melbourne |
| Dr Ian Norton | Director of Endoscopy, Royal North Shore Hospital, Endoscopist, Sydney Adventist Hospital, Sydney |
| Dr Caroline Wright | Colorectal surgeon, Royal Prince Alfred Hospital, Senior Lecturer in Surgery, The University of Sydney |
| Dr Aung Ko | Centre for Epidemiology & Biostatistics, Melbourne School of Population and Global Health, Melbourne |

*Section lead author

## 20.7.2.7 Imaging a patient with a diagnosis of colon/rectal adenocarcinoma

| Name | Affiliation |
|---|---|
| Dr Kirsten Gormly* | Radiologist, Dr Jones and Partners, SA |
| Dr Wendy Brown | Senior Staff Specialist, Radiology Department, Royal Prince Alfred Hospital, Camperdown, NSW |
| Dr Damien Stella | Director of CT, Department of Radiology, University of Melbourne, Royal Melbourne Hospital, VIC |
| Professor Eva Segelov | Professor/Director of Oncology, Monash Health and Monash University, VIC |
| Dr Elizabeth (Liz) Murphy* | Head, Colorectal Surgical Unit, Lyell McEwin Hospital Adelaide, SA |
| Professor | |

| Name | Affiliation |
|---|---|
| Timothy (Tim) Price | Chair, Management Committee and Colorectal Cancer Guidelines Revision Working Party. Medical Oncologist, The Queen Elizabeth Hospital, SA |

*Section lead author

## 20.7.2.8 Pathology and staging

| Name | Affiliation |
|---|---|
| Professor Pierre Chapuis* | Clinical Professor, Surgery, Concord Clinical School & Director of Postgraduate Surgical Education for the Discipline of Surgery, The University of Sydney (Head of Academic Surgery), NSW |
| Associate Professor Charles Chan* | Clinical Associate Professor Medicine, Concord Clinical School, Sydney, NSW |

*Section lead author

## 20.7.2.9 Preparation for surgery and peri-operative optimisation

| Name | Affiliation |
|---|---|
| Dr Elizabeth (Liz) Murphy* | Head, Colorectal Surgical Unit, Lyell McEwin Hospital Adelaide, SA |
| Dr Karen Barclay | Colorectal Surgeon and Senior Lecturer in Surgery, Acting Head of the Academic Surgical Unit, NCHER, The Northern Hospital and the University of Melbourne, VIC |
| Dr Kate Burbury | Lead Haematologist for Haemostasis and Thrombosis, Peter MacCallum Cancer Centre, Melbourne, VIC |
| Dr Bernd Froessler | Staff Specialist, Anaesthesia, Lyell McEwin Hospital; Clinical Senior Lecturer, University of Adelaide |
| Professor Alexander (Sandy) Heriot* | Colorectal Surgeon, Peter MacCallum Cancer Centre, Melbourne, VIC |
| A/Professor Bernd Froessler | Staff Specialist, Anaesthesia, Lyell McEwin Hospital; Clinical Senior Lecturer, University of Adelaide |
| Professor Alexander (Sandy) Heriot | Colorectal Surgeon, Peter MacCallum Cancer Centre, Melbourne, VIC |
| Dr Cherry Koh | Colorectal surgeon, Royal Prince Alfred Hospital, Sydney |
| Professor Timothy | |

| Name | Affiliation |
|---|---|
| (Tim) Price | Medical Oncologist, The Queen Elizabeth Hospital, Adelaide, SA |
| Professor Kathryn Robinson | Transfusion medicine specialist, Australian Red Cross Blood Service, Haematologist, The Queen Elizabeth Hospital, Adelaide, SA |

*Section lead author

## 20.7.2.10 Elective and emergency surgery for colon and rectal cancer

| Name | Affiliation |
|---|---|
| Professor Alexander (Sandy) Heriot* | Colorectal Surgeon, Peter MacCallum Cancer Centre, Melbourne, VIC |
| Dr Andrew Luck* | Colorectal Surgeon, Lyell McEwin Hospital, Adelaide, SA |
| Dr Cherry Koh* | Colorectal surgeon, Royal Prince Alfred Hospital, Sydney |
| Dr Carina Chow | Colorectal Surgeon , Royal Brisbane Hospital, QLD |
| Dr Chip Farmer | Colorectal Surgeon, The Alfred Hospital, Melbourne, VIC |
| Dr Andrew Gilmore | Colorectal Surgeon, Macquarie University Hospital, NSW |
| Dr George Hruby | Radiation Oncologist, Clinical Associate Professor Medicine, The University of Sydney, NSW |
| Dr Henry Hicks | General Surgeon, Wagga Wagga Specialist Medical Centre, NSW |
| Professor Cameron Platell | Director of Colorectal Cancer Research, St John of God Subiaco Hospital, WA |
| Dr Bruce Stewart | Radiation Oncologist, Clinical Associate Professor Medicine, The University of Sydney, NSW |
| Dr Andrew Stevenson | Specialist Colorectal Surgeon, Head of Colorectal Surgery at Royal Brisbane and Womens Hospital, Associate Professor, The University of Queensland, QLD |

*Section lead author

## 20.7.2.11 Adjuvant therapy for colon cancer

| Name | Affiliation |
|---|---|
| Associate Professor Peter Gibbs* | Laboratory Head, Walter & Eliza Hall, Institute of Medical Research, Melbourne, VIC |
| Dr Margaret Lee | Medical Oncologist, Department of Medical Oncology, Eastern Health and Western Health |
| | Consultant Medical Oncologist, Peter MacCallum Cancer Centre & Western Health Senior |

| Name | Affiliation |
|---|---|
| Dr Jeanne Tie | Research Fellow, Walter and Eliza Hall Institute of Medical Research |

*Section lead Author

## 20.7.2.12 Neoadjuvant and adjuvant therapy for rectal cancer

| Name | Affiliation |
|---|---|
| Professor Desmond Yip* | Medical Oncologist and Clinical Director, The Canberra Hospital, Australian National University; Honorary Associate, Sydney Medical School, The University of Sydney, ACT |
| Dr Kathryn Field* | Royal Melbourne Hospital, VIC |
| Professor Les Bokey | Colorectal Surgeon, Liverpool Hospital, Sydney, NSW |
| Associate Professor George Hruby | Radiation Oncologist, Chris O'Brien Lifehouse, Sydney, NSW |
| Professor Ian Jones | Colorectal Surgeon, Royal Melbourne Hospital, VIC |
| Associate Professor Christos Karapetis | Medical Oncologist, Flinders Medical Centre, Adelaide, SA |
| Dr Elizabeth (Liz) Murphy | Head, Colorectal Surgical Unit, Lyell McEwin Hospital, Adelaide, SA |
| A/Professor Sam Ngan | Head of the GI Unit of the Department of Radiation Oncology, Peter MacCallum Cancer Centre, Melbourne, VIC |
| Dr Kirsten Gormly* | Radiologist, Dr Jones and Partners Medical Imaging, Adelaide, SA |
| Professor Alexander (Sandy) Heriot | Colorectal Surgeon, Peter MacCallum Cancer Centre, Melbourne, VIC |

*Section lead author

## 20.7.2.13 Management of resectable locally recurrent disease and metastatic disease

| Name | Affiliation |
|---|---|
| Dr Cherry Koh* | Surgical Outcomes Research Centre (SOuRCe), Sydney, NSW |
| Dr | |

| Name | Affiliation |
|---|---|
| Andrew Luck | Colorectal Surgeon, Lyell McEwin Hospital Adelaide |
| Dr Nicholas O'Rourke | Surgeon (laparoscopic and hepatobiliary), Wesley Hospital, Brisbane, QLD |
| Dr Kirsten Gormly | Radiologist, Dr Jones and Partners Medical Imaging, Adelaide |
| A /Professor Tristan Van | Consultant Cardiothoracic Surgeon, Professor of Cardiovascular and Thoracic Surgery at the Macquarie University Hospital and Associate Clinical Professor at the University of Sydney, Department of Cardiothoracic Surgery, Royal Prince Alfred Hospital, Sydney, NSW |
| Dr Peter Lee | Colorectal surgeon (visiting), Colorectal, Royal Prince Alfred Hospital, Chris O'Brien Lifehouse, St Luke's Hospital, Sydney, NSW |

*Section lead author

## 20.7.2.14 Management of non-resectable locally recurrent disease and metastatic disease

| Name | Affiliation |
|---|---|
| Dr Louise Nott* | Medical Oncologist, Royal Hobart Hospital and St John's Hospital, TAS |
| Dr Muhammad Khattak | Medical Oncologist, Royal Perth Hospital, Perth, WA |
| Dr Amanda Townsend | Senior Medical Oncologist the Queen Elizabeth Hospital |
| Professor Timothy (Tim) Price | Medical Oncologist, The Queen Elizabeth Hospital, Adelaide, SA |

* Section lead author

## 20.7.2.15 The role of systemic therapies in non-resectable metastatic disease

| Name | Affiliation |
|---|---|
| Dr Louise Nott* | Medical Oncologist, Royal Hobart Hospital and St John's Hospital, TAS |
| Dr Muhammad Khattak | Medical Oncologist, Royal Perth Hospital, Perth, WA |

| Name | Affiliation |
|---|---|
| Dr Amanda Townsend | Senior Medical Oncologist the Queen Elizabeth Hospital |
| Professor Timothy (Tim) Price | Medical Oncologist, The Queen Elizabeth Hospital, Adelaide, SA |

* Section lead author

## 20.7.2.16 Follow up after curative resection for colorectal cancer

| Name | Affiliation |
|---|---|
| Dr Peter J. Lee* | Colorectal surgeon (visiting), Colorectal, Royal Prince Alfred Hospital, Chris O'Brien Lifehouse, St Luke's Hospital, Sydney, NSW |
| Dr Andrew Gilmore | Head: Colorectal Unit Liverpool Hospital; Chairman: Complex Pelvic Surgery Liverpool Hospital |
| Professor Phillip Beale | Director, Cancer Services and Palliative Care, SLHD; Director Concord Cancer Centre; Head of Medical Oncology, CRGH; University of Sydney |

*Section lead author

## 20.7.2.17 Psychosocial care

| Name | Affiliation |
|---|---|
| Professor Phyllis Butow* | Chair Psycho-Oncology Co-operative Research Group (PoCoG), and Co Director of the Centre for Medical Psychology and Evidence-based Medicine (CeMPED) and of the Surgical Outcomes Research Centre (SoURCe), University of Sydney |
| Professor Afaf Girgis | Director, Psycho-Oncology Research Group, Centre for Oncology Education and Research Translation, Ingham Institute for Applied Medical Research, South Western Sydney Clinical School, University of NSW |

*Section lead author

# 20.8 Project team contributions

## Cancer Council Australia project team contributions

| Name | Affiliation |
|---|---|
| Jutta von Dincklage | Head, Clinical Guidelines Network, Cancer Council Australia (until November 2016) |
| Laura Wuellner | Project Manager, Clinical Guidelines Network (until November 2016), Acting Head, Clinical Guidelines Network, Cancer Council Australia (from November 2016) |
| Katrina Anderson | Project Manager, Clinical Guidelines Network (from November 2016) |
| Dr Albert Chetcuti | Project Officer, Systematic Literature Reviews, Colorectal Cancer Guidelines |
| Ben Lee-Bates | Research Assistant, Colorectal Cancer Guidelines |
| Victoria Freeman | Research Assistant, Colorectal Cancer Guidelines |
| Melissa Chow | Research Assistant, Colorectal Cancer Guidelines |
| Cecilia Taing | Research Assistant, Colorectal Cancer Guidelines |

# 20.9 Conflict of interest register

Conflict of interest register